DLR Group

Architecture
Engineering
Planning
Interiors

# Garrett College
## Community Education and Performing Arts Center (CEPAC)
## McHenry, Maryland

# Project Manual – Volume 2 of 2
## DLR Group Project No. 56-18107-00
## Garrett College Project No. CC-15-MC17-449

Issued for Bid and Permit
November 15, 2019

**PROJECT MANUAL TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**VOLUME 1 OF 2: DIVISIONS 00 THROUGH 20**

**PROJECT MANUAL TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**VOLUME 2 OF 2: DIVISIONS 21 THROUGH 33 AND APPENDIX**

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

# SECTION 21 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.
4. Silicone sealants.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop.

B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated or galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description:

1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
4. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:

   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 Steel pipe sleeves.
   b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:

   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

   b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

   b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:

   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
   b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.

5. Interior Partitions:

   a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
   b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 21 05 17

# SECTION 21 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.

C. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:

a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 21 05 18

# SECTION 21 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
4. Check valves.
5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
7. NRS gate valves.
8. Indicator posts.
9. Trim and drain valves.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

B. NRS: Nonrising stem.

C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

D. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.

3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:

1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.

a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.

1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.

2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.

a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.

B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:

1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:

a. Indicator posts.
b. Valves.

1) Gate valves.
2) Check valves.

a) Single check valves.

3) Miscellaneous valves.

C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.

D. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.

G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.

H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

I. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

## 2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Description:

1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Design: Two piece.
4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
5. Port Size: Full or standard.
6. Seats: PTFE.
7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.3 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
2. Minimum: Pressure rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem Material: Bronze or stainless steel.
6. Disc: Stainless steel.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
10. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.4 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Grooved-end connections.

## 2.5 CHECK VALVES

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

## 2.6 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.7 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Grooved.

## 2.8 NRS GATE VALVES

A. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.9 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball Valves:
1. Description:

a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
b. Body Design: Two piece.
c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
d. Port size: Full or standard.
e. Seats: PTFE.
f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
h. Actuator: Handlever.
i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:
1. Description:

a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
c. Ends: Threaded.
d. Stem: Bronze.
e. Disc: Bronze.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:
1. Description:

a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
c. Ends: Threaded.
d. Stem: Bronze.
e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
g. Packing: Asbestos free.
h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

## 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
   1. Section 21 12 00 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes.
   2. Section 21 13 13 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
   3. Section 21 13 16 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.

E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.

F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 21 05 53 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.

H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.

I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION 21 05 23

# SECTION 21 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Warning tags.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Black.

C. Background Color: Yellow.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

B. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

C. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

D. Pipe-Label Colors:

1. Background Color: Safety Red.
2. Letter Color: White.

## 2.4 STENCILS

A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
2. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
3. Stencil Paint: Safety Red, exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
4. Identification Paint: White, exterior, alkyd enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
4. Letter Color: White.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping: Paint wet-pipe sprinkler piping red, to match existing piping. Do not paint galvanized piping.

B. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

## 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 1-1/2 inches, round.
b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches, round.
c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches, round.

## 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 21 05 53

# SECTION 211119 – FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exposed-type fire-department connections.
2. Yard-type fire-department connections.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXPOSED-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Manufactures: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Fire Hose & Cabinet.
2. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
3. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
4. Potter Roemer LLC.

B. Standard: UL 405.

C. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.

D. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.

E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.

G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.

H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.

I. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.

J. Number of Inlets: Two.

K. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "APARTMENT TOWER AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."

L. Finish: Polished chrome plated.

M. Outlet Size: NPS 6.

## 2.2 YARD-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Manufactures: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Fire Hose & Cabinet.
2. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
3. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
4. Potter Roemer LLC.

B. Standard: UL 405.

C. Type: Exposed, freestanding.

D. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.

E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.

F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.

G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.

H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.

I. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.

J. Number of Inlets: Two.

K. Sleeve: Brass.

L. Sleeve Height: 18 inches.

M. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "APARTMENT TOWER AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."

N. Finish, Including Sleeve: Polished chrome plated.

O. Outlet Size: NPS 6.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.

B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.

B. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Install two protective pipe bollards on sides of each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."

D. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 211119

# SECTION 211200 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION STANDPIPES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Hose connections.
4. Alarm devices.
5. Pressure gages.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210517 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping.”
2. Section 210518 “Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping.”
3. Section 210523 “General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping.”
4. Section 210553 “Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment.”
5. Section 211119 “Fire-Department Connections.”
6. Section 211313 “Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems.”
7. Section 211316 “Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems.”
8. Section 213113 “Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps.”

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings and Hydraulic Calculations: For fire-suppression standpipes.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include computer generated hydraulic calculations using an accepted fire protection hydraulic program according to NFPA requirements.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: Standpipe systems shall be designed to comply with performance requirements and design criteria indicated on Westlake Reed Leskosky Fire Protection Drawings. The standpipe system shop drawings, hydraulic calculations and product data

submittal shall be prepared and signed by a professional engineer or NICET Level 3 or 4 water-based fire protection systems layout designer.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Fire-suppression standpipes, drawn to scale, on which items of other systems and equipment are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Approved Standpipe Drawings: Working plans and hydraulic calculations, prepared according to NFPA 14, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction and DLR Group | Westlake Reed Leskosky.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Fire-hydrant and fire pump flow test report.

E. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 14. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping" and "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping."

F. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-suppression standpipes specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, installing, and testing fire-suppression standpipes and providing design services needed to assume design responsibility. Installer shall be a professional engineer or NICET Level 3 or 4 water-based fire protection systems layout designer who is legally qualified to practice in the State of Ohio and who is experienced in providing design services of the kind indicated. Base hydraulic calculations on results of the fire hydrant flow test.

    a. Design Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer or NICET Level 3 or 4 water based fire protection systems layout designer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. NFPA Standards: Fire-suppression standpipe equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 14.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Suppression Standpipe Service: Do not interrupt fire-suppression standpipe service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary fire-suppression standpipe service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-suppression standpipe service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-suppression standpipe service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Automatic Wet-Type, Class I Standpipe System: Includes NPS 2-1/2 hose connections. Has open water-supply valve with pressure maintained and is capable of supplying water demand.

B. New high pressure, automatic wet type, class I standpipe systems shall be installed in Stair 1 and 2 (West and East) to protect the Apartment Tower. Provide a minimum residual pressure of 100 psig at the hydraulically most remote 2-1/2 inch hose connection.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Suppression standpipe system components shall be rated for the maximum system working pressure to which they are exposed, but shall not be less than 300 psig.

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer or NICET Level 3 or 4 water-based fire protection system layout designer, as defined in section 014000 “Quality Requirements”, to design and hydraulically calculate fire-suppression standpipes.

1. See DLR Group | Westlake Reed Leskosky fire suppression drawings for available water supply.

C. Fire-suppression standpipe design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction and DLR Group | Westlake Reed Leskosky.

1. Minimum residual pressure at each hose-connection outlet is as follows:

a. NPS 2-1/2 Hose Connections: 100 psig.

## 2.3 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe and fitting materials and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

## 2.4 BLACK STEEL PIPE AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Schedule 40: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.

B. Schedule 40: ASTM A 135/A 135M, Grade A; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.

C. Schedule 40: ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E, Grade A; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.

D. Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.

E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 250.

F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 250.

H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 300.

I. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.

J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Anvil International.
   b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
   c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   d. Victaulic Company.
   e. Viking Corporation.

2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
3. Painted, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.5 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Flat faced flanges shall not be mated to raised faced flanges.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating:

    a. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 300 psig minimum.

3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

B. Pressure-Reducing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valve.
    b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co, Inc.
    c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    d. Potter Roemer LLC.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. UL 668 hose valve, with integral UL 1468 reducing device.
3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
4. Material: Brass or bronze.
5. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
6. Outlet: Threaded with or without adapter having male hose threads.
7. Pattern: Angle or gate.
8. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.7 HOSE CONNECTIONS

A. Adjustable-Valve Hose Connections:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valve.
    b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co, Inc.
    c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    d. Potter Roemer LLC.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: UL 668 hose valve, with integral UL 1468 reducing or restricting pressure-control device, for connecting fire hose.
3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
4. Material: Brass or bronze.
5. Size: NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2-1/2, as indicated.
6. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
7. Outlet: Male hose threads with lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
8. Pattern: Angle or gate.
9. Pressure-Control Device Type: Pressure reducing.
10. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: 100 to 175 psig.
11. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

B. Nonadjustable-Valve Hose Connections:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valve.
    b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co, Inc.
    c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
    d. Potter Roemer LLC.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: UL 668 hose valve for connecting fire hose.
3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
4. Material: Brass or bronze.
5. Size: NPS 2-1/2, as indicated.
6. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
7. Outlet: Male hose threads with lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
8. Pattern: Angle or gate.
9. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.8 ALARM DEVICES

A. Installer shall coordinate alarm devices with Fire Alarm Contractor to insure manufacture and model numbers compatibility with the fire alarm control panel.

B. Alarm devices shall be provided and installed by installer and wired by the fire alarm contractor.

C. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

## 2.9 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMETEK, Inc.
2. Ashcroft Inc.
3. Brecco Corporation.
4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

B. Standard: UL 393.

C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

D. Pressure Gage Range: Zero to 300 psig minimum.

E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 14 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

## 3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for hose connections to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.

B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thickness, fire- and smoke-rated construction, and other conditions where hose connections are to be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

A. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, waterflow switch and drain at connection to water supply.

## 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 14 for installation of fire-suppression standpipe piping.

C. Install listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

D. Install drain valves on standpipes. Extend drain piping to outside of building.

E. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

F. Install hangers and supports for standpipe system piping according to NFPA 14. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13 for hanger materials.

G. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.

H. Fill fire-suppression standpipe system piping with water.

I. Perform hydrostatic test.

J. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

K. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

L. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

## 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

D. Ream ends of pipes, and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes and fittings before assembly.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

I. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.

J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

## 3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 14 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection.

## 3.7 HOSE-CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes.

B. Install freestanding hose connections for access and minimum passage restriction.

C. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections with quick-disconnect NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2 reducer adapter and flow-restricting device.

## 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 14.

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Fire-suppression standpipe systems shall be tested in accordance with the latest edition of NFPA 14.
2. Perform new fire hydrant flow test per NFPA 291.
3. Hydrostatic Test: All piping and attached appurtenances shall be hydrostatically tested at 350 psig, for a minimum of 2 hours. Leakage or performance deficiency evidenced by testing shall be repaired by tightening or replacing fittings or equipment only. Caulking, wrapping or other means shall not be permitted.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Flush, test, and inspect standpipe systems according to NFPA 14, "System Acceptance" Chapter.
6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

B. Fire-suppression standpipe system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

B. All high pressure fire-suppression standpipe piping, shall be one of the following:

1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
2. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

END OF SECTION 211200

# SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Sprinklers.
4. Alarm devices.
5. Pressure gages.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 21 05 23 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig, but not higher than 300 psig.

B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer or NICET designer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Domestic water piping.
2. Compressed air piping.
3. HVAC hydronic piping.
4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

C. Design Data:

1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Field Test Reports:

1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.

F. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Architect's written permission.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:

1. NFPA 13.

B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.

C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," or NICET Level III technician to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

**1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records indicate the following conditions:**

**a. Date: data was provided by the Garrett County Department of Public Utilities.**
**b. Time: 3/21/2019**
**c. Performed by: Department of Public Utilities**
**d. Location of Residual Fire Hydrant R: Bumble Bee Road @ Deep Creek Docks**
**e. Location of Flow Fire Hydrants F: Below CAOS Building**
**f. Static Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: 155 psi**
**g. Measured Flow at Flow Fire Hydrant F: 1680 gpm**
**h. Residual Pressure at Residual Fire Hydrant R: 100 psi**

2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers, not less than 10 psig.

3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
   a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
   d. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.30 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
   e. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.40 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
   f. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
   a. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft..
   b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft..
   c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
   d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
   e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

D. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7.

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Standard-Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10, plain end.

C. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

D. Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.

E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free or EPDM rubber gasket.

   a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.

b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
1. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
2. Painted Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.3 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating:

1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.

C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

D. Size: Same as connected piping.

E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
1. Standard: UL 1726.
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
4. Size: NPS 3/4.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.4 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

C. Branch Line Testers:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Brass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Length: Adjustable.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

## 2.5 SPRINKLERS

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.

C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
2. Characteristics: Quick response, nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

D. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze and painted.

E. Special Coatings: Wax and corrosion-resistant paint.

F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.

G. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.6 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Flow Indicators:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
4. Type: Paddle operated.
5. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
6. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

C. Pressure Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
2. Type: Electrically supervised.
3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Standard: UL 393.

B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

C. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.

D. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

### 3.2 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Connect to backflow preventer.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.

C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.

D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.

K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.

M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.

N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 21 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 21 05 18 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

## 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

H. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

I. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

## 3.5 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Specialty Valves:

1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

## 3.6 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

## 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.

B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.9 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

## 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

## 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.

B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
2. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

## 3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated.
5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, sprinklers where indicated.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 21 13 13

# SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

### 1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
2. Pipe loops and swing connections.
3. Alignment guides and anchors.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Flex Pression Ltd.
b. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
c. Flexicraft Industries.
d. Mason Industries, Inc.
e. Metraflex Company (The).
f. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.

a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel fittings with threaded end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

## 2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

a. Adsco Manufacturing LLC.
b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
d. Flex-Weld, Inc.
e. Flexicraft Industries.
f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
g. Mason Industries, Inc.
h. Metraflex Company (The).
i. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
k. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.

3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

    a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
    b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
    c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

    a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
    b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
    c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

### 3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.

C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

### 3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.

C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.

D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

E. Anchor Attachments:

1. Anchor Attachment to Black-Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
2. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.

F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 220516

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel .
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Presealed Systems.

B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

## 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

## 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Sleeve-seal fittings.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Stack-sleeve fittings.

5. Interior Partitions:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:

a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Light-activated thermometers.
3. Thermowells.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.
6. Test plugs.
7. Test-plug kits.
8. Sight flow indicators.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters inside the building.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Trerice, H. O. Co.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum ; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.

   a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

11. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Flo Fab Inc.
   b. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
   c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
   d. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
   e. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
   f. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Case: Metal ; 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle .
5. Connector: 1-1/4 inches , with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

6. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

7. Display: Digital.
8. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

B. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Miljoco Corporation.
    b. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    c. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
3. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
4. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.

    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

5. Display: Digital.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

## 2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI .
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES CSA .
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin .

## 2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.
    c. Ernst Flow Industries.
    d. Flo Fab Inc.
    e. Marsh Bellofram.
    f. Miljoco Corporation.
    g. Noshok.
    h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    k. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    o. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 6-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
12. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
13. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
14. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi .
15. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
16. Window: Glass.
17. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.
    c. Ernst Flow Industries.
    d. Flo Fab Inc.

e. Marsh Bellofram.
f. Miljoco Corporation.
g. Noshok.
h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
k. Trerice, H. O. Co.
l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
o. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi .
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston -type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.6 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Miljoco Corporation.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F .

F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Miljoco Corporation.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig .

F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.8 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Archon Industries, Inc.
2. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.

3. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
4. Ernst Co., John C., Inc.
5. Ernst Flow Industries.
6. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
7. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
8. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.

B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.

E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.

F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.

I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

J. Install test plugs in piping tees.

K. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
5. .

L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Building water service entrance into building.
2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

## 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:
1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

C. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled Sealed, direct -mounted, metal case.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled Sealed, direct -mounted, metal case.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:

1. Liquid-filled Sealed, direct -mounted, metal case.
2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION 220519

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Steel ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

G. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4 .

H. Valves in Insulated Piping:

1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

### 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

    a. Kitz Corporation.
    b. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
    c. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    c. Body Design: Two piece.
    d. Body Material: Forged brass.
    e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
    f. Seats: PTFE.
    g. Stem: Stainless steel.
    h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    i. Port: Full.

B. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Regular Port and Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

    a. Hammond Valve.
    b. Legend Valve.
    c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    d. NIBCO INC.
    e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    c. Body Design: Two piece.
    d. Body Material: Forged brass.
    e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
    f. Seats: PTFE.
    g. Stem: Brass.
    h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    i. Port: Regular.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Hammond Valve.
d. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
f. NIBCO INC.
g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

## 2.4 STEEL BALL VALVES

A. Class 150, Steel Ball Valves with Full Port:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Jamesbury, Inc.; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A 216, Type WCB.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

B. Class 150, Steel Ball Valves with Regular Port:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Jamesbury, Inc.; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
c. Body Design: Uni-body.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A 216, Type WCB.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Regular.

## 2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
c. Kitz Corporation.
d. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Ends: Flanged or threaded.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel.
i. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

## 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

## 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

B. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.

5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

## 3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Two-piece, brass ball valves with full port and brass trim.
3. Two-piece, bronze ball valves with full port and bronze or brass trim.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Steel and Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Class 150, steel ball valves with full port.
3. Class 150, iron ball valves.

END OF SECTION 220523.12

# SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7 .

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Fiberglass strut systems.
4. Pipe stands.
5. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel .

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel .

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel .

## 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of fiberglass polyurethane or stainless steel .

B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.

2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel .

## 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    c. Flex-Strut Inc.
    d. GS Metals Corp.
    e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
    g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel .
7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc .

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
    b. Empire Industries, Inc.
    c. ERICO International Corporation.
    d. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
    e. NIBCO INC.
    f. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
    g. PHS Industries, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel .
7. Coating: Zinc .

## 2.5 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
2. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
4. SEASAFE, INC.; a Gibraltar Industries Company.

B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.

1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass or other plastic channel with inturned lips.
2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of fiberglass .

## 2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Clement Support Services.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
5. PHS Industries, Inc.
6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.

D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.8 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Plastic .
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.9 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.10 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.

F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

G. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

I. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

K. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

L. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

M. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

N. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

O. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

P. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

Q. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

## 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches .

## 3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." Section 099123 "Interior Painting." Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

## 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.

16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.

7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.

8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

    a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220533 - HEAT TRACING FOR PLUMBING PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes plumbing piping heat tracing for freeze prevention, domestic hot-water-temperature maintenance, and snow and ice melting on roofs and in gutters and downspouts with the following electric heating cables:

1. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
2. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.
3. Constant wattage.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 230533 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-INSULATED, SERIES-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Delta-Therm Corporation.
2. Easy Heat; a division of EGS Electrical Group LLC.
3. Orbit Manufacturing.
4. Pyrotenax; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
5. Raychem; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
6. WarmlyYours Inc.
7. Watts Radiant, Inc.; a subsidiary of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8.

B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Single- or dual-stranded resistor wire. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at both ends.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Minimum 4.0-mil Kapton with silicone, Tefzel, or polyolefin.

E. Cable Cover: Aluminum braid and silicone or Hylar outer jacket.

F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 300 deg F .

G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F .

H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

I. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Maximum Heat Output: 6 W/ft. .

## 2.2 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. BriskHeat.
2. Chromalox.
3. Delta-Therm Corporation.
4. Easy Heat; a division of EGS Electrical Group LLC.
5. Nelson Heat Trace; a division of EGS Electrical Group LLC.
6. Pyrotenax; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
7. Raychem; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
8. Thermon Americas Inc.
9. Trasor Corp.

B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 AWG, tinned , stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.

E. Cable Cover: Tinned-copper braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.

F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F .

G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F .

H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 CONSTANT-WATTAGE HEATING CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. BriskHeat.
2. Chromalox.
3. Delta-Therm Corporation.
4. Easy Heat; a division of EGS Electrical Group LLC.
5. Nelson Heat Trace; a division of EGS Electrical Group LLC.

6. Pyrotenax; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
7. Raychem; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
8. Thermon Americas Inc.
9. Trasor Corp.

B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 12 AWG, tinned , stranded copper bus wires with single-stranded resistor wire connected between bus wires. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant fluoropolymer.

E. Cable Cover: Tinned-copper braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.

F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 392 deg F .

G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F .

H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.4 CONTROLS

A. Pipe-Mounted Thermostats for Freeze Protection:

1. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F .
2. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
3. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.
4. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

B. Precipitation and Temperature Sensor for Snow Melting on Roofs and in Gutters:

1. Microprocessor-based control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
2. Precipitation and temperature sensors shall sense the surface conditions of roof and gutters and shall be programmed to energize the cable as follows:

    a. Temperature Span: 34 to 44 deg F .
    b. Adjustable Delay-Off Span: 30 to 90 minutes.
    c. Energize Cables: Following two -minute delay if ambient temperature is below set point and precipitation is detected.
    d. De-Energize Cables: On detection of a dry surface plus time delay.

3. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and precipitation and temperature sensors.

4. Minimum 30-A contactor to energize cable or close other contactors.
5. Precipitation sensor shall be freestanding.
6. Provide relay with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, for interface with central HVAC control-system workstation.

C. Programmable Timer for Domestic Hot-Water-Temperature Maintenance:

1. Microprocessor based.
2. Minimum of four separate schedules.
3. Minimum 24-hour battery carryover.
4. On-off-auto switch.
5. 365-day calendar with 20 programmable holidays.
6. Relays with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, and for interface with central HVAC control-system workstation.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Warning Labels: Refer to Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.

1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Install the following types of electric heating cable for the applications described:

1. Snow and Ice Melting on Roofs and in Gutters and Downspouts: Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cable.
2. Temperature Maintenance for Domestic Hot Water: Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cable.
3. See Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping for additional applications.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install electric heating cable across expansion, construction, and control joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use cable-protection conduit and slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.

B. Electric Heating-Cable Installation for Snow and Ice Melting on Roofs and in Gutters and Downspouts: Install on roof and in gutters and downspouts with clips furnished by manufacturer that are compatible with roof, gutters, and downspouts.

C. Electric Heating-Cable Installation for Freeze Protection for Piping:

1. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
2. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.
3. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
4. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

D. Electric Heating-Cable Installation for Temperature Maintenance for Domestic Hot Water:

1. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
2. Install insulation over piping with electric heating cables according to Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
3. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

E. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.

D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.

E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage during construction.

B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 220533

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
3. Resilient pipe guides.
4. Elastomeric hangers.
5. Spring hangers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.

    a. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.
    b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

## 2.2 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psigon isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.3 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.4 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.5 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    d. Mason Industries, Inc.
    e. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    f. Vibration Isolation.
    g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

3.3 SCHEDULE

| Mark | Equipment | Location | Design Deflection | Isolator |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| RHWP-1 | Circulation pump, inline | Mechanical | 1” | Spring hanger |
| WH-1 | Water heater | Mechanical | 0.11” | Elastomeric pad |

END OF SECTION 220548.13

# SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Warning tags.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Black.

C. Background Color: Yellow.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater

viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 incheshigh.

## 2.4 STENCILS

A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.

1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

## 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099200 "High-Performance Coatings."

B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.

1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.

C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Cold Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Stripes: Black (One).
   c. Letter Color: White.

2. Domestic Hot Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Stripes: Black (Two).
   c. Letter Color: White.

3. Domestic Recirculated Hot Water Piping:

   a. Background Color: Green.
   b. Stripes: Black (Three).
   c. Letter Color: White.

4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:

   a. Background Color: Yellow.
   b. Letter Color: White.

## 3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

a. Cold Water: 2 inches, round.
b. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 2 inches, round.
d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Color:

a. Cold Water: Green.
b. Hot Water: Green.

3. Letter Color:

a. Cold Water: White.
b. Hot Water: White.

## 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

# SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic cold-water piping.
2. Domestic hot-water piping.
3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.

4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
5. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
6. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.

1. Piping Mockups:

    a. One 10-foot section of NPS 2 straight pipe.
    b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
    c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
    d. One NPS 2 or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 or larger valve.
    e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
    f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
    g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
    h. One pressure temperature tap.
    i. One mechanical coupling.

2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

D. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:

1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.

2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
    d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Flexible ElastomericAdhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
    b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
   b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.

c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.

d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

## 2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

C. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.

4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

## 2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
c. Compac Corporation; 120.
d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.

b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. C & F Wire.

## 2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Engineered Brass Company.
b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
c. McGuire Manufacturing.
d. Plumberex.
e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.

4. Cleanouts.

## 3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape

insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

## 3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

## 3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.10 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

## 3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

C. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

D. Stormwater and Overflow:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

E. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

F. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.

G. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.

H. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

I. Hot Service Drains:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch thick.

J. Hot Service Vents:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch thick.

## 3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.

C. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

D. Hot Service Drains:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

E. Hot Service Vents:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch thick.

## 3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils thick.
2. Painted Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.020 inch thick.

## 3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. PVC: 30 mils thick.
2. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.020 inch thick.
3. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.032 inch thick.
2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.

## 3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 221113 – FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service.

B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DI: Ductile Iron.

B. PVC: Polyvinyl Chloride

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Coordination Drawings: For piping including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and elevations.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:
   1. Comply with Carroll County standards for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, disinfection and backflow prevention.

B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

C. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, drawn temper.
   1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
   2. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
      a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
         1) Viega; Plumbing & Heating Systems.
      c. NPS 2 to NPS 4: Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.

B. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
   1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
   2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

B. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Division 312000 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.

B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.

D. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.

E. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be the following:
   1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

F. Underground water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 shall be the following:
   1. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.

3.3 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. See Division 22 for piping-system common requirements.

## 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
   1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

B. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 36 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
   1. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches additional cover.

C. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
   1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.

D. Water service pipe shall be sleeved for 5ft when entering a foundation wall. Sleeves are specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

E. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

F. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.

G. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.

H. Service pipe size shall be ¾” for 1½ bathrooms or less. Pipe size shall be 1” for 2 or more bathrooms.

I. An expansion tank for water heaters is required for all public water supply.

J. No physical connection is permitted between public water and private well water.

## 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Make pipe joints according to the following:
   1. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use proprietary crimping tool and procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
   2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

## 3.6 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
   1. Concrete thrust blocks.

2. Locking mechanical joints.
3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
4. Bolted flanged joints.
5. Heat-fused joints.
6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.

B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.

C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Garrett County Residential Water Service Meter Options:
1. ¾" water service using Nepture 5/8"x3/4" T-10 meter. Normal operating range 0.5-20 GPM with maximum recommended continuous flow of 10 GPM.
2. ¾" water service using Neptune ¾" Mach 10 short lay ultrasonic meter. Normal operating range 0.1-35 GPM with a maximum recommended continuous flow of 30 GPM.
3. 1" water service using Neptune 1" T-10 meter. Normal operating range 1-50 GPM with a maximum recommended continuous flow of 25 GPM. (Note: With this option, the water tap and service must be upgraded to 1" at the owner's cost).

B. See Division 22 for piping connections to valves and equipment.

C. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water piping.

D. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water piping.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.

B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.

C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

## 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

## 3.10 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
   1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
   2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure, if method is not prescribed by Owner, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
   3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
      a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.
      c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
      d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.

B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 221113

# SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
2. Encasement for piping.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.

B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.

C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.

D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.

F. Copper Unions:

1. MSS SP-123.
2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

B. Form: Sheet or tube.

C. Color: Black or natural.

## 2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
d. JCM Industries.
e. Romac Industries, Inc.
f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
g. Viking Johnson.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

2. Description:

a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket end.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
b. NIBCO Inc.
c. Spears Manufacturing Company.

2. Description:

a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
b. Brass or stainless-steel threaded end.
c. Solvent-cement-joint plastic end.
d. Rubber O-ring.
e. Union nut.

## 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
d. Jomar International.
e. Matco-Norca.
f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    b. Central Plastics Company.
    c. Matco-Norca.
    d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F .
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    b. Calpico, Inc.
    c. Central Plastics Company.
    d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
    b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
    c. Matco-Norca.
    d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    e. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.

6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

D. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.

I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

O. Install piping free of sags and bends.

P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

R. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

S. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."

T. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.

2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.

E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

## 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:

1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

## 3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

## 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.

2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.

6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.

J. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet.

K. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

L. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.

M. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

N. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches.

O. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

P. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.

Q. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PP piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

R. Install supports for vertical PP piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.

S. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

## 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.

2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.

a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

## 3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

        1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
        2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

    c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:

    a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

## 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

D. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Hard or soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

## 3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

# SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Hose bibbs.
8. Wall hydrants.
9. Drain valves.
10. Water-hammer arresters.
11. Air vents.
12. Trap-seal primer valves.
13. Flexible connectors.
14. Water meters.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 224713 "Drinking Fountains" for water filters for water coolers.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For water consumption.

C. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
e. Rain Bird Corporation.
f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
   b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
   c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   d. Legend Valve.
   e. MIFAB, Inc.
   f. Prier Products, Inc.
   g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
   h. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
   i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
   j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

## 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   d. Flomatic Corporation.
   e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
   f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Size: As indicated on drawings.
6. Body: Bronze for NPS 3 and smaller.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
9. Accessories:

   a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.

b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A WATTS Brand.
b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
c. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
d. WATTS.
e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Size: See Plan.
6. Design Flow Rate: 450 gpm.
7. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: 350 to 550 gpm.
8. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: 5 psig for sizes NPS 2 and smaller; 5 psig for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
9. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
10. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
11. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
12. Accessories:

a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

C. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
c. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

D. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    b. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    c. Flomatic Corporation.
    d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

## 2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
    b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    c. Honeywell International Inc.
    d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

## 2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Armstrong International, Inc.
    b. Flo Fab Inc.
    c. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
    d. NIBCO Inc.
    e. TAC.

f. TACO Incorporated.
g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

C. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
e. Hammond Valve.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO Inc.
h. Red-White Valve Corp.

2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
c. Honeywell International Inc.
d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.

e. Leonard Valve Company.
f. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 deg F.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.

## 2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:

   a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
   b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
   c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.

6. Drain: Pipe plug.

## 2.9 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs HB-1:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.

12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.10 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants HB-2:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
    b. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    d. Prier Products, Inc.
    e. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    g. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
    h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
4. Classification: Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
6. Operation: Loose key.
7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
8. Inlet: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

## 2.11 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

## 2.12 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters WHA-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Josam Company.
c. MIFAB, Inc.
d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
h. Watts Drainage Products.
i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.13 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.

5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.14 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. MIFAB, Inc.
b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

## 2.15 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
2. Flexicraft Industries.
3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
4. Flex-Weld Incorporated.
5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
6. Mercer Gasket & Shim, Inc.
7. Metraflex, Inc.
8. Proco Products, Inc.

9. TOZEN Corporation.
10. Unaflex.Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.

B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## 2.16 WATER METERS

A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AALIANT; a Venture Measurement product line.ABB.Badger Meter, Inc.
b. Carlon Meter.
c. Mueller Co. Ltd.; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
d. Neptune Technology Group (Basis of Design)
e. Schlumberger Limited; Water Services.
f. Sensus.

2. Description:

a. Standard: AWWA C700.
b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
e. Case: Bronze.
f. End Connections: Threaded.

B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AALIANT; a Venture Measurement product line.

b. ABB.
c. Badger Meter, Inc.
d. Hays Fluid Controls.
e. Master Meter, Inc.
f. McCrometer, Inc.
g. Mueller Co. Ltd.; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
h. Neptune Technology Group (Basis of Design)
i. Schlumberger Limited; Water Services.
j. SeaMetrics Inc.
k. Sensus.

2. Description:

a. Standard: AWWA C701.
b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
e. Case: Bronze.
f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

A. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Badger Meter, Inc.
b. Neptune Technology Group Inc.: Truflo (Basis of Design)
c. Sensus; a Xylem brand.

2. Standard: AWWA C702.
3. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
4. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
5. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
6. Case: Bronze.
7. Pipe Connections: Flanged.

B. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

C. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

C. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

D. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.

1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve solenoid valve and pump.

F. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

G. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.

H. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

I. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.

J. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

K. Install flow meters for chilled water system make-up, heating hot-water system make-up, and overall domestic water flow. Include a bypass with isolation valves. Use compound-type meter for variable flow, 2” pipe and above. Use turbine meter for constant flow, 2” pipe and above. Use positive displacement meter, less than 2” pipe.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

## 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:

1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Calibrated balancing valves.
5. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
6. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
7. Primary water tempering valves.
8. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.

B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide TACO Model 2400-10S or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
3. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
4. TACO Incorporated.
5. WILO USA LLC - WILO Canada Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
2. Casing: Stainless steel, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
3. Impeller: Plastic.
4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Capacities and Characteristics:
   a. See Drawing Schedule.

2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.3 CONTROLS

A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.

1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
5. Transformer: Provide if required.
6. Power Requirement: 120 V, ac.
7. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.

B. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.

1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, suitable for wall mounting.
3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
4. Transformer: Provide if required.
5. Power Requirement: 120-V ac.
6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

D. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.

E. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

F. Install timers on wall in engineer's office.

G. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.

D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

1. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

E. Connect thermostats, and timers to pumps that they control.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Set thermostats and timers, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

a. Verify bearing lubrication.

b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
7. Start motor.
8. Open discharge valve slowly.
9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
10. Adjust timer settings.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust initial temperature set points.

C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 221313 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Garrett County Department of Public Works, Utility Division, Sewage Grinder Pump Installation and Inspection Requirements.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. PVC pipe and fittings.
2. Nonpressure-type transition couplings.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Concrete.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Pipe and fittings.
2. Non-pressure and pressure couplings
3. Backwater valves.
4. Cleanouts.

B. Shop Drawings: For manholes. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings:
1. Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
2. Show system piping in profile. Draw profiles to horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet (1:500) and to vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet (1:50). Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe and fitting.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
   1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 679, T-1 wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.

## 2.2 NONPRESSURE-TYPE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling; for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and include corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:
   1. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
   2. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

## 2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. PVC Cleanouts:
   1. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

## 2.4 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete complying with ACI 318, ACI 350, and the following:
   1. Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type II.
   2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M, sand.
   3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M, crushed gravel.
   4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 3000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
   1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
   2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.

C. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
   1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
   2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

## 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details to indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.

D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 2 percent unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover.
3. Install PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

F. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

G. No floor drains are allowed on public sewers. Open sight drains in basements and crawlspaces require a PVC check valve.

H. Fernco fittings used underground will require a shear band.

I. No sump or stormwater shall be discharged into the sewer.

## 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
1. Join PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
2. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible couplings.

B. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use nonpressure flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
a. Shielded flexible couplings for pipes of same or slightly different OD.
2. Use pressure pipe couplings for force-main joints.

## 3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

## 3.5 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install horizontal-type backwater valves in piping manholes or pits.

B. Install combination horizontal and manual gate-type valves in piping and in manholes.

C. Install terminal-type backwater valves on end of piping and in manholes. Secure units to sidewalls.

D. Backwater valves are required for all grinder pump systems and gravity systems where the plumbing fixtures are below the level of the first upstream manhole.

E. Backwater valves located inside and outside shall be readily accessible for servicing.

F. Backwater valves shall be installed on the building drain pipe that receives flow only from fixtures that are subject to backflow, not from fixtures on upper floors that are not subject to backflow.

## 3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
   1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
   2. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
   3. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
   4. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
   5. Cleanouts located in traffic area (Items 3 and 4) shall have a “Lamp Pole” frame and cover to protect from vehicle damage.

B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.

C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

D. Cleanouts shall be installed at the foundation and every 75ft on a straight run.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains.

B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.

1. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

## 3.8 SEWAGE GRINDER PUMP REQUIREMENTS

A. Plumbing Requirements

1. All pipe and fittings should be purchased from the DPU Warehouse @ 200 Francis Sanders Drive, Oakland, to insure uniformity of all specifications and installations.

2. The grinder basin must be at least 10-feet from the building structure. The top of the basin must be at least 2-feet below any floor with plumbing (unless otherwise approved by DPU). The minimum slope is 2% (1/4" per lineal foot). The bottom of the basin must be anchored in 1-yard of concrete in order to keep the basin from floating.

3. The top of the grinder basin must be level.

4. If a riser is installed, an extended rail assembly and junction box pipe extension must be added and the float bracket moved up. The materials are available at the DPU Warehouse.

5. The inlet from the building connection must be cut in away from the floats and rail assembly.

6. All discharge piping must be installed with a minimum of 3-feet of cover.

7. All discharge piping must be a minimum of 3-feet away from any other utility.

8. All discharge piping must be installed with the bell-end facing the basin.

9. Absolutely no DWV (draining waste and vent) fittings or glue joints can be used on the discharge piping (must be SDR-21 or 13.5).

10. A brass check valve must be installed on the discharge piping at the connection point to the main sewer line or when connecting to an existing discharge line via slip-tee.

11. All discharge piping must have a minimum of 6-inches of #10 stone (dust) under and 6-inches of #10 stone over the pipe.

12. All discharge piping must be marked with sewer line detection tape no deeper that 12-inches from finished grade.

13. **All discharge piping must be inspected by a DPU employee prior to backfilling. The property owner/contractor must call 301-334-6976 in order to schedule an inspection. There are <u>no</u> exceptions to this requirement. If backfilling occurs**

**prior to an inspection by DPU, the property owner/contractor will be required to excavate the piping for inspection by DPU at the property owner's/contractor's expense. Installations will not be accepted and/or allowed to connect to the main sewer system until the piping is inspected and accepted.**

14. The grinder basin must be backfilled to finished grade before the pump can installed and wired. The basin lid must be at least 2 to 3-inches above the finished grade so that the surface water cannot enter the basin. In no instances can the basin lid be below ground level.

15. The grinder basin must be easily accessible at all times. Items including, but not limited to, decks, walkways, pavement, heavy objects, or any other type of structure cannot be constructed over or located on top of the basin or impede upon the operation and maintenance easement area. If access to the grinder basin is impeded, removal of the object is the full responsibility of the property owner. Maintenance on the system will not occur until the obstructing object is removed by the property owner.

B. Electrical Requirements

1. All electrical components should be purchased from the DPU Warehouse to insure uniformity of all specifications and installations.

2. All conduit and fittings must be rated for electrical use. Water piping cannot be substituted for electrical conduit.

3. All conduit installed must be a minimum of 1-inch in diameter for simplex grinder systems and a minimum of 1½ inches for duplex grinder systems. It is the responsibility of the contractor to size the conduit for the proper installation.

4. Conduit installed from the control panel to the basin must be buried in the ground and cannot be installed under craw spaces or basements. Conduits that run between the control panel and basin must have an expansion joint coupling within 12-inches of the control panel.

5. All efforts should be taken to avoid crossing over or under the gravity sewer line from the structure to the grinder basin with the electrical conduit installed from the control panel to the basin. Conduit cannot cross over or under the discharge piping from the grinder basin to the main sewer line.

6. All conduit muse be a minimum of 18-inches deep and have a minimum of 4-inches of #10 stone (dust) under a minimum of 4-inches of #10 stone (dust) over the conduit.

7. All conduit must be marked with electrical marking tape no deeper than 12-inches from finished grade.

8. **All conduit must be inspected by a DPU employee prior to backfilling. The property owner/contractor must call 301-334-6976 in order to schedule an inspection. There are no exceptions to this requirement. If backfilling occurs prior to an inspection by DPU, the property owner/contractor will be required to excavate the conduit for inspection by DPU at the property owner's/contractor's expense. Installations will not be accepted and/or allowed to connect to the main sewer system until the conduit is inspected and accepted.**

9. The control panel must be mounted in plain view and located as close as possible to the grinder basin with a minimum of 6-inches clear around all sides of panel. If a control panel will be post-mounted, the entire supporting structure must be constructed of treated lumber or welded stainless steel unistrut. The minimum size allowable for supporting posts is 4-inches by 4-inches.

10. The voltage for 2hp simplex and 2hp duplex grinder pumps is 240-volt single phase. Where commercial voltage of 208 is present, the property owner/contractor is required to install a buck boost transformer in order to supply the correct voltage.

11. The wiring harness must be purchased from the DPU Warehouse and be installed by the contractor from the control pane to the grinder basin. It is the responsibility of the contractor to inform Warehouse personnel whether the wiring harness is for a simplex or duplex installation. DPU personnel will completely the connections.

12. Wiring from the load center in the building to the disconnect and from the disconnect to the control panel bust be complete and energized. Electrical breakers in the disconnect box and control panel must be turned off prior to final inspection by DPU personnel.

13. A lightening arrestor must be wired to the top terminals of the disconnect breaker.

14. The disconnect must be grounded with green wires from the feed and control panel. The white wires from the lightening arrestor must be mounted to a bar and ground screw installed. The disconnect must be a square D brand.

15. The neutral wire from the building and the neutral wire from the control panel must be connected with wire nuts. This isolates the neutral wire from the ground wire.

16. Install electrical potting in conduit to basin to keep out gases.

17. Flooded junction boxes in grinder basins will not be accepted. Flooding causes the liquid to enter the wiring harness which in turn allows moisture to enter the pump windings when the motor is connected and energized. This causes the pump to malfunction and burn up. In order to avoid flooding of the junction boxes, the following precautions are recommended:

    a. If a liquid level in the basin is within 36-inches from the top of the basin, the liquid must be removed by the property owner/contractor.

b. If the junction box becomes flooded, a new wiring harness must be installed.

c. The electrician should complete installation of the disconnect and control panel, contact DPU at 301-334-6976 to schedule the connection, and then pull the wiring harness the same day prior to the pump installation.

18. The pump will be installed and connected by DPU personnel. A $100.00 fee per return trip will be assessed to the property owner/contractor if all requirements are not satisfied and a return trip (s) is required by the DPU personnel.

C. Inspection Requirements

1. Water must be available to the grinder basin.

2. There cannot be more than 2-feet of liquid in the basin.

3. Installation of the disconnect, control panel and wiring harness must be complete with power to the disconnect and breaker turned off in the control panel.

4. The road valve must be marked with a wooden stake or orange flag.

5. The grinder lid must be exposed.

6. The grinder basin must be backfilled to finished grade.

7. A fee of $100.00 must be paid prior to any return trips by DPU that are required due to incomplete installations.

Note: Example Installation Diagrams are available through the Garrett County Department of Public Works, Utility Division.

## 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for underground utility identification devices. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
   1. Use detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
   1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.

2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
   a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
   b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
   c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
   d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
   e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.
5. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
   a. Fill sewer piping with water. Test with pressure of at least 10-foot head of water, and maintain such pressure without leakage for at least 15 minutes.
   b. Close openings in system and fill with water.
   c. Purge air and refill with water.
   d. Disconnect water supply.
   e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
6. Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
   a. Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
   b. Test concrete gravity sewer piping according to ASTM C 1628.
7. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

## 3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 221313

# SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 333000 covers sanitary sewerage work outside the building.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ANACO-Husky.

b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
c. Fernco Inc.
d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
e. MIFAB, Inc.
f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
g. Stant.
h. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ANACO-Husky.
b. Clamp-All Corp.
c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
d. MIFAB, Inc.
e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
f. Stant.
g. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
2) Fernco Inc.
3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.

b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
d. Sleeve Materials:

1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

4. Pressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
2) Dresser, Inc.
3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
4) JCM Industries, Inc.
5) Romac Industries, Inc.
6) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
7) The Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
8) Viking Johnson.

b. Standard: AWWA C219.
c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Hart Industries International, Inc.

4) Jomar International Ltd.
5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2) Calpico, Inc.
3) Central Plastics Company.
4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

b. Description:

1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.

5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Elster Perfection.
2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
5) Victaulic Company.

b. Description:

1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
2) Electroplated steel nipple.
3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

B. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch or high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.

C. Form: Sheet or tube.

D. Color: Black or natural.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

## 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss,

expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

N. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

O. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.

P. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

## 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.

C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

## 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

## 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

## 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

## 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before

inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.

4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

## 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

## 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; calking materials; and calked joints.
2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:

1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; calking materials; and calked joints.
2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backwater valves.
2. Cleanouts.
3. Floor drains.
4. Floor sinks.
5. Roof flashing assemblies.
6. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
7. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
8. Flashing materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for storm drainage piping inside the building, drainage piping specialties, and drains.
2. Section 334000 "Storm Drainage Utilities" for storm draining piping and piping specialties outside the building.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.

D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

E. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
3. Size: Same as connected piping.
4. Body: Cast iron.
5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed.
8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    b. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Josam Company.
        2) MIFAB, Inc.
        3) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
        4) Tyler Pipe.
        5) Watts Drainage Products.
        6) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.

5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
b. Oatey.
c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
i. Josam Company; Josam Div.
j. Kusel Equipment Co.
k. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
l. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for heavy-duty, adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Heavy-duty, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
7. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Stainless steel.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
11. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
13. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
14. Size: Same as connected branch.
15. Housing: Stainless steel.
16. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
17. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.
d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

## 2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Commercial Enameling Co.
    b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    c. MIFAB, Inc.
    d. Prier Products, Inc.
    e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
    f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    g. Watts Drainage Products.

2. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Not required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Not required.
8. Outlet: Bottom or side.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required, provided separately.
10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
11. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Bronze.
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
14. Top Shape: Round.
15. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
16. Funnel: Not required.
17. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
18. Trap Material: Bronze.
19. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.
20. Trap Features: Cleanout and trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

B. Stainless-Steel Floor Drains (Boiler Room and at each AHU):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
    b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    c. Kusel Equipment Co.
    d. Scherping Systems, Inc.
    e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    g. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
3. Outlet: Bottom.
4. Top or Strainer Material: Stainless steel.
5. Top Shape: Round.
6. Trap-Primer Connection: Required.
7. Trap Material: Stainless steel.
8. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

## 2.4 FLOOR SINKS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Sinks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Commercial Enameling Co.
    b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    c. MIFAB, Inc.
    d. Prier Products, Inc.
    e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
    f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    g. Watts Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.7.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Anchor Flange: as required for installation application.
6. Clamping Device: as required for installation application.
7. Outlet: Bottom, no-hub connection.
8. Coating on Interior Surfaces: Not required.
9. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
10. Internal Strainer: Not required.
11. Internal Strainer Material: Aluminum.
12. Top Grate Material: Cast iron, loose.
13. Top of Body and Grate Finish: Nickel bronze.
14. Top Shape: Square.

15. Dimensions of Top Grate: See Schedule.
16. Top Loading Classification: No traffic.
17. Funnel: Not required.

## 2.5 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
    b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.

2. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

    a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
    b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
    c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## 2.6 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. ProSet Systems Inc.

2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

    a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.

B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

C. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

D. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

E. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

F. Vent Caps:

1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

G. Expansion Joints:

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## 2.8 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.

B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft..
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft..

C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## 2.9 MOTORS

A. General requirements for motors are specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:
1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.

C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:

    a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.

3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

H. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

I. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.

J. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

K. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.

1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

L. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

M. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

N. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.

O. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.

P. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.

Q. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

R. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

# SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 221429 "Sump Pumps" for storm drainage pumps.
2. Section 334000 "Storm Drainage Utilities" for storm drainage piping outside the building.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For siphonic roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm-Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm-drainage service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm-drainage service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy classes.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ANACO-Husky.

b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
c. Fernco Inc.
d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
e. MIFAB, Inc.
f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
g. Stant.
h. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ANACO-Husky.
b. Clamp-All Corp.
c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
d. MIFAB, Inc.
e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
f. Stant.
g. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:

1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
2. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Anvil International.
2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
3) Star Pipe Products.
4) Victaulic Company.

b. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
c. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

## 2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper fittings or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.

C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.

D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.

E. Copper Pressure Fittings:

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy fittings or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.

1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
2) Fernco Inc.
3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.

b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
d. Sleeve Materials:

1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

5. Pressure Transition Couplings:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
2) Dresser, Inc.
3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
4) Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The)
5) JCM Industries, Inc.
6) Romac Industries, Inc.
7) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
8) Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.

b. Standard: AWWA C219.
c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
4) Jomar International Ltd.
5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
2) Central Plastics Company.
3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

b. Description:

1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.

3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

a. M Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2) Calpico, Inc.
3) Central Plastics Company.
4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

b. Description:

1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.

5. Dielectric Nipples:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Elster Perfection.
2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
5) Victaulic Company.

b. Description:

1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.7 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

B. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.

C. Form: Sheet or tube.

D. Color: Black or natural.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

K. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

L. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

M. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.

N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.

P. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

Q. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.

1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

R. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

S. Install force mains at elevations indicated.

T. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

Y. Install engineered siphonic drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.

## 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.

C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828 procedure. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

G. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

## 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
4. In Underground Force-Main Piping:

    a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

## 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.

1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.

D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

## 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.

3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
6. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

H. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

I. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.

1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

D. Connect force-main piping to the following:

1. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main.
2. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.

E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

## 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

## 3.10 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

## 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

C. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

D. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be the following:

1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; calking materials; and calked joints.
2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

E. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be the following:

1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; calking materials; and calked joints.
2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

F. Aboveground storm drainage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.

G. Aboveground storm drainage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
2. Fitting-type transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

H. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Soft copper tube; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
3. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

I. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:

1. Hard copper tube; wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
3. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 221413

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof drains.
2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Backwater valves.
5. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
6. Flashing materials.
7. Trench drains.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains RD-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. Marathon Roofing Products.

c. MIFAB, Inc.
d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
e. Tyler Pipe.
f. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Extension Collars: Not required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
12. Dome Material: Cast iron.
13. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
15. Water Dam: Not required.

B. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains OD-1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. Marathon Roofing Products.
c. MIFAB, Inc.
d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
e. Tyler Pipe.
f. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Extension Collars: Not required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
12. Dome Material: Cast iron.
13. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
15. Water Dam: 2 inches high.

C. Metal, Gutter Roof Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Josam Company.
   b. Marathon Roofing Products.
   c. MIFAB, Inc.
   d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
   e. Tyler Pipe.
   f. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for gutter roof drains.
3. Body Material: Metal.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 6-inch diameter.
5. Outlet: Bottom.
6. Dome Material: Bronze.
7. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Downspout Boots DS-2:

1. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
2. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 outlet.

B. Conductor Nozzles DS-1:

1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

## 2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Josam Company.
   b. Oatey.
   c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.

e. Tyler Pipe.
f. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products Operation.
h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for adjustable housing cleanouts.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with set-screws or other device.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top-Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

B. Test Tees:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
d. Tyler Pipe.
e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug: Countersunk, brass.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

C. Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.

d. Tyler Pipe.
e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Square, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

## 2.4 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. MIFAB, Inc.
c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
d. Tyler Pipe.
e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
3. Size: Same as connected piping.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
6. End Connections: Hub and spigot.
7. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed.
8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Josam Company.
b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
3. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

## 2.5 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. ProSet Systems Inc.

2. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
3. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
4. Size: Same as connected pipe.
5. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
6. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
7. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M,12 oz./sq. ft..

B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

2.7 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Zurn.
   b. NDS.
2. TD-1, 6-1/4” Wide Reveal Trench Drain System
   a. 4” throat.
   b. HDPE.
   c. DGC grate.
   d. Ductile iron slotted grade, ASTM A536-84, Grade 80-55-06.
   e. Class C load classification.
3. TD-2, Elevator Trench Drain System with Center Outlet
   a. 9-3/8” throat.
   b. #12 ga. stainless steel channel, ASTM A-240
   c. Stainless steel wire grate.
   d. Class A load classification.
   e. SFFC Code, Section 511.1, 100 gpm.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.

C. Install downspout boots at grade with top 12 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.

D. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.

E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.

3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

H. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.

I. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.

J. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.

K. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.

L. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.

M. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.

N. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.

O. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

## 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

## 3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

# SECTION 221429 - SUMP PUMPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Submersible sump pumps.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMERSIBLE SUMP PUMPS (SP)

A. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Sump Pumps:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
b. Goulds Water Technology; a Xylem brand.
c. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
d. Little Giant Pump Co.
e. Weil Pump Company, Inc.
f. Weinman; a Crane Pumps & Systems brand.

2. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sump-pump unit.

3. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sump pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
4. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with strainer inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
5. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron, design for clear wastewater handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
6. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
7. Seal: Mechanical.
8. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.

a. Motor Housing Fluid: Oil.

9. Controls:

a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.
b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
c. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches.
d. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.

2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

B. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and filling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump pump installation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of sump pumps.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust control set points.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION 221429

# SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Water Heaters: Product Data for water heater compliance with ASHRAE's "Advanced Energy Design Guides."

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.

B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
b. Faulty operation of controls.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1) Storage Tank: Ten years.
2) Controls and Other Components: Five years.

b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
   b. GE.
   c. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
   d. Stiebel.

2. Standard: UL 1453.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.

   a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.

      1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

   b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
   c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.

4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:

   a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
   b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
   c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
   d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
   e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
   f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
   g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
   h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
    b. AMTROL, Inc.
    c. State Industries.
    d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.

2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:

    a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

4. Capacity and Characteristics:

    a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    b. Capacity Acceptable: 7 gal. (26.5 L) minimum.
    c. Air Precharge Pressure: based on site conditions .

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20) with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

D. Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASSE 1003 for water. Set at 25-psig- (172.5-kPa-) maximum outlet pressure unless otherwise indicated.

E. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

F. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

G. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

H. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.

B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

C. Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

G. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

H. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of residential, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

I. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple electric, domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each electric, domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each electric, domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

J. Install pressure-reducing valve with integral bypass relief valve in electric, domestic-water booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping. Set pressure-reducing valve for outlet pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa). Comply with requirements for

pressure-reducing valves and water hammer arresters specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

K. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

L. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.

M. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223300

# SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Flushometer valves.
3. Toilet seats.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED WE Submittals:

1. Product Data: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than six of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets WC-1: Wall mounted, top spud.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Toto as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Standard America.
    b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    c. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    d. Kohler Co.
    e. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    f. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
    g. TOTO USA, INC.
    h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Bowl:

    a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    b. Material: Vitreous china.
    c. Type: Siphon jet.
    d. Style: Flushometer valve.
    e. Height: Standard.
    f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
    g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
    h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.

3. Flushometer Valve: FV-1.
4. Toilet Seat: TS-1.
5. Support:

    a. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
    b. Description: Waste-fitting assembly as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.
    c. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Standard.

B. Water Closets WC-2: Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Toto as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
c. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
d. Kohler Co.
e. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
f. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
g. TOTO USA, INC.
h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Bowl:

a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
b. Material: Vitreous china.
c. Type: Siphon jet.
d. Style: Flushometer valve.
e. Height: Standard.
f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.

3. Flushometer Valve: FV-1.
4. Toilet Seat: TS-1.
5. Support:

a. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
b. Description: Waste-fitting assembly as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.
c. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## 2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Solenoid-Actuator, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves FV-1:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Toto as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Coyne & Delany Co.
b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
c. Sloan Valve Company.
d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Concealed.

8. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
9. Trip Mechanism: Hard-wired electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
10. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

## 2.3 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats TS-1:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Church 9500SSC or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Standard America.
    b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
    c. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
    d. Church Seats.
    e. Jones Stephens Corp.; Comfort Seat Brand.
    f. Kohler Co.
    g. Olsonite Seat Co.
    h. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.
    i. Sperzel of Lexington.
    j. TOTO USA, INC.
    k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic.
4. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
7. Hinge Material: Non-corroding metal.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.
9. Color: White.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

# SECTION 224213.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Urinals.
2. Flushometer valves.

B. Related Requirements:

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED WE Submittals:

1. Product Data: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than six of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

A. Urinals U-1: Wall hung, back outlet, washout.
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Toto or comparable product by one of the following:

      a. American Standard America.
      b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
      c. Capizzi.
      d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
      e. Duravit USA, Inc.
      f. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
      g. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
      h. Kohler Co.
      i. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
      j. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
      k. TOTO USA, INC.
      l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

   2. Fixture:

      a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
      b. Material: Vitreous china.
      c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
      d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
      e. Water Consumption: Water saving.
      f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.
      g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
      h. Color: White.

   3. Flushometer Valve: FV-2.
   4. Waste Fitting:

      a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
      b. Size: NPS 2.

   5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

B. Urinals U-2: Wall hung, back outlet, washout, accessible.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Toto or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. American Standard America.
    b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
    c. Capizzi.
    d. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
    e. Duravit USA, Inc.
    f. Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.; ProFlo Brand.
    g. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    h. Kohler Co.
    i. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    j. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
    k. TOTO USA, INC.
    l. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Fixture:

    a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    b. Material: Vitreous china.
    c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
    d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
    e. Water Consumption: Water saving.
    f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.
    g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
    h. Color: White.

3. Flushometer Valve: FV-2.
4. Waste Fitting:

    a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
    b. Size: NPS 2.

5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

## 2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Solenoid-Actuator, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves FV-2:
    1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sloan (Recessed) or comparable product by one of the following:

        a. Coyne & Delany Co.
        b. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
        c. Sloan Valve Company.
        d. Toto.
        e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Recessed.
8. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
9. Trip Mechanism: Hard-wired electronic sensor complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
10. Consumption: 0.125 gal. per flush.
11. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
12. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
4. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED WE Submittals:

1. Product Data: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory L-2: Vitreous china, wall mounted.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Duravit as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
d. Duravit.
e. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
f. Kohler Co.
g. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
h. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
b. Type: For wall hanging.
c. Faucet-Hole Punching: Single center hole.
d. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
e. Color: White.

3. Faucet:
a. L-2: LF-1.
4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier Include rectangular, steel uprights.

## 2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory L-1: Vitreous china, undercounter mounted.
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kohler as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

      a. American Standard America.
      b. Briggs Plumbing Products, Inc.
      c. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
      d. Duravit.
      e. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
      f. Kohler Co.
      g. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
      h. Peerless Pottery Sales, Inc.
      i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
   2. Fixture:

      a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
      b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
      c. Nominal Size: Rectangular.
      d. Faucet-Hole Punching: No holes.
      e. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
      f. Color: White.
      g. Mounting Material: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.

   3. Faucet: L-1: LF-1

## 2.3 SOLID-BRASS, FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets LF-1: Metering-Type, Solar-Powered
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kohler as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

      a. American Standard America.
      b. Bradley Corporation.
      c. Chicago Faucets.
      d. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
      e. Grohe America, Inc.
      f. Hydrotek International, Inc.
      g. Kohler Co.
      h. Moen Incorporated.
      i. Sloan Valve Company.
      j. Speakman Company.
      k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
      l. TOTO USA, INC.

m. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
3. Provide ASSE 1070-compliant thermostatic mixing valve for hot water line.
4. Body Type: single hole.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
9. Spout: Rigid type.
10. Spout Outlet: Spray.
11. Drain: Not part of faucet.

C. Lavatory Faucets LF-2: Manual-Type, Single-Lever
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Grohe as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

a. American Standard America.
b. Bradley Corporation.
c. Chicago Faucets.
d. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
e. Grohe America, Inc.
f. Hydrotek International, Inc.
g. Kohler Co.
h. Moen Incorporated.
i. Sloan Valve Company.
j. Speakman Company.
k. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
l. TOTO USA, INC.
m. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
3. Provide ASSE 1070-compliant thermostatic mixing valve for hot water line.
4. Body Type: single hole.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
8. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
9. Spout: Rigid type.
10. Spout Outlet: Spray.
11. Drain: Not part of faucet.

## 2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Loose key.

F. Risers:

1. NPS 3/8.
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

## 2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.

B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.13

# SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service basins.
2. Utility sinks.
3. Sink faucets.
4. Supply fittings.
5. Waste fittings.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED WE Submittals:

1. Product Data: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins MB-1: Terrazzo, floor mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Acorn Engineering Company; a Division of Morris Group International.
b. Fiat.
c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
d. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
b. Shape: Square.
c. Nominal Size: 32 by 32 inches.
d. Height: 12 inches with dropped front.
e. Tiling Flange: Not required.
f. Rim Guard: On all top surfaces.
g. Color: Not applicable.
h. Drain: Grid with NPS 2 outlet.

3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
4. Faucet: SF-1.

2.2 UTILITY SINKS

A. Utility Sinks (SK-1, SK-2, SK-3): Stainless steel, counter mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Advance Tabco.

b. Eagle Group.
c. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
d. Griffin Products, Inc.
e. Just Manufacturing.

2. Fixture:

a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
b. Type: Ledge back.
c. Number of Compartments: See schedule.
d. Overall Dimensions: See schedule.
e. Compartment:

1) Dimensions: See scheduled model.
2) Drain: See scheduled model.
3) Drain Location: Centered in compartment.

3. Faucet(s): SF-2 with SK-1, SF-3 with SK-2, SF-4 with SK-3.

a. Number Required: One.
b. Mounting: On ledge.

4. Supply Fittings:

a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.

1) Operation: Loose key.
2) Risers: NPS 1/2, chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe.

5. Waste Fittings:

a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
b. Trap(s):

1) Size: NPS 1-1/2.
2) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

6. Mounting: On counter with sealant.

## 2.3 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

A. Sink Faucets: Manual type SF-1, two-lever-handle mixing valve.

1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets.
   a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Chicago Faucets as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

      1) American Standard America.
      2) Bradley Corporation.
      3) Chicago Faucets.
      4) Delta Faucet Company.
      5) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
      6) GROHE America, Inc.
      7) Just Manufacturing.
      8) Kohler Co.
      9) Moen Incorporated.
      10) Speakman Company.
      11) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
      12) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Centerset.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Wrist blade, 4 inches.
9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Swivel gooseneck.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

B. Sink Faucets SF-2, SF-3, SF-4: Manual type, single-control valve.

1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets.

   a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide as scheduled or comparable product by one of the following:

      1) American Standard America.
      2) Bradley Corporation.
      3) Chicago Faucets.
      4) Delta Faucet Company.
      5) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
      6) GROHE America, Inc.
      7) Just Manufacturing.
      8) Kohler Co.
      9) Moen Incorporated.
      10) Speakman Company.
      11) T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.

12) Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
4. Body Type: Single hole.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.75 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Deck.
10. Spout Type: Swing, round tubular.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
12. See schedule for model.

## 2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Loose key.

F. Risers:

1. NPS 3/8
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

## 2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.
2. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

2.6 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.

B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.

E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.

1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

# SECTION 224223 - COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

## 1.1 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Shower Faucets:
   1. Refer to the Plumbing Fixture Schedule on the plans for details.

C. Faucet:

   1. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
   2. EPA WaterSense: Required.
   3. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
   4. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
   5. Refer to the Plumbing Fixture Schedule on the plans for details.

D. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).

E. Shower Head:

      a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
      b. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
      c. Refer to the Plumbing Fixture Schedule on the plans for details.

## 1.2 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

# PART 2 - EXECUTION

## 2.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 2.2 INSTALLATION

A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.

1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with shower. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping.'
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.

E. Set shower receptors in leveling bed of cement grout.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheons requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between showers and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 2.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 2.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

## 2.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of showers and basins, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean showers, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of showers for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224223

# SECTION 224713 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes drinking fountains and related components.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountain.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED WE Submittals:
1. Product Data: Documentation indicating flow and water consumption requirements.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains to include in maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

A. Drinking Fountains: Stainless steel, wall mounted.

1. Stainless-Steel Drinking Fountains:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
2) Filtrine Manufacturing Company.
3) Halsey Taylor.

4) Haws Corporation.
5) Murdock Manufacturing; A Division of Morris Group International.
6) Oasis International.
7) Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
8) Tri Palm International, LLC.
9) Willoughby Industries.

2. Standards:

a. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
b. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

3. Type Receptor: With back.
4. Receptor Shape: Round.
5. Bubblers: See plans for quantity, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
6. Maximum water flow: 0.15 gpm.
7. Control: Push bar.
8. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
9. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
10. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 chrome-plated brass P-trap and waste.
11. Support: Type II water cooler carrier.
12. Drinking Fountain Mounting Height: Standard.
13. DF-1: Bottle Filling Station, Bi-Level, 8 GPH chilling capacity.
14. DF-2: Bottle Filling Station, Single-Level, 8 GPH chilling capacity.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

C. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they

can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping".

D. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

## 3.5 CLEANING

A. After installing fixtures, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224713

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

### 1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

B. Refer to 262923 Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers for VFCs (also known as VFDs) for HVAC equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   1. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

   1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
   2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

   1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
   2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
   3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
   4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
2. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
3. Pipe loops and swing connections.
4. Alignment guides and anchors.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Metal, Expansion-Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adsco Manufacturing LLC.
b. Flex Pression Ltd.
c. Flex-Weld, Inc.
d. Flexicraft Industries.
e. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
f. Mason Industries, Inc.
g. Metraflex Company (The).
h. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
i. Unaflex.
j. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
3. Configuration for Copper Tubing: Two-ply, phosphor-bronze bellows with copper pipe ends.

a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded.

4. Configuration for Steel Piping: Two-ply, stainless-steel bellows; steel-pipe end connections; and carbon-steel shroud.

a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Weld.

B. Rubber, Expansion-Compensator Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
    b. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    c. Flexicraft Industries.
    d. General Rubber Corporation.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Proco Products, Inc.
    g. Tozen Corporation.
    h. Unaflex.
    i. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Material: Twin reinforced-rubber spheres with external restraining cables.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 170 deg F unless otherwise indicated.
4. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

C. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Flex Pression Ltd.
    b. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    c. Flexicraft Industries.
    d. Mason Industries, Inc.
    e. Metraflex Company (The).
    f. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.

    a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.

    a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with weld end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel fittings with weld end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

9. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with weld end connections.

a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

D. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adsco Manufacturing LLC.
b. American BOA, Inc.
c. Badger Industries, Inc.
d. Expansion Joint Systems, Inc.
e. Flex Pression Ltd.
f. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
g. Flex-Weld, Inc.
h. Flexicraft Industries.
i. Flo Fab inc.
j. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
k. Mason Industries, Inc.
l. Metraflex Company (The).
m. Proco Products, Inc.
n. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
o. Tozen Corporation.
p. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
q. Unaflex.
r. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
s. Universal Metal Hose.
t. WahlcoMetroflex.

2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
5. Configuration: Single joint with base and double joint with base class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.

    a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
    b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
    c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Multi-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.

    a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
    b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

E. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
    b. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    c. Flex-Weld, Inc.
    d. Flexicraft Industries.
    e. Garlock Sealing Technologies.
    f. General Rubber Corporation.
    g. Mason Industries, Inc; Mercer Rubber Co.
    h. Metraflex Company (The).
    i. Proco Products, Inc.
    j. Red Valve Company, Inc.
    k. Tozen Corporation.
    l. Unaflex.
    m. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
3. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-NMEJ-703.
4. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches with external control rods.
5. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres with external control rods.
6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F .
7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F .
8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F .
9. Material for Fluids Containing Acids, Alkalies, or Chemicals: BR .
10. Material for Fluids Containing Gas, Hydrocarbons, or Oil: Buna-N .
11. Material for Water: BR .
12. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Adsco Manufacturing LLC.
   b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
   c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
   d. Flex-Weld, Inc.
   e. Flexicraft Industries.
   f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
   g. Mason Industries, Inc.
   h. Metraflex Company (The).
   i. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
   j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
   k. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.

2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

   a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
   b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
   c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.

   a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
   b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
   c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.

B. Install packed-type expansion joints with packing suitable for fluid service.

C. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."

D. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.

E. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

## 3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.

B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.

C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

## 3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.

B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.

C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.

D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.

E. Anchor Attachments:

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.

F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Presealed Systems.

B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.

1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

## 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

## 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Galvanized-steel wall sleeves Sleeve-seal fittings.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Stack-sleeve fittings.

5. Interior Partitions:

a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type .
d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:

a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
d.
e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230518

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.
5. Test plugs.
6. Test-plug kits.
7. Sight flow indicators.
8. Ultrasonic, thermal-energy meters.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Flo Fab Inc.
    b. Miljoco Corporation.
    c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    d. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    e. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    f. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    g. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum ; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

## 2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.

11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.
    c. Ernst Flow Industries.
    d. Flo Fab Inc.
    e. Marsh Bellofram.
    f. Miljoco Corporation.
    g. Noshok.
    h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    k. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    o. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 6-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi .
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass .
10. Ring: Brass .
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.

c. Flo Fab Inc.
d. Marsh Bellofram.
e. Miljoco Corporation.
f. Noshok.
g. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
h. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
i. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
j. Trerice, H. O. Co.
k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
l. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
m. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic ; 6-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi .
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
b. Ashcroft Inc.
c. Ernst Flow Industries.
d. Flo Fab Inc.
e. Marsh Bellofram.
f. Miljoco Corporation.
g. Noshok.
h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
k. Trerice, H. O. Co.
l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
o. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch nominal diameter with front flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.

5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Ashcroft Inc.
    c. Miljoco Corporation.
    d. Noshok.
    e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    g. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    h. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    i. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    j. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    k. Winters Instruments - U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic ; 6-inch nominal diameter with front flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi .
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston -type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.6 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Miljoco Corporation.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.

C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flow Design, Inc.
2. Miljoco Corporation.
3. National Meter, Inc.
4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig .

F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.8 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Archon Industries, Inc.
2. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
3. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
4. Ernst Co., John C., Inc.
5. Ernst Flow Industries.
6. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
7. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
8. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.

B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.

D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig .

E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F .

F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

## 2.9 FLOW METERS AND THERMAL-ENERGY METERS

A. Ultrasonic, Thermal-Energy Meters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. EMCO Flow Systems; a division of Spirax Sarco, Inc.
   b. Flexim Fluxus F704, Basis of Design
   c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

2. Description: Meter with flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
3. Flow Sensor: Transit-time ultrasonic type with transmitter.
4. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type or strap-on transducer.

5. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter.

    a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
    b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.

6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
7. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.

J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).

K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.

L. Install test plugs in piping tees.

M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.

N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.

P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.

Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.

R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.

T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.

U. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.

V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.
4. Where lines enter and exit mechanical rooms.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.

C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

## 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be one of the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

C. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be one of the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

E. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

F. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be one of the following:
   1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

G. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

## 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.

C. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 150 deg F.

## 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:

   1. Sealed, direct -mounted, metal case.

B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be one of the following:

   1. Sealed, direct -mounted, metal case.

C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:

   1. Sealed, direct -mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Ultrasonic type.

B. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Ultrasonic type.

3.9 THERMAL-ENERGY METER SCHEDULE

A. Thermal-Energy Meters for Chilled-Water Piping: Ultrasonic type, integrated to building automation system.

B. Thermal-Energy Meters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Ultrasonic type, integrated to building automation system.

END OF SECTION 230519

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron ball valves.
4. High-performance butterfly valves.
5. Bronze swing check valves.
6. Iron swing check valves.
7. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
8. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
9. Iron, center-guided check valves.
10. Iron, plate-type check valves.
11. Bronze gate valves.
12. Iron gate valves.
13. Bronze globe valves.
14. Iron globe valves.
15. Chainwheels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Jomar International, LTD.
b. Kitz Corporation.
c. Red-White Valve Corporation.
d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.

c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Forged brass.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Brass.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. DynaQuip Controls.
c. Hammond Valve.
d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
e. NIBCO INC.
f. Red-White Valve Corporation.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Bronze.
i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
j. Port: Full.

## 2.4 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
c. Kitz Corporation.
d. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.

e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Split body.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Ends: Flanged.
f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel.
i. Port: Full.

## 2.5 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
b. Bray Controls; a division of Bray International.
c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corp.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Flowseal.
e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
f. DeZurik Water Controls.
g. Hammond Valve.
h. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
j. NIBCO INC.
k. Process Development & Control, Inc.
l. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
m. Xomox Corporation.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
g. Disc: Carbon steel.
h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Hammond Valve.
f. Kitz Corporation.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.

d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

## 2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Legend Valve.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.

c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Composition.
h. Seat Ring: Bronze.
i. Disc Holder: Bronze.
j. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
k. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
f. NIBCO INC.
g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.

c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

## 2.9 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
d. Victaulic Company.

2. Description:

a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
c. Seal: EPDM.
d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

## 2.10 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
c. Crispin Valve.
d. DFT Inc.
e. Flo Fab Inc.
f. GA Industries, Inc.
g. Hammond Valve.
h. Metraflex, Inc.
i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
j. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
k. NIBCO INC.
l. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International.
m. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.

n. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
o. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: Bronze.

## 2.11 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Flo Fab Inc.
b. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: API 594.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
f. Seat: EPDM.

## 2.12 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Powell Valves.
i. Red-White Valve Corporation.

j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
d. Ends: Flanged.
e. Trim: Bronze.
f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.13 CHAINWHEELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
2. Roto Hammer Industries.
3. Trumbull Industries.

B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
2. Attachment: For connection to ball butterfly valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel , of size required to fit sprocket rim.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

## 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball butterfly gate globe and plug valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

## 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Throttling Service except Steam: Ball or butterfly valves.
4. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe valves.
5. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

    a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping except Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

## 3.5 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Ball Valves: Three piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
2. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 125.
2. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
6. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, compact-wafer, resilient seat.
7. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125; single plate; resilient seat.

## 3.6 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Ball Valves: Three piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
2. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10: Class 125.
2. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150, single flange.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Class 125, lever and spring.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
6. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, compact-wafer, seat.
7. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125; single plate; resilient seat.

END OF SECTION 230523

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Fiberglass strut systems.
4. Pipe stands.
5. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel .

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel .

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel .

## 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel .

B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

   a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
   b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
   c. Flex-Strut Inc.
   d. GS Metals Corp.
   e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
   f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
   g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel .
7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc .

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

   a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
   b. Empire Industries, Inc.
   c. ERICO International Corporation.
   d. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
   e. NIBCO INC.
   f. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
   g. PHS Industries, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel .
7. Coating: Zinc Paint .

## 2.5 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
2. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
4. SEASAFE, INC.; a Gibraltar Industries Company.

B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.

1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass or other plastic channel with inturned lips.
2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

## 2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Clement Support Services.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
5. PHS Industries, Inc.
6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

C. Screw Anchors: Screw anchors, for use in existing brick construction, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used

D. Injectable Adhesive Anchors: Injectable two-component hybrid adhesive mortar with Hilti HAS-E steel all-threaded rods with appropriate size screen tube for use in existing brick construction. Pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used. Overhead anchors must be installed using the Hilti Profi System.

## 2.8 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Stainless steel.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.

F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

G. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Install screw anchors or adhesive anchors in masonry construction. Use operators that are licensed by the tool manufacturer and have had required training to install anchors. Install fasteners according to manufacturer’s operating manual.

H. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

P. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

    a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

## 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches .

## 3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

## 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.

17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
   a. Provide attachment to bottom of existing wrought iron beam flange at each perpendicular intersection of the beams and pipes.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.

7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.

8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

    a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230533 - HEAT TRACING FOR HVAC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes heat tracing for HVAC piping with the following electric heating cables:
   1. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 220533 "Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

   1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
   2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.

   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
   2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. BriskHeat.
2. Chromalox.
3. Delta-Therm Corporation.
4. Easy Heat; a division of EGS Electrical Group LLC.
5. Pyrotenax; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
6. Raychem; a brand of Tyco Thermal Controls LLC.
7. Thermon Americas Inc.
8. Trasor Corp.

B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 AWG, tinned , stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.

E. Cable Cover: Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.

F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.

G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.

H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 CONTROLS

A. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F.

B. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.

C. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.

D. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Warning Labels: Refer to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.

1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install electric heating cable across expansion joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.

B. Install electric heating cable to the following systems:
1. Exposed chilled water piping, including evaporator barrel.

C. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.

D. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.

E. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

F. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.

G. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.

D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.

E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage during construction.

B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 230533

# SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Resilient pipe guides.
4. Elastomeric hangers.
5. Spring hangers.
6. Vibration isolation equipment bases.
7. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-spring mounts and restrained-air-spring mounts to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.

4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.

    a. Surface Pattern: Ribbed pattern.
    b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

    a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    b. California Dynamics Corporation.
    c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    g. Vibration Isolation.
    h. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Mounting Plates:

    a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
    b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.

3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.3 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psigon isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.4 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.5 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
e. Mason Industries, Inc.
f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.6 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. California Dynamics Corporation.
c. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
d. Mason Industries, Inc.
e. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
f. Vibration Isolation.
g. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.7 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. California Dynamics Corporation.
2. Kinetics Noise Control.
3. Mason Industries, Inc.
4. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
5. Vibration Isolation.
6. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.

    a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.

    a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

D. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated or field-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.

a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

## 3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

## 3.4 SCHEDULE

| Equipment | Location | Design Deflection | Isolator |
|---|---|---|---|
| Exhaust Fans | Roof | 1” | |
| | Inline | 2” | Spring and neoprene in series isolator hangers |
| Pumps | Mech | 1” | Spring isolators |
| Air Handlers | Mech | Manufacturer-supplied internal isolation 0.11” – external isolation | Spring isolators – internal – supplied by manufacturer Elastomeric pads – external |
| Condensing Units | Grade | 2” | combination neoprene and steel spring vibration isolators |
| Fan Coil Units | Multiple levels | 0.75” | Spring and neoprene in series isolator hangers |

END OF SECTION 230548.13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White .
3. Background Color: Blue .
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: White.

C. Background Color: Red.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: White.

C. Background Color: Blue.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.5 STENCILS

A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.

1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.7 WARNING TAGS

A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

## 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting"

B. Locate pipe labels, including flow direction arrows, where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
8. Include pipe size label for all piping over 4” diameter.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Chilled-Water Piping:

    a. Background Color: Blue.
    b. Letter Color: White.

2. Condenser-Water Piping:

    a. Background Color: Blue.
    b. Letter Color: White.

3. Heating Water Piping:

    a. Background Color: Yellow.
    b. Letter Color: Blue.

4. Refrigerant Piping:

    a. Background Color: Blue.
    b. Letter Color: White.

D. Pipe Striping
    1. Plastic tape (3M Scotch Brand No. 471 vinyl tape, 5 mil thickness or equivalent) shall be applied in ¾" wide bands. The space between stripes shall be equal to the width of the stripes. Stripes shall be applied according to the following schedule:
        a. Pump condensate return: 3 black
        b. Hot water supply: 1 blue
        c. Hot water return: 2 blue
        d. Chilled water supply: 1 white
        e. Chilled water return: 2 white

## 3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

    1. Blue : For cold-air supply ducts.
    2. Yellow : For hot-air supply ducts.
    3. Green : For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
    4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.

B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

## 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering

hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

a. Chilled Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
b. Condenser Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
c. Refrigerant: 1-1/2 inches, square.
d. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
e. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, square.

2. Valve-Tag Color:

a. Chilled Water: Natural.
b. Condenser Water: Natural.
c. Refrigerant: Natural.
d. Hot Water: Natural.
e. Gas: Natural.

3. Letter Color:

a. Chilled Water: Black.
b. Condenser Water: Black.
c. Refrigerant: Black.
d. Hot Water: Black.
e. Gas: Black.

## 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:

a. Constant-volume air systems.
b. Variable-air-volume systems.

2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:

a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Air-Balance Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
2. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. Certified TAB reports.

E. Sample report forms.

F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC NEBB or TABB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.

B. TAB Conference: Meet with Architect Owner Construction Manager Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Agenda Items:

a. The Contract Documents examination report.
b. The TAB plan.
c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.

C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Architect Owner Construction Manager Commissioning Authority.

E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures for the following systems:
   1. Chilled water plant
   2. Boiler plant
   3. AHU-1
   4. Variable refrigerant flow system, including packaged ERV
   5. Radiant panel cooling and heating system
   6. Fans
   7. VAV boxes with and without reheat coils

B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:

   1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
   2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
   3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
   4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
   5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
   6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
   7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
   8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

## 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.

   1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

   1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
   2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
   3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

## 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

## 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:

a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.

a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.

4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
6. Obtain approval from Architect Commissioning Authority for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.

a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

## 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.

B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

    a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.

6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.

    a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
8. Record final fan-performance data.

## 3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:

1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

## 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:

1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

    a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Architect Commissioning Authority and comply with requirements in Section 232123 "Hydronic Pumps."

2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.

    a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.

3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.

4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.

C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.

D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.

E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.

1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.

F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.

G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:

1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.

I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.

J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

## 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

## 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance the primary circuit flow first and then balance the secondary circuits.

## 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

A. Measure water flow through all circuits.

B. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.

C. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.

D. Measure inlet steam pressure.

E. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

## 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Efficiency rating.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

## 3.13 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:

1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

## 3.14 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:

1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
3. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
4. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
6. Measure cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup water system.
8. Measure flow through bypass.

## 3.15 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record compressor data.

## 3.16 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

## 3.17 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.
7. Air pressure drop.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.

6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Air pressure drop.
4. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

## 3.18 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.

2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

## 3.19 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent .
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent .
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

## 3.20 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

## 3.21 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.

5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Unit arrangement and class.
    g. Discharge arrangement.
    h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and rpm.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
    b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    c. Fan rpm.
    d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    j. Return airflow in cfm.
    k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    l. Return-air damper position.
    m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

    a. System identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Coil type.
    d. Number of rows.
    e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    f. Make and model number.

g. Face area in sq. ft..
h. Tube size in NPS.
i. Tube and fin materials.
j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Average face velocity in fpm.
c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
h. Water flow rate in gpm.
i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Fuel type in input data.
g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
h. Ignition type.
i. Burner-control types.
j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
d. Air temperature differential in deg F.

e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
j. Manifold pressure in psig.
k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
m. Motor voltage at each connection.
n. Motor amperage for each phase.
o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btu/h.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Air flow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Heat output in Btu/h.
b. Air flow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

a. System and air-handling-unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft..
g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Apparatus used for test.
d. Area served.
e. Make.
f. Number from system diagram.
g. Type and model number.
h. Size.

i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Air velocity in fpm.
c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
f. Final velocity in fpm.
g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
b. Location and zone.
c. Room or riser served.
d. Coil make and size.
e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Air flow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model number and serial number.
f. Water flow rate in gpm.
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Impeller diameter in inches.
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.

n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

## 3.22 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:

a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request

that a final inspection be made by Architect Owner Construction Manager Commissioning Authority.

2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect Owner Construction Manager Commissioning Authority.
3. Architect Owner Construction Manager Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.23 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

# SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Product Data: For coatings, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
5. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
6. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the

location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.

1. Ductwork Mockups:

    a. One 10-foot section each of rectangular and round straight duct.
    b. One rectangular branch takeoff and one round branch takeoff from a rectangular duct. One round tee fitting.
    c. Four support hangers for round and rectangular ductwork.

2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet, K-Flex Gray Duct Liner, and K-FLEX LS.

G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
    c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
    f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
    b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
    c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
    d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
    e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 1 -hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.

B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 1 -hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
    b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
    c. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
    d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
    e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.

f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
c. .

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.

4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
   b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
   c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59..

## 2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate..

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing .
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing .
b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
c. Compac Corporation; 120.
d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
2) GEMCO; CD.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
        2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
        4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
        2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

    b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
        2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

    b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
    d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

2. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
        2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.

    b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
        2) GEMCO; R-150.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
        4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

    b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

4. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) GEMCO.
        2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel .

    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        a. C & F Wire.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

## 3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping", firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

## 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

## 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.9 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099100.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

    a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. All insulation level shall meet the requirements of the 2015 IECC and ASHRAE 90.1-2013.

B. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in *unconditioned space (shafts, MERs)*.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in *unconditioned space (shafts, MERs)*.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

C. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.

2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

## 3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

I. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

J. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

K. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

L. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

M. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.

N. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.

O. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

P. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inches thick.

Q. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

R. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

S. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

T. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

U. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

V. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

W. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inch thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

X. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

## 3.13 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
1. PVC, 30 mils, off-white.

END OF SECTION 230713

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230716 - HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:

1. Chillers.
2. Chilled-water pumps.
3. Heating, hot-water pumps.
4. Expansion/compression/buffer tanks.
5. Air separators.
6. Piping system filtration unit housings.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Calcium Silicate:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.

2. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.

G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.

2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet and K-FLEX LS.

I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket . Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

J. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); MinWool-1200 Flexible Batt.
    b. Johns Manville; HTB 26 Spin-Glas.
    c. Roxul Inc.; Roxul RW.

K. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. Provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corp.; CertaPro Commercial Board.
    b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
    c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.

d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

L. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); MinWool-1200 Industrial Board.
b. Rock Wool; Delta Board.
c. Roxul Inc.; RHT and RockBoard.
d. Thermafiber, Inc.; Thermafiber Industrial Felt.

M. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ . Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

N. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
    b. - Marathon Industries; 290.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
    d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
    e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H .B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.

b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

2. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-70.
b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
6. Color: White or gray.
7. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
b. - Marathon Industries; 405.

c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering equipment.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for equipment.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing .
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.

e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing .
b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

F. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The), Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film.

G. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The), Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

H. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

## 2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.

d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
c. Compac Corporation; 120.
d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.

5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
2) GEMCO; CD.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
        2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
        4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
        2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

    b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
    c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel , fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
        2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

    b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
    d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers, Series.
2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.

b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel , fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
2) GEMCO; R-150.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1) GEMCO.
2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel .

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. C & F Wire.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:

    a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
    c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
    f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.

g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel , at least 0.050 inch 0.060 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

## 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Boiler Breechings:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.

2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

## 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. 33-1/2-inch- circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.

2. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

## 3.7 FINISHES

A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.9 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

C. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles, condenser bundles, suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles with one of the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

D. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:

   1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

E. Heating-hot-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Chilled-water expansion/compression/buffer tank insulation shall be out of the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

G. Chilled-water buffer tank insulation shall be out of the following:

   1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

H. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.

I. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

J. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

K. Piping system filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

## 3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Equipment, Concealed:

   1. None.

D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
   1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.

E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. None.

## 3.11 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Equipment, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.

E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

# SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors and outdoors.
2. Chilled-water and brine piping, indoors.
3. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
4. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.

1. Piping Mockups:

a. One 10-foot section of NPS 2 straight pipe.
b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.

c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
d. One NPS 2 or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 or larger valve.
e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
h. One pressure temperature tap.
i. One mechanical coupling.

2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Calcium Silicate:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.

2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.

2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.

6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket . Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

J. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.

d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
b. - Marathon Industries; 290.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
   b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
   e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
   b. - Marathon Industries; 405.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

    a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

## 2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; Zeston.

b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system in mechanical rooms. Color as selected by Architect for piping in office/collection areas in the basement.
4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing .
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing .
b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .

d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

G. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film.

H. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

I. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
b. Compac Corporation; 130.
c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
c. Compac Corporation; 120.
d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Tape.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F.

Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

    a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

## 3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

## 3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

## 3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

## 3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch- circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

## 3.10 FINISHES

A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

## 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

## 3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

## 3.13 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

B. Chilled Water and Brine, above 40 Deg F:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.

2. NPS 14 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.

C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and Below:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

2. NPS 14 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick.

D. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

E. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

## 3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Chilled-Water Supply and Return:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.

B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

## 3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:
1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils thick.

## 3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Exposed (Chilled Water, Refrigerant Piping):
1. Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch thick.

## 3.17 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 230719

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following HVAC systems, assemblies, and equipment:

1. Energy supply systems.
2. Heat generation systems.
3. Cooling generation systems.
4. Central-station air-handling systems.
5. Air, steam, and hydronic distribution systems.
6. Heating and cooling terminal and unitary equipment.
7. HVAC controls.
8. TAB verification.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.
2. For construction checklists, comply with requirements in various Division 23 Sections specifying HVAC systems, system components, equipment, and products.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

C. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

D. DDC: Direct digital controls.

E. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning.

F. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

G. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For BAS and HVAC Testing Technician.

B. Construction Checklists: Draft construction checklists will be created by CxA for Contractor review.

C. Construction Checklists: Material, installation, and performance test checklists for systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components to be part of the Cx process and according to requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

1. Instrumentation and control for HVAC, including the following:

a. Control systems equipment.
b. Control valves.
c. Control dampers.
d. Energy meters.
e. Flow instruments.
f. Gas instruments.
g. Level instruments.
h. Leak-detection instruments.
i. Moisture instruments.
j. Motion instruments.
k. Position instruments.
l. Pressure instruments.
m. Speed instruments.
n. Temperature instruments.
o. Vibration instruments.
p. Weather stations.
q. Sequence of operations.

2. Fuel piping, including the following:

a. Natural gas piping, fittings, and specialties.
b. Fuel-oil pumps and motors.
c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
d. Meters and gages.
e. General-duty and specialty valves.
f. Hangers and supports.
g. Heat tracing.
h. Vibration isolation.

3. Hydronic piping, including the following:

    a. Heating hot-water, chilled-water, and condenser-water piping, fittings, and specialties.
    b. Hydronic pumps and motors.
    c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    d. Meters and gages.
    e. General-duty and specialty valves.
    f. Hangers and supports.
    g. Heat tracing.
    h. Vibration isolation.

4. Refrigerant piping, including the following:

    a. Refrigerant piping, fittings, and specialties.
    b. Refrigerant charge.
    c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
    d. Meters and gages.
    e. General-duty and specialty valves.
    f. Hangers and supports.
    g. Vibration isolation.

5. Air distribution systems, including the following:

    a. Supply, return, and exhaust systems.
    b. Metal ducts, liners, and fittings.
    c. Hangers and supports.
    d. Vibration isolation.
    e. Flexible ducts and fittings.
    f. Air-duct accessories, including volume dampers, fire and smoke dampers, turning vanes, sound attenuators, and flexible connectors.
    g. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.

6. Air-handling equipment, including the following:

    a. Fans and motors.
    b. Indoor air-handling units with and without coils, dampers, and filters.
    c. Outdoor air-handling units with and without coils, dampers, and filters.
    d. Motors.
    e. Hangers and supports.
    f. Vibration isolation.

7. Air-filtration equipment, including mounting and support and for the following:

    a. Particulate air filters.
    b. Gas-phase air filters.
    c. Electronic air cleaners.

8. Computer-room air conditioners.

9. Boilers, including the following:

    a. Supports and restraints.
    b. Trim, accessories, and factory-installed controls.
    c. Breechings, chimneys, and stacks.
    d. Feedwater equipment.

10. Chillers, including the following:

    a. Supports and restraints.
    b. Trim, accessories, and factory-installed controls.
    c. Motors.

11. Cooling towers, including the following:

    a. Supports and restraints.
    b. Trim, accessories, and factory-installed controls.
    c. Fans, motors, controls, and accessories.

12. Mechanical insulation, including the following:

    a. Duct and plenum insulation.
    b. Fire-suppression, plumbing, and HVAC equipment insulation.
    c. Plumbing and HVAC piping insulation.

D. Test equipment and instrumentation list, identifying the following:

1. Equipment/instrument identification number.
2. Planned Cx application or use.
3. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
4. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
5. Equipment manufacturers' proprietary instrumentation and tools. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:

    a. Instrument or tool identification number.
    b. Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
    c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
    d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. BAS Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform BAS construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

1. Journey level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of BAS, HVAC, electrical concepts, and building operations.
2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
3. International Society of Automation (ISA)-Certified Control Systems Technician (CCST) Level I.

B. HVAC Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform HVAC construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in mechanical systems, air conditioning, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience in servicing mechanical systems in the HVAC industry. Generally, required knowledge includes HVAC systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of HVAC equipment, assemblies, and systems.
2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.

C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration:

1. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
2. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
3. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
4. Be recalibrated/repaired if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.

D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:

1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, shall comply with the following:

    a. Be calibrated by manufacturer with current calibration tags permanently affixed.
    b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
    c. HVAC proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for following HVAC systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components:

1. Energy supply systems, including the following:
   a. Central-plant hot-water supply.

2. Heat generation systems, including the following:

   a. Boilers.

3. Cooling generation systems, including the following:

   a. Water chillers.
   b. Direct-expansion refrigeration systems.

4. Central-station air-handling systems.
5. Air and hydronic distribution systems, including the following:

   a. Supply, return, outdoor-air, and exhaust-air distribution systems.
   b. Hydronic systems.

6. Heating and cooling terminal and unitary equipment, including the following:

   a. Unit ventilators.
   b. Unit heaters.
   c. Fan-coil units.
   d. Finned-tube radiation.
   e. Electric heating.
   f. Unitary heating and cooling equipment.
   g. Radiant heating panels.

7. Controls and instrumentation.
8. TAB verification.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.

B. Return draft construction checklist review comments within 10 days of receipt.

C. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

## 3.3 Cx TESTING PREPARATION

A. Certify that HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals.

B. Certify that HVAC instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C. Certify that TAB procedures have been completed and that TAB reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.

D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

## 3.4 Cx TEST CONDITIONS

A. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.

1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.

B. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC system, document the deficiency and report it to Architect. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

C. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.5 Cx TESTS COMMON TO HVAC SYSTEMS

A. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions, to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.

B. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.

C. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of, CxA.

D. Comply with construction checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Division 23 Sections specifying HVAC systems and equipment.

E. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to perform and document the following:

1. Construction checklist verification tests.
2. Construction checklist verification test demonstrations.
3. Cx tests.
4. Cx test demonstrations.

F. Heat Tracing in HVAC Systems:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for heat tracing specified in HVAC systems. Comply with requirements listed in Section 230533 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."
2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested:

    a. Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cables.
    b. Heater trace circuit controller.

3. Test Purpose:

    a. Evaluate response to ambient temperature below freeze-protection set point.
    b. Evaluate heating cable fault alarm.

4. Test Conditions:

    a. Subject temperature sensor to temperature approximately 3 deg F (2 deg C) above freeze-protection set point (initial set point 41 deg F (5 deg C)). Monitor sensed temperature with a calibration-grade thermometer. Gradually change set point or sensed temperature until freeze-protection circuit is energized.
    b. Subject temperature sensor to temperature approximately 3 deg F (2 deg C) below freeze-protection set point (initial set point 41 deg F (5 deg C)). Monitor sensed temperature with a calibration-grade thermometer. Gradually change set point or sensed temperature until freeze-protection circuit is de-energized.

c. Simulate an electrical fault on the heating cable.

5. Acceptance Criteria:

a. Freeze-protection circuit is energized at set-point temperature minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
b. Freeze-protection circuit is de-energized at set-point temperature plus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
c. Heater trace circuit controller initiates an alarm of cable fault. Alarm is correctly reported at the fire-alarm control panel.

## 3.6 TAB VERIFICATION

A. Prerequisites: Completion of "Examination" Article requirements and correction of deficiencies, as specified in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

B. Completion of "Preparation" Article requirements for preparation of a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures, and system-readiness checks and reports, as specified in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

C. Scope: HVAC air systems and hydronic piping systems.

D. Purpose: Differential flow relationships intended to maintain air pressurization differentials between the various areas of Project.

E. Conditions of the Test:

1. Cx Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: As specified in "Inspections" Article in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."
2. Systems operating in full heating mode with minimum outside-air volume.
3. Systems operating in full cooling mode with minimum outside-air volume.
4. For measurements at air-handling units with economizer controls; systems operating in economizer mode with 100 percent outside air.

F. Acceptance Criteria:

1. Under all conditions, rechecked measurements comply with "Inspections" Article in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."
2. Additionally, no rechecked measurement shall differ from measurements documented in the final report by more than two times the tolerances allowed.
3. Under all conditions, where the Contract Documents indicate a differential in airflow between supply and exhaust and/or return in a space, the differential relationship shall be maintained.

## 3.7 HEATING CONTROL SYSTEM Cx TESTS

A. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Control:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

    a. Startup of boilers.
    b. Startup of heating-water pump(s).
    c. TAB of heating-water flow and pressure.
    d. Input Device: Heating-water supply temperature; thermostat.
    e. Output Device: Control valve.
    f. Display the following at the operator's workstation:

        1) Heating-water supply temperature.
        2) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
        3) Control-valve position.

2. Scope: Heating-water system.
3. Purpose: Control of heating-water supply temperature at input device.
4. Conditions of the Test:

    a. Minimum heating-water flow.
    b. Midrange Heating-Water Flow: 50 to 60 percent of maximum.
    c. Maximum heating-water flow.

5. Acceptance Criteria: Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F (1.1 deg C) of set point.

B. Heating-Water Supply Temperature Reset:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

    a. Startup of boilers.
    b. Startup of heating-water pump(s).
    c. TAB of heating-water flow and pressure.
    d. Input Device: Heating-water supply temperature; thermostat.
    e. Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature; outdoor-air sensor.
    f. Output Device: Control valve.
    g. Display the following at the operator's workstation:

        1) Outdoor-air temperature.
        2) Heating-water supply temperature.
        3) Heating-water supply temperature set point.
        4) Control-valve position.

2. Scope: Heating-water system.
3. Purpose: Control of heating-water supply temperature at heating-water supply temperature input device in response to variable outdoor-air temperature input; outdoor-air sensor.
4. Conditions of the Test: Outdoor-air temperature input value may be overridden for this test.

a. Low Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature between minus 30 and 0 deg F (minus 34 and minus 18 deg C).
b. Midrange Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature between 30 and 45 deg F (minus 1 and plus 7 deg C).
c. High Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature above 65 deg F (18 deg C).

5. Acceptance Criteria: Heating-water supply temperature resets in straight-line relationship with outdoor-air temperature for the following reset schedule. Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within 2.0 deg F (1.1 deg C) of set point.

a. 120F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 0F.
b. 75F heating water when outdoor-air temperature is 65 deg F (18 deg C).
c. Under all conditions, heating-water supply temperature is within plus or minus 2.0 deg F (1.1 deg C) of set point.

C. Control Primary Circulating Pump(s):

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

a. Startup of heating-water pump(s).
b. Input Device: Outdoor-air temperature; outdoor-air sensor.
c. Output Device: Heating-water pump; DDC system command to starter relay.
d. Display the following at the operator's workstation:

1) Outdoor-air temperature.
2) Operating status of primary circulating pump(s).

2. Scope: Heating-water pump(s) and associated controls.
3. Purpose: On-off control of heating-water pump(s) in response to variable outdoor-air temperature input; outdoor-air sensor.
4. Conditions of the Test:

a. High Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature above 65 deg F (18 deg C).
b. Low Temperature: Outdoor-air temperature below 65 deg F (18 deg C).

5. Acceptance Criteria:

a. High Temperature: Pump(s) are off when outside-air temperature is above 65 deg F (18 deg C).
b. Low Temperature: Pump(s) are on when outside-air temperature is below 65 deg F (18 deg C).

## 3.8 CENTRAL REFRIGERATION SYSTEM Cx TESTS

A. Start and Stop Chilled-Water Pump(s):

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

a. Startup of chilled-water pump(s).
b. Startup of condenser-water pump(s).
c. Startup of cooling tower.
d. Input Device: Flow switch in condenser-water circuit.
e. Output Device: DDC system command to starter relay.
f. Display of the following at the operator's workstation:

1) Chilled-water flow indication.
2) Condenser-water flow indication.
3) Chilled-water pump(s) on-off status.
4) Chilled-water pump(s) on-off indication.

2. Scope: Chilled-water system, including chilled-water pump(s), associated controls, and condenser-water system controls.
3. Purpose:

a. Chilled-water pump(s) start.
b. Chilled-water pump(s) shutdown.

4. Conditions of the Test:

a. Verify Start: Start with chilled-water pump enable-input device in the "disable" state to prevent pump start. Place the enable-input device in the "enable" state.
b. Verify Shutdown: Start with the enable-input device in the "enable" state to allow the pump(s) to run. Then place the enable-input device in the "disable" state.

5. Acceptance Criteria:

a. Start: Chilled-water pump(s) start when, and only when, the enable-input device is in the "enable" state.
b. Shutdown: The enable-input device stops the chilled-water pump(s) when placed in the "disable" state.

B. VAV Terminal Air Units with Coils and Radiant Cooling and Heating Panel Zones:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

a. Occupancy Input Device: Occupancy sensor.
b. Occupancy Output Device: DDC system binary output.
c. Room Temperature Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
d. Room Temperature Output Device: Electronic damper actuators and control-valve operators.
e. Display the following at the operator's workstation:

1) Room/area served.
2) Room occupied/unoccupied.
3) Room temperature indication.
4) Room temperature set point.
5) Room temperature set point, occupied.

6) Room temperature set point, unoccupied.
7) Air-damper position as percentage open.
8) Control-valve position as percentage open.

2. Scope: VAV terminal air units with hydronic coils in supply-air systems, and associated controls.
3. Purpose:

a. Occupancy-dependent room temperature set-point reset.
b. Room temperature control.

4. Conditions of the Test:

a. Cx Test Demonstration Sampling Rate: 10 percent of each model/size unit.
b. Temperature Control - Occupied: Start with the room unoccupied. Occupy the room and observe the change to occupied status. Observe temperature control until room temperature is stable at occupied set point, plus or minus 1.0 deg F (0.6 deg C).
c. Temperature Control - Unoccupied: Start with the room occupied. Vacate the room and observe the change to unoccupied status. Observe temperature control until room temperature is stable at unoccupied set point, plus or minus 1.0 deg F (0.6 deg C).

5. Acceptance Criteria:

a. Temperature Control - Occupied:

1) Control system status changes from "occupied" to "unoccupied" after the specified time.
2) Room temperature is stable at occupied set point, plus or minus 1.0 deg F (0.6 deg C) within 10 minutes of occupancy. Room temperature does not overshoot or undershoot set point by more than 2.0 deg F (1.1 deg C) during transition.

b. Temperature Control - Unoccupied:

1) Control system status changes from "unoccupied" to "occupied" immediately.
2) Room temperature is stable at unoccupied set point, plus or minus 1.0 deg F (0.6 deg C) within 30 minutes of occupancy.

## 3.9 AIR-HANDLING SYSTEM Cx TESTS

A. Supply Fan(s) Variable-Volume Control:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

a. Volume Control Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to conditioned-space static pressure.
b. Volume Control Output Device: DDC system analog output to motor speed controller. Set variable-speed drive to minimum speed when fan is stopped.
c. High-Pressure Input Device: Static-pressure transmitter sensing supply-duct static pressure referenced to static pressure outside the duct.
d. Display the following at the operator's workstation:

1) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure indication.
2) Supply-fan-discharge static-pressure set point.
3) Supply-fan airflow rate.
4) Supply-fan speed.

2. Scope: VAV supply fan units and associated controls.
3. Purpose:

a. Supply-air discharge static pressure control.
b. Response to excess supply-air discharge static pressure condition.

4. Conditions of the Test:

a. Minimum supply-air flow.
b. Midrange Supply-Air Flow: 50 to 60 percent of maximum.
c. Maximum supply-air flow.
d. Excess supply-air discharge static pressure.

5. Acceptance Criteria:

a. At all supply-air flow rates, and during changes in supply-air flow, discharge air static pressure is at set point plus or minus 2 percent.
b. Fan stops and an alarm is initiated at the operator's workstation when supply-air discharge static pressure is at the excess static pressure, plus or minus 2 percent.

B. Air-Handler Mixed-Air Control:

1. Prerequisites: Installation verification of the following:

a. Minimum Position Input Device: DDC system time schedule.
b. Output Device: DDC system analog output to modulating damper actuator(s).
c. Heating Reset Input Device: DDC system software.
d. Mixed-Air Temperature Input Device: Duct-mounted electronic temperature sensors.
e. Cooling Reset Input Device: Outdoor- and return-air, duct-mounted electronic temperature sensors.
f. Display the following at the operator's workstation:

1) Mixed-air-temperature indication.
2) Mixed-air-temperature set point.
3) Mixed-air damper position.

2. Scope: Air handler with mixed-air control and associated controls.
3. Purpose:

    a. Occupied time control.
    b. Minimum damper position control.
    c. Heating reset control.
    d. Supply-air temperature control.
    e. Cooling reset control.
    f. Unoccupied time control.

4. Conditions of the Test:

    a. Occupied Time Control: Start in unoccupied schedule. Advance to occupied schedule time.
    b. Minimum Damper Position Control: Command system to mode in which minimum damper position is required.
    c. Heating Reset Control: Create a call for heating.
    d. Supply-Air Temperature and Dewpoint Control: Override supply-air temperature set point to a value 2.0 deg F (1.1 deg C) above current supply-air temperature.
    e. Cooling Reset Control: Override outdoor-air temperature to a value that exceeds return-air temperature.
    f. Unoccupied Time Control: Advance to unoccupied schedule time.
    g. Control Data Trend Log: Set up a data trend log of the following input device values and output device commands. Record data at hourly intervals. Submit trend data for 24-hour periods in which natural conditions require heating reset control, supply-air temperature control, and cooling reset control.

        1) Minimum position input device.
        2) Heating reset input device.
        3) Supply-air temperature input device.
        4) Cooling reset input device.

5. Acceptance Criteria:

    a. Occupied Time Control: Mixed-air control is active in occupied mode.
    b. Minimum Damper Position Control: Controller opens minimum outdoor-air dampers.
    c. Heating Reset Control: Controller closes minimum outdoor-air dampers.
    d. Supply-Air Temperature and Dewpoint Control: Controller modulates outdoor-, return-, and relief-air dampers to maintain temporary supply-air temperature set point, plus or minus 1.0 deg F (0.6 deg C).
    e. Cooling Reset Control: Controller sets outdoor-air dampers to minimum position when outdoor-air temperature exceeds return-air temperature.
    f. Unoccupied Time Control: Controller positions outdoor- and relief-air dampers closed and return-air dampers open.
    g. Control Data Trend Log: Data verify control according to sequence of control.

END OF SECTION 230800

# SECTION 230900 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related work specified elsewhere

1. Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for measuring equipment that relates to this Section.

### 1.2 WORK INCLUDES

A. The Building Management System (BMS) shall be a complete system designed for use with the enterprise IT systems. This functionality shall extend into the equipment rooms. Devices residing on the automation network located in equipment rooms and similar shall be fully IT compatible devices that mount and communicate directly on the IT infrastructure in the facility. Contractor shall be responsible for coordination with the owner's IT staff to ensure that the FMS will perform in the owner's environment without disruption to any of the other activities taking place on that LAN.

B. All points of user interface shall be on standard PCs that do not require the purchase of any special software from the BMS manufacturer for use as a building operations terminal. The primary point of interface on these PCs will be a standard Web Browser.

C. All data stored will be through the use of a standard data base platform: Microsoft Data Engine (MSDE) or Microsoft ADS Server, which is EXISTING.

D. The work of the single BMS Contractor shall be as defined individually and collectively in all Sections of this Division specification together with the associated Point Sheets and Drawings and the associated interfacing work as referenced in the related documents.

E. The BMS work shall consist of the provision of all labor, materials, tools, equipment, software, software licenses, software configurations and database entries, interfaces, wiring, tubing, installation, labeling, engineering, calibration, documentation, samples, submittals, testing, commissioning, training services, permits and licenses, transportation, shipping, handling, administration, supervision, management, insurance, temporary protection, cleaning, cutting and patching, warranties, services, and items, even though these may not be specifically mentioned in these Division documents which are required for the complete, fully functional and commissioned BMS.

F. Provide a complete, neat and workmanlike installation. Use only manufacturer employees who are skilled, experienced, trained, and familiar with the specific equipment, software, standards and configurations to be provided for this Project.

G. Manage and coordinate the BMS work in a timely manner in consideration of the Project schedules. Coordinate with the associated work of other trades so as to not impede or delay the work of associated trades.

H. The BMS as provided shall incorporate, at minimum, the following integrated features, functions and services:

1. Operator information, alarm management and control functions.
2. Enterprise-level information and control access.

3. Information management including monitoring, transmission, archiving, retrieval, and reporting functions.
4. Diagnostic monitoring and reporting of BMS functions.
5. Offsite monitoring and management access.
6. Energy management
7. Standard applications for terminal HVAC systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. DDC: Direct digital control.
B. I/O: Input/output.
C. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.
D. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.
E. PC: Personal computer.
F. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.
G. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Division 1.

B. Submit complete temperature control shop drawings, sequence of control and specification data for approval prior to installation or fabrication of any equipment. Submittal data shall include a schedule of all devices to be reinstalled, selected for optimum system operation; including location, schedules, properly sized control valves and dampers.

C. Deviations in details from the specified sequence of control shall be clearly noted on the sequence of control portion of the submittal.

D. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.

1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

E. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
5. Written description of sequence of operation.
6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
8. DDC System Hardware:

    a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
    b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
    c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.

9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
10. Controlled Systems:

    a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
    b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
    c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
    d. Points list.

## 1.5 ITEMS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED

A. Automatic control dampers

B. Automatic control valves

C. Immersion wells

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General
1. The Building Management System Contractor shall be the primary manufacturer-owned branch office that is regularly engaged in the engineering, programming, installation and service of total integrated Building Management Systems.
2. The BMS Contractor shall be a recognized national manufacturer, installer and service provider of BMS.
3. System shall be an extension of Johnson Controls Inc 412 505 2020.

4. The BMS Contractor shall have a branch facility within a 120-mile radius of the job site supplying complete maintenance and support services on a 24 hour, 7-day-a-week basis.
5. As evidence and assurance of the contractor's ability to support the Owner's system with service and parts, the contractor must have been in the BMS business for at least the last ten (10) years and have successfully completed total projects of at least 10 times the value of this contract in each of the preceding five years.
6. The Building Management System architecture shall consist of the products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the production of Building Management Systems, and shall be the manufacturer's latest standard of design at the time of bid.

1.7 WIRING

A. All wiring incidental to this temperature control system shall be provided by the Control Contractor.

B. The term "Wiring" shall be constructed to include furnishing of wire, conduit, miscellaneous materials and labor as required for mounting and connecting electrical control devices, and providing electrical interlocks between equipment.

C. Wire, conduit and miscellaneous wiring devices shall be provided and installed as specified in Specification Section Divisions 26 and 27.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

A. The Building Management System (BMS) shall use an BMS hospital architecture and fully integrate with the existing Metasys system, workstations and Servers. To accomplish this effectively, the BMS shall support open communication protocol standards and integrate a wide variety of third-party devices and applications. The system shall be extension of the present BMS system, Johnson Controls Inc branch office 412 505 2020 residing on the private LAN system.

B. The Building Management System shall consist of the following:
1. Standalone Network Automation Engine(s)
2. Field Equipment Controller(s)
3. Input/Output Module(s)
4. Local Display Device(s)
5. Portable Operator's Terminal(s)
6. Distributed User Interface(s)
7. Network processing, data storage and communications equipment
8. Other components required for a complete and working BMS

C. The system shall be modular in nature, and shall permit expansion of both capacity and functionality through the addition of sensors, actuators, controllers and operator devices, while re-using existing controls equipment.

D. System architectural design shall eliminate dependence upon any single device for alarm reporting and control execution. The failure of any single component or network connection shall not interrupt the execution of control strategies at other operational devices.

E. Acceptable Manufacturers

1) Johnson Controls, Metasys NAE

2.2 BMS ARCHITECTURE

a. Metasys NAE 55000
b. FEC VMA Controllers
c. ADS existing data server

2.3 WARRANTY

A. Standard Material and Labor Warranty:

1. Provide a one-year labor and material warranty on the BMS.
2. If within twelve (12) months from the date of acceptance of product, upon written notice from the owner, it is found to be defective in operation, workmanship or materials, it shall be replaced, repaired or adjusted at the option of the BMS Contractor at the cost of the BMS Contractor.
3. Maintain an adequate supply of materials within 100 miles of the Project site such that replacement of key parts and labor support, including programming. Warranty work shall be done during BMS Contractor's normal business hours.

2.4 NETWORK AUTOMATION ENGINES (NAE)

A. Network Automation Engine (NAE)

1. The Network Automation Engine (NAE) shall be a fully user-programmable, supervisory controller. The NAE shall monitor the network of distributed application-specific controllers, provide global strategy and direction, and communicate on a peer-to-peer basis with other Network Automation Engines.
2. Automation network – The NAE shall reside on the automation network and shall support a subnet of system controllers.
3. User Interface – Each NAE shall have the ability to deliver a web based User Interface (UI) as previously described. All computers connected physically or virtually to the automation network shall have access to the web based UI.
    a. The web based UI software shall be imbedded in the NAE. Systems that require a local copy of the system database on the user's personal computer are not acceptable.
    b. The NAE shall support up four (4) concurrent users.
    c. The web based user shall have the capability to access all system data through one NAE.
    d. Remote users connected to the network through an Internet Service Provider (ISP) or telephone dial up shall also have total system access through one NAE.
    e. Systems that require the user to address more than one NAE to access all system information are not acceptable.
    f. The NAE shall have the capability of generating web based UI graphics. The graphics capability shall be imbedded in the NAE.
    g. Systems that support UI Graphics from a central database or require the graphics to reside on the user's personal computer are not acceptable.

h. The web based UI shall support the following functions using a standard version of Microsoft Internet Explorer:
   a. Configuration
   b. Commissioning
   c. Data Archiving
   d. Monitoring
   e. Commanding
   f. System Diagnostics
i. Systems that require workstation software or modified web browsers are not acceptable.
j. The NAE shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems.

4. Processor – The NAE shall be microprocessor-based with a minimum word size of 32 bits. The NAE shall be a multi-tasking, multi-user, and real-time digital control processor. Standard operating systems shall be employed. NAE size and capability shall be sufficient to fully meet the requirements of this Specification.
5. Memory – Each NAE shall have sufficient memory to support its own operating system, databases, and control programs, and to provide supervisory control for all control level devices.
6. Hardware Real Time Clock – The NAE shall include an integrated, hardware-based, real-time clock.
7. The NAE shall include troubleshooting LED indicators to identify the following conditions:
   a. Power - On/Off
   b. Ethernet Traffic – Ethernet Traffic/No Ethernet Traffic
   c. Ethernet Connection Speed – 10 Mbps/100 Mbps
   d. FC Bus – Normal Communications/No Field Communications
   e. Peer Communication – Data Traffic Between NAE Devices
   f. Run – NAE Running/NAE In Startup/NAE Shutting Down/Software Not Running
   g. Bat Fault – Battery Defective, Data Protection Battery Not Installed
   h. Fault – General Fault
   i. Modem RX – NAE Modem Receiving Data
   j. Modem TX – NAE Modem Transmitting Data
8. Communications Ports – The NAE shall provide the following ports for operation of operator Input/Output (I/O) devices, such as industry-standard computers, modems, and portable operator's terminals.
   a. Up to two (2) USB port
   b. Up to two (2) URS-232 serial data communication port
   c. Up to two (2) RS-485 port
   d. One (1) LON Port
   e. One (1) Ethernet port
9. Diagnostics – The NAE shall continuously perform self-diagnostics, communication diagnosis, and diagnosis of all panel components. The Network Automation Engine shall provide both local and remote annunciation of any detected component failures, low battery conditions, or repeated failures to establish communication.

10. Power Failure – In the event of the loss of normal power, The NAE shall continue to operate for a user adjustable period of up to 10 minutes after which there shall be an orderly shutdown of all programs to prevent the loss of database or operating system software.
    a. During a loss of normal power, the control sequences shall go to the normal system shutdown conditions. All critical configuration data shall be saved into Flash memory.
    b. Upon restoration of normal power and after a minimum off-time delay, the controller shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention through a normal soft-start sequence.
11. Certification – The NAE shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
12. Controller network – The NAE shall support the following communication protocols on the controller network:
    a. The NAE shall support BACnet Standard MS/TP Bus Protocol ASHRAE SSPC-135, Clause 9 on the controller network.
        a. A BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement shall be provided for each controller device (master or slave) that will communicate on the BACnet MS/TP Bus.
        b. The Conformance Statements shall be submitted 10 day prior to bidding.
        c. The NAE shall support a minimum of 100 control devices.
    b. The NAE shall support LonWorks enabled devices using the Free Topology Transceiver FTT10.
        ◊ All LonWorks controls devices shall meet LONMARK™ Interoperability Association Standards.
        a. The NAE shall support a minimum of 255 LonWorks enabled control devices.
    c. The NAE shall support the Johnson Controls N2 Field Bus.
        a. The NAE shall support a minimum of 100 N2 control devices.
        b. The Bus shall conform to Electronic Industry Alliance (EIA) Standard RS-485.
        c. The Bus shall employ a master/slave protocol where the NAE is the master.
        d. The Bus shall employ a four (4) level priority system for polling frequency.
        e. The Bus shall be optically isolated from the NAE.
        f. The Bus shall support the Metasys Integrator System.

2.5 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLERS

A. Field Equipment Controller (FEC):

1. The Field Equipment Controller (FEC) shall be a fully user-programmable, digital controller that communicates via BACnet MS/TP protocol.
2. The FEC shall employ a finite state control engine to eliminate unnecessary conflicts between control functions at crossover points in their operational

sequences. Suppliers using non-state based DDC shall provide separate control strategy diagrams for all controlled functions in their submittals.

3. Controllers shall be factory programmed with a continuous adaptive tuning algorithm that senses changes in the physical environment and continually adjusts loop tuning parameters appropriately. Controllers that require manual tuning of loops or perform automatic tuning on command only shall not be acceptable.
4. The FEC shall be assembled in a plenum-rated plastic housing with flammability rated to UL94-5VB.
5. The FEC shall include a removable base to allow pre-wiring without the controller.
6. The FEC shall include troubleshooting LED indicators to identify the following conditions:

    a. Power On
    b. Power Off
    c. Download or Startup in progress, not ready for normal operation
    d. No Faults
    e. Device Fault
    f. Field Controller Bus - Normal Data Transmission
    g. Field Controller Bus - No Data Transmission
    h. Field Controller Bus - No Communication
    i. Sensor-Actuator Bus - Normal Data Transmission
    j. Sensor-Actuator Bus - No Data Transmission
    k. Sensor-Actuator Bus - No Communication

7. The FEC shall accommodate the direct wiring of analog and binary I/O field points.
8. The FEC shall support the following types of inputs and outputs:

    a. Universal Inputs - shall be configured to monitor any of the following:

        1) Analog Input, Voltage Mode
        2) Analog Input, Current Mode
        3) Analog Input, Resistive Mode
        4) Binary Input, Dry Contact Maintained Mode
        5) Binary Input, Pulse Counter Mode

    b. Binary Inputs - shall be configured to monitor either of the following:

        1) Dry Contact Maintained Mode
        2) Pulse Counter Mode

    c. Analog Outputs - shall be configured to output either of the following

        1) Analog Output, Voltage Mode
        2) Analog Output, current Mode

    d. Binary Outputs - shall output the following:

1) 24 VAC Triac

e. Configurable Outputs - shall be capable of the following:

1) Analog Output, Voltage Mode
2) Binary Output Mode

9. The FEC shall have the ability to reside on a Field Controller Bus (FC Bus).

a. The FC Bus shall be a Master-Slave/Token-Passing (MS/TP) Bus supporting BACnet Standard protocol SSPC-135, Clause 9.
b. The FC Bus shall support communications between the FECs and the NAE.
c. The FC Bus shall also support Input/Output Module (IOM) communications with the FEC and with the NAE.
d. The FC Bus shall support a minimum of 100 IOMs and FEC in any combination.
e. The FC Bus shall operate at a maximum distance of 15,000 Ft. between the FEC and the furthest connected device.

10. The FEC shall have the ability to monitor and control a network of sensors and actuators over a Sensor-Actuator Bus (SA Bus).

a. The SA Bus shall be a Master-Slave/Token-Passing (MS/TP) Bus supporting BACnet Standard protocol SSPC-135, Clause 9.
b. The SA Bus shall support a minimum of 10 devices per trunk.
c. The SA Bus shall operate at a maximum distance of 1,200 Ft. between the FEC and the furthest connected device.

11. The FEC shall have the capability to execute complex control sequences involving direct wired I/O points as well as input and output devices communicating over the FC Bus or the SA Bus.
12. The FEC shall support, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Hot water, chilled water/central plant applications
b. Built-up air handling units for special applications
c. Terminal units
d. Special programs as required for systems control

B. Input/Output Module (IOM):

1. The Input/Output Module (IOM) provides additional inputs and outputs for use in the FEC.
2. The IOM shall communicate with the FEC over either the FC Bus or the SA Bus using BACnet Standard protocol SSPC-135, Clause 9.
3. The IOM shall be assembled in a plenum-rated plastic housing with flammability rated to UL94-5VB.
4. The IOM shall have a minimum of 4 points to a maximum of 17 points.
5. The IOM shall support the following types of inputs and outputs:

a. Universal Inputs - shall be configured to monitor any of the following:

1) Analog Input, Voltage Mode
2) Analog Input, Current Mode
3) Analog Input, Resistive Mode
4) Binary Input, Dry Contact Maintained Mode
5) Binary Input, Pulse Counter Mode

b. Binary Inputs - shall be configured to monitor either of the following:

1) Dry Contact Maintained Mode
2) Pulse Counter Mode

c. Analog Outputs - shall be configured to output either of the following

1) Analog Output, Voltage Mode
2) Analog Output, current Mode

d. Binary Outputs - shall output the following:

1) 24 VAC Triac

e. Configurable Outputs - shall be capable of the following:

1) Analog Output, Voltage Mode
2) Binary Output Mode

6. The IOM shall include troubleshooting LED indicators to identify the following conditions:

a. Power On
b. Power Off
c. Download or Startup in progress, not ready for normal operation
d. No Faults
e. Device Fault
f. Normal Data Transmission
g. No Data Transmission
h. No Communication

C. Networked Thermostat (TEC)

1. The Networked Thermostats shall be capable of controlling the following:

a. A four pipe fan coil system with multi-speed fan control.
b. A pressure dependant Variable Air Volume System or similar zoning type system using reheat.
c. A two pipe fan coil with a single speed fan.

2. The Networked Thermostat shall communicate over the Field Controller Bus using BACnet Standard protocol SSPC-135, Clause 9.

a. The Networked Thermostat shall support remote read/write and parameter adjustment from the web based User Interfacial through a Network Automation Engine.

3. The Networked Thermostat shall include an intuitive User Interface providing plain text messages.

   a. Two line, 8 character backlit display
   b. LED indicators for Fan, Heat, and Cool status
   c. Five (5) User Interface Keys

      1) Mode
      2) Fan
      3) Override
      4) Degrees C/F
      5) Up/Down

   d. The display shall continuously scroll through the following parameters:

      1) Room Temperature
      2) System Mode
      3) Schedule Status – Occupied/Unoccupied/Override
      4) Applicable Alarms

4. The Networked Thermostats shall provide the flexibility to support the following inputs:

   a. Integral Indoor Air Temperature Sensor
   b. Duct Mount Air Temperature Sensor
   c. Remote Indoor Air Temperature Sensor with Occupancy Override and LED Indicator.
   d. Two configurable binary inputs

5. The Networked Thermostats shall provide the flexibility to support the following outputs:

   a. Three Speed Fan Control
   b. On/Off Control
   c. Floating Control
   d. Proportional (0 to 10V) Control

6. The Networked Thermostat shall provide a minimum of six (6) levels of keypad lockout.
7. The Networked Thermostat shall provide the flexibility to adjust the following parameters:

   a. Adjustable Temporary Occupancy from 0 to 24 hours
   b. Adjustable heating/cooling deadband from 2º F to 5º F
   c. Adjustable heating/cooling cycles per hour from 4 to 8

8. The Networked Thermostat shall employ nonvolatile electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM) for all adjustable parameters.

D. VAV Modular Assembly (VMA):

1. The VAV Modular Assembly shall provide both standalone and networked direct digital control of pressure-independent, variable air volume terminal units. It shall address both single and dual duct applications.
2. The VAV Modular Assembly shall communicate over the FC Bus using BACnet Standard protocol SSPC-135, Clause 9.
3. The VAV Modular Assembly shall have internal electrical isolation for AC power, DC inputs, and MS/TP communications. An externally mounted isolation transformer shall not be acceptable.
4. The VAV Modular Assembly shall be a configurable digital controller with integral differential pressure transducer and damper actuator. All components shall be connected and mounted as a single assembly that can be removed as one piece.
5. The VAV Modular Assembly shall be assembled in a plenum-rated plastic housing with flammability rated to UL94-5VB.
6. The integral damper actuator shall be a fast response stepper motor capable of stroking 90 degrees in 30 seconds for quick damper positioning to speed commissioning and troubleshooting tasks.
7. The controller shall determine airflow by dynamic pressure measurement using an integral dead-ended differential pressure transducer. The transducer shall be maintenance-free and shall not require air filters.
8. Each controller shall have the ability to automatically calibrate the flow sensor to eliminate pressure transducer offset error due to ambient temperature / humidity effects.
9. The controller shall utilize a proportional plus integration (PI) algorithm for the space temperature control loops.
10. Each controller shall continuously, adaptively tune the control algorithms to improve control and controller reliability through reduced actuator duty cycle. In addition, this tuning reduces commissioning costs, and eliminates the maintenance costs of manually re-tuning loops to compensate for seasonal or other load changes.
11. The controller shall provide the ability to download and upload VMA configuration files, both locally and via the communications network. Controllers shall be able to be loaded individually or as a group using a zone schedule generated spreadsheet of controller parameters.
12. Control setpoint changes initiated over the network shall be written to VMA non-volatile memory to prevent loss of setpoint changes and to provide consistent operation in the event of communication failure.
13. The controller firmware shall be flash-upgradeable remotely via the communications bus to minimize costs of feature enhancements.
14. The controller shall provide fail-soft operation if the airflow signal becomes unreliable, by automatically reverting to a pressure-dependent control mode.
15. The controller shall interface with balancer tools that allow automatic recalculation of box flow pickup gain (“K” factor), and the ability to directly

command the airflow control loop to the box minimum and maximum airflow setpoints.

16. Controller performance shall be self-documenting via on-board diagnostics. These diagnostics shall consist of control loop performance measurements executing at each control loop's sample interval, which may be used to continuously monitor and document system performance. The VMA shall calculate exponentially weighted moving averages (EWMA) for each of the following. These metrics shall be available to the end user for efficient management of the VAV terminals.

    a. Absolute temperature loop error.
    b. Signed temperature loop error.
    c. Absolute airflow loop error.
    d. Signed airflow loop error.
    e. Average damper actuator duty cycle.

17. The controller shall detect system error conditions to assist in managing the VAV zones. The error conditions shall consist of:

    a. Unreliable space temperature sensor.
    b. Unreliable differential pressure sensor.
    c. Starved box.
    d. Actuator stall
    e. Insufficient cooling.
    f. Insufficient heating.

18. The controller shall provide a flow test function to view damper position vs. flow in a graphical format. The information would alert the user to check damper position. The VMA would also provide a method to calculate actuator duty cycle as an indicator of damper actuator runtime.
19. The controller shall provide a compliant interface for ASHRAE Standard 62-1989 (indoor air quality), and shall be capable of resetting the box minimum airflow Based on the percent of outdoor air in the primary air stream.
20. The controller shall comply with ASHRAE Standard 90.1 (energy efficiency) by preventing simultaneous heating and cooling, and where the control strategy requires reset of airflow while in reheat, by modulating the box reheat device fully open prior to increasing the airflow in the heating sequence.

21. Inputs:

    a. Analog inputs with user defined ranges shall monitor the following analog signals, without the addition of equipment outside the terminal controller cabinet:

        1) 0-10 VDC Sensors
        2) 1000ohm RTDs
        3) NTC Thermistors

    b. Binary inputs shall monitor dry contact closures. Input shall provide filtering to eliminate false signals resulting from input "bouncing."
    c. For noise immunity, the inputs shall be internally isolated from power, communications, and output circuits.
    d. Provide side loop application for humidity control.

22. Outputs:

    a. Analog outputs shall provide the following control outputs:

        1) 0-10 VDC

    b. Binary outputs shall provide a SPST Triac output rated for 500mA at 24 VAC.
    c. For noise immunity, the outputs shall be internally isolated from power, communications, and other output circuits.

23. Application Configuration:

    a. The VAV Modular Assembly shall be configured with a software tool that provides a simple Question/Answer format for developing applications and downloading.

24. Sensor Support:

    a. The VAV Modular Assembly shall communicate over the Sensor-Actuator Bus (SA Bus) with a Network Sensor.
    b. The VMA shall support an LCD display room sensor.
    c. The VMA shall also support standard room sensors as defined by analog input requirements.
    d. The VMA shall support humidity sensors defined by the AI side loop.

E. Network Sensors (NS):

1. The Network Sensors (NS) shall have the ability to monitor the following variables as required by the systems sequence of operations:

    a. Zone Temperature
    b. Zone humidity
    c. Zone setpoint

2. The NS shall transmit the zone information back to the controller on the Sensor-Actuator Bus (SA Bus) using BACnet Standard protocol SSPC-135, Clause 9.
3. The Network Sensors shall include the following items:
    a. A backlit Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) to indicate the Temperature, Humidity and Setpoint.
    b. An LED to indicate the status of the Override feature.
    c. A button to toggle the temperature display between Fahrenheit and Celsius.
    d. A button to initiate a timed override command
4. The NS shall be available with either screw terminals or phone jack.
5. The NS shall be available in either surface mount or wall mount styles.

2.6 SYSTEM TOOLS

A. System Configuration Tool (SCT)
1. The Configuration Tool shall be a software package enabling a computer platform to be used as a stand-alone engineering configuration tool for a Network Automation Engine (NAE) or a Network Integration Engine (NIE).
2. The configuration tool shall provide an archive database for the configuration and application data.
3. The configuration tool shall have the same look-and-feel at the User Interface (UI) regardless of whether the configuration is being done online or offline.
4. The configuration tool shall include the following features:
    a. Basic system navigation tree for connected networks
    b. Integration of Metasys N1, LonWorks, and BACnet enabled devices
    c. Customized user navigation trees
    d. Point naming operating parameter setting
    e. Graphic diagram configuration
    f. Alarm and event message routing
    g. Graphical logic connector tool for custom programming
    h. Downloading, uploading, and archiving databases
5. The configuration tool shall have the capability to automatically discover field devices on connected buses and networks. Automatic discovery shall be available for the following field devices:
    a. BACnet Devices
    b. LonWorks devices
    c. N2 Bus devices
    d. Metasys N1 networks

B. LonWorks Configuration Tool
1. Field controllers shall be natively programmed via an LNS (LonWorks Network Services) Tool that supports LNS plug-ins.
2. This tool will create an LNS database file so that no conversion from a separate configuration tool is required.
3. This tool will communicate with LonWorks Devices via standard LonWorks Network Interfaces.

2.7 INPUT DEVICES

A. General Requirements

1. Installation, testing, and calibration of all sensors, transmitters, and other input devices shall be provided to meet the system requirements.

B. Temperature Sensors

1. General Requirements:
   a. Sensors and transmitters shall be provided, as outlined in the input/output summary and sequence of operations.
   b. The temperature sensor shall be of the resistance type, and shall be either two-wire 1000 ohm nickel RTD, or two-wire 1000 ohm platinum RTD.
   c. The following point types (and the accuracy of each) are required, and their associated accuracy values include errors associated with the sensor, lead wire, and A to D conversion:

| **Point Type** | **Accuracy** |
|---|---|
| Chilled Water | ± .5°F. |
| Room Temp | ± .5°F. |
| Duct Temperature | ± .5°F. |
| All Others | ± .75°F. |

   d. Thermistors are acceptable provided the mathematical relationship of a thermistor with respect to resistance and temperature with the thermistor fitting constraints is contained with the Controller's operating software and the listed accuracy's can be obtained. Submit proof of the software mathematical equation and thermistor manufacturer fitting constants used in the thermistor mathematical/expressions. Thermistors shall be of the Thermistor (NTC) Type with a minimum of 100 ohm/°F. resistance change versus temperature to insure good resolution and accuracy. Thermistors shall be certified to be stable ±0.24°F. over 5 years and ±0.36°F. accurate and free from drift for 5 years.

2. Room Temperature Sensors
   a. Room sensors shall be constructed for either surface or wall box mounting.
   b. Room sensors shall have the following options when specified:
      a. Setpoint reset dial providing a ±3 degree (adjustable) range.
      b. A momentary override request push button for activation of after-hours operation.
      c. An Led to indicate the status of the Temporary Override feature.

3. Thermo wells
   a. When thermo wells are required, the sensor and well shall be supplied as a complete assembly, including wellhead and Greenfield fitting.
   b. Thermo wells shall be pressure rated and constructed in accordance with the system working pressure.
   c. Thermo wells and sensors shall be mounted in a threadolet or 1/2" NFT saddle and allow easy access to the sensor for repair or replacement.
   d. Thermo wells shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel.

4. Outside Air Sensors

a. Outside air sensors shall be designed to withstand the environmental conditions to which they will be exposed. They shall also be provided with a solar shield.
b. Sensors exposed to wind velocity pressures shall be shielded by a perforated plate that surrounds the sensor element.
c. Temperature transmitters shall be of NEMA 3R construction and rated for ambient temperatures.

5. Duct Mount Sensors
   a. Duct mount sensors shall mount in an electrical box through a hole in the duct, and be positioned so as to be easily accessible for repair or replacement.
   b. Duct sensors shall be insertion type and constructed as a complete assembly, including lock nut and mounting plate.
   c. For outdoor air duct applications, a weatherproof mounting box with weatherproof cover and gasket shall be used.
6. Averaging Sensors
   a. For ductwork greater in any dimension that 48 inches and/or where air temperature stratification exists, an averaging sensor with multiple sensing points shall be used.
   b. For plenum applications, such as mixed air temperature measurements, a string of sensors mounted across the plenum shall be used to account for stratification and/or air turbulence. The averaging string shall have a minimum of 4 sensing points per 12-foot long segment.
   c. Capillary supports at the sides of the duct shall be provided to support the sensing string.
7. Acceptable Manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Setra.

C. Humidity Sensors
1. The sensor shall be a solid-state type, relative humidity sensor of the Bulk Polymer Design. The sensor element shall resist service contamination.
2. The humidity transmitter shall be equipped with non-interactive span and zero adjustments, a 2-wire isolated loop powered, 4-20 mA, 0-100% linear proportional output.
3. The humidity transmitter shall meet the following overall accuracy, including lead loss and Analog to Digital conversion. 3% between 20% and 80% RH @ 77 Deg F unless specified elsewhere.
4. Outside air relative humidity sensors shall be installed with a rain proof, perforated cover. The transmitter shall be installed in a NEMA 3R enclosure with sealtite fittings and stainless steel bushings.
5. A single point humidity calibrator shall be provided, if required, for field calibration. Transmitters shall be shipped factory pre-calibrated.
6. Duct type sensing probes shall be constructed of 304 stainless steel, and shall be equipped with a neoprene grommet, bushings, and a mounting bracket.
7. Acceptable Manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Veris Industries, and Mamac.

D. Differential Pressure Transmitters
1. General Air and Water Pressure Transmitter Requirements:
   a. Pressure transmitters shall be constructed to withstand 100% pressure over-range without damage, and to hold calibrated accuracy when subject to a momentary 40% over-range input.

b. Pressure transmitters shall transmit a 0 to 5 VDC, 0 to 10 VDC, or 4 to 20 mA output signal.
c. Differential pressure transmitters used for flow measurement shall be sized to the flow sensing device, and shall be supplied with Tee fittings and shut-off valves in the high and low sensing pick-up lines to allow the balancing Contractor and Owner permanent, easy-to-use connection.
d. A minimum of a NEMA 1 housing shall be provided for the transmitter. Transmitters shall be located in accessible local control panels wherever possible.

2. Low Differential Water Pressure Applications (0" - 20" w.c.)
   a. The differential pressure transmitter shall be of industrial quality and transmit a linear, 4 to 20 mA output in response to variation of flow meter differential pressure or water pressure sensing points.
   b. The differential pressure transmitter shall have non-interactive zero and span adjustments that are adjustable from the outside cover and meet the following performance specifications:
      a. .01-20" w.c. input differential pressure range.
      b. 4-20 mA output.
      c. Maintain accuracy up to 20 to 1 ratio turndown.
      d. Reference Accuracy: +0.2% of full span.
   c. Acceptable Manufacturers: Setra and Mamac.
3. Medium to High Differential Water Pressure Applications (Over 21" w.c.)
   a. The differential pressure transmitter shall meet the low pressure transmitter specifications with the following exceptions:
      a. Differential pressure range 10" w.c. to 300 PSI.
      b. Reference Accuracy: ±1% of full span (includes non-linearity, hysteresis, and repeatability).
   b. Standalone pressure transmitters shall be mounted in a bypass valve assembly panel. The panel shall be constructed to NEMA 1 standards. The transmitter shall be installed in the panel with high and low connections piped and valved. Air bleed units, bypass valves, and compression fittings shall be provided.
   c. Acceptable Manufacturers: Setra and Mamac.
4. Building Differential Air Pressure Applications (-1" to +1" w.c.)
   a. The differential pressure transmitter shall be of industrial quality and transmit a linear, 4 to 20 mA output in response to variation of differential pressure or air pressure sensing points.
   b. The differential pressure transmitter shall have non-interactive zero and span adjustments that are adjustable from the outside cover and meet the following performance specifications:
      a. -1.00 to +1.00 w.c. input differential pressure ranges. (Select range appropriate for system application)
      b. 4-20 mA output.
      c. Maintain accuracy up to 20 to 1 ratio turndown.
      d. Reference Accuracy: +0.2% of full span.
   c. Acceptable Manufacturers: Johnson Controls and Setra.
5. Low Differential Air Pressure Applications (0" to 5" w.c.)

a. The differential pressure transmitter shall be of industrial quality and transmit a linear, 4 to 20 mA output in response to variation of differential pressure or air pressure sensing points.
b. The differential pressure transmitter shall have non-interactive zero and span adjustments that are adjustable from the outside cover and meet the following performance specifications:
a. (0.00 - 1.00" to 5.00") w.c. input differential pressure ranges. (Select range appropriate for system application.)
b. 4-20 mA output.
c. Maintain accuracy up to 20 to 1 ratio turndown.
d. Reference Accuracy: +0.2% of full span.
c. Acceptable Manufacturers: Johnson Controls and Setra.

6. Medium Differential Air Pressure Applications (5" to 21" w.c.)
a. The pressure transmitter shall be similar to the Low Air Pressure Transmitter, except that the performance specifications are not as severe. Differential pressure transmitters shall be provided that meet the following performance requirements:
a. Zero & span: (c/o F.S. /Deg. F): .04% including linearity, hysteresis and repeatability.
b. Accuracy: 1% F.S. (best straight line) Static Pressure Effect: 0.5% F.S. (to 100 PSIG.
c. Thermal Effects: <+.033 F.S. /Deg. F. over 40°F. to 100°F. (calibrated at 70°F.).
b. Standalone pressure transmitters shall be mounted in a bypass valve assembly panel. The panel shall be constructed to NEMA 1 standards. The transmitter shall be installed in the panel with high and low connections piped and valved. Air bleed units, bypass valves, and compression fittings shall be provided.
c. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls and Setra.

E. Flow Monitoring
1. Air Flow Monitoring
a. Fan Inlet Air Flow Measuring Stations
a. At the inlet of each fan and near the exit of the inlet sound trap, airflow traverse probes shall be provided that shall continuously monitor the fan air volumes and system velocity pressure.
b. Each traverse probe shall be of a dual manifolded, cylindrical, type 3003 extruded aluminum configuration, having an anodized finish to eliminate surface pitting and unnecessary air friction. The multiple total pressure manifold shall have sensors located along the stagnation plane of the approaching airflow. The manifold should not have forward projecting sensors into the air stream. The static pressure manifold shall incorporate dual offset static tops on the opposing sides of the averaging manifold so as to be insensitive to flow-angle variations of as much as $\pm$ 20° in the approaching air stream.
c. The airflow traverse probe shall not induce a measurable pressure drop, nor shall the sound level within the duct be amplified by its singular or multiple presence in the air stream. Each airflow-measuring probe shall contain multiple total and

static pressure sensors placed at equal distances along the probe length. The number of sensors on each probe and the quantity of probes utilized at each installation shall comply with the ASHRAE Standards for duct traversing.

d. Airflow measuring stations shall be manufactured by Air Monitor Corp., Tek-Air Systems, Inc., Ebtron, or Dietrich Standard.

b. Single Probe Air Flow Measuring Sensor

a. The single probe airflow-measuring sensor shall be duct mounted with an adjustable sensor insertion length of up to eight inches. The transmitter shall produce a 4-20 mA or 0-10 VDC signal linear to air velocity. The sensor shall be a hot wire anemometer and utilize two temperature sensors and a heater element temperature. The other sensor shall measure the downstream air temperature. The temperature differential shall be directly related to airflow velocity.

c. Duct Air Flow Measuring Stations

a. Each device shall be designed and built to comply with, and provide results in accordance with, accepted practice as defined for system testing in the ASHRAE Handbook of fundamentals, as well as in the Industrial Ventilation Handbook.

b. Airflow measuring stations shall be fabricated of 14-gauge galvanized steel welded casing with 90 Deg. connecting flanges in configuration and size equal to that of the duct into which it is mounted. Each station shall be complete with an air directionalizer and parallel cell profile suppressor (3/4" maximum cell) across the entering air stream and mechanically fastened to the casing in such a way to withstand velocities up to 6000 feet per minute. This air directionalizer and parallel cell honeycomb suppressor shall provide 98% free area, equalize the velocity profile, and eliminate turbulent and rotational flow from the air stream prior to the measuring point.

c. The total pressure measurement side (high side) will be designed and spaced to the Industrial Ventilation Manual 16th Edition, Page 9-5. The self-averaging manifolding will be manufactured of brass and copper components.

d. The static pressure sensing probes (low side) shall be bullet-nosed shaped, per detailed radius, as illustrated in Industrial Ventilation Manual 16th Edition, Page 9-5.

e. The main take-off point from both the total pressure and the static pressure manifolds must be symmetrical.

f. Total and static pressure manifolds shall terminate with external ports for connection to control tubing. An identification label shall be placed on each unit casing, listing model number, size, area, and specified airflow capacity.

g. Installation Considerations

(1) The maximum allowable pressure loss through the Flow and Static Pressure elements shall not exceed .065" w.c. at 1000 feet per minute, or

.23" w.c. at 2000 feet per minute. Each unit shall measure the airflow rate within an accuracy of plus 2% as determined by U.S. – GSA certification tests, and shall contain a minimum of one total pressure sensor per 36 square inches of unit measuring area.

(2) The units shall have a self-generated sound rating of less than NC40, and the sound level within the duct shall not be amplified nor shall additional sound be generated.

(3) Where the stations are installed in insulated ducts, the airflow passage of the station shall be the same size as the inside airflow dimension of the duct. Station flanges shall be two inch to three inch to facilitate matching connecting ductwork.

(4) Where control dampers are shown as part of the airflow measuring station, opposed blade precision controlled volume dampers integral to the station and complete with actuator, pilot positioner, and linkage shall be provided.

(5) Stations shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's published requirements, and in accordance with ASME Guidelines affecting non-standard approach conditions.

h. Acceptable manufacturers: Air Monitor Corp., Tek-Air, Ebtron, and Dietrich Standard.

d. Static Pressure Traverse Probe

a. Duct static traverse probes shall be provided where required to monitor duct static pressure. The probe shall contain multiple static pressure sensors located along exterior surface of the cylindrical probe.

b. Acceptable manufacturers: Cleveland Controls

e. Shielded Static Air Probe

a. A shielded static pressure probe shall be provided at each end of the building. The probe shall have multiple sensing ports, an impulse suppression chamber, and airflow shielding. A suitable probe for indoor and outdoor locations shall be provided.

2. Water Flow Monitoring

a. Water flow meters shall be electromagnetic type with integral microprocessor-Based electronics. The meter shall have an accuracy of 0.25%.

b. Acceptable manufacturers: Onicon

F. Power Monitoring Devices

1. Current Measurement (Amps)

a. Current measurement shall be by a combination current transformer and a current transducer. The current transformer shall be sized to reduce the full amperage of the monitored circuit to a maximum 5 Amp signal,

which will be converted to a 4-20 mA DDC compatible signal for use by the Facility Management System.

b. Current Transformer – A split core current transformer shall be provided to monitor motor amps.
   a. Operating frequency – 50 - 400 Hz.
   b. Insulation – 0.6 Kv class 10Kv BIL.
   c. UL recognized.
   d. Five amp secondary.
   e. Select current ration as appropriate for application.
   f. Acceptable manufacturers: Veris Industries

c. Current Transducer – A current to voltage or current to mA transducer shall be provided. The current transducer shall include:
   a. 6X input over amp rating for AC inrushes of up to 120 amps.
   b. Manufactured to UL 1244.
   c. Accuracy: +.5%, Ripple +1%.
   d. Minimum load resistance 30kOhm.
   e. Input 0-20 Amps.
   f. Output 4-20 mA.
   g. Transducer shall be powered by a 24VDC regulated power supply (24 VDC +5%).
   h. Acceptable manufacturers: Veris Industries

G. Refrigerant Leak Detectors
   1. The refrigerant leak detector shall be a standalone device and shall provide a SPDT output to directly energize the refrigeration room exhaust ventilation fans. The detector shall include a sensor or sensors connected to a control panel. Two relay contacts at the control panel shall provide trouble and alarm indication to the Facility Management System. The alarm relay contact shall also directly energize the exhaust fans.
   2. The refrigerant leak detector shall sense the type of refrigerant used in the specified chillers. Multiple sensors shall be required to detect different refrigerants and/or provide proper sensing coverage for the area of the refrigeration room.
   3. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, MSA Instruments

H. Gas Detection
   1. Description:
      a. NDIR technology or equivalent technology providing long-term stability and reliability.
      b. Two-wire, 4-20 mA output signal, linearized to carbon-dioxide concentration in ppm.
   2. Construction:
      a. House electronics in an ABS plastic enclosure. Provide equivalent of NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure for wall-mounted space applications and NEMA 250, Type 4 for duct-mounted applications.
      b. Equip with digital display for continuous indication of carbon-dioxide concentration.
   3. Performance:
      a. Measurement Range: Zero to 2000 ppm.
      b. Accuracy: Within 2 percent of reading, plus or minus 30 ppm.

c. Repeatability: Within 1 percent of full scale.
d. Temperature Dependence: Within 0.05 percent of full scale over an operating range of 25 to 110 deg F (minus 4 to 43 deg C).
e. Long-Term Stability: Within 5 percent of full scale after more than five years.
f. Response Time: Within 60 seconds.
g. Warm-up Time: Within five minutes.

4. Provide calibration kit. Turn over to Owner at start of warranty period.
5. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Vaisala, Veris

I. Smoke Detectors
1. Ionization type air duct detectors shall be furnished as specified elsewhere in Division 16 for installation under Division 15. All wiring for air duct detectors shall be provided under Division 16, Fire Alarm System.

J. Status and Safety Switches
1. General Requirements
a. Switches shall be provided to monitor equipment status, safety conditions, and generate alarms at the BMS when a failure or abnormal condition occurs. Safety switches shall be provided with two sets of contacts and shall be interlock wired to shut down respective equipment.

2. Current Sensing Switches
a. The current sensing switch shall be self-powered with solid-state circuitry and a dry contact output. It shall consist of a current transformer, a solid state current sensing circuit, adjustable trip point, solid state switch, SPDT relay, and an LED indicating the on or off status. A conductor of the load shall be passed through the window of the device. It shall accept over-current up to twice its trip point range.
b. Current sensing switches shall be used for run status for fans, pumps, and other miscellaneous motor loads.
c. Current sensing switches shall be calibrated to show a positive run status only when the motor is operating under load. A motor running with a broken belt or coupling shall indicate a negative run status.
d. Acceptable manufacturers: Veris Industries

3. Air Filter Status Switches
a. Differential pressure switches used to monitor air filter status shall be of the automatic reset type with SPDT contacts rated for 2 amps at 120VAC.
b. A complete installation kit shall be provided, including: static pressure tops, tubing, fittings, and air filters.
c. Provide appropriate scale range and differential adjustment for intended service.
d. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Cleveland Controls

4. Air Flow Switches
a. Differential pressure flow switches shall be bellows actuated mercury switches or snap acting micro-switches with appropriate scale range and differential adjustment for intended service.
b. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Cleveland Controls

5. Air Pressure Safety Switches

a. Air pressure safety switches shall be of the manual reset type with SPDT contacts rated for 2 amps at 120VAC.
b. Pressure range shall be adjustable with appropriate scale range and differential adjustment for intended service.
c. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Cleveland Controls

6. Water Flow Switches
   a. Water flow switches shall be equal to the Johnson Controls P74.
7. Low Temperature Limit Switches
   a. The low temperature limit switch shall be of the manual reset type with Double Pole/Single Throw snap acting contacts rated for 16 amps at 120VAC.
   b. The sensing element shall be a minimum of 15 feet in length and shall react to the coldest 18-inch section. Element shall be mounted horizontally across duct in accordance with manufacturers recommended installation procedures.
   c. For large duct areas where the sensing element does not provide full coverage of the air stream, additional switches shall be provided as required to provide full protection of the air stream.
   d. The low temperature limit switch shall be equal to Johnson Controls A70.

2.8 OUTPUT DEVICES

A. Actuators

1. General Requirements
   a. Damper and valve actuators shall be electronic and/or pneumatic, as specified in the System Description section.
2. Electronic Damper Actuators
   a. Electronic damper actuators shall be direct shaft mount.
   b. Modulating and two-position actuators shall be provided as required by the sequence of operations. Damper sections shall be sized Based on actuator manufacturer's recommendations for face velocity, differential pressure and damper type. The actuator mounting arrangement and spring return feature shall permit normally open or normally closed positions of the dampers, as required. All actuators (except terminal units) shall be furnished with mechanical spring return unless otherwise specified in the sequences of operations. All actuators shall have external adjustable stops to limit the travel in either direction, and a gear release to allow manual positioning.
   c. Modulating actuators shall accept 24 VAC or VDC power supply, consume no more than 15 VA, and be UL listed. The control signal shall be 2-10 VDC or 4-20 mA, and the actuator shall provide a clamp position feedback signal of 2-10 VDC. The feedback signal shall be independent of the input signal and may be used to parallel other actuators and provide true position indication. The feedback signal of one damper actuator for each separately controlled damper shall be wired back to a terminal strip in the control panel for trouble-shooting purposes.
   d. Two-position or open/closed actuators shall accept 24 or 120 VAC power supply and be UL listed. Isolation, smoke, exhaust fan, and other dampers, as specified in the sequence of operations, shall be furnished

with adjustable end switches to indicate open/closed position or be hard wired to start/stop associated fan. Two-position actuators, as specified in sequences of operations as "quick acting," shall move full stroke within 20 seconds. All smoke damper actuators shall be quick acting.

e. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Mamac.

3. Electronic Valve Actuators
   a. Electronic valve actuators shall be manufactured by the valve manufacturer.
   b. Each actuator shall have current limiting circuitry incorporated in its design to prevent damage to the actuator.
   c. Modulating and two-position actuators shall be provided as required by the sequence of operations. Actuators shall provide the minimum torque required for proper valve close-off against the system pressure for the required application. The valve actuator shall be sized Based on valve manufacturer's recommendations for flow and pressure differential. All actuators shall fail in the last position unless specified with mechanical spring return in the sequence of operations. The spring return feature shall permit normally open or normally closed positions of the valves, as required. All direct shaft mount rotational actuators shall have external adjustable stops to limit the travel in either direction.
   d. Modulating Actuators shall accept 24 VAC or VDC and 120 VAC power supply and be UL listed. The control signal shall be 2-10 VDC or 4-20 mA and the actuator shall provide a clamp position feedback signal of 2-10 VDC. The feedback signal shall be independent of the input signal, and may be used to parallel other actuators and provide true position indication. The feedback signal of each valve actuator (except terminal valves) shall be wired back to a terminal strip in the control panel for trouble-shooting purposes.
   e. Two-position or open/closed actuators shall accept 24 or 120 VAC power supply and be UL listed. Butterfly isolation and other valves, as specified in the sequence of operations, shall be furnished with adjustable end switches to indicate open/closed position or be hard wired to start/stop the associated pump or chiller.
   f. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls

B. Control Dampers
   1. The BMS Contractor shall furnish all automatic dampers. All automatic dampers shall be sized for the application by the BMS Contractor or as specifically indicated on the Drawings.
   2. All dampers used for throttling airflow shall be of the opposed blade type arranged for normally open or normally closed operation, as required. The damper is to be sized so that, when wide open, the pressure drop is a sufficient amount of its close-off pressure drop to shift the characteristic curve to near linear.
   3. All dampers used for two-position, open/close control shall be parallel blade type arranged for normally open or closed operation, as required.
   4. Damper frames and blades shall be constructed of either galvanized steel or aluminum. Maximum blade length in any section shall be 60". Damper blades shall be 16-gauge minimum and shall not exceed eight (8) inches in width. Damper frames shall be 16-gauge minimum hat channel type with corner

bracing. All damper bearings shall be made of reinforced nylon, stainless steel or oil-impregnated bronze. Dampers shall be tight closing, low leakage type, with synthetic elastomer seals on the blade edges and flexible stainless steel side seals. Dampers of 48"x48" size shall not leak in excess of 8.0 cfm per square foot when closed against 4" w.g. static pressure when tested in accordance with AMCA Std. 500.

5. Airfoil blade dampers of double skin construction with linkage out of the air stream shall be used whenever the damper face velocity exceeds 1500 FPM or system pressure exceeds 2.5" w.g., but no more than 4000 FPM or 6" w.g. Acceptable manufacturers are Johnson Controls D-7250 D-1250 or D-1300, Ruskin CD50, and Vent Products 5650.
6. One piece rolled blade dampers with exposed or concealed linkage may be used with face velocities of 1500 FPM or below. Acceptable manufacturers are: Johnson Controls D-1600, Ruskin CD36, and Vent Products 5800.
7. Multiple section dampers may be jack-shafted to allow mounting of piston pneumatic actuators and direct connect electronic actuators. Each end of the jackshaft shall receive at least one actuator to reduce jackshaft twist.

C. Control Relays
1. Control Pilot Relays
a. Control pilot relays shall be of a modular plug-in design with retaining springs or clips.
b. Mounting Bases shall be snap-mount.
c. DPDT, 3PDT, or 4PDT relays shall be provided, as appropriate for application.
d. Contacts shall be rated for 10 amps at 120VAC.
e. Relays shall have an integral indicator light and check button.
f. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Lectro
2. Lighting Control Relays
a. Lighting control relays shall be latching with integral status contacts.
b. Contacts shall be rated for 20 amps at 277 VAC.
c. The coil shall be a split low-voltage coil that moves the line voltage contact armature to the ON or OFF latched position.
d. Lighting control relays shall be controlled by:
a. Pulsed Tri-state Output – Preferred method.
b. Pulsed Paired Binary Outputs.
c. A Binary Input to the Facility Management System shall monitor integral status contacts on the lighting control relay. Relay status contacts shall be of the "dry-contact" type.
e. The relay shall be designed so that power outages do not result in a change-of-state, and so that multiple same state commands will simply maintain the commanded state. Example: Multiple OFF command pulses shall simply keep the contacts in the OFF position.

D. Control Valves
1. All automatic control valves shall be fully proportioning and provide near linear heat transfer control. The valves shall be quiet in operation and fail-safe open, closed, or in their last position. All valves shall operate in sequence with another valve when required by the sequence of operations. All control valves shall be sized by the control manufacturer, and shall be guaranteed to meet the heating

and cooling loads, as specified. All control valves shall be suitable for the system flow conditions and close against the differential pressures involved. Body pressure rating and connection type (sweat, screwed, or flanged) shall conform to the pipe schedule elsewhere in this Specification.

2. Chilled water control valves shall be modulating plug, ball, and/or butterfly, as required by the specific application. Modulating water valves shall be sized per manufacturer's recommendations for the given application. In general, valves (2 or 3-way) serving **variable** flow air handling unit coils shall be sized for a pressure drop equal to the actual coil pressure drop, but no less than 5 PSI. Valves (3-way) serving **constant** flow air handling unit coils with secondary circuit pumps shall be sized for a pressure drop equal to 25% the actual coil pressure drop, but no less than 2 PSI. Mixing valves (3-way) serving secondary water circuits shall be sized for a pressure drop of no less than 5 PSI. Valves for terminal reheat coils shall be sized for a 2 PSIG pressure drop, but no more than a 5 PSI drop.
3. Ball valves shall be used for hot and chilled water applications, water terminal reheat coils, radiant panels, unit heaters, package air conditioning units, and fan coil units except those described hereinafter.
4. Modulating plug water valves of the single-seat type with equal percentage flow characteristics shall be used for all special applications as indicated on the valve schedule. Valve discs shall be composition type. Valve stems shall be stainless steel.
5. Butterfly valves shall be acceptable for modulating large flow applications greater than modulating plug valves, and for all two-position, open/close applications. In-line and/or three-way butterfly valves shall be heavy-duty pattern with a body rating comparable to the pipe rating, replaceable lining suitable for temperature of system, and a stainless steel vane. Valves for modulating service shall be sized and travel limited to 50 degrees of full open. Valves for isolation service shall be the same as the pipe. Valves in the closed position shall be bubble-tight.
6. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls

E. Electronic Signal Isolation Transducers
1. A signal isolation transducer shall be provided whenever an analog output signal from the BMS is to be connected to an external control system as an input (such as a chiller control panel), or is to receive as an input signal from a remote system.
2. The signal isolation transducer shall provide ground plane isolation between systems.
3. Signals shall provide optical isolation between systems.
4. Acceptable manufacturers: Advanced Control Technologies

F. External Manual Override Stations
1. External manual override stations shall provide the following:
   a. An integral HAND/OFF/AUTO switch shall override the controlled device pilot relay.
   b. A status input to the Facility Management System shall indicate whenever the switch is not in the automatic position.
   c. A Status LED shall illuminate whenever the output is ON.
   d. An Override LED shall illuminate whenever the HOA switch is in either the HAND or OFF position.

e. Contacts shall be rated for a minimum of 1 amp at 24 VAC.

G. Electronic/Pneumatic Transducers

1. Electronic to Pneumatic transducers shall provide:
   a. Output: 3-15 PSIG.
   b. Input: 4-20 mA or 0-10 VDC.
   c. Manual output adjustment.
   d. Pressure gauge.
   e. External replaceable supply air filter.
   f. Acceptable manufacturers: Johnson Controls, Mamac

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS DEVICES

A. Variable Frequency Motor Speed Control Drives

1. Provision based on equipment type.

B. Local Control Panels

1. All control panels shall be factory constructed, incorporating the BMS manufacturer's standard designs and layouts. All control panels shall be UL inspected and listed as an assembly and carry a UL 508 label listing compliance. Control panels shall be fully enclosed, with perforated sub-panel, hinged door, and slotted flush latch.
2. In general, the control panels shall consist of the DDC controller(s), display module as specified and indicated on the plans, and I/O devices—such as relays, transducers, and so forth—that are not required to be located external to the control panel due to function. Where specified the display module shall be flush mounted in the panel face unless otherwise noted.
3. All I/O connections on the DDC controller shall be provide via removable or fixed screw terminals.
4. Low and line voltage wiring shall be segregated. All provided terminal strips and wiring shall be UL listed, 300-volt service and provide adequate clearance for field wiring.
5. All wiring shall be neatly installed in plastic trays or tie-wrapped.
6. A convenience 120 VAC duplex receptacle shall be provided in each enclosure, fused on/off power switch, and required transformers.

C. Power Supplies

1. DC power supplies shall be sized for the connected device load. Total rated load shall not exceed 75% of the rated capacity of the power supply.
2. Input: 120 VAC +10%, 60Hz.
3. Output: 24 VDC.
4. Line Regulation: +0.05% for 10% line change.
5. Load Regulation: +0.05% for 50% load change.
6. Ripple and Noise: 1 mV rms, 5 mV peak to peak.
7. An appropriately sized fuse and fuse block shall be provided and located next to the power supply.
8. A power disconnect switch shall be provided next to the power supply.

D. Thermostats

1. Electric room thermostats of the heavy-duty type shall be provided for unit heaters, cabinet unit heaters, and ventilation fans, where required. All these items shall be provided with concealed adjustment. Finish of covers for all room-type instruments shall match and, unless otherwise indicated or specified, covers shall

be manufacturer's standard finish. Some locations will be in the return air ceiling transfer grill, coordinate with the owner

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 BMS SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS

A: Graphics on existing OWS

1. Provide a color graphic system flow diagram display for each system with all points as indicated on the point list. All terminal unit graphic displays shall be from a standard design library.
2. User shall access the various system schematics via a graphical penetration scheme and/or menu selection.

B. Custom Reports:

1. Provide custom reports as required for this project:

C. Actuation

1. Primary Equipment
   a. Controls shall be provided by equipment manufacturer as specified herein.
   b. All damper and valve actuation shall be electric.
2. Air Handling Equipment
   a. All air handers shall be controlled with a HVAC-DDC Controller
   b. All damper and valve actuation shall be electric.
3. Terminal Equipment:
   a. Terminal Units (VAV, UV, etc.) shall have electric damper and valve actuation.
   b. All Terminal Units shall be controlled with HVAC-DDC Controller)

3.2 INSTALLATION PRACTICES

A. BMS Wiring

1. All conduit, wiring, accessories and wiring connections required for the installation of the Building Management System, as herein specified, shall be provided by the BMS Contractor unless specifically shown on the Electrical Drawings under Division 16 Electrical. All wiring shall comply with the requirements of applicable portions of Division 16 and all local and national electric codes, unless specified otherwise in this section.
2. All BMS wiring materials and installation methods shall comply with BMS manufacturer recommendations.
3. The sizing, type and provision of cable, conduit, cable trays, and raceways shall be the design responsibility of the BMS Contractor. If complications arise, however, due to the incorrect selection of cable, cable trays, raceways and/or conduit by the BMS Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for all costs incurred in replacing the selected components.
4. Class 2 Wiring
   a. All Class 2 (24VAC or less) wiring shall be installed in open plenum cable above accessible ceilings and in conduit unless otherwise specified.
   b. Conduit is not required for Class 2 wiring in concealed accessible locations. Class 2 wiring not installed in conduit shall be supported every 5' from the building structure utilizing metal hangers designed for this application. Wiring shall be installed parallel to the building structural

lines. All wiring shall be installed in accordance with local code requirements.

5. Class 2 signal wiring and 24VAC power can be run in the same conduit. Power wiring 120VAC and greater cannot share the same conduit with Class 2 signal wiring.
6. Provide for complete grounding of all applicable signal and communications cables, panels and equipment so as to ensure system integrity of operation. Ground cabling and conduit at the panel terminations. Avoid grounding loops.

B. BMS Line Voltage Power Source
1. 120-volt AC circuits used for the Building Management System shall be taken from panel boards and circuit breakers provided by Division 16.
2. Circuits used for the BMS shall be dedicated to the BMS and shall not be used for any other purposes.
3. DDC terminal unit controllers may use AC power from motor power circuits.

C. BMS Raceway
1. All wiring shall be installed in conduit or raceway except as noted elsewhere in this specification. Minimum control wiring conduit size 1/2".
2. Where it is not possible to conceal raceways in finished locations, surface raceway (Wiremold) may be used as approved by the Architect.
3. All conduits and raceways shall be installed level, plumb, at right angles to the building lines and shall follow the contours of the surface to which they are attached.
4. Flexible Metal Conduit shall be used for vibration isolation and shall be limited to 3 feet in length when terminating to vibrating equipment. Flexible Metal Conduit may be used within partition walls. Flexible Metal Conduit shall be UL listed.

D. Penetrations
1. Provide fire stopping for all penetrations used by dedicated BMS conduits and raceways.
2. All openings in fire proofed or fire stopped components shall be closed by using approved fire resistive sealant.
3. All wiring passing through penetrations, including walls shall be in conduit or enclosed raceway.
4. Penetrations of floor slabs shall be by core drilling. All penetrations shall be plumb, true, and square.

E. BMS Identification Standards
1. Node Identification. All nodes shall be identified by a permanent label fastened to the enclosure. Labels shall be suitable for the node location.
2. Cable types specified in Item A shall be color coded for easy identification and troubleshooting.

F. BMS Panel Installation
1. The BMS panels and cabinets shall be located as indicated at an elevation of not less than 2 feet from the bottom edge of the panel to the finished floor. Each cabinet shall be anchored per the manufacturer's recommendations.
2. The BMS contractor shall be responsible for coordinating panel locations with other trades and electrical and mechanical contractors.

G. Input Devices
1. All Input devices shall be installed per the manufacturer recommendation

2. Locate components of the BMS in accessible local control panels wherever possible.

H. HVAC Input Devices – Genera1
1. All Input devices shall be installed per the manufacturer recommendation
2. Locate components of the BMS in accessible local control panels wherever possible.
3. The mechanical contractor shall install all in-line devices such as temperature wells, pressure taps, airflow stations, etc.
4. Input Flow Measuring Devices shall be installed in strict compliance with ASME guidelines affecting non-standard approach conditions.
5. Outside Air Sensors
   a. Sensors shall be mounted on the North wall to minimize solar radiant heat impact or located in a continuous intake flow adequate to monitor outside air conditions accurately.
   b. Sensors shall be installed with a rain proof, perforated cover.
6. Water Differential Pressure Sensors
   a. Differential pressure transmitters used for flow measurement shall be sized to the flow-sensing device.
   b. Differential pressure transmitters shall be supplied with tee fittings and shut-off valves in the high and low sensing pick-up lines.
   c. The transmitters shall be installed in an accessible location wherever possible.
7. Medium to High Differential Water Pressure Applications (Over 21” w.c.):
   a. Air bleed units, bypass valves and compression fittings shall be provided.
8. Building Differential Air Pressure Applications (-1” to +1” w.c.):
   a. Transmitters exterior sensing tip shall be installed with a shielded static air probe to reduce pressure fluctuations caused by wind.
   b. The interior tip shall be inconspicuous and located as shown on the drawings.
9. Air Flow Stations
   a. Where the stations are installed in insulated ducts, the airflow passage of the station shall be the same size as the inside airflow dimension of the duct.
   b. Station flanges shall be two inch to three inch to facilitate matching connecting ductwork.
10. Duct Temperature Sensors:
   a. Duct mount sensors shall mount in an electrical box through a hole in the duct and be positioned so as to be easily accessible for repair or replacement.
   b. The sensors shall be insertion type and constructed as a complete assembly including lock nut and mounting plate.
   c. For ductwork greater in any dimension than 48 inches or where air temperature stratification exists such as a mixed air plenum, utilize an averaging sensor.
   d. The sensor shall be mounted to suitable supports using factory approved element holders.
11. Space Sensors:
   a. Shall be mounted per ADA requirements.

b. Provide lockable tamper-proof covers in public areas and/or where indicated on the plans.

12. Low Temperature Limit Switches:
    a. Install on the discharge side of the first water or steam coil in the air stream.
    b. Mount element horizontally across duct in a serpentine pattern insuring each square foot of coil is protected by 1 foot of sensor.
    c. For large duct areas where the sensing element does not provide full coverage of the air stream, provide additional switches as required to provide full protection of the air stream.
13. Air Differential Pressure Status Switches:
    a. Install with static pressure tips, tubing, fittings, and air filter.
14. Water Differential Pressure Status Switches:
    a. Install with shut off valves for isolation.

I. HVAC Output Devices
1. All output devices shall be installed per the manufacturers recommendation. The mechanical contractor shall install all in-line devices such as control valves, dampers, airflow stations, pressure wells, etc.
2. Actuators: All control actuators shall be sized capable of closing against the maximum system shut-off pressure. The actuator shall modulate in a smooth fashion through the entire stroke. When any pneumatic actuator is sequenced with another device, pilot positioners shall be installed to allow for proper sequencing.
3. Control Dampers: Shall be opposed blade for modulating control of airflow. Parallel blade dampers shall be installed for two position applications.
4. Control Valves: Shall be sized for proper flow control with equal percentage valve plugs. The maximum pressure drop for water applications shall be 5 PSI. The maximum pressure drop for steam applications shall be 7 PSI.
5. Electronic Signal Isolation Transducers: Whenever an analog output signal from the Building Management System is to be connected to an external control system as an input (such as a chiller control panel), or is to receive as an input a signal from a remote system, provide a signal isolation transducer. Signal isolation transducer shall provide ground plane isolation between systems. Signals shall provide optical isolation between systems

## 3.3 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Software Review

a. Due to the complex nature of the BMS, there shall be one software programming review between the Engineer, Owner, and Control Contractor. This shall be an interchange of ideas and operating characteristics relative to system operations and design criteria. Graphical displays and plans shall be reviewed. The Control Contractor shall gather this data and structure the required software and graphics around this information.

B. Start Up

1. Control system to be set up and checked out by factory trained competent technicians skilled in the setting and adjustment of BMS equipment used in this project. This technician to be experienced in the type of systems associated with this BMS.
2. At time of final observation, demonstrate the sequence of operation for each system to Architect. Perform system demonstrations as directed by Owner and Architect.

C. Training
1. One day of on-site orientation by a system technician who is fully knowledgeable of the specific installation details of the project. This orientation shall, at a minimum, consist of a review of the project as-built drawings, the BMS software layout and naming conventions, and a walk through of the facility to identify panel and device locations.

3.4 COMMISSIONING
A. Fully commission all aspects of the Building Management System work.
B. Acceptance Check Sheet
1. Prepare a check sheet that includes all points for all functions of the BMS as indicated on the point list included in this specification.
2. Submit the check sheet to the Engineer for approval
3. The Engineer will use the check sheet as the basis for acceptance with the BMS Contractor.
C. VAV box performance verification and documentation:
1. The BMS Contractor shall test each VAV box for operation and correct flow. At each step, after a settling time, box air flows and damper positions will be sampled. Following the tests, a pass/fail report indicating results shall be produced. Possible results are Pass, No change in flow between full open and full close, Reverse operation or Maximum flow not achieved. The report shall be submitted as documentation of the installation.
2. The BMS Contractor shall issue a report based on a sampling of the VAV calculated loop performance metrics. The report shall indicate performance criteria, include the count of conforming and non-conforming boxes, list the non-conforming boxes along with their performance data, and shall also include graphical representations of performance.
D. Promptly rectify all listed deficiencies and submit to the Engineer that this has been done.

3.5 WARRANTY

A. Warranty on both controls and equipment commences on the date that Owner takes ownership of the building and endures for a period of one year from that date.

B. Equipment shall be warranted for one year (including defects in workmanship and material) under normal use and service. During warranty period supplier shall also replace or repair, free of charge, any equipment proven to be defective in workmanship or material.

C. Certain electronic devices not manufactured by the BMS supplier, such as computers, printers and monitors, shall carry the original manufacturers warranty. Pass any registration and warranty documents and warranty rights to the Owner.

D.

3.6 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

A. Sequences of operations are indicated on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 230900

# SECTION 231113 - FACILITY FUEL-OIL PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fuel-oil pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Joining materials.
4. Specialty valves.
5. Mechanical leak-detection valves.
6. Labels and identification.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for fuel-oil piping materials, installation, testing, and inspecting.

B. Fuel-Oil Valves: Comply with UL 842 and have service mark initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

C. Comply with requirements of the EPA and of state and local authorities having jurisdiction. Include recording of fuel-oil piping.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Maximum Operating-Pressure Ratings: 3-psig (21-kPa) fuel-oil supply pressure at oil-fired appliances.

## 2.3 FUEL-OIL PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M, for butt and socket welding.
3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

    a. Material Group: 1.1.
    b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    d. Gasket Materials: Asbestos free, ASME B16.20 metallic, or ASME B16.21 nonmetallic, gaskets compatible with fuel oil.
    e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, cadmium-plated steel.

5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.

    a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

## 2.4 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Metallic Flexible Connectors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. American Flexible Hose Co., Inc.
    b. Flexicraft Industries.
    c. FLEX-ING, Inc.
    d. Hose Master, Inc.
    e. Metraflex Company (The).

f. Proco Products, Inc.
g. Tru-Flex Metal Hose Corp.
h. Unaflex.

2. Listed and labeled for aboveground and underground applications by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze or stainless-steel, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
4. Minimum Operating Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. End Connections: Socket, flanged, or threaded end to match connected piping.
6. Maximum Length: 30 inches (762 mm.)
7. Swivel end, 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum operating pressure.
8. Factory-furnished anode for connection to cathodic protection.

B. Nonmetallic Flexible Connectors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Flexible Hose Co., Inc.
b. Flexicraft Industries.
c. FLEX-ING, Inc.
d. Tru-Flex Metal Hose Corp.

2. Listed and labeled for underground applications by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. PFTE bellows with woven, flexible, bronze or stainless-steel, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
4. Minimum Operating Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. End Connections: Socket, flanged, or threaded end to match connected piping.
6. Maximum Length: 30 inches (762 mm.)
7. Swivel end, 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum operating pressure.
8. Factory-furnished anode.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

D. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.

4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

E. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).

F. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

## 2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape for Threaded Joints: Suitable for fuel oil.

B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Pressure Relief Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Anderson Greenwood; Pentair, Ltd.
    b. Fulflo Specialties, Inc.
    c. OPW Engineered Systems; OPW Fluid Transfer Group; a Dover company.
    d. Webster Fuel Pumps & Valves; a division of Capital City Tool, Inc.
2. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
4. Springs: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
5. Seat and Seal: Nitrile rubber.
6. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).

9. Relief Pressure Setting: 60 psig (414 kPa).

B. Oil Safety Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Anderson Greenwood; Pentair, Ltd.
   b. Fulflo Specialties, Inc.
   c. OPW Engineered Systems; OPW Fluid Transfer Group; a Dover company.
   d. Webster Fuel Pumps & Valves; a division of Capital City Tool, Inc.
2. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
4. Springs: Stainless steel.
5. Seat and Diaphragm: Nitrile rubber.
6. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
8. Manual override port.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 60 psig (414 kPa).
10. Maximum Outlet Pressure: 3 psig (21 kPa).

C. Emergency Shutoff Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. EMCO Wheaton.
   b. Franklin Fueling Systems.
   c. OPW Engineered Systems; OPW Fluid Transfer Group; a Dover company.
2. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. [**Single**] [**Double**] poppet valve.
4. Body: ASTM A126, cast iron.
5. Disk: FPM.
6. Poppet Spring: Stainless steel.
7. Stem: Plated brass.
8. O-Ring: FPM.
9. Packing Nut: PTFE-coated brass.
10. Fusible link to close valve at 165 deg F (74 deg C).
11. Thermal relief to vent line pressure buildup due to fire.
12. Air test port.
13. Maximum Operating Pressure: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).

## 2.7 MECHANICAL LEAK-DETECTION VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Franklin Fueling Systems.
2. Red Jacket Pumps.

B. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Body: ASTM A126, cast iron.

D. O-Rings: Elastomeric compatible with fuel oil.

E. Piston and Stem Seals: PTFE.

F. Stem and Spring: Stainless steel.

G. Piston Cylinder: Burnished brass.

H. Indicated Leak Rate: Maximum 3 gph (3 mL/s) at 10 psig (69 kPa).

I. Leak Indication: Reduced flow.

## 2.8 LABELS AND IDENTIFICATION

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (762 mm) deep; colored yellow.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel oil to premises or piping section.

B. Comply with NFPA 30 and NFPA 31 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

## 3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install Underground Fuel-Oil Piping Buried:

1. Under Compacted Backfill: 18 inches (457 mm) below finished grade.

2. Under Asphalt 2 Inches (51 mm) Thick: 8 inches (203 mm) below bottom of asphalt.
3. Under 4 Inches (102 mm) of Reinforced Concrete in Areas Subject to Vehicle Traffic: 4 inches (102 mm) below bottom of concrete.
4. If fuel-oil piping is installed with less than 12 inches (305 mm) of cover to finished grade, install in containment piping.
5. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining, to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer. Review protective coating damage with Architect prior to repair.

C. Install vent pipe at a minimum slope of 2 percent downward toward fuel-oil storage tank sump.

D. Assemble and install entry boots for pipe penetrations through sump sidewalls for liquid-tight joints.

E. Install metal pipes, fittings, valves, and flexible connectors at piping connections to AST and UST.

F. Install fittings for changes in direction in rigid pipe.

G. Install system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

## 3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for mechanical installations.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings at a height that allows sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

H. Comply with requirements for equipment specifications for roughing-in requirements.

I. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, or utility spaces; above ceilings; below grade or floors; and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

J. Prohibited Locations:

1. Do not install fuel-oil piping in or through HVAC ducts and plenums, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
2. Do not install fuel-oil piping in solid walls or partitions.

K. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

L. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

M. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at final connection to each piece of equipment and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.

N. Do not use fuel-oil piping as grounding electrode.

O. Install sleeves and sleeve seals for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual fuel-oil shutoff valves on branch connections to fuel-oil appliance.

B. Install valves in accessible locations.

C. Install oil safety valves at inlet of each oil-fired appliance.

D. Install pressure relief valves in distribution piping between the supply and return lines.

E. Install one-piece, bronze ball valve with hose end connection at low points in fuel-oil piping. Comply with requirements in Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."

F. Install manual air vents at high points in fuel-oil piping.

G. Install emergency shutoff valves at dispensers.

## 3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

1. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

## 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Pipe hanger and support and equipment support materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Maximum span, 84 inches (2130 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 108 inches (2740 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
5. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
6. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).

C. Support vertical steel pipe at each floor and at spacing not greater than 15 feet (4.5 m).

## 3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having threaded pipe connection.

C. Connect piping to equipment with shutoff valve and union. Install union between valve and equipment.

D. Install flexible piping connectors at final connection to burners or oil-fired appliances.

## 3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Nameplates, pipe identification, valve tags, and signs are specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplates and signs on or near each service regulator, service meter, and earthquake valve.

1. Text: In addition to identifying unit, distinguish between multiple units; inform operator of operational requirements; indicate safety and emergency precautions; and warn of hazards and improper operations.

C. Install detectable warning tape directly above fuel-oil piping, 12 inches (304 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (152 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs. Terminate tracer wire in an accessible area, and identify as "tracer wire" for future use with plastic-laminate sign.

1. Piping: Over underground fuel-oil distribution piping.

## 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Pressure Test Piping: Minimum hydrostatic or pneumatic test-pressures measured at highest point in system:

1. Fuel-Oil Distribution Piping: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
2. Suction Piping: Minimum 20-in. Hg (68 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
3. Isolate storage tanks if test pressure in piping will cause pressure in storage tanks to exceed 10 psig (69 kPa).

B. Inspect and test fuel-oil piping according to NFPA 31, "Tests of Piping" Paragraph; and according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Bleed air from fuel-oil piping using manual air vents.

E. Fuel-oil piping and equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.11 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Underground Fuel-Oil-Tank Fill and Vent Piping: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

B. Aboveground Fuel-Oil Piping: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.

## 3.12 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground Fuel-Oil Piping: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints

## 3.13 SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves for Aboveground Distribution Piping:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

B. Valves in Branch Piping:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 231113

# SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Makeup-water piping.
4. Condensate-drain piping.
5. Blowdown-drain piping.
6. Air-vent piping.
7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. Pressure-seal fittings.
2. Chemical treatment.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
4. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
5. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.

4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Other building services.
3. Structural members.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 125 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 125 psig at 100 deg F.
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 100 deg F.
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
5. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L .

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. Star Pipe Products.
c. Victaulic Company.

2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. NIBCO INC.
b. Viega.

2. Housing: Copper.

3. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
5. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

F. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. T-DRILL Industries Inc.

G. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

## 2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. Central Sprinkler Company.
c. Star Pipe Products.
d. Victaulic Company.

2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Victaulic Company.

2. Housing: Steel.
3. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
5. Minimum 300-psig working-pressure rating at 230 deg F.

J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.

a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
   b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
   c. Central Plastics Company.
   d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
   e. Jomar International, Ltd.
   f. Matco-Norca.
   g. Watts Regulator Co.
   h. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.

2. Description:

   a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
   b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F .
   c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
   b. Central Plastics Company.
   c. Matco-Norca.
   d. Watts Regulator Co.
   e. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.

2. Description:

   a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
   b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
   c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
   d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    b. Calpico, Inc.
    c. Central Plastics Company.
    d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Description:

    a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig .
    c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Elster Perfection.
    b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    c. Matco-Norca.
    d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    e. Victaulic Company.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
    b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
    c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F .
    d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.6 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.

1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints. In mechanical rooms at equipment connections only.

C. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be the following:

1. Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints. Use the fewest possible joints.

D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.

E. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints. In mechanical rooms at equipment connections only.

F. Chilled-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be the following:

1. Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints. Use the fewest possible joints.

G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be either of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.

H. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.

I. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

J. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.

K. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

L. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

T. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.

U. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.

V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

## 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.

C. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.

E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

## 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

H. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.

I. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

## 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

E. For radiant ceiling cooling and heating systems, copper piping should be provided to allow sub-branch circuiting for each radiant panel zone. Connectors should be provided to allow connection to flexible hose system.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Makeup-water piping.
4. Condensate-drain piping.
5. Blowdown-drain piping.
6. Air-vent piping.
7. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Hydronic specialties.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 125 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 125 psig at 100 deg F.
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
5. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 VALVES

A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."Section 15112 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."Section 15900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."

C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
c. Flow Design Inc.
d. Gerand Engineering Co.
e. Griswold Controls.
f. Nexus Valve, Inc.

g. Taco.
h. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.

2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Plug: Resin.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
c. Flow Design Inc.
d. Gerand Engineering Co.
e. Griswold Controls.
f. Nexus Valve, Inc.
g. Taco.
h. Tour & Andersson.

2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.

f. Watts Regulator Co.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
f. Watts Regulator Co.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Flow Design Inc.
b. Griswold Controls.
c. Nexus Valve, Inc.

2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel , tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.

5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C) .

## 2.3 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

C. Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested after taps are fabricated and shall be labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
4. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
5. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- (20-mm-) diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.

D. Diaphragm -Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Diaphragm: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

E. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.

d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

F. In-Line Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).

G. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AMTROL, Inc.
b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
d. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

H. Buffer Tank
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Lochinvar
b. Cemline
c. Wessels
d. Hanson

2. Body: vertical construction with internal baffles to promote mixing. Constructed in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code Section VIII and stamped and registered with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors. The tanks shall be furnished with two 8" flanged connections, one ¾" air vent tapping, one 1" relief valve tapping, and one 1" drain pipe. Tank shall have a working pressure of 125 psig and shall come with a base ring for installing the tank directly on a level surface.
3. Warranty: 5 years.
4. Finish: primed and painted on external surfaces with a red oxide paint to resist external corrosion.
5. Insulation: field applied, 2" rigid to achieve minimum R-10 resistance.

I. Glycol feed system
1. Furnish and install as shown on the plans and specifications a packaged, automatic glycol solution make up unit model GMU as manufactured by Bell & Gossett or approved equal. The package shall consist of a base, polyethylene reservoir with removable lid, visible solution level scale in gallons and liters, y-strainer, isolation valve, pump, open drip-proof motor, pump isolation, check and balance valve, expansion tank, discharge pressure gage, motor contactor and control circuit in a NEMA 1 panel, and necessary interconnecting piping. Green light shall indicate power supplied to unit. Pump shall start based on falling pressure. System shall require a 115/1/60 single power connection and a 3/4" NPT system piping connection. GMU shall provide 10 GPM and maintain a fill pressure of 30 PSI. Unit includes low level cutout, with red indicator light and 110V contact for alarm indication, to stop the pump during low level condition. Contractor shall furnish application specific pressure reducing valve between GMU and connection to the system piping.

## 2.4 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40 -mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40 -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

C. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 40 -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).

D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

F. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."Section 15124 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install throttling-duty valves at each branch connection to return main.

C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

## 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils in occupied spaces, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only and at heat transfer coils not in occupied spaces. Install manual vents elsewhere as required for air venting.

C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.

E. Expansion Tank (Ceiling Mounted); Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.

1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

F. Expansion Tank (Floor Mounted); Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
2. Separately coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
3. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
4. Automatic condensate pump units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.

1. Show pump layout and connections.
2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
3. Crane Pumps & Systems.
4. Flowserve Corporation.
5. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
6. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
7. Mepco, LLC.
8. PACO Pumps.
9. Patterson Pump Co.; a subsidiary of the Gorman-Rupp Co.
10. Peerless Pump Company.
11. TACO Incorporated.
12. Thrush Company Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
4. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

    a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
    b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
    c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
    d. Unusual Service Conditions: None.

    e. Efficiency: Premium efficiency.

## 2.2 SEPARATELY COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
3. Flowserve Corporation.
4. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
5. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
6. Mepco, LLC.
7. PACO Pumps.
8. Scot Pump; Div. of Ardox Corp.
9. TACO Incorporated.
10. Thrush Company Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. For pumps not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert with interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration.

E. Motor: Single speed and resiliently mounted to pump casing.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

## 2.3 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. American-Marsh Pumps.
2. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
3. Aurora Pump; Division of Pentair Pump Group.
4. Buffalo Pumps, Inc.
5. Crane Pumps & Systems.
6. Flowserve Corporation.
7. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett.
8. Mepco, LLC.
9. PACO Pumps.
10. Peerless Pump Company.
11. Scot Pump; Div. of Ardox Corp.
12. TACO Incorporated.
13. Thrush Company Inc.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and threaded companion-flange connections. Provide integral mount on volute to support the casing, and provide attached piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For pumps not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve .

4. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
5. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.

D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor.

E. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

F. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.

G. Motor: Single speed, secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof .
b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron .
c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.

d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

## 2.4 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Beckett Corporation.
2. Hartell Pumps Div.; Milton Roy Co.
3. Little Giant Pump Co.
4. Mepco, LLC.

B. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

## 2.5 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser:

1. Angle pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast -iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve:

1. Angle or straight pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast -iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
4. Brass gage ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.

B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

E. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

F. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
   1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

## 3.3 ALIGNMENT

A. Perform alignment service.

B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.

C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232216 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install Y-type strainer and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

    a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
6. Start motor.
7. Open discharge valve slowly.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION 232123

# SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:

1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
2. Solenoid valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Filter dryers.
5. Strainers.
6. Pressure-regulating valves.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Refrigerant: Product Data for refrigerants, indicating compliance with refrigerant management practices.

C. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.

1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot .

2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

## 1.8 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; Type, Grade, and wall thickness as selected in Part 3 piping applications articles.

B. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.

C. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.

D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

E. Flanged Unions:

1. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
2. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
3. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
4. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
5. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
6. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket
2. End Connections:

a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.

3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

C. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.

3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 115 -V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
8. Manual operator.

F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F .
6. Superheat: Adjustable .
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig .

H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
6. Equalizer: Internal .
7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 115 -V ac coil.
8. End Connections: Socket.

9. Set Pressure:
10. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
11. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
12. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

I. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina .
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig .
8. Rated Flow:
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina .
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig .
8. Rated Flow:
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

N. Mufflers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

O. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

## 2.4 REFRIGERANTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
5.

B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR , annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

C. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

D. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR , drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

E. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type K , drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

F. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications NPS 2 to NPS 4 : Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

G. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR , annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

H. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type K, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

I. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR , drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

J. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR , drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

K. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping NPS 2 to NPS 4 : Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.

C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Compressor.

K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.

L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

## 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J. Refer to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.

K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

Q. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:

1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.

3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.

R. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

S. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.

H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.

I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

## 3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

    a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

## 3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

## 3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.

4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:

1. Manual chemical-feed equipment.
2. Chemicals.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

B. RO: Reverse osmosis.

C. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:

1. Bypass feeders.
2. Water meters.
3. Chemical test equipment.
4. Chemical material safety data sheets.

B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Other Informational Submittals:

1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:

1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
3. Periodic field service and consultation.
4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
5. Laboratory technical analysis.
6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Ampion Corp.
2. Anderson Chemical Company.
3. Aqua-Chem, Inc.
4. Barclay Water Management, Inc.
5. Boland.
6. Cascade Water Services, Inc.
7. Earthwise Environmental Inc.
8. General Electric Company; GE Water & Process Technologies.
9. H-O-H Water Technology, Inc.
10. Metro Group, Inc. (The); Metropolitan Refining Div.
11. Nalco; an Ecolab company.
12. Watcon, Inc.
13. Water Services Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.

B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, shall have the following water qualities:

1. pH: Maintain a value between 7 and 9.
2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
6. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
7. Total Dissolved Solids (TDS): Maintain a maximum value of 1,000 ppm.
8. Hardness as CaCO3: 30 to 500 ppm
9. Alkalinity as CaCO: 30 to 500 ppm
10. Chlorides: Less than 200 ppm
11. Sulfates: Less than 200 ppm
12. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
13. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
14. Microbiological Limits:

a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

## 2.3 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal.
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

## 2.4 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Water Meter:

1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. Control: Low-voltage signal capable of transmitting 1000 feet.
8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.5 CHEMICALS

A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.

C. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.

D. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.

E. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating chilled water, and equipped with the following:

1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
5. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

C. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

D. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.

E. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.

F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.

C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. At four -week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.

F. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:

1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

## 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232513

# SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
5. Laboratory Test Reports: For antimicrobial coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

E. Mockups:

1. Before installing duct systems, build mockups representing static-pressure classes in excess of 3-inch wg . Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:

    a. Five transverse joints.
    b. One access door(s).
    c. Two typical branch connections, each with at least one elbow.

d. Two typical flexible duct or flexible-connector connections for each duct and apparatus.
e. One 90-degree turn(s) with turning vanes.
f. One fire damper(s).
g. Perform leakage tests specified in "Field Quality Control" Article. Revise mockup construction and perform additional tests as required to achieve specified minimum acceptable results.

2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

a. Lindab Inc.
b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
c. SEMCO Incorporated.
d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc..

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 .
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 .
2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils thick on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil thick on opposite surface.
3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.

E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.

F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.

G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:

1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: White.
6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.

H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

A. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
b. Armacell LLC.
c. Rubatex International, LLC
d. K-FLEX (Duct Liner Gray)

2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

   a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Sound Absorption Coefficients: 1" thickness, NRC = 0.55

B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel ; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

   a. Fan discharges.
   b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
   c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.

    a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.

10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 4 inches .
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
11. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

## 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR TYPE 1 COMMERCIAL KITCHEN GREASE HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

A. Install ducts in accordance with NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operation"; SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; and SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines" unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install all ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.

C. All ducts exposed to view shall be constructed of stainless steel as per "Duct Schedule" Article. All ducts concealed from view shall be stainless steel as per "Duct Schedule" Article.

D. All joints shall be welded and shall be telescoping, bell, or flange joint as per NFPA 96.

E. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings.

F. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.

## 3.4 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

## 3.7 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099100.

B. Paint exterior of metal ducts that are not externally insulated/jacketed and located in non-mechanical/electrical areas on the basement level. Color selection to be determined by Architect. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099100.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:

    a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

    a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.9 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.

5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

## 3.10 START UP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

## 3.11 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, PVC-coated, galvanized sheet steel with thicker coating on duct exterior.

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

3. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96.

a. Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
b. Concealed: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 2D finish.
c. Welded seams and joints.
d. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
e. Airtight/watertight.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units :

    a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg .
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units :

    a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

    a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A .
    c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
    d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
2. PVC-Coated Ducts:

    a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized.

3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:

    a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized.

4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminumor galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

G. Liner:

1. Supply Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, thickness and location as shown on plans.
2. Return Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, thickness and location as shown on plans.

3. Supply Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches thick.
4. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches thick.
5. Transfer Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick unless otherwise noted on plans.
6. .
7. Exhaust Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.

H. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

   a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:

      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

   b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:

      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

   c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:

      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

   a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
   b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
   c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."

   a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-

1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam .

I. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."

a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

# SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Smoke dampers.
7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
8. Corridor dampers.
9. Flange connectors.
10. Duct silencers.
11. Turning vanes.
12. Remote damper operators.
13. Duct-mounted access doors.
14. Flexible connectors.
15. Flexible ducts.
16. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233723 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control-damper installations.
d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
e. Duct security bars.
f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

B. Source quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and No.2 finish for exposed ducts.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
6. Nailor Industries Inc.
7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
8. Pottorff.
9. Ruskin Company.
10. Vent Products Company, Inc..

B. Description: Gravity balanced.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm 1250 fpm 2000 fpm.

D. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg 2-inch wg 3-inch wg.

E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.

F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.

G. Blade Action: Parallel.

H. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.

I. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Diameter: 0.20 inch .

J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

M. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
7. Screen Material: Aluminum.
8. Screen Type: Bird.
9. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
6. Nailor Industries Inc.

7. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
8. Pottorff.
9. Ruskin Company.
10. Vent Products Company, Inc.

B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm 1250 fpm 2000 fpm.

D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg 3-inch wg.

E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.

F. Blades:

1. Multiple, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum .
2. Maximum Width: 6 inches.
3. Action: Parallel.
4. Balance: Gravity.
5. Eccentrically pivoted.

G. Blade Seals: Vinyl .

H. Blade Axles: Nonmetallic.

I. Tie Bars and Brackets:

1. Material: Aluminum.
2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.

J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

K. Bearings: Synthetic Stainless steel.

L. Accessories:

1. Flange on intake.
2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

## 2.5 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.

b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
c. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
d. McGill AirFlow LLC.
e. Nailor Industries Inc.
f. Pottorff.
g. Ruskin Company.
h. Trox USA Inc.
i. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:

a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel .
b. Mitered and welded corners.
c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

a. Multiple or single blade.
b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
d. Galvanized -steel, 0.064 inch thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:

a. Oil-impregnated bronze Molded synthetic .
b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
d. Nailor Industries Inc.
e. Pottorff.
f. Ruskin Company.
g. Trox USA Inc.
h. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
    e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:

    a. Oil-impregnated bronze Molded synthetic .
    b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    e. Pottorff.
    f. Ruskin Company.
    g. Trox USA Inc.
    h. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:

    a. Hat shaped.
    b. 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel .
    c. Mitered and welded corners.
    d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

6. Blades:

    a. Multiple or single blade.
    b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.

d. Galvanized , roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.

7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
8. Bearings:

a. Oil-impregnated bronze Molded synthetic.
b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

9. Blade Seals: Vinyl.
10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.
11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
12. Accessories:

a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
d. Nailor Industries Inc.
e. Pottorff.
f. Ruskin Company.
g. Trox USA Inc.
h. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames: Hat -shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:

a. Multiple or single blade.
b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.

7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
8. Bearings:

a. Oil-impregnated bronze Molded synthetic .

b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

9. Blade Seals: Vinyl .
10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.
11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
12. Accessories:

a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

E. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
7. Pottorff.
8. Prefco; Perfect Air Control, Inc.
9. Ruskin Company.
10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream ; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05 0.138 inch or 0.39 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

## 2.7 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff.
6. Ruskin Company.

B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Smoke Detector: provided separately. See fire alarm drawings.

D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.

E. Blades: Airfoil, Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking , 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.

F. Leakage: Class II.

G. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

H. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.039-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone calking.

I. Damper Motors: Modulating action.

J. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz .

K. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for signaling fan control or position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted.

## 2.8 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff.
6. Ruskin Company.

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.

E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.

F. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link device and switch package, factory installed, rated.

G. Smoke Detector: provided separately. See fire alarm drawings.

H. Blades: Airfoil, Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking , 0.063-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.

I. Leakage: Class II.

J. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

K. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.039-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application with factory-furnished silicone calking.

L. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.

M. Damper Motors: Modulating action, normally closed.

N. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

O. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for signaling fan control or position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted.

## 2.9 CORRIDOR DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Pottorff.
5. Ruskin Company.

B. General Requirements: Label combination fire and smoke dampers according to UL 555 for 1-hour or 1-1/2-hour rating by an NRTL.

C. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

D. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.

E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.

F. Blades: Airfoil, Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.

G. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.039-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.

H. Damper Motors: Modulating action.

I. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

## 2.10 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.11 DUCT SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Dynasonics.
2. Industrial Noise Control, Inc.
3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
4. Ruskin Company.
5. Vibro-Acoustics.

B. General Requirements:

1. Factory fabricated.
2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Shape:

1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
5. Rectangular transitional with splitters or baffles.

D. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 , galvanized sheet steel, 0.034 inch thick.

E. Round Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 , galvanized sheet steel.

1. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units up to 24 Inches in Diameter: 0.034 inch thick.
2. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 26 through 40 Inches in Diameter: 0.040 inch thick.
3. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 42 through 52 Inches in Diameter: 0.05 inch thick.
4. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 54 through 60 Inches in Diameter: 0.064 inch thick.

F. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 galvanized sheet metal, 0.034 inch thick, and with 1/8-inch- diameter perforations.

G. Special Construction:

1. Suitable for outdoor use.
2. High transmission loss to achieve STC 45.

H. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.

I. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:

1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
2. Dissipative type with fill material.

a. Fill Material: Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material, packed under not less than 5 percent compression .
b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, and heat sealed before assembly.

3. Lining: As Scheduled.

J. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.

1. Joints: Lock formed and sealed continuously welded or flanged connections.
2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

K. Accessories:

1. Integral 1-1/2 hour fire damper with access door. Access door to be high transmission loss to match silencer.
2. Factory-installed end caps to prevent contamination during shipping.
3. Removable splitters.
4. Airflow measuring devices.

L. Source Quality Control: Test according to ASTM E 477.

1. Testing to be witnessed by Architect Owner.
2. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least 2000-fpm face velocity.

3. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or 6-inch wg static pressure, whichever is greater.

## 2.12 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. METALAIRE, Inc.
5. SEMCO Incorporated.
6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.13 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pottorff.
2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
3. Young Regulator Company.

B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.

C. Tubing: Brass.

D. Cable: Stainless steel.

E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.

F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Steel.

## 2.14 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
4. Elgen Manufacturing.
5. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
7. McGill AirFlow LLC.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. Pottorff.
10. Ventfabrics, Inc.
11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. Vision panel.
d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

C. Pressure Relief Access Door:

1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.

3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg .
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.15 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Flame Gard, Inc.
3. 3M.

B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.

D. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.

F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

## 2.16 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.

1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.

1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd.
2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

## 2.17 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

C. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.

D. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.

E. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

F. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

G. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

## 2.18 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.

H. Connect ducts to duct silencers with flexible duct connectors.

I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
4. At drain pans and seals.
5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.

8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
10. Control devices requiring inspection.
11. Elsewhere as indicated.

J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

K. Access Door Sizes:

1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

L. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

N. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

P. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

# SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
   2. In-line centrifugal fans.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on sea level.

B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:

   1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
   2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
   3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
   4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
   5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
   6. Roof curbs.
   7. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
4. Loren Cook Company.
5. PennBarry.

B. Housing: Removable, extruded-aluminum, rectangular top ; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt Drives:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh, aluminum or brass wire.

4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

1. Configuration: Self-flashing without a cant strip, with mounting flange .
2. Overall Height: 12 inches (300 mm) .
3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

## 2.2 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
3. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
4. Loren Cook Company.
5. PennBarry.

B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.

C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door.

D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.

E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.

F. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm) mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

## 2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stops having a static deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) . Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

G. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.

E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

# SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.
   2. Diffuser-type air terminal units.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products, including rated capacities, furnished specialties, sound-power ratings, and accessories.

   1. Air terminal units.
   2. Liners and adhesives.
   3. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
   1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
   2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
   3. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
   3. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

   1. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

2. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
2. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" .

## 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek Company.
2. Environmental Technologies, Inc.
3. Krueger.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Price Industries.
6. Titus.
7. Trox USA Inc.; a subsidiary of the TROX GROUP.
8. Tuttle & Bailey.

B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

C. Casing: 0.032-inch aluminum, double wall.

1. Casing Lining: Adhesive attached, 1-inch- thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   a. Cover liner with nonporous foil and perforated metal.
2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections, size matching inlet size.
4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

1. Maximum Damper Leakage: ARI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. Damper Position: Normally open .

E. Attenuator Section: 0.032-inch aluminum sheet.

1. Lining: Adhesive attached, 1-inch- thick, coated, fibrous-glass duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071, and having a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50, for both insulation and adhesive, when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   a. Cover liner with nonporous foil and perforated metal.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

F. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve.

G. Direct Digital Controls: Bidirectional damper operators and microprocessor-based controller and room sensor. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and shall have the following features:

1. Damper Actuator: powered closed, spring return open .
2. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:

    a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
    b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
    c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
    d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

3. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.

H. Control Sequence:

1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
2. See drawings for full sequences.

## 2.4 DIFFUSER-TYPE AIR TERMINAL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Acutherm.
2. Carnes Company.
3. Jackson Systems, LLC.
4. Rickard Air Diffusion.

B. Configuration: Volume-damper, diffuser, controller assembly and wall-mounted thermostat.

C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.

D. Diffuser: Galvanized steel with white baked-enamel finish.

E. Control Sequence: Diffusion dampers open and close to regulate airflow into the room in response to room temperature. The dampers are mechanically actuated by internal, factory-set thermal element thermostats.

## 2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Steel Cables: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603 .

D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

E. Air Terminal Unit Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

F. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes and plates for units with steel casings; aluminum for units with aluminum casings.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to ARI 880.

1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and ARI certification seal.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.

## 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.

3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.

C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Install piping adjacent to air terminal unit to allow service and maintenance.

B. Hot-Water Piping: In addition to requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.

C. Connect ducts to air terminal units according to Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Coordinate duct installations and specialty arrangements with Drawings.

D. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
4. Verify that control connections are complete.
5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

## 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 233600

# SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Linear bar diffusers.
3. Linear slot diffusers.
4. Adjustable bar registers and grilles.
5. Fixed face registers and grilles.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 089116 "Operable Wall Louvers" and Section 089119 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.

C. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Plaque Type Diffuser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
b. Hart & Cooley Inc.
c. Krueger.
d. Nailor Industries Inc.
e. Price Industries: SPD.
f. Titus.
g. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Diffusers shall consist of a precision formed back cone of one-piece seamless construction that incorporates a round inlet collar of sufficient length for connecting rigid or flexible duct. An inner plaque assembly shall be incorporated and shall drop no more than 1/4 in. below the ceiling plane to assure proper air distribution performance. The inner plaque assembly shall be completely removable from the diffuser face to allow for full access to any dampers or other ductwork components located near the diffuser neck. Finish shall be white powder coat, unless otherwise noted. Paint finish shall pass 500 hours of salt spray exposure with no measurable creep in accordance with ASTM D1654 and 1000 hours with no rusting or blistering as per ASTM D610 and ASTM D714.
4. Material: Steel.
5. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
6. Face Size: See Schedule.
7. Face Style: See Schedule.
8. Border: Price Type 31, unless otherwise noted.
9. Pattern: Fixed.
10. Accessories:

a. Equalizing grid, when noted.

b. Plaster ring, as needed.

## 2.2 LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS

A. Linear Bar Diffuser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Air Research Diffuser Products, Inc.
b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
c. Carnes.
d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
f. Krueger.
g. METALAIRE, Inc.
h. Nailor Industries Inc.
i. Price Industries: LPB 25C.
j. Titus.
k. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Devices shall be utilized with electric fin tube heaters at building windows.
3. Material: Aluminum.
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect .
5. Pencil-Proof Core Spacing Arrangement: 3/16-inch- thick blades spaced 7/16 inch apart, zero-degree deflection.
6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
7. Mounting: Concealed bracket.
8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed-blade assembly.
9. Accessories: Alignment pins, Core clips.

B. Linear Slot Diffuser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
b. Hart & Cooley Inc.
c. Krueger.
d. Nailor Industries Inc.
e. Price Industries: SDS for supply, SDR for return.
f. Titus.
g. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Diffusers shall have (1 - 10) discharge slots (1/2 in., 3/4 in., 1 in., 1 1/2 in.) wide with aerodynamically curved “ice tong” shaped pattern controllers for 180 degree air pattern control and air flow dampering if required. The diffuser border shall be heavy extruded aluminum construction with extruded aluminum spacers and mitered end flanges, open ends, flush end caps or angle end caps. Continuous length units shall be provided with factory assembled corner modules to suit drawings and on site conditions. Joiner strips

shall be provided to align continuous slot assemblies. The diffuser border shall be finished in White Powder Coat, unless otherwise noted. Paint finish shall pass 500 hours of salt spray exposure with no measurable creep in accordance with ASTM D1654 and 1000 hours with no rusting or blistering as per ASTM D610 and ASTM D714.

4. Material - Shell: Aluminum, insulated.
5. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
6. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
7. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
8. Border: Concealed (Price Type 2), unless otherwise noted.
9. End Condition: Price Type XX, unless otherwise noted.
10. Slot Width: 3/4".
11. Number of Slots: See Schedule.
12. Length: See Schedule.
13. Accessories: See Schedule.
    a. All units shall include factory engineered insulated plenum (Price SDBI) to achieve rated acoustic and throw performance, except for ducted horizontal throw installations through existing masonry walls. Provide equalizing grid for these conditions.

C. Custom Linear Slot Diffuser:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    b. Hart & Cooley Inc.
    c. Krueger.
    d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    e. Price Industries: JS.
    f. Titus.
    g. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows – jet perpendicular to diffuser face.

3. Supply and return Custom Flow linear slot diffusers shall be furnished and installed. Provide shop drawings accompanied by itemized list indicating units' location and appropriate product submittal drawings provided by the manufacturer. Exact dimensions of walls and ceiling are as per the architectural drawings. Install diffusers so they fit properly in the ceiling system with suspension wire (48 in. o/c MAX.) and/or attachment plates — as required. Coordinate installation with General Contractor and other sub contractors. The linear slot diffuser shall utilize heavy wall-extruded aluminum air deflector frames. These frames shall be designed to accommodate notched compressible space bars, spaced approximately 24 in. on center. The steel air pattern controllers are adjustable and can be moved from side to side to create various air pattern configurations. The spacer bars and pattern controllers shall be removable for on-site modification and trimming. Pattern controllers may also be adjusted to constrict flow, or to allow shut off without any blank off devices.

4. The Custom Flow linear slot diffuser shall be complete with factory end conditions as shown or indicated. Custom Flow supply air engineered plenums shall be manufactured

of heavy gauge wipe coat steel. These units shall be insulated with a side inlet collar. When engineered plenum end caps are not positioned directly over the linear spacer bar, install MB blank-off from plenum end cap to next spacer bar. RB return air sight baffles and MB blank-off shall be manufactured of heavy gauge steel painted black.

5. Material - Shell: Aluminum, insulated.
6. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
7. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
8. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.
9. Border: Drywall (Price Type 21), unless otherwise noted.
10. End Condition: Price Type ZZ, unless otherwise noted.
11. Slot Width: See Schedule.
12. Number of Slots: See Schedule.
13. Length: See Schedule.
14. Accessories: See Schedule.
    a. All units shall include factory insulated engineered plenum (Price JSPI) to achieve rated acoustic and throw performance, except for ducted horizontal throw installations through existing masonry walls. Provide equalizing grid for these conditions.

## 2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Grille:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    c. Carnes.
    d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
    e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
    f. Krueger.
    g. METALAIRE, Inc.
    h. Nailor Industries Inc.
    i. Price Industries: 520 supply
    j. Titus.
    k. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect .
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Parallel to short dimension.
5. Core Construction: Removable.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Parallel to long dimension.
7. Frame: 1 inch wide.
8. Mounting: Duct/Wall Mounted.

B. Fixed Face Grille:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
c. Carnes.
d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
f. Krueger.
g. Nailor Industries Inc.
h. Price Industries: 535 return/exhaust
i. Titus.
j. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect.
4. Face Arrangement: parallel to long dimension.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1 inch wide.
7. Mounting: Duct/Ceiling/Wall mount.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

# SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Roof hoods.
   2. Goosenecks.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design ventilators, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Ventilators shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of ventilator components, noise or metal fatigue caused by ventilator blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.

   1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Structural Drawings.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.

   1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F , material surfaces.

D. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. For louvered-penthouse ventilators specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings: For gravity ventilators. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, ventilator attachments to curbs, and curb attachments to roof structure.

1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.

D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

E. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

F. Samples for Verification: For each type of louvered-penthouse ventilator indicated, in manufacturer's standard size.

G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For shop-fabricated ventilators indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of shop-fabricated ventilators.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Roof framing plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Structural members to which roof curbs and ventilators will be attached.
2. Sizes and locations of roof openings.

B. Welding certificates.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.

D. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, with No. 4 finish.

E. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.

1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
2. Use Phillips flat -head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

F. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

## 2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Factory or shop fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.

C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.

D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.

E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

## 2.3 ROOF HOODS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corporation.
2. Aerovent.
3. Carnes.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. JencoFan.
6. Loren Cook Company.
7. PennBarry.

B. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figures 6-6 and 6-7.

C. Materials: Aluminum sheet, minimum 0.063-inch- thick base and 0.050-inch- thick hood; suitably reinforced.

D. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches .

E. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch- square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

F. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

G. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 GOOSENECKS

A. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 6-5; with a minimum of 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet.

B. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 12 inches .

C. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch- square mesh, 0.063-inch wire .

D. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 mesh, 0.012-inch wire.

E. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply an air-dried primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil for topcoat and an overall minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Install goosenecks on curb base where throat size exceeds 9 by 9 inches.

C. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

E. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.

F. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

G. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.

H. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 233723

# SECTION 235123 - GAS VENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Listed double-wall vents.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for product.

B. Shop Drawings: For vents.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of hangers and seismic restraints.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for shop and field welding of joints and seams in vents.

B. Certified Sizing Calculations: Manufacturer shall certify venting system sizing calculations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LISTED TYPE L VENTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Heatfab Saf-T Vent.
2. M&G DuraVent, Inc.; a member of the M&G Group.
3. Metal-Fab, Inc.
4. Schebler Co. (The).
5. Selkirk Corporation.
6. Simpson Dura-Vent Co., Inc.
7. Van-Packer Company, Inc.

B. Description: Double-wall metal vents tested according to UL 641 and rated for 570 deg F (300 deg C) continuously or 1700 deg F (926 deg C) for 10 minutes; with neutral or negative flue pressure complying with NFPA 211.

C. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 2-inch (50-mm) airspace filled with high-temperature, ceramic-fiber insulation.

D. Inner Shell: ASTM A666, Type 304 stainless steel.

E. Outer Jacket: Aluminized steel.

F. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, draft-hood connectors, terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same assembly.
1. Termination: Round chimney top designed to exclude 98 percent of rainfall.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATION

A. Listed Type L Vent: Vents for low-heat appliances.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF LISTED VENTS

A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

B. Comply with minimum clearances from combustibles and minimum termination heights according to product listing or NFPA 211, whichever is most stringent.

C. Seal between sections of positive-pressure vents according to manufacturer's written installation instructions, using sealants recommended by manufacturer.

D. Support vents at intervals recommended by manufacturer to support weight of vents and all accessories, without exceeding appliance loading.

E. Lap joints in direction of flow.

## 3.4 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 235123

# SECTION 235223 - CAST-IRON BOILERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cast-iron boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each boiler.

1. Design calculations and vibration isolation base details, signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

    a. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
    b. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for boiler, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

E. Product Test Reports:

1. CSA B51 pressure vessel Canadian Registration Number (CRN).
2. Startup service reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers, components, and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace controls and heat exchangers of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Controls: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."

D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N.

E. I=B=R Compliance: Boilers shall be tested and rated according to AHRI's "Rating Procedure for Heating Boilers" and "Testing Standard for Commercial Boilers," with I=B=R emblem on a nameplate affixed to boiler.

F. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 726 and UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

G. CSA Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with CSA B51.

H. Mounting Frame: Steel rails used to mount assembled boiler package on concrete base.

1. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting base and attachment to boiler, accessories, and components with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" when mounting base is anchored to building structure.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Bosch.
2. Hydrotherm, Inc./Mestek, Inc.
3. Viessmann Manufacturing Co. (US) Inc.
4. Weil-McLain.

## 2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

A. GENERAL

1. The hot water heating boiler shall incorporate a triple-pass cast iron heat transfer design. The boiler design shall allow for #2 fuel oil, natural gas and propane gas. Venting shall be standard Category I, non-condensing and negative draft. The control packages shall come pre-wired for the boiler/burner combination.

B. PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

1. Each boiler shall be designed for operating at: Total input 2559 MBH (750 kW) on natural/propane gas and 2471 MBH (724 kW) on #2 fuel oil
2. Total CSA output 2175 MBH (637 kW)
3. Combustion efficiency on natural gas and propane shall not be below 85%, as tested in accordance with the harmonized standard ANSI Z21.13.CSA 4.9. Combustion efficiency on #2 fuel oil shall not be below 88%.
4. ASME maximum allowable working pressure (MAWP): 75 psig;

5. ASME maximum water temperature (Fixed High Limit): 248°F (120°C).
6. The heat exchanger filled with water shall weigh no less than 5666 lbs (2570 kg) excluding the burner, controls and jacketing. Input rate per heat exchanger surface area shall not exceed 9.0 MBH/ft2 (28.4 kW/m2) for oil, and 9.3 MBH/ft2 (29.4 kW/m2) for gas, based on input at full fire.
7. No additional safety devices shall be required to safeguard against low flow conditions.
8. The boiler shall be able to supply a temperature of up to 210°F (99°C) at 75 psig.
9. Boiler minimum return water temperature shall not be below 104°F (40°C) on oil and 127°F (52.8°C) on gas.
10. Supply/return piping shall incorporate one of the following two methods for protecting the boiler against flue gas condensation: a 100% bypass valve or a 30% bypass pump.
11. A return water distribution tube shall be standard equipment, for reducing thermal stress associated with uneven water flow between sections.
12. The standard control options shall be able to operate independently, or integrate with building management system protocols as referenced in the control section.

C. CONSTRUCTION
1. The combustion chamber and flue gas passageways shall be constructed of sectional cast iron, and shall have a triple-pass design. The grade of cast iron shall be lamellar graphite.
2. The water side of the heat exchanger shall use a press-nipple design between sections to allow transportation of individual sections and reliable field assembly.
3. The heat exchanger shall have a full-swing door, left- or right-hinge, to allow for easy inspection and cleaning.
4. The R-value of the insulation shall be equivalent to 4" (100 mm) fiberglass with nylon backing.

D. CERTIFICATIONS
1. All individual components shall be accepted as part of the system under the governing body having jurisdiction. Field approval shall not be required for any component. Boiler shall be CSA approved and shall be built in compliance with ASME Section IV, carrying the "H" stamp.
2. The boiler shall have the following approvals and listings, or be in compliance with:
   a. CSA, CRN, ASME, I=B=R, NY City approval, MA State approval

## 2.4 BURNER

A. GENERAL
1. The burner shall be a forced draft automatic burner designed to burn #2 fuel oil.

B. PERFORMANCE CRITERIA
1. Each burner shall have a firing rate of 850 - 2700 MBH.

C. CONSTRUCTION
1. Burner Housing
   a. The burner housing shall be made of cast aluminum, and shall be capable of hinging open to the left or to the right.
   b. The burner housing shall incorporate the following features:

1) A flange safety interlock switch to prevent the burner from starting when in the open position
2) A self-checking differential air pressure switch
3) A large sight glass for viewing the flame
4) A removable cover to allow free access to serviceable components

2. Fan
   a. The blower wheel shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
3. Air Intake
   a. The air intake shall consist of multiple aluminum air intake vanes on the suction side for combustion air regulation. Air louvers shall be controlled by a dedicated stepper motor having 900 settable increments from 90 angular degrees (open) to 0 angular degrees (closed). Air louvers shall be driven to the fully closed position during the "off" cycle to minimize draft losses. The air intake shall include sound attenuating material, and a screen to reduce the likelihood of foreign material entering the blower.
4. Combustion Head
   a. The flame tube and diffuser assembly shall be made of stainless steel alloy, and shall have a temperature rating of 1470°F. The diffuser, nozzle assembly and all serviceable components shall be accessible without need for burner removal. The combustion head shall be adjustable such that the pressure drop across the diffuser can be optimized to match the maximum firing rate of the burner.
5. Burner Management System
   a. The burner management system shall integrate fuel/air ratio control, flame safeguard functions, load control and communications into one control system. The burner management system shall have four levels of password protection.
   b. The fuel/air ratio control system shall be free of linkages which connect fuel control and air control functions into a common servomotor or actuator. Fuel and air control components shall be individually controlled by dedicated stepper motors programmable via the keypad. The fuel/air ratio shall be infinitely adjustable throughout the firing range.
   c. The burner shall have independent ignition position (independent of any other firing position).
   d. All functions including burner history, commissioned values, operating parameters and pressure/temperature settings shall be accessible/adjustable without the need for a laptop computer or other special tools.
   e. Both the programming pad and the main control module shall hold programmed data with capability of uploading/downloading from one to the other.
   f. The flame safeguard system shall be integrated into the control system and shall include sensor electrode (standard) or QRI infrared flicker detector (option). The combustion control system shall include built-in PID pressure/temperature control and time/temperature adjustable cold start function to protect the boiler from thermal shock.
   g. The control system shall have selectable operating modes to allow for the following:
      1) Direct modulation via the building automation system using either a 4-20 mA, 2-10V or floating type operating signal.
      2) Set-point adjustment via the building automation system using either a 4-20 mA, 2-10V or floating type operating signal.

h. The burner control system shall be capable of providing the following functions and data signals via a MODBus interface:
   1) Burner ON/OFF
   2) Load signal
   3) Set-point and process value
   4) Operating information
   5) Actual load position of burner
   6) Lock-out with failure code
   7) Actual position (on/off) of air pressure switch, valves, fan, gas pressure, flame supervision
   8) Start-up counter
   9) Actual operating hours

i. The control system shall incorporate a 4-line, 64 character LCD display (ABE). The ABE display shall be capable of being mounted either on the burner or in a remote control panel. ABE shall be easy to remove from its mounting while remaining connected to the wiring harness enabling a technician to have "hand held" adjustment capability.

6. Motor
   a. The burner shall have a three-phase (or single-phase) TEFC blower motor fully compatible for use with variable frequency drive.

D. CERTIFICATIONS
1. All individual components shall be accepted as part of the system under the governing body having jurisdiction. Field approval shall not be required for any component.
2. The minimum standards for #2 fuel oil burners are:
   a. NFPA 31 Standard for the Installation of Oil Burning Equipment (for U.S.)
   b. ANSI/NFPA 70 National Electrical Code (for U.S.)

## 2.5 TRIM FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.9.

B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.

C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.

D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.

E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.

F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) hose-end gate valve.

2.6 CONTROLS

A. Building Management System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building management system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.

1. Hardwired Points:

a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm low-water-level alarm.
b. Control: On/off operation, hot-water-supply temperature set-point adjustment.

2. A communication interface with building management system shall enable building management system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building management system.

B. Boiler Controller
1. The control unit shall provide control for a single boiler with one high temperature heating circuit. Temperature control of the heating circuit shall be from internal set point control, optional 0-10VDC interface input into boiler control, dry contact 143/146 demand inputs or optional LON communication card. The control shall operate either a single-stage, two-stage or modulating burner as a function of set point boiler water temperature.

C. General Requirements
1. The controller shall have the following features:
a. Compatible with single-stage, two-stage and modulating burners.
b. EPROM memory is maintained without main power.
c. Control algorithms are PID-based.
d. LON ready with the addition of optional Viessmann LON communication module.
e. Quick connect plug & play system for low voltage controls.
f. Communication with other protocols such as Modbus, BacNet and Ethernet/IP shall be available.
2. The controller shall be factory tested and approved by CSA as part of a package with the compatible boilers.
3. The controller shall be able to support the following output devices:
a. (1) Domestic hot water pump.
b. (1) Boiler Pump.
c. (1) Shunt pump for boiler return water temperature elevation.
d. (1) Operation with Single Stage, Two Stage or modulating Burner.
e. (1) Motorized modulating valve output for boiler isolation or return temperature elevation.

D. Construction
1. Control Interface
a. The control interface shall be menu driven with an alpha-numeric display (°F or °C) and shall have the following features:
1) Able to display all system temperatures and set points.
2) Displays unique fault message during and alarm.
3) A program selection function.

4) Domestic hot water temperature set point adjustment function.
5) Information indicator with confirmation function.
6) Boiler operating hours display.
7) Number of burner starts display.
8) Operating status check function.
9) Emission test switch.
10) Boiler supply water temperature set point adjustment function.

2. Additional Features
   a. The controller shall have the following additional features:
      1) On/Off switch.
      2) Default factory settings reset function.
      3) Operating status indication light.
      4) Tamper-proof adjustable high limit.
      5) Manual override switch.
      6) TUV service switch (overrides AHL).
      7) Manual reset fixed high limit.
      8) Fault Indicator light.
      9) Integration of individual combustion air dampers or blowers using the Combustion Air Device Adapter.
      10) Operating condition scans.
      11) Maintenance requirement status.
      12) Relay test function.
      13) Option to incorporate a flue gas temperature sensor.
      14) Ability to restore the control to factory defaults.
   b. The fixed high limit shall have the following tamper-proof features:
      1) A locking mechanism which allows for lower temperature adjustments only. Once a lower temperature setting is adjusted, the limit cannot revert back to a higher temperature setting.
3. Fault Management
   a. If a fault occurs on a boiler, the fault code shall be indicated in the display window and by the flashing red fault lamp. A compiled failure alarm contact shall close in order to signal the alarm condition to a Building Automation System (BAS). If a LON card is installed, the message shall also be broadcasted on the LON communication bus. The error history shall be saved to memory. An optional Output Module connected to the LON bus shall close a set of potential-free contacts for each of the following conditions: burner status, burner failure, high boiler temperature and low water cut-off alarm.
4. Auxiliary Inputs
   a. The following dry contact inputs shall be available to be wired to each boiler to control the following functions:
      1) Boiler disable.
      2) Change between modulating to staged burner control.
      3) External heat demand.
5. Building Management System Interface
   a. The controller shall use the LON communication protocol and shall be able to be fully integrated into a building automation system running on the LON protocol without having to use a gateway.

b. The controller shall have the ability, through the use of an Input Module, to accept a 0-10V signal from a Building Management System for the purpose of allowing remote control of the boiler supply water temperature set point.
c. The controller shall be able to fully integrate with Building Management Systems running on the BacNet or N2 communication protocols via a gateway.

6. Remote Communication Interface
   a. The controller shall have the ability to be connected to a phone dialer, enabling remote control of any of the functions listed in the Auxiliary inputs section.
   b. The controller shall have the ability to be connected to an Internet server interface, which shall allow access to all programming and operating parameters over the World Wide Web.

E. Certifications
1. All individual components shall be accepted as part of the system under the governing body having jurisdiction. Field approval shall not be required for any component.
2. All electrical wiring is to be done in accordance with the latest editions of:
3. ANSI/NFPA 70 National Electrical Code (for U.S.)

## 2.7 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.

B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.

1. House in NEMA 250, Type [**1**] <**Insert type**> enclosure.
2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a [**metal** ]raceway.
4. Field power interface shall be to [**wire lugs**] [**fused disconnect switch**] [**nonfused disconnect switch**] [**circuit breaker**].
5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls[ **with disconnect switch or circuit breaker**].
6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.

C. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.

B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.

C. Install oil-fired boilers according to NFPA 31.

D. Assemble boiler sections in sequence and seal between each section.

E. Assemble and install boiler trim.

F. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.

G. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.

D. Connect oil piping full size to burner inlet with shutoff valve and union.

E. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

F. Connect steam and condensate piping to supply-, return-, and blowdown-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

G. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

H. Install piping from safety valves to drip-pan elbow and to nearest floor drain.

I. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.

J. Connect breeching full size to boiler outlet. Comply with requirements in Section 235116 "Fabricated Breechings and Accessories" for venting materials.

K. Install flue-gas recirculation duct from vent to burner. Comply with requirements in Section 235123 "Gas Vents" for recirculation duct materials.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

    a. Burner Test: Adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency.
    b. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
    c. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Performance Tests:

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.

2. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.
3. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.

    a. For dual-fuel boilers, perform tests for each fuel.
    b. Test for full capacity.
    c. Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40, and 20 percent of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.

4. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
5. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
6. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are inadequate.
7. Notify Architect in advance of test dates.
8. Document test results in a report and submit to Architect.

F. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 235223

# SECTION 235700 - HEAT EXCHANGERS FOR HVAC

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes shell-and-tube heat exchangers.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. TEMA: Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Provide compatibility statement of product with heat transfer fluids associated with each application.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints and for designing bases.
2. Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Tube-removal space.
2. Structural members to which heat exchangers will be attached.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of shell-and-tube heat exchanger. Documentation that shell-and-tube heat exchangers comply with "TEMA Standards."

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For heat exchangers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of domestic-water heat exchangers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including heat exchanger, storage tank, and supports.
b. Faulty operation of controls.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

a. Shell-and-Tube, Domestic-Water Heat Exchangers:

1) Tube Coil: One year(s).
2) Other Components: One year(s).

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SHELL-AND-TUBE HEAT EXCHANGERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. API Heat Transfer Inc.
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Flo Fab Inc.
4. ITT Corporation.
5. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
6. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.

B. Description: Packaged assembly of tank, heat-exchanger coils, and specialties.

C. Construction:

1. Fabricate and label heat exchangers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.
2. Fabricate and label shell-and-tube heat exchangers to comply with "TEMA Standards."

D. Configuration: U-tube with removable bundle.

E. Shell Materials: Steel.

F. Head:

1. Materials: Cast iron.
2. Flanged and bolted to shell.

G. Tube:

1. Seamless copper (HX-1 for glycol);
2. Tube diameter is determined by manufacturer based on service.

H. Tubesheet Materials: Steel.

I. Baffles: Steel.

J. Piping Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with heat-exchanger shell. Attach tappings to shell before testing and labeling.

1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

K. Support Saddles:

1. Fabricated of material similar to shell.
2. Fabricate foot mount with provision for anchoring to support.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Hangers and Supports:

1. Custom, steel supports for mounting on wall.

a. Minimum Number of Cradles: 2.

2. Field-fabricated steel supports to ensure both horizontal and vertical support of heat exchanger. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Miscellaneous Components for Steam Unit: Strainers, steam-control valve, steam trap, valves, pressure gage, thermometer, and piping.

C. Pressure Relief Valves: Bronze, ASME rated and stamped.

1. Pressure relief valve setting: TBD.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect heat exchangers according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1. Affix ASME label.

B. Hydrostatically test heat exchangers to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Heat exchangers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and for structural rigidity, strength, anchors, and other conditions affecting performance of heat exchangers.

B. Examine roughing-in for heat-exchanger piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 SHELL-AND-TUBE HEAT-EXCHANGER INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install heat exchangers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

B. Install heat exchangers on saddle supports.

C. Heat-Exchanger Supports: Use factory-fabricated steel cradles and supports specifically designed for each heat exchanger.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for tube removal, service, and maintenance.

C. Install piping adjacent to heat exchangers to allow space for service and maintenance of heat exchangers. Arrange piping for easy removal of heat exchangers.

D. Install shutoff valves at heat-exchanger inlet and outlet connections.

E. Install relief valves on heat-exchanger heated-fluid connection and install pipe relief valves, full size of valve connection, to floor drain.

F. Install vacuum breaker at heat-exchanger steam inlet connection.

G. Install hose end valve to drain shell.

H. Install thermometer on heat-exchanger and inlet and outlet piping, and install thermometer on heating-fluid inlet and outlet piping. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

I. Install pressure gages on heat-exchanger and heating-fluid piping. Comply with requirements for pressure gages specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Heat exchanger will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation, including outlet fitting and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain heat exchangers.

END OF SECTION 235700

# SECTION 236423.13 - AIR-COOLED, SCROLL WATER CHILLERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged, air-cooled, electric-motor-driven, scroll water chillers.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.

C. DDC: Direct digital control.

D. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in Btu/h to the total power input given in watts at any given set of rating conditions.

E. GFI: Ground fault interrupt.

F. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit for a single chiller calculated per the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and referenced to AHRI standard rating conditions.

G. I/O: Input/output.

H. kW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity in tons at any given set of rating conditions.

I. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single number part-load efficiency figure of merit for a single chiller calculated per the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and intended for operating conditions other than the AHRI standard rating conditions.

J. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

K. TEAO: Totally enclosed air over.

L. TENV: Totally enclosed nonventilating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include refrigerant, rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Performance at AHRI standard conditions and at conditions indicated.
3. Performance at AHRI standard unloading conditions.
4. Minimum evaporator flow rate.
5. Refrigerant capacity of water chiller.
6. Oil capacity of water chiller.
7. Fluid capacity of evaporator.
8. Characteristics of safety relief valves.
9. Force and moment capacity of each piping connection.
10.

B. Shop Drawings: Complete set of manufacturer's prints of water chiller assemblies, control panels, sections and elevations, and unit isolation. Include the following:

1. Assembled unit dimensions.
2. Weight and load distribution.
3. Required clearances for maintenance and operation.
4. Size and location of piping and wiring connections.
5. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

a. Structural supports.
b. Piping roughing-in requirements.
c. Wiring roughing-in requirements, including spaces reserved for electrical equipment.
d. Access requirements, including working clearances for mechanical controls and electrical equipment, and tube pull and service clearances.

2. Coordination drawings showing plan, section and elevation views, drawn to ¼”-1’ scale.
3. Each view to show screened background with the following:

a. Column grids, beams, columns, and concrete housekeeping pads.
b. Layout with walls, floors, and roofs, including each room name and number.
c. Equipment and products of other trades that are located in vicinity of chillers and part of final installation, such as plumbing systems.

B. Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

1.

C. Installation instructions.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Startup service reports.

F. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each water chiller to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Spare Parts List: Recommended spare parts list with quantity for each.

C. Touchup Paint Description: Detailed description of paint used in application of finish coat to allow for procurement of a matching paint.

D. Instructional Videos: Including those that are prerecorded and those that are recorded during training.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Tool kit to include the following:

1. A tool kit specially designed by chiller manufacturer for use in servicing chiller(s) furnished.
2. Special tools required to service chiller components not readily available to Owner service personnel in performing routine maintenance.
3. Lockable case with hinged cover, marked with large and permanent text to indicate the special purpose of tool kit, such as "Chiller Tool Kit." Text size shall be at least 1 inch (25 mm) high.
4. A list of each tool furnished. Permanently attach the list to underside of case cover. Text size shall be at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

B. Touchup Paint: 32 oz. (1 L) container of paint used for finish coat. Label outside of container with detailed description of paint to allow for procurement of a matching paint in the future.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. AHRI Certification: Certify chiller according to AHRI 590 certification program.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ship water chillers from the factory fully charged with refrigerant and filled with oil.

B. Package water chiller for export shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water chillers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Extended warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Complete chiller including refrigerant and oil charge.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Site Altitude: Chiller shall be suitable for altitude at which installed without affecting performance indicated. Make adjustments to affected chiller components to account for site altitude.

B. Performance Tolerance: Comply with the following in lieu of AHRI 550/590:

1. Allowable Capacity Tolerance: Zero percent.
2. Allowable Full-Load Energy Efficiency Tolerance: Zero percent.
3. Allowable Part-Load Energy Efficiency Tolerance: Zero percent.

C. AHRI Rating: Rate water chiller performance according to requirements in AHRI 550/590.

D. ASHRAE Compliance: ASHRAE 15 for safety code for mechanical refrigeration.

E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

F. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and stamp water chiller heat exchangers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

G. Comply with NFPA 70.

H. Comply with requirements of UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment," and include label by a qualified testing agency showing compliance.

I. Operation Following Loss of Normal Power:

1. Equipment, associated factory- and field-installed controls, and associated electrical equipment and power supply connected to backup power system shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to the operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power without need for manual intervention by an operator when power is restored either through a backup power source, or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought on-line.
2. See drawings for equipment served by backup power systems.
3. Provide means and methods required to satisfy requirement even if not explicitly indicated.

J. Outdoor Installations:

1. Chiller shall be suitable for outdoor installation indicated. Provide adequate weather protection to ensure reliable service life over a 25-year period with minimal degradation due to exposure to outdoor ambient conditions.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
2. Daikin Applied.
3. Trane.

## 2.3 UNIT DESCRIPTION

A. Provide and install as shown on the plans factory-assembled, factory-charged air-cooled scroll compressor packaged chillers in the quantity specified. Each chiller shall consist of hermetic tandem scroll compressor sets (total four compressors), brazed plate evaporator, air-cooled condenser section, microprocessor-based control system and all components necessary for controlled unit operation.

## 2.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Flow Range: The chiller shall have the ability to support variable flow range down to 40% of nominal design (based on AHRI conditions).

B. Operating Range: The chiller shall have the ability to control leaving chilled fluid temperature from 15F to 65F.

C. General: Provide a complete scroll compressor packaged chiller as specified herein and as shown on the drawings. The unit shall be in accordance with the standards referenced in section 1.02 and any local codes in effect.

D. Performance: Refer to the schedule of performance on the drawings. The chiller shall be capable of stable operation to a minimum percentage of full load (without hot gas bypass) of 25%. Performance shall be in accordance with AHRI Standard 550/590.

E. Acoustics: Sound pressure levels for the unit shall not exceed the following specified levels. All manufacturers shall provide the necessary sound treatment ( parts and labor) to meet these levels if required. Sound data shall be provided with the quotation. Test shall be in accordance with AHRI Standard 370.

| Sound Pressure (at 30 feet) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 63 Hz | 125 Hz | 250 Hz | 500 Hz | 1000 Hz | 2000 Hz | 4000 Hz | 8000 Hz | **Overall dBA** | 75% Load dBA | 50% Load dBA | 25% Load dBA |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Sound Power** | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 63 Hz | 125 Hz | 250 Hz | 500 Hz | 1000 Hz | 2000 Hz | 4000 Hz | 8000 Hz | **Overall dBA** | 75% Load dBA | 50% Load dBA | 25% Load dBA |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |

## 2.5 CHILLER COMPONENTS

A. Compressor
1. The compressors shall be sealed hermetic, scroll type with crankcase oil heater and suction strainer. The compressor motor shall be refrigerant gas cooled, high torque, hermetic induction type, two-pole, with inherent thermal protection on all three phases and shall be mounted on RIS vibration isolator pads. The compressors shall be equipped with an internal module providing compressor protection and communication capability.

B. Evaporator
1. The evaporator shall be a compact, high efficiency, dual circuit, brazed plate-to-plate type heat exchanger consisting of parallel stainless steel plates.
2. The evaporator shall be protected with an external, electric resistance heater plate and insulated with 3/4" (19mm) thick closed-cell polyurethane insulation. This combination shall provide freeze protection down to -20°F (-29°C) ambient air temperature.
3. The water-side maximum design pressure shall be rated at a minimum of 653 psig (4502 kPa). Evaporators shall be designed and constructed according to, and listed by Underwriters Laboratories (UL).

C. Condenser
1. Condenser fans shall be propeller type arranged for vertical air discharge and individually driven by direct-drive fan motors. The fans shall be equipped with a heavy-gauge vinyl-coated fan guard. Fan motors shall be TEAO type with permanently lubricated ball bearings, inherent overload protection, three-phase, direct-drive, 1140 rpm. Each fan section shall be partitioned to avoid cross circulation.
2. Coil shall be microchannel design and shall have a series of flat tubes containing multiple, parallel flow microchannels layered between the refrigerant manifolds. Tubes shall be 9153 aluminum alloy. Tubes made of 3102 alloy or other alloys of lower corrosion resistance shall not be accepted. Coils shall consist of a two-pass arrangement. Each condenser coil shall be factory leak tested with high-pressure air under water. Coils

shall withstand 1000+ hour acidified synthetic sea water fog (SWAAT) test (ASTM G85-02) at 120°F (49°C) with 0% fin loss and develop no leaks.

D. Refrigerant Circuit
1. Each of the two refrigerant circuits shall include a replaceable-core refrigerant filter-drier, sight glass with moisture indicator, liquid line solenoid valve (no exceptions), expansion valve, and insulated suction line.

E. Construction
1. Unit casing and all structural members and rails shall be fabricated of pre-painted or galvanized steel. Painted parts shall be able to meet ASTM B117, 1000-hour salt spray test.
2. Upper section of unit shall have protective and decorative louvers covering the coils and unit end; base section of unit shall have protective, 12 GA, PVC-coated, wire grille guards and have painted steel wraps enclosing the coil end sections and piping.

F. Control System
1. A centrally located weatherproof control panel shall contain the field power connection points, control interlock terminals, and control system. Box shall be designed in accordance with NEMA 3R rating. Power and starting components shall include factory circuit breaker for fan motors and control circuit, individual contactors for each fan motor, solid-state compressor three-phase motor overload protection, inherent fan motor overload protection and two power blocks (one per circuit) for connection to remote, contractor supplied disconnect switches. Hinged access doors shall be lockable. Barrier panels or separate enclosures are required to protect against accidental contact with line voltage when accessing the control system.
2. Shall include high short circuit current rating of 65,000 amps (25,000 amps at 575Volt) with single-point disconnect switch

G. Unit Controller
1. An advanced DDC microprocessor unit controller with a 5-line by 22-character liquid crystal display provides the operating and protection functions. The controller shall take preemptive limiting action in case of high discharge pressure or low evaporator pressure. The controller shall contain the following features as a minimum:
2. The unit shall be protected in two ways: (1) by alarms that shut the unit down and require manual reset to restore unit operation and (2) by limit alarms that reduce unit operation in response to some out-of-limit condition. Shut down alarms shall activate an alarm signal.
3. Shutdown Alarms
    a. No evaporator water flow (auto-restart)
    b. Sensor failures
    c. Low evaporator pressure
    d. Evaporator freeze protection
    e. High condenser pressure
    f. Outside ambient temperature (auto-restart)
    g. Motor protection system
    h. Phase voltage protection (Optional)
4. Limit Alarms
    a. Condenser pressure stage down, unloads unit at high discharge pressures.
    b. Low ambient lockout, shuts off unit at low ambient temperatures.

c. Low evaporator pressure hold, holds stage #1 until pressure rises.
d. Low evaporator pressure unload, shuts off one compressor.

5. Unit Enable Section
   a. Enables unit operation from either local keypad, digital input, or BAS
6. Unit Mode Selection
   a. Selects standard cooling, ice, glycol, or test operation mode
7. Analog Inputs:
   a. Reset of leaving water temperature, 4-20 mA\
   b. Current Limit
8. Digital Inputs
   a. Unit off switch
   b. Remote start/stop
   c. Flow switch
   d. Ice mode switch, converts operation and setpoints for ice production
   e. Motor protection
9. Digital Outputs
   a. Shutdown alarm; field wired, activates on an alarm condition, off when alarm is cleared
   b. Evaporator pump; field wired, starts pump when unit is set to start
10. Condenser fan control - The unit controller shall provide control of condenser fans based on compressor discharge pressure.
11. Building Automation System (BAS) Interface
    a. Factory mounted DDC controller(s) shall support operation on a BACnet®, Modbus® or LONMARK ® network via one of the data link / physical layers listed below as specified by the successful Building Automation System (BAS) supplier.
    b. BACnet MS/TP master (Clause 9)
    c. BACnet IP, (Annex J)
    d. BACnet ISO 8802-3, (Ethernet)
    e. LONMARK FTT-10A. The unit controller shall be LONMARK® certified.
    f. The information communicated between the BAS and the factory mounted unit controllers shall include the reading and writing of data to allow unit monitoring, control and alarm notification as specified in the unit sequence of operation and the unit points list.
    g. For chillers communicating over a LONMARK network, the corresponding LONMARK eXternal Interface File (XIF) shall be provided with the chiller submittal data.
    h. All communication from the chiller unit controller as specified in the points list shall be via standard BACnet objects. Proprietary BACnet objects shall not be allowed. BACnet communications shall conform to the BACnet protocol (ANSI/ASHRAE135-2001). A BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) shall be provided along with the unit submittal.

## 2.6 OPTIONS AND ACCESSORIES

A. The following options are to be included:
   1. Low Ambient Control: Fan VFD allows unit operation from 32°F down to -10°F (-23.3 C).

2. High Ambient Control Panel for operation from 105°F up to 125°F ambient temperatures

B. The following accessories, if selected, are to be included:
1. Spring vibration isolators for field installation
2. Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators for field installation
3. Factory-mounted thermal dispersion type flow switch
4. Field-mounted, paddle type, chilled water flow switch field wired to the control panel
5. Wye strainer, to be installed at the evaporator inlet and sized for the design flow rate , with perforation diameter of 0.063" with blowdown valve and Victaulic couplings (factory mounted or field installed)
6. 115V GFI convenience outlet

2.7 Optional Factory-Installed Pump Package: None

A. These pump package accessories, if selected, will also be included:
1. Water pressure gauges on the pump suction and discharge
2. Expansion tank with size increments from 4.4 to 90 gallons, field installed (small sizes can be factory mounted
3. Air separator with air vent, field installed
4. Storage tanks, vertical, insulated, 150, 300, 600, 1000 gallon sizes with optional immersion heater, field installed.

2.8 INSULATION

A. Closed-cell, flexible, elastomeric thermal insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

B. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.

C. Factory-applied insulation over all cold surfaces of chiller capable of forming condensation. Components shall include, but not be limited to, evaporator, evaporator water boxes including nozzles, refrigerant suction pipe from evaporator to compressor, cold surfaces of compressor, refrigerant-cooled motor, and auxiliary piping.

1. Apply adhesive to 100 percent of insulation contact surface.
2. Before insulating steel surfaces, prepare surfaces for paint, and prime and paint as indicated for other painted components. Do not insulate unpainted steel surfaces.
3. Seal seams and joints to provide a vapor barrier.
4. After adhesive has fully cured, paint exposed surfaces of insulation to match other painted parts.
5. Manufacturer has option to factory or field insulate chiller components to reduce potential for damage during installation.
6. Field-Applied Insulation:

a. Components that are not factory insulated shall be field insulated to comply with requirements indicated.
b. Manufacturer shall be responsible for chiller insulation whether factory or field installed to ensure that manufacturer is the single point of responsibility for chillers.
c. Manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative shall instruct and supervise installation of field-applied insulation.
d. After field-applied insulation is complete, paint insulation to match factory-applied finish.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL

A. Factory installed and wired, and functionally tested at factory before shipment.

B. Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to water chiller.

C. House in a unit-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure with hinged access door with lock and key or padlock and key.

D. Wiring shall be numbered and color-coded to match wiring diagram.

E. Factory wiring shall be located outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway. Terminal connections shall be made with not more than a 24-inch (610-mm) length of liquidtight or flexible metallic conduit.

F. Field power interface shall be to [**wire lugs**] [**NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfused disconnect switch**] [**circuit breaker**]. Minimum SCCR according to UL 508 shall be as required by electrical power distribution system, but not less than [**42,000**] [**65,000**] [**100,000**] <**Insert value**> A.

G. Each motor shall have branch power circuit and controls with one of the following disconnecting means having SCCR to match main disconnecting means:

1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with rejection-type fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 60947-4-1.
2. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.
3. UL 489, motor-circuit protector (circuit breaker) with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.

H. Each motor shall have overcurrent protection.

I. Overload relay sized according to UL 1995, or an integral component of water chiller control microprocessor.

J. Phase-Failure and Undervoltage: Solid-state sensing with adjustable settings.

K. Power Factor Correction: Capacitors to correct power factor to 0.95 at full load.

L. Controls Transformer: Unit-mounted transformer with primary and secondary fuses and sized with enough capacity to operate electrical load plus spare capacity.

M. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable time-delay relays, or an integral to water chiller microprocessor.

N. Service Receptacle:

1. Unit-mounted, 120-V GFI duplex receptacle.
2. Power receptacle from chiller internal electrical power wiring.

O. Indicate the following for water chiller electrical power supply:

1. Current, phase to phase, for all three phases.
2. Voltage, phase to phase and phase to neutral for all three phases.
3. Three-phase real power (kilowatts).
4. Three-phase reactive power (kilovolt amperes reactive).
5. Power factor.
6. Running log of total power versus time (kilowatt hours).
7. Fault log, with time and date of each.

## 2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform functional test of water chillers before shipping.

B. Factory performance test water chillers, before shipping, according to AHRI 550/590.

1. Test the following conditions:

a. Design conditions indicated.
b. AHRI 550/590 part-load points.

2. Allow Owner access to place where water chillers are being tested. Notify Owner 14 days in advance of testing.

C. Factory test and inspect evaporatoraccording to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1. Stamp with ASME label.

D. For water chillers located outdoors, rate sound power level according to AHRI 370 procedure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Before water chiller installation, examine roughing-in for equipment support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, controls, and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting water chiller performance, maintenance, and operations.

1. Water chiller locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping, controls, and electrical connections.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 WATER CHILLER INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into concrete bases.

B. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures with actual equipment provided.

C. Install water chillers on support structure indicated.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install water chillers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

E. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

F. Maintain clearances required by governing code.

G. Chiller manufacturer's factory-trained service personnel shall charge water chiller with refrigerant if not factory charged and fill with oil if not factory installed.

H. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

1. Chillers shipped in multiple major assemblies shall be field assembled by chiller manufacturer's factory-trained service personnel.

## 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

C. Where installing piping adjacent to chillers, allow space for service and maintenance.

D. Evaporator Fluid Connections:

1. Connect to evaporator inlet with shutoff valve, strainer, flexible connector, thermometer, and plugged tee with pressure gage.
2. Connect to evaporator outlet with shutoff valve, balancing valve, flexible connector, flow switch, thermometer, plugged tee with pressure gage, flow meter, and drain connection with valve.
3. Make connections to water chiller with a union flange or mechanical coupling.

E. Connect each drain connection with a drain valve, full size of drain connection. Connect drain pipe to drain valve with union and extend drain pipe to terminate over floor drain.

F. Connect each chiller vent connection with an automatic or a manual vent, full size of vent connection.

## 3.4 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Provide nameplate for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

## 3.5 CONTROLS CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring between chillers and other equipment to interlock operation as required to provide a complete and functioning system.

C. Connect control wiring between chiller control interface and DDC system for remote monitoring and control of chillers. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

D. Provide nameplate on face of chiller control panel indicating control equipment designation serving chiller and the I/O point designation for each control connection. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for proper assemblies, installations, and connections.

C. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:

1. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and water chiller has been leak tested.
2. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.
3. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.
4. Operate water chiller for run-in period.
5. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
6. Verify that refrigerant pressure relief device for chillers installed indoors is vented outside.
7. Verify proper motor rotation.
8. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during water chiller startup and shutdown.
9. Verify and record performance of chilled-water flow and low-temperature interlocks.
10. Verify and record performance of water chiller protection devices.
11. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Visually inspect chiller for damage before starting. Repair or replace damaged components, including insulation. Do not start chiller until damage that is detrimental to operation has been corrected.

E. Prepare a written startup report that records results of tests and inspections.

## 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water chillers.

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
2. Provide not less than eight hours of training.

3. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
4. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
5. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
6. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 236423.13

# SECTION 237313.16 - INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulated, double-wall-casing, indoor, semi-custom air-handling units that are factory assembled using multiple section components.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.

1. Unit dimensions and weight.
2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
3. Fans:

    a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
    c. Fan construction and accessories.
    d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.

4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
6. Filters with performance characteristics.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Product Data: For air filtration performance.
3. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Mechanical-room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
2. Support location, type, and weight.
3. Field measurements.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for air-handling units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source quality-control reports:

D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

## 2.2 INDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNIT MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
2. Daikin Applied Vision.
3. Haakon.
4. Mammoth.
5. Temtrol.
6. Trane Performance Climate Changer.
7. Ventrol.

## 2.3 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

A. Configuration: Fabricate as detailed on drawings.

B. Performance: Conform to AHRI 430. See schedules on prints. (NOTE: above does not apply to fan array)

C. Acoustics: Sound power levels (dB) for the unit shall not exceed the specified levels shown on the unit schedule. The manufacturer shall provide the necessary sound treatment to meet these levels if required.

2.4 UNIT CONSTRUCTION

A. Fabricate unit with heavy gauge channel posts and panels secured with mechanical fasteners. All panels, access doors, and ship sections shall be sealed with permanently applied bulb-type gasket. Shipped loose gasketing is not allowed.

B. Panels and access doors shall be constructed as a 2-inch nominal thick; thermal broke double wall assembly, injected with foam insulation with an R-value of not less than R-13.
   1. The inner liner shall be constructed of G90 galvanized steel.
   2. The outer panel shall be constructed of G90 galvanized steel.
   3. The floor plate shall be constructed as specified for the inner liner.
   4. Unit will be furnished with solid inner liners.

C. Panel deflection shall not exceed L/240 ratio at 125% of design static pressure, maximum 5 inches of positive or 6 inches of negative static pressure. Deflection shall be measured at the panel midpoint.

D. The casing leakage rate shall not exceed 0.50 cfm per square foot of casing surface area at design static pressure up to a maximum of +5” w.c. in positive pressure sections and -6” w.c. in negative pressure sections (.0025 m3/s per square meter of cabinet area at 1.24 kPa static pressure)

E. Module to module field assembly shall be accomplished with an overlapping, full perimeter internal splice joint that is sealed with bulb type gasketing on both mating modules to minimize on-site labor and meet indoor air quality standards.

F. Access doors shall be flush mounted to cabinetry, with minimum of two six inch long stainless steel piano-type hinges, latch and full size handle assembly. Access doors shall swing outward for unit sections under negative pressure. Access doors on positive pressure sections, shall have a secondary latch to relieve pressure and prevent injury upon access.

G. A 6-inch formed G60 galvanized steel base rail shall be provided by the unit manufacturer for structural rigidity and condensate trapping.. The base rail shall be constructed with 12-gauge nominal for unit sizes 003 - 035 and 10-gauge nominal for unit sizes 040 - 090. The following calculation shall determine the required height of the baserail to allow for adequate drainage. Use the largest pressure to determine base rail height. [(Negative)(Positive) static pressure (in)] (2) + 4” = required baserail height. Should the unit baserail not be factory supplied at this height, the contractor is required to supply a concrete housekeeping pad to make up the difference.

H. Construct drain pans from stainless steel with cross break and double sloping pitch to drain connection. Provide drain pans under cooling coil section. Drain connection centerline shall be a minimum of 3’’ above the base rail to aid in proper condensate trapping. Drain connections that protrude from the base rail are not acceptable. There must be a full 2’’ thickness of insulation under drain pan.

2.5 FAN ASSEMBLIES

A. The fan array will be arranged with high performance direct drive, single inlet, plenum fans with backwards inclined, high efficiency welded-aluminum or high-performance composite impeller with galvanized or aluminum support frame.
   1. The fans are driven by long-life, low-temperature brushless DC electronically commutated motor (EC-Motor) with external rotor and integrated maintenance-free electronic circuitry and electronics. The motor is manufactured with maintenance-free, permanently lubricated ball bearings and shall be statically and dynamically balanced in accordance with ISO 1940 part 1. The motor shall be closed, protection level IP 54, thermal class 155 with permissible operating temperature of -13°F to 140°F. Motor efficiency class shall comply with IE4. Fan characteristic curves indicate measurements on a chamber test in accordance with ISO5801. The three-phase external rotor motor integrated into the fan hub meets the requirements for circulating electric machines set forth in DIN EN 60 034-1 (VDE 0530 Part 1).
   2. Manual blank-off plates shall be provided to block fan airflow, one plate to be provided per array.
   3. Fan Array shall be listed per UL 1995.
   4. Fan assemblies shall be prewired with wire whips and plug connectors.
   5. Fan system manufacturer must stock replacement parts in North America.
   6. The fan bulkhead wall shall be constructed in a manner for easy field assembly, constructed of 14 gauge G90 formed sheet metal. The bend profile at each panel's seam shall provide vertical structural support for the bulkhead wall.
   7. The control panel shall include an external disconnect and shall be UL or ETL listed. The panel shall be provided with a BACnet compatible controller capable of monitoring the array's airflow, total static pressure, power consumption, RPM, and individual fan alarm status and specific cause of alarm. Controller shall be configurable for fan speed control via BACnet interface (MS/TP), 0-10 VDC input, 4-20 mA input, constant airflow, or duct static pressure (static pressure sensor to be field provided and mounted). Control panel shall be equipped with relays for locking between other electrically driven components. There is a system alarm contact that the BAS can use to check the status of the Q-PAC System. There is a system enable contact that the BAS can use to enable or disable the Q-PAC System, along with a safety circuit terminations.
   8. All Q-PAC components shall be sized to fit through a 20" x 40" access opening.

B. Provide ECM, motorized impeller fan(s). Fan assembly shall include fan, fan base, and a motor and shall be dynamically balanced by the fan manufacturer.
   1. Motor control panel shall come with a low voltage terminal strip and shall include terminals for Fan ON/OFF, 0-10V signal, and fan fault.
   2. Motor control panel shall come equipped with a fused disconnect.
   3. Fan section shall come equipped with a motor control panel mounted on the fan section. Both line voltage and low voltage wiring shall be done by the factory. Each fan shall have an isolation switch.
   4. Motor shall be brushless DC type with a permanent magnet rotor.
   5. Inverter shall be integral to the motor and come as an assembly from the fan manufacturer.

## 2.6 BEARINGS, SHAFTS, AND DRIVES

A. Bearings: Basic load rating computed in accordance with AFBMA - ANSI Standards. The bearings shall be provided on the motor with the fan wheel mounted directly on the motor shaft, AMCA arrangement 4.

B. Shafts shall be solid, hot rolled steel, ground and polished, keyed to shaft, and protectively coated with lubricating oil. Hollow shafts are not acceptable.

C. The fan wheel shall be direct coupled to the motor shaft. The wheel width shall be determined by motor speed and fan performance characteristics.

## 2.7 ELECTRICAL

A. Fan motors shall be manufacturer provided and installed, Open Drip Proof, premium efficiency (meets or exceeds EPAct requirements), 3500 RPM, single speed, 460V / 60HZ / 3P. Complete electrical characteristics for each fan motor shall be as shown in schedule.

B. The air handler(s) shall be ETL and ETL-Canada listed by Intertek Testing Services, Inc. Units shall conform to bi-national standard ANSI/UL Standard 1995/CSA Standard C22.2 No. 236.

C. Wiring Termination: Provide terminal lugs to match branch circuit conductor quantities, sizes, and materials indicated. Enclosed terminal lugs in terminal box sized to NFPA 70.

D. Manufacturer shall provide ASHRAE 90.1 Energy Efficiency equation details for individual equipment to assist Building Engineer for calculating system compliance.

E. Installing contractor shall provide GFI receptacle within 25 feet of unit to satisfy National Electrical Code requirements.

F. Air handler manufacturer shall provide and mount conduit and wiring from each fan motor terminated at an external junction box.

## 2.8 COOLING AND HEATING COILS

A. Certification: Acceptable water cooling, water heating, steam, and refrigerant coils shall be certified in accordance with AHRI Standard 410 and bear the AHRI label. Coils exceeding the scope of the manufacturer's certification and/or the range of AHRI's standard rating conditions will be considered provided the manufacturer is a current member of the AHRI Forced Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils certification programs and that the coils have been rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 410. Manufacturer must be ISO 9002 certified.

B. Water cooling coil shall be provided. Provide access to coil(s) for service and cleaning. Enclose coil headers and return bends fully within unit casing. Unit shall be provided with coil connections that extend a minimum of 5" beyond unit casing for ease of installation. Drain and vent connections shall be provided exterior to unit casing. Coil connections must be factory sealed with grommets on interior and exterior panel liners to minimize air leakage and

condensation inside panel assembly. If not factory packaged, Contractor must supply all coil connection grommets and sleeves. Coils shall be removable through side and/or top panels of unit without the need to remove and disassemble the entire section from the unit.

1. Headers shall consist of seamless copper tubing to assure compatibility with primary surface. Headers to have intruded tube holes to provide maximum brazing surface for tube to header joint, strength, and inherent flexibility. Header diameter should vary with fluid flow requirements.
2. Fins shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0075 inch aluminum plate construction. Fins shall have full drawn collars to provide a continuous surface cover over the entire tube for maximum heat transfer. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded into the fins to provide a continuous primary to secondary compression bond over the entire finned length for maximum heat transfer rates. Bare copper tubes shall not be visible between fins.
3. Coil tubes shall be 5/8 inch OD seamless copper, 0.020 inch nominal tube wall thickness, expanded into fins, brazed at joints.
4. Coil connections shall be carbon steel, NPT threaded connection. Connection size to be determined by manufacturer based upon the most efficient coil circuiting. Vent and drain fittings shall be furnished on the connections, exterior to the air handler. Vent connections provided at the highest point to assure proper venting. Drain connections shall be provided at the lowest point to insure complete drainage and prevent freeze-up.
5. Coil casing shall be a formed channel frame of galvanized steel.

C. Water heating coil shall be provided. Provide access to coil(s) for service and cleaning. Enclose coil headers and return bends fully within unit casing. Unit shall be provided with coil connections that extend a minimum of 5” beyond unit casing for ease of installation. Drain and vent connections shall be provided exterior to unit casing. Coil connections must be factory sealed with grommets on interior and exterior panel liners to minimize air leakage and condensation inside panel assembly. If not factory packaged, Contractor must supply all coil connection grommets and sleeves. Coils shall be removable through side and/or top panels of unit without the need to remove and disassemble the entire section from the unit.

1. Headers shall consist of seamless copper tubing to assure compatibility with primary surface. Headers to have intruded tube holes to provide maximum brazing surface for tube to header joint, strength, and inherent flexibility. Header diameter should vary with fluid flow requirements.
2. Fins shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0075 inch aluminum plate construction. Fins shall have full drawn collars to provide a continuous surface cover over the entire tube for maximum heat transfer. Tubes shall be mechanically expanded into the fins to provide a continuous primary to secondary compression bond over the entire finned length for maximum heat transfer rates. Bare copper tubes shall not be visible between fins.
3. Coil tubes shall be 5/8 inch OD seamless copper, 0.020 inch nominal tube wall thickness, expanded into fins, brazed at joints.
4. Coil connections shall be carbon steel, threaded connection. Connection size to be determined by manufacturer based upon the most efficient coil circuiting. Vent and drain fittings shall be furnished on the connections, exterior to the air handler. Vent connections provided at the highest point to assure proper venting. Drain connections shall be provided at the lowest point to insure complete drainage and prevent freeze-up.
5. Coil shall be furnished as an uncased galvanized steel to allow for thermal movement and slide into a pitched track for fluid drainage.

2.9 FILTERS

A. AHU-1 and AHU-3 (Return): Furnish flat panel filter section with 4-inch pleated MERV 13 filter. Provide side loading and removal of filters.

B. AHU-1 to AHU-4 (Supply): Furnish combination filter section with 2-inch pleated MERV 8 flat pre-filter and 12-inch Varicel SH cartridge (MERV 13) final filter. Provide side loading and removal of filters.

C. Filter media shall be UL 900 listed, Class I or Class II.

D. Filter Magnehelic gauge(s) shall be furnished and mounted by others.

2.10 ADDITIONAL SECTIONS

A. Access sections shall be provided for access between components.

B. Plenum sections shall be provided and properly sized for inlet and/or discharge air flow (between 600 and 1500 feet per minute). The plenum shall provide single or multiple openings as shown on drawings and project schedule.

C. Mixing box sections shall be provided as shown on drawings with or without parallel low leak airfoil damper blades. Dampers shall be hollow core galvanized steel airfoil blades, fully gasketed and have continuous vinyl seals between damper blades in a galvanized steel frame. Dampers shall have stainless steel jamb seals along end of dampers. Connecting linkage and ABS plastic end caps shall be provided when return and outside air dampers are each sized for full airflow. Return and outside air dampers of different sizes must be driven separately. Damper Leakage: Leakage rate shall be less than two tenths of one percent leakage at 2 inches static pressure differential. Leakage rate tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500.

D. Energy recovery wheel (AHU-1 and AHU-3) shall be constructed of corrugated synthetic fibrous media, with a desiccant intimately bound and uniformly and permanently dispersed throughout the matrix structure of the media. Rotors with desiccants coated bonded, or synthesized onto the media are not acceptable due to delaminating or erosion of the desiccant material. Media shall be synthetic to provide corrosion resistance and resistance against attack from laboratory chemicals present in pharmaceutical, hospital, etc. environments as well as attack from external outdoor air conditions. Coated aluminum is not acceptable. Face flatness of the wheel shall be maximized in order to minimize wear on inner seal surfaces and to minimize cross leakage. Rotor shall be constructed of alternating layers of flat and corrugated media. Wheel layers should be uniform in construction forming uniform aperture sizes for airflow. Wheel construction shall be fluted or formed honeycomb geometry so as to eliminate internal wheel bypass. Wheel layers that can be separated or spread apart by airflow are unacceptable due to the possibility of channeling and performance degradation. The minimum acceptable performance shall be as specified in the unit schedule. Desiccant Material: The desiccant material shall be a molecular sieve, and specifically a 4A or smaller molecular sieve to minimize cross contamination. Wheel Media Support System: The wheel frames shall consist of evenly spaced steel spokes, galvanized steel outer band and rigid

center hub. The wheel construction should allow for post fabrication wheel alignment. Wheel Seals: The wheel seals shall be full contact nylon brush seals or equivalent. Seals should be easily adjustable. Wheel cassette: Cassettes shall be fabricated of heavy duty reinforced galvanized steel or welded structural box tubing. Cassettes shall have a built in adjustable purge section minimizing cross contamination of supply air as shown on unit schedule. Bearings shall be inboard, zero maintenance, permanently sealed roller bearings, or alternatively, external flanged or pillow block bearings. Drive systems shall consist of fractional horsepower AC drive motors with multi-link drive belts. Face and bypass dampers shall be furnished as shown on unit schedule and drawings. Certification: The wheel shall be AHRI certified by the energy recovery wheel supplier to AHRI Standard 1060 and must bear the AHRI certification stamp. Private independent testing performed "in accordance with" various standards is not a substitute for AHRI certification and shall not be accepted. The wheel shall be listed or recognized by UL or equivalent.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. AHRI 430 Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to AHRI 430 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.

B. AHRI 1060 Certification: Air-handling units that include air-to-air energy recovery devices shall be factory tested according to AHRI 1060 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.

C. AMCA 301 or AHRI 260: Air-handling unit fan sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data," or AHRI 260, "Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment."

D. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.

E. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

F. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig (2070 kPa) according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

G. Steam Coils: Factory tested to 300 and 200 psig (2070 and 1380 kPa) underwater according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

H. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig (3105-kPa) internal pressure and to minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) internal pressure while underwater, according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

I. Witnessed Casing Leakage Tests:

1. Pay for all expenses, for one representative designated by Owner, to travel to the factory to witness cabinet air-leakage testing on the specific assembled unit(s) prior to release for delivery to Project site.

2. If the unit(s) does not meet specified leakage requirements, perform factory modifications and retest. Do not release unit for shipment until tested leakage is measured to be within specified leakage and leakage testing report has been accepted by Owner's designated representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

B. Suspended Units: Suspend units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

C. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.

D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.

E. Install filter-gauge, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gauges on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gauges on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.

F. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

## 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32), ASTM B88, Type M (ASTM B88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.

E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

## 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

## 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter with soapy water to check for air leaks.
5. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter for air leaks according to ASME AG-1, pressure-decay method.
6. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
6. Verify that zone dampers fully open and close for each zone.
7. Verify that face-and-bypass dampers provide full face flow.
8. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
9. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.

10. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
11. Install new, clean filters.
12. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

## 3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

## 3.9 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

## 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313.16

# SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - " Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:

a. For Compressor: One Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
b. For Parts: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product (Server Room): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Daikin.
2. LG.
3. Mitsubishi.
4. Liebert Vertiv.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
4. Fan Motors:

a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.

5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
6. Condensate Drain Pans:

a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.

1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1 .
2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.

b. Double-wall, galvanized -steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.

c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.

1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1 .

d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

7. Air Filtration Section:

a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

## 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.

a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
c. Refrigerant Charge: R-407C R-410A .
d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.

3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 0 deg F.
6. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls."

B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

C. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:

1. Compressor time delay.
2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.

D. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

E. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

F. Drain Hose: For condensate.

G. Additional Monitoring:

1. Monitor constant and variable motor loads.
2. Monitor variable-frequency-drive operation.
3. Monitor economizer cycle.
4. Monitor cooling load.
5. Monitor air distribution static pressure and ventilation air volumes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

# SECTION 238129 – VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes complete VRF HVAC system(s) including, but not limited to, delegated design and the following components to make a complete operating system(s) according to requirements indicated:

1. Indoor, concealed, ceiling-mounted units for ducting.
2. Indoor, exposed, wall-mounted units.
3. Indoor, recessed, ceiling-mounted units.
4. Indoor, suspended, ceiling-mounted units.
5. Outdoor, air-source heat recovery units.
6. Heat recovery control units.
7. System controls.
8. System refrigerant and oil.
9. System condensate drain piping.
10. System refrigerant piping.
11. Metal hangers and supports.
12. Metal framing systems.
13. Fastener systems.
14. Pipe stands.
15. Miscellaneous support materials.
16. Piping and tubing insulation.
17. System control cable and raceways.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Air-Conditioning System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in cooling only.

B. Heat-Pump System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in either heating or cooling, but not with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.

C. Heat Recovery System Operation: System capable of operation with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.

D. HRCU (also known as Branch Selector): Heat Recovery Control Unit. HRCUs are used in heat recovery VRF HVAC systems to manage and control refrigerant between indoor units to provide simultaneous heating and cooling zones. "Heat Recovery Control Unit" is the term used by ASHRAE for what different manufacturers term as branch circuit controller, branch selector box, changeover box, flow selector unit, mode change unit, and other such terms.

E. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

F. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.

G. Three-Pipe System Design: One high pressure refrigerant vapor line, one low pressure refrigerant vapor line, and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units.

H. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units. HRCUs used in two pipe systems act as an intermediate heat exchanger and include diverting valves and gas/liquid separators to move high and low pressure refrigerant between indoor units.

I. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units and for HRCUs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor- and outdoor-unit and HRCU control.
6. Include description of control software features.

7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.
9. For system design software.
10. Indicate location and type of service access.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: Indicating compliance with minimum energy performance requirements.
2. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
3. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 compliance.
4. Air-Balance Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
5. Refrigerant: Product Data for refrigerants, indicating compliance with refrigerant management practices.
6. Product Data for EA Credit "Optimize Energy Performance": Indicating that system meets efficiency requirements.
7. Product Data for EA Credit "Enhanced Refrigerant Management": Indicating that products meet requirements for refrigerant management.
8. Product Data for EA Credit "Advanced Energy Metering": For continuous metering equipment.
9. Product Data for EQ Credit "Acoustic Performance": Documentation indicating that systems and equipment comply.
10. Thermal Comfort: Product Data indicating that systems, equipment, and controls comply.

C. Shop Drawings: For VRF HVAC systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For fully and partially exposed indoor units with factory finishes viewable by occupants.

1. Include a Sample for each unique finish with unit identification, detailed description of application, and cross-referenced floor plans showing locations.

E. Delegated-Design Submittals:

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

2. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
3. Include design calculations with corresponding floor plans indicating that refrigerant concentration limits are within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
4. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, sections, and details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural floors, roofs and associated members to which equipment, piping, ductwork, cables, and conduit will be attached.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Wall-mounted controllers located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices, and other installed devices.
5. Size and location of access doors and panels installed behind walls and inaccessible ceilings for products installed behind walls and requiring access.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

    a. Luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Service access panels.

B. Qualification Data:

1. For Installer: Certificate from VRF HVAC system manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.

    a. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.

2. For VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
3. For VRF HVAC system provider.

C. Product Test Reports: Where tests are required, for each product, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On CD or DVD, USB media, or approved cloud storage platform, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters:

a. One set(s) for each unit with replaceable filters.
b. One set(s) for each unit type and unique size of washable filters.

2. Indoor Units: One for each unique size and type installed.
3. Controllers for Indoor Units: One for each unique controller type installed.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of VRF HVAC systems and products.
2. Shipped VRF HVAC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of 10 years within time of bid.
3. VRF HVAC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least five completed projects.
4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, and operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:

a. Product research and development.
b. Product and application engineering.
c. Product manufacturing, testing, and quality control.
d. Technical support for system installation training, startup, commissioning, and troubleshooting of installations.

e. Owner training.

B. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. In-place facility located within 50 miles of Project.
3. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.

a. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.

5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
8. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

C. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.

a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.

5. Installers shall have staffing resources of competent, trained, and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.

D. ISO Compliance: System equipment and components furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall be manufactured in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.

C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.

D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.

1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remover coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.

E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures.
b. Faulty operation.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period:

a. For Compressor: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
b. For Parts, Including Controls: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Daikin AC (Americas), Inc.
2. LG Electronics.
3. Samsung HVAC.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single source from single manufacturer including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Indoor and outdoor units, including accessories.
2. Controls and software.

3. HRCUs.
4. Refrigerant isolation valves.
5. Specialty refrigerant pipe fittings.

## 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC system(s) with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, HRCUs, outdoor unit(s), piping, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system(s) complying with requirements indicated.

1. Three-pipe system design.
2. System(s) operation, heat recovery as indicated on Drawings.
3. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230 and products listed in AHRI directory.

D. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.
4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional specialist, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design complete and operational VRF HVAC system(s) complying with requirements indicated.

1. Provide system refrigerant calculations.

    a. Refrigerant concentration limits shall be within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
    b. Indicate compliance with manufacturer's maximum vertical and horizontal travel distances. Prepare a comparison table for each system showing calculated distances compared to manufacturer's maximum allowed distances.

2. Include a mechanical ventilation system and gas detection system as required to comply with ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
3. System Refrigerant Piping and Tubing:

a. Arrangement: Arrange piping to interconnect indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor unit(s) in compliance with manufacturer requirements and requirements indicated.
b. Routing: Conceal piping above ceilings and behind walls to maximum extent possible.
c. Sizing: Size piping system, using a software program acceptable to manufacturer, to provide performance requirements indicated. Consider requirements to accommodate future change requirements.

4. System Controls:

a. Network arrangement.
b. Network interface with other building systems.
c. Product selection.
d. Sizing.

B. Service Access:

1. Provide and document service access requirements.
2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.
3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
6. Comply with OSHA regulations.

C. System Design and Installation Requirements:

1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.

D. System Adaptability to Future Changes: Arrange and size system refrigerant piping to accommodate future changes to system without having to resize and replace existing refrigerant piping.

1. Future changes to system(s) indicated on Drawings.
2. Each branch circuit shall accommodate addition of one indoor unit(s) with unit capacity equal to average indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.
3. Each branch circuit shall accommodate deletion of one indoor unit(s) with unit capacity equal to average indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.

E. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each HRCU, indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.

F. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be within the following range of outdoor-unit rated capacity:

1. Not less than 50 percent.
2. Not more than 130 percent.
3. Range acceptable to manufacturer.

G. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.

H. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.

I. Outdoor Conditions:

1. Suitable for outdoor ambient conditions encountered.

a. Design equipment and supports to withstand wind loads of governing code.
b. Design equipment and supports to withstand snow and ice loads of governing code.
c. Provide corrosion-resistant coating for components and supports where located in coastal or industrial climates that are known to be harmful to materials and finishes.

2. Maximum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: See Drawings.
3. Minimum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: See Drawings.

J. Sound Performance: Sound levels generated by operating HVAC equipment shall be within requirements indicated.

1. Indoor: Within design guidelines of "2015 ASHRAE HANDBOOK- HVAC Applications."
2. Outdoor: See Drawings.

K. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.

L. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 INDOOR, CONCEALED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS FOR DUCTING

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Galvanized or painted steel.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Duct Connections: Extended collar or flange, or designated exterior cabinet surface, designed for attaching field-installed ductwork.
4. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
5. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):

    a. Direct-drive arrangement.
    b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
    c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion-resistant finish.
    d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.

2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Filter Assembly:

1. Access: Bottom, side, or rear to accommodate field installation without removing ductwork and to accommodate filter replacement without need for tools.
2. Efficiency: ASHRAE 52.2, MERV 13.
3. Media:

    a. Replaceable: Extended surface, panel, or cartridge with antimicrobial treatment fiber media.
    b. Washable: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Unit Accessories:

1. Outdoor Air Ventilation Kit: Connection, motorized damper, and control sized to allow sequence of operation indicated on Drawings.
2. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.

H. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors:

    a. Unit inlet air temperature.
    b. Coil entering refrigerant temperature.
    c. Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.

4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:

    a. Analog Inputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
    b. Digital Inputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
    c. Digital Outputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.

5. Features and Functions:

    a. Self-diagnostics.
    b. Time delay.
    c. Auto-restart.
    d. External static pressure control.
    e. Auto operation mode.
    f. Manual operation mode.
    g. Filter service notification.
    h. Power consumption display.
    i. Drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
    j. Run test switch.

6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor and outdoor units.
7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

I. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways.

## 2.5 INDOOR, RECESSED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.

3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):

a. Direct-drive arrangement.
b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.

2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Filter Assembly:

1. Access: Bottom, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
2. Efficiency: ASHRAE 52.2, MERV 13.
3. Media:

a. Replaceable: Extended surface, panel, or cartridge with antimicrobial treatment fiber media.
b. Washable: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Discharge-Air Grille Assembly: Mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.

1. Discharge Pattern: One-, two-, three-, or four-way throw as indicated on Drawings.

a. Discharge Pattern Adjustment: Field-adjustable limits for up and down range of motion.
b. Discharge Pattern Closure: Ability to close individual discharges of units with multiple patterns.

2. Motorized Vanes: Modulating up and down flow pattern for uniform room air distribution.
3. Additional Branch Supply Duct Connection: Sheet metal knockout for optional connection to one additional supply branch duct.

H. Return-Air Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard grille mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.

I. Outdoor Air Ventilation Connection: Sheet metal knockout for optional connection to outdoor air ventilation duct.

J. Unit Accessories:

1. Outdoor Air Ventilation Kit: Connection, motorized damper, and control to satisfy unit control sequence of operation indicated on Drawings.
2. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.

K. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors: Unit inlet air temperature.
4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:

    a. Analog Inputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
    b. Digital Inputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.
    c. Digital Outputs: Two for use in customizable control strategies.

5. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, power consumption display, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification, run test switch.
6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

L. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

## 2.6 OUTDOOR, AIR-SOURCE HEAT RECOVERY UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit modules that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.
3. All units installed shall be from the same product development generation.

4. Allow for low ambient cooling operation down to 0 deg F.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized steel and coated with a corrosion-resistant finish.

    a. Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.

2. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
3. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Compressor and Motor Assembly:

1. One or more positive-displacement, direct-drive and hermetically sealed scroll compressor(s) with inverter drive and turndown to 15 percent of rated capacity.
2. Protection: Integral protection against the following:

    a. High refrigerant pressure.
    b. Low oil level.
    c. High oil temperature.
    d. Thermal and overload.
    e. Voltage fluctuations.
    f. Phase failure and phase reversal.
    g. Short cycling.

3. Speed Control: Variable to automatically maintain refrigerant suction and condensing pressures while varying refrigerant flow to satisfy system cooling and heating loads.
4. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
5. Oil management system to ensure safe and proper lubrication over entire operating range.
6. Crankcase heaters with integral control to maintain safe operating temperature.
7. Fusible plug.

D. Condenser Coil Assembly:

1. Plate Fin Coils:

    a. Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
    b. Fins: Aluminum or copper, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
    c. Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.

2. Aluminum Microchannel Coils:

    a. Series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel-flow microchannels layered between refrigerant header manifolds.
    b. Single- or multiple-pass arrangement.
    c. Construct fins, tubes, and header manifolds of aluminum alloy.

3. Corrosion Protection: Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.
4. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.

E. Condenser Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s): Propeller type.

    a. Direct-drive arrangement.
    b. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
    c. Statically and dynamically balanced.

2. Fan Guards: Removable safety guards complying with OSHA regulations. If using metal materials, coat with corrosion-resistant coating to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
3. Motor(s): Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings and rated for outdoor duty.
4. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
5. Speed Settings and Control: Variable speed with a speed range of least 75 percent.
6. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.

G. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors:

    a. Refrigerant suction temperature.
    b. Refrigerant discharge temperature.
    c. Outdoor air temperature.
    d. Refrigerant high pressure.
    e. Refrigerant low pressure.
    f. Oil level.

4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, fuse protection, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, night setback control, power consumption display, run test switch equalize run time between multiple same components.
5. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and other outdoor unit(s).
6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

H. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

I. Unit Hardware: Zinc-plated steel, or stainless steel. Coat exposed surfaces with additional corrosion-resistant coating if required to prevention corrosion when exposed to salt spray test for 1000 hours according ASTM B117.

J. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

## 2.7 HEAT RECOVERY CONTROL UNITS (HRCUs)

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized-steel construction.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.

D. Refrigeration Assemblies and Specialties:

1. Specially designed by manufacturer for type of VRF HVAC system being installed, either two or three pipe.
2. Each refrigerant branch circuit shall have refrigerant control valve(s) to control refrigerant flow.
3. Spares: Each heat recovery control unit shall include at least one branch circuit port(s) for future use.
4. Each system piping connection upstream of heat recovery unit shall be fitted with an isolation valve to allow for service to any heat recovery control unit in the system without interrupting operation of the system.
5. Each branch circuit connection shall be fitted with an isolation valve and capped service port to allow for service to any individual branch circuit without interrupting operation of the system.

    a. If not available as an integral part of the heat recovery control unit, isolation valves shall be field installed adjacent to the unit pipe connection.

E. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, fuse protectio,.
4. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
5. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

F. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

G. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.8 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a TIA-485A or manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: open control communication between interconnected units.
3. Integration with Building Automation System: ASHRAE 135, BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:

    a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
    b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
    c. Integration shall include control monitoring scheduling change of value notifications.

4. Operator Interface:

    a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:

        1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
        2) Owner-furnished PC connected to central controller(s).
        3) Web interface through web browser software.
        4) Integration with Building Automation System.

    b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:

        1) On/off control.
        2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. VRF HVAC System Operator Software for PC:

1. Software offered by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall provide system operators with ability to monitor and control VRF HVAC system(s) from a single dedicated Owner-furnished PC.
2. Software shall provide operator with a graphic user interface to allow monitoring and control of multiple central controllers from a single device location through point-and-click mouse exchange.
3. Plan views shall show building plans with location of indoor units and identification superimposed on plans.
4. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
5. Schedules operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Schedules daily, weekly, and annual events.

6. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
7. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
8. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
9. Supports Multiple Languages: English or German.
10. Supports Imperial and Metric Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
11. Displays service notifications and error codes.
12. Monitors and displays up to 3000 item error history and 10000 item operation history for regular reporting and further archiving.
13. Monitors and displays cumulative operating time of indoor units.
14. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
15. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display.
16. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures percent capacity.

C. Central Controllers:

1. Centralized control for all indoor and outdoor units from a single central controller location.

    a. Include multiple interconnected controllers as required.

2. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
3. Schedule operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.

    a. Sets schedule for daily, weekly, and annual events.
    b. Schedule options available through central controller shall at least include the schedule options of controllers for indoor units.

4. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
5. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
6. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
7. Service diagnostics tool.
8. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
9. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display through central controller.
10. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures percent capacity.
11. Multiple RJ-45 ports for direct connection to a local PC and an Ethernet network switch.
12. Operator interface through a backlit, high-resolution color display touch panel and web accessible through standard web browser software.

D. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.
2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. Multiple Language: English or German.
4. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
5. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
6. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
7. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
8. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
9. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between 50 and 90F.
10. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
11. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments between 0-100% RH
12. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
13. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
14. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
15. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
16. Occupancy detection.
17. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
18. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
19. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
20. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
21. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
22. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

E. Wireless Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Wireless Communication:

    a. Controller communicates to remote-mounted receiver that is wired to indoor unit(s).

        1) Include receivers with wireless controllers as required to complete installation.
        2) Low-voltage power required for receivers shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

    b. One wireless controller shall be capable of communicating with one or multiple receivers to control one or multiple indoor units as a group.

2. Controller Battery Life: Three years.
3. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
4. Multiple Language: English or German.

5. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit and Celsius.
6. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
7. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
8. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
9. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
10. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between 50 and 90F.
11. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
12. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments between 0-100% RH
13. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
14. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
15. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
16. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
17. Occupancy detection.
18. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
19. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
20. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
21. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
22. Setting stored in non-volatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery for date and time only.

## 2.9 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT AND OIL

A. Refrigerant:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.
2. ASHRAE 34, Class A1 refrigerant classification.
3. R-410a.

B. Oil:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.

## 2.10 SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

A. If more than one material is listed, material selection is Contractor's option.

B. Copper Tubing:

1. Drawn-Temper Tubing: According to ASTM B88, Type L or Type DWV according to ASTM B306.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys, and water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.

C. CPVC plastic pipe according to ASTM F441/F441M, Schedule 40, with socket-type pipe fittings according to ASTM F438 and solvent cement according to ASTM F493.

## 2.11 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for system piping requirements.

B. Refrigerant Piping:

1. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
3. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

C. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.

D. Divided-Flow Specialty Fittings: Where required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for proper system operation, VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall furnish specialty fittings with identification and instructions for proper installation by Installer.

E. Refrigerant Isolation Ball Valves:

1. Description: Uni-body full port design, rated for maximum system temperature and pressure, and factory tested under pressure to ensure tight shutoff. Designed for valve operation without removing seal cap.
2. Seals: Compatible with system refrigerant and oil. Seal service life of at least 20 years.
3. Valve Connections: Flare or sweat depending on size.

## 2.12 METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Copper Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.

2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized or copper-coated steel.

B. Plastic Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, galvanized-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel.

## 2.13 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. B-line, an Eaton business.
b. Flex-Strut Inc.
c. G-Strut.
d. Haydon Corporation.
e. MIRO Industries.
f. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
g. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
h. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel for use indoors and of stainless steel for use outdoors.
7. Metallic Coating for Use Indoors: Electroplated zinc hot-dip galvanized or mill galvanized.
8. Plastic Coating for Use Outdoors: epoxy.

## 2.14 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded, zinc-coated steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.15 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.16 MISCELLANEOUS SUPPORT MATERIALS

A. Grout: ASTM C1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

B. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.

C. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated steel or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar material as rods.

## 2.17 PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation" for system piping insulation requirements.

B. Condensate Drain Piping and Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:

1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:

a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
b. Indoors: 1/2 inch thick.
c. Outdoors: 1 inch thick.

2. Field-Applied Jacket:

a. Concealed: None required.
b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, color selected by Architect, 20 mils thick.
c. Outdoors, Exposed to View: Aluminum, smooth, 0.020 inch thick.

C. Refrigerant Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:

1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:

a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
b. Indoors: 1 inch thick.
c. Outdoors: 1 inch thick.

2. Field-Applied Jacket:

a. Concealed: None required.
b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, color selected by Architect, 20 mils thick.
c. Outdoors, Exposed to View: Aluminum, smooth, 0.020 inch thick.

D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.

E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.

F. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: Aluminum.
5. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." Formaldehyde emissions shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m or 7 ppb, whichever is less.

## 2.18 SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

A. Cable Rating: Listed and labeled for application according to NFPA 70.

1. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

   a. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches or less.
   b. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
   c. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.

2. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
3. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.

B. Low-Voltage Control Cabling:

1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

   a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
   b. PVC insulation.
   c. Braided or foil shielded.
   d. PVC jacket.
   e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
b. PVC insulation.
c. Braided or foil shielded.
d. PVC jacket.
e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

C. TIA-485A Network Cabling:

1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

a. Paired, one pair, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
b. PVC insulation.
c. Unshielded.
d. PVC jacket.
e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

a. Paired, one pair, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
c. Unshielded.
d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
f. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

D. Ethernet Network Cabling: TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 cable with RJ-45 connectors.

1. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of category cable indicated.
2. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
3. Shielding: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP).
4. Cable Rating: By application.
5. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control wiring and cable raceways.

## 2.19 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect factory-assembled equipment.

B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

D. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

E. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

F. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and outdoor pads for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed.

G. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Clearance:

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.

B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.

1. Loose components shall be installed by manufacturer's service representative.

C. Equipment Restraint Installation: Install equipment with seismic-restraint device. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.

B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch.

C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.

D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.

E. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.

F. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.

G. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.

H. For floor- and wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within walls.

I. Floor-mounted units located in mechanical rooms.

J. Install floor-mounted units on support structure indicated on Drawings.

K. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to supported equipment.

L. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.

B. Install outdoor units on support structures indicated on Drawings.

C. Pad-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Attachment: Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
2. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

D. Roof-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, stainless-steel fasteners.

## 3.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping and tubing free of sags.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.

J. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.

K. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

L. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

## 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:

1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.
2. Install an adjustable stainless-steel hose clamp with adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide a leak-free installation.
3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:

    a. Details indicated on Drawings.

b. Manufacturer's requirements.
c. Governing codes.
d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.

4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.

B. Gravity Drains:

1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than one percent.

C. Pumped Drains:

1. If unit condensate pump or lift mechanism is not included with an integral check valve, install a full-size check valve in each branch pipe near unit connection to prevent backflow into unit.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION OF REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet. Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.

C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.

E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in protective conduit where installed belowground.

G. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.

H. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

I. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.

J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

K. Joint Construction:

1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.

## 3.8 INSTALLATION OF METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

C. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified.

D. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners, for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick, in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

E. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel.

1. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

L. Piping and Tubing Insulation:

1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.

M. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
4. Multiple horizontal pipes located indoors may use metal framing systems with split clamp attachment for each pipe in lieu if individual clevis hangers.

5. Pipe stands for horizontal pipes located outdoors.
6. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
7. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

N. Horizontal Piping Hanger Spacing and Rod Size: Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. Sizes through NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

O. Plastic Pipe Hanger and Support Spacing:

1. Space hangers and supports according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions.
2. Maximum spacing, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.

P. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8).
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): If longer ends are required for riser clamps.

Q. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at midpoint intervals between floors, not to exceed 5 feet.

R. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified.

S. Use hangers, supports, and attachments with galvanized coatings unless otherwise indicated.

T. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

U. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1 inch.

V. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
4. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

W. Building Attachments: Install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

## 3.9 INSTALLATION OF PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated. Installation to maintain a continuous vapor barrier.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.

2. When preformed valve covers are unavailable, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

E. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

## 3.10 INSTALLATION OF DUCT, ACCESSORIES, AND AIR OUTLETS

A. Where installing ductwork adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

B. Comply with requirements for metal ducts specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

C. Comply with requirements for air duct accessories specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

D. Comply with requirements for air diffusers specified in Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers."

E. Comply with requirements for registers and grilles specified in Section 233713.23 "Registers and Grilles."

## 3.11 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.

B. To extent electrical power is required for system equipment, components, and controls, and is not indicated on Drawings and addressed in the Specifications, the design for such electrical power shall be delegated to VRF HVAC system provider.

1. Delegated design of electrical power to equipment, components and controls, and associated installation shall be included at no additional cost to Owner.

C. Connect field electrical power source to each separate electrical device requiring field electrical power. Coordinate termination point and connection type with Installer.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding connections.

F. Install nameplate or acrylic label with self-adhesive back for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters. Letters at least 1/2 inch high.
2. Locate nameplate or label where easily visible.

G. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or revised in this Section.

1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches square by 1-1/2 inches 2-1/8 inches deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.

H. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

I. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

J. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

## 3.12 SOFTWARE

A. Cybersecurity:

1. Software:

a. Coordinate security requirements with IT department.
b. Ensure that latest stable software release is installed and properly operating.
c. Disable or change default passwords to password using a combination of uppercase and lower letters, numbers, and symbols at least eight characters in length. Record passwords and turn over to party responsible for system operation and administration.

2. Hardware:

a. Coordinate location and access requirements with IT department.

b. Enable highest level of wireless encryption that is compatible with Owner's ICT network.
c. Disable dual network connections.

## 3.13 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Installation Method:

1. Install cables in raceways except as follows:

a. Within equipment and associated control enclosures.
b. In accessible ceiling spaces where open cable installation method may be used.
c. In gypsum board partitions where cable may be enclosed within wall cavity.

2. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.
16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.

17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

D. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

## 3.14 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

## 3.15 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.

B. For low-voltage control cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

## 3.16 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system equipment, piping, tubing, and valves. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Identify system electrical and controls components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify each control cable on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each cable shall have a unique tag.

## 3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.

1. Field service shall be performed by a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.

a. Additional factory-authorized representatives may assist with completion of certain activities only if supervised by manufacturer's employee. A factory-authorized representative shall not provide assistance without manufacturer's employee supervision.

2. Manufacturer shall provide on-site visits during the course of construction at installation milestones indicated. System Installer shall coordinate each visit in advance to give manufacturer sufficient notice to plan the visit.

a. First Visit: Kick-off meeting.
b. Second Visit: At approximately 25 percent completion of system(s).
c. Third Visit: At approximately 50 percent completion of system(s).
d. Fourth Visit: At approximately 75 percent completion of system(s).
e. Fifth Visit: Final inspection before system startup.

3. Kick-off Meeting:

a. Meeting shall include system Installer and other related trades with sole purpose of reviewing VRF HVAC system installation requirements and close coordination required to make a successful installation.
b. Meeting shall be held at Project site and scheduled at a mutually agreed to time that occurs before the start of any part of system installation.
c. Meeting shall cover the following as a minimum requirement:

1) Review of latest issue of Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications, relevant to VRF HVAC systems.
2) Manufacturer's installation requirements specific to systems being installed.
3) Review of all relevant VRF HVAC system submittals, including delegated-design submittals.
4) Required field activities related installation of VRF HVAC system.
5) Project team communication protocol, contact information, and exchange of responsibilities for each party involved, including manufacturer, supplier, system Installer, and other related trades.

4. Site Visits: Activities for each site visit shall include the following:

a. Meet with VRF HVAC system Installer to discuss field activities, issues, and suggested methods to result in a successful installation.
b. Offer technical support to Installer and related trades as related to VRF system(s) being installed.
c. Review progress of VRF HVAC system(s) installation for strict compliance with manufacturer's requirements.
d. Advise and if necessary assist Installer with updating related refrigerant calculations and system documentation.
e. Issue a report for each visit, documenting the visit.

1) Report to include name and contact information of individual making the visit.
2) Date(s) and time frames while on-site.
3) Names and contact information of people meeting with while on-site.
4) Clearly identify and list each separate issue that requires resolution. For each issue, provide a unique identification number, relevant importance, specific location or equipment identification, description of issue, recommended corrective action, and follow-up requirements needed. Include a digital photo for clarification if deemed to be beneficial.

5. Final Inspection before Startup:

a. Before inspection, Installer to provide written request to manufacturer stating the system is fully installed according manufacturer's requirements and ready for final inspection.
b. All system equipment and operating components shall be inspected. If components are inaccessible for inspection, they shall be made accessible before the final inspection can be completed.
c. Manufacturer shall provide a comprehensive inspection of all equipment and each operating component that comprise the complete system(s). Inspection shall follow a detailed checklist specific to each equipment and operating component.
d. Inspection reports for indoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1) Unit designation on Drawings.
2) Manufacturer model number.
3) Serial number.
4) Network address, if applicable.
5) Each equipment setting.
6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
7) Proper service clearance provided.
8) Wiring and power connections correct.
9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
13) Controller location.
14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.

16) Condensate removal acceptable.
17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
18) Unit airflow direction within an acceptable range.
19) If applicable, fan external static pressure setting.
20) Filter type and condition acceptable.
21) Noise level within an acceptable range.
22) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
23) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
24) If applicable, ductwork properly connected.
25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
26) Remarks.

e. Inspection reports for outdoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1) Unit designation on Drawings.
2) Manufacturer model number.
3) Serial number.
4) Network address, if applicable.
5) Each equipment setting.
6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
7) Proper service clearance provided.
8) Wiring and power connections correct.
9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
12) Condensate removal acceptable.
13) Noise level within an acceptable range.
14) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
15) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
16) Remarks.

f. Inspection reports for indoor, dedicated outdoor air ventilation units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1) Unit designation on Drawings.
2) Manufacturer model number.
3) Serial number.
4) Network address, if applicable.
5) Each equipment setting.
6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
7) Proper service clearance provided.
8) Wiring and power connections correct.
9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
13) Controller location.
14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.

15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
16) Condensate removal acceptable.
17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
18) Fan external static pressure setting.
19) Filter type and condition acceptable.
20) Noise level within an acceptable range.
21) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
22) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
23) Automatic dampers properly installed and operating.
24) Ductwork properly connected.
25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
26) Remarks.

g. Inspection reports for energy recovery ventilators shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1) Unit designation on Drawings.
2) Manufacturer model number.
3) Serial number.
4) Network address, if applicable.
5) Each equipment setting.
6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
7) Proper service clearance provided.
8) Wiring and power connections correct.
9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
13) Controller location.
14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
15) Humidity readings.
16) Condensate removal acceptable.
17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
18) Fan external static pressure setting.
19) Filter type and condition acceptable.
20) Noise level within an acceptable range.
21) Automatic dampers properly installed and operating.
22) Ductwork properly connected.
23) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
24) Remarks.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure of not less than 1.5 times VRF HVAC system operating pressure, but not less than 600 psig, using dry nitrogen.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:

    a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
    d. Date and time at start of test.
    e. Test pressure at start of test.
    f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
    g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    h. Date and time at end of test.
    i. Test pressure at end of test.
    j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
    k. Remarks:

5. Submit test reports for Project record.

D. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:

    a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
    c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
    d. Date and time at start of test.
    e. Test pressure at start of test.
    f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.

g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
h. Date and time at end of test.
i. Test pressure at end of test.
j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
k. Remarks:

5. Submit test reports for Project record.
6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.

E. System Refrigerant Charge:

1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.
2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.

F. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.18 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.

1. Service representative shall be an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
4. Check each indoor unit, HRCU, and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
5. Check sound levels of each indoor and outdoor unit.

C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.

1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.

D. System Operation Report:

1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.
2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than two hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.

    a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.

E. Witness:

1. Invite Architect Owner and Commissioning Agent to witness startup service procedures.
2. Provide written notice not less than 20 business days before start of startup service.

## 3.19 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.

C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.

D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.20 PROTECTION

A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.

C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.

D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

## 3.21 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of system Installer who are manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include two service visits for preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper equipment and system operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

## 3.22 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 3.23 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.

B. Instructor:

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified by VRF HVAC system manufacturer with current training on the system(s), equipment, and controls that are installed.
2. Instructor's credentials shall be submitted for review by Architect before scheduling training.
3. Instructor(s) primary job responsibility shall be Owner training.
4. Instructor(s) shall have not less than three years of training experience with VRF HVAC system manufacturer and past training experience on at least three projects of comparable size and complexity.

C. Schedule and Duration:

1. Schedule training with Owner at least 20 business days before first training session.
2. Training shall occur before Owner occupancy.
3. Training shall be held at mutually agreed date and time during normal business hours.
4. Each training day shall not exceed eight hours of training. Daily training schedule shall allow time for one-hour lunch period and 15-minute break after every two hours of training.
5. Perform not less than eight total hours of training.

D. Location: Owner shall provide a suitable on-site location to host classroom training.

E. Training Attendees: Assume three people.

F. Training Attendance: For record purposes, document training attendees at the start of each new training session. Record attendee's name, signature, phone number, and e-mail address.

G. Training Format: Individual training modules shall include classroom training followed by hands-on field demonstration and training.

H. Training Materials: Provide training materials in electronic format to each attendee.

1. Include instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Video record each classroom training session and submit an electronic copy to Owner before requesting Owner acceptance of training.

I. Acceptance: Obtain Architect written acceptance that training is complete and requirements indicated have been satisfied.

END OF SECTION 238129

# SECTION 238213 – RADIANT HEATING PANEL UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Hydronic heating panels.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, specialties, and accessories for each product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Detail equipment assemblies and suspension and attachment.
   2. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
   1. Radiant Panel Finishes: 12 by 12 inches.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

   1. Suspended ceiling components.
   2. Structural members to which heaters and suspension systems will be attached.
   3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   4. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

      a. Lighting fixtures.

b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.

5. Perimeter moldings.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric radiant heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective coverings for storage and identified with labels describing contents:
1. Radiant system components: Quantity of each manifold, connector, hoses, etc. equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRONIC HEATING PANELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong / Steel Ceilings (Basis of Design).
2. Zehnder Rittling Carboline.
3. Sterling Heat.

B. Description:
1. The radiant panel shall consist of a heat exchanger assembly, bonded directly to the back of a metal ceiling panel. The heat exchanger assembly shall consist of two main pieces, a "C" channel aluminum extrusion, in which a seamless precision drawn copper tube is embedded. The heat exchanger assembly shall be custom manufactured to fit the various sizes of ceiling panels used. For custom shaped ceiling panels, or panels that have integral light fixtures, sprinkler heads, and other building appliances, shape and bend the copper tubing to fit the panel according to the application design. Systems that cannot provide this feature when necessary are not acceptable. The bonding of the heat exchanger assembly shall be executed at a center certified by the manufacturer. No "field installation" of the profile to the metal ceiling panel shall be allowed.
2. Each HTG zone shall consist of one or more panels, which are connected in series

with flexible hoses to form a hydronic loop. The hoses are to be equipped with “push-fit” quick connect/disconnect couplings. Within the control zone multiple hydronic loops may be connected to the water mains in parallel.

C. Materials:
1. The "C" channel aluminum extrusions shall be not less than 3 in. wide and custom manufactured to fit the various sizes of ceiling panels used. The ends of the profile shall be within 0.4 in. of the edge of the ceiling panels. The “C” profile is to encase the copper tube under an angle of no less than 210˚. A consistent/continuous thermal contact between the extrusion and the copper is to be achieved.
2. The copper tube shall be a precision drawn 0.47 in. OD, 0.42 in ID, seamless, semi-hard drawn copper tube in the shape and size required for each size of panel. The copper coil shall have flat u-bends and the suppl/return shall have 180˚ bends in order to maintain maximum tube contact along the “c” channel aluminum extrusions. The copper tubing shall be tested with the “Eddy Current Method” and provided with documentation that certifies it is free of hairline cracks and inclusions. The copper is to be cut to length using a chip less method, which eliminates the accumulation of particles in the tubing. The ends of the coils are to be fitted with protective plastic caps to prevent particles from entering, and to protect the surface from scratches, which may impair the quality of the seal. The caps are only to be removed before the hoses are mounted.
3. The exchanger assembly shall be factory bonded directly to the metal ceiling tile surface using a thermally activated bonding process, utilizing a permanently elastic VHB (very high bonding) tape not more than 0.2mm thick. The aluminum extrusion shall be painted flat black on the lower side. Acoustic fleece shall be applied between the extrusions for sound absorption. Acoustic fleece under the extrusions shall not be accepted.

D. Finish: Panel design, perforation and finish per spec 095133. Provide 1” acoustical fleece.

E. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Nominal Panel Size: 24 x 24 or 24 by 48 inches
2. Piping Inlet and Outlet: NPS 1/2.
3. Heating Performance
   a. Submittal shall correct for mounting and environmental variations
4. Cooling Performance
   a. Submittal shall correct for mounting and environmental variations
5. See Schedule for Additional Requirements.

F. Warranty
1. 5-years.

G. Controls
1. Each thermal zone shall be provided with a 2-way control valve. Cv selected for a minimum 2 psi pressure drop.

H. Push-Fit Hoses

1. Hoses shall be made of flexible stainless steel (Polyethylene or EDPM core) of various lengths mated to push-fit type quick connect/disconnect end fittings. All hoses shall have an integrated barrier to prevent oxygen from permeating through the hose.
2. Installation shall be by pushing the coupling to the push-on depth and not require any tools. A security C-clip shall be provided between the release ring and the coupling body.
3. Hose shall be available in varying lengths – nominal 30".
4. The hoses shall be tested at a minimum of 145 PSI and 176°F
5. Provide brass nipples for installation of supply and return piping to receive push-fit hoses for connections to radiant panels. The nipples shall be one piece precision-machined brass to ensure a leak-tight system. The nipple ends shall be either solder or threaded.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive radiant heating and cooling units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for hydronic piping connections to verify actual locations before radiant heating and cooling unit installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Ceiling framing and panel installation by Division 9.

B. Activate radiant ceiling panels. Panel activation includes, but is not limited to, radiant tubing and extrusion installation, panel-to-panel connections with flex connectors and zone connection to building HW/CHW system as detailed in drawings.

C. Coordinate layout and installation of radiant heaters and suspension-system components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, communications system, security system, and partition assemblies.

D. Install thermostat/humidistat devices 48 inches above finished floor.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."

B. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

C. Flexible hoses are the preferred way of connecting panel-to-panel and Cu-connection bends.

D. Heating/cooling zone: Unless otherwise indicated, install shutoff valves on supply and return zone dual temperature manifold and a balancing valve on return manifold. For zones with 3-way switch over control, provide 2-way pressure independent valve in return manifold.

E. Heating and cooling zone: Provide switch over control 6-way control valve. After switch over control, provide dual temperature supply and return piping manifolds.

F. Install piping adjacent to unit to allow service and maintenance.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Subject piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure but not more than 100 psig.

B. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning radiant piping components that do not pass tests, and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare a written report of testing. After installing panels, inspect unit cabinet for damage to finish. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

## 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain radiant heaters and panels. See Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 238213

# SECTION 238219 - FAN COIL UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ductless fan coil units and accessories.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of fan coil unit indicated.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.

2. Structural members to which fan coil units will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.

6. Perimeter moldings.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan coil units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

    a. Maintenance schedules and repair part lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fan Coil Unit Filters: Furnish 1 spare filters for each filter installed.
2. Fan Belts: Furnish 1 spare fan belts for each unit installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Compressor failure.
b. Condenser coil leak.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period (Compressor Only): Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

2.2 DUCTLESS FAN COIL UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Airtherm; a Mestek Company.
2. Carrier Corporation; a UTC company.
3. DRS Marlo Coil; part of DRS Technologies, Inc.
4. Dunham-Bush.
5. Engineered Air.
6. ENVIRO-TEC; by Johnson Controls, Inc.
7. First Company Products.
8. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
9. IEC; a subsidiary of LSB Industries, Inc.
10. McQuay International; a member of Daikin Group.

11. Nailor Industries Inc.
12. Price Industries
13. Rosemex.
14. Superior Rex.
15. Titus.
16. Trane Inc.
17. USA Coil & Air.
18. YORK; by Johnson Controls, Inc.

B. Fan Coil Unit Configurations: Row-split.

1. Number of Heating Coils: One with two-pipe system.
2. Number of Cooling Coils: One with four-pipe system.

C. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, coated glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Coil Section Insulation: Insulate coil section according to Section 230616 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Main and Auxiliary Drain Pans: Stainless steel. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply with ASHRAE 62.1. Drain pans shall be removable.

F. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture, with baked-enamel finish and removable access panel. Floor-mounting units shall have leveling screws.

G. Cabinet: Steel with baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's standard paint color as selected by Architect .

1. Vertical Unit Front Panels: Removable, steel, with integral stamped discharge grille and channel-formed edges, cam fasteners, and insulation on back of panel.
2. Horizontal Unit Bottom Panels: Fastened to unit with cam fasteners and hinge and attached with safety chain; with integral stamped discharge grilles.
3. Stack Unit Discharge and Return Grille: Aluminum double-deflection discharge grille, and louvered- or panel-type return grille; color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's colors. Return grille shall provide maintenance access to fan coil unit.
4. Steel recessing flanges for recessing fan coil units into ceiling or wall.

H. Filters: Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.

1. MERV Rating: 7 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
2. Pleated Cotton-Polyester Media: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

I. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm), rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig (1378 kPa) and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F (104 deg C). Include manual air vent and drain valve.

J. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal; directly connected to motor. Thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels, and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Termination: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

K. Factory, Hydronic Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet, and outlet.
1. Two-way, modulating control valve for chilled-water coil.
2. Two-way, modulating control valve for hot-water heating coil.
3. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig (2758-kPa) working pressure and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F (0.5 to 99 deg C). Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
    a. Length: 24 inches (600 mm).
    b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to fan coil unit connection size.
4. Two-Piece Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig (4140-kPa) minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
5. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure, 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venturi, connections for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and a memory stop to retain set position.
6. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body; 300-psig (2070-kPa) working pressure at 250 deg F (121 deg C); with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning piston spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow with plus or minus 10 percent over differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
7. Y-Pattern Hydronic Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 (DN 15) hose-end, full-port, ball-type blowdown valve in drain connection.
8. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

9. Risers: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) copper pipe with hose and ball valve for system flushing.

L. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

M. DDC Terminal Controller:

1. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on seven-day clock with a minimum of four programmable periods per day.
2. Unoccupied-Period-Override Operation: Two hours.
3. Unit Supply-Air Fan Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Fan runs continuously.
b. Unoccupied Periods: Fan cycles to maintain room setback temperature.

4. Hydronic-Cooling-Coil Operation:

a. Occupied Periods: Modulate control valve to maintain room temperature.
b. Unoccupied Periods: Close control valve.

N. Building Automation System (BAS) Interface Requirements:

1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation.

O. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive fan coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan coil unit installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.

B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.

C. Suspend fan coil units from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

D. Verify locations of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches (1220 mm) above finished floor.

E. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.

B. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to fan coil units with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct connections.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan coil units.

END OF SECTION 238219

# SECTION 238229 - RADIATORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes flat-pipe steel radiators.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Indicate location and size of each field connection.
4. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
5. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls and other accessories.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FLAT-PIPE STEEL RADIATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hydro-Air Components Inc.
2. Quincy Hydronic Technology Inc.
3. Runtal North America, Inc.
4. Sterling

B. Heating Elements: Steel, welded and formed into flat, square, steel header with minimum thickness of 0.109 inch. Include threaded piping and air-vent connections.

1. Working Pressure: 56 psig 0.048 inch.
2. Working Pressure: 85 psig 0.058 inch.
3. Working Pressure: 128 psig 0.078 inch.
4. Tube Height: see schedule.
5. Tube Depth: see schedule.
6. Tube Length: see schedule.
7. Number of Tubes High: see schedule.
8. Number of Tubes Deep: see schedule.
9. Room Air Temperature: 65 deg F.
10. Heat Output: see schedule.

C. Mounting: Wall brackets with maximum spacing of 36 inches.

D. Finish: Baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's custom color as selected by Architect.

E. Accessories:

1. Steel piping covers finished to match radiator finish.
2. Flexible Expansion Compensation Hoses: Minimum 400-psig working pressure, and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F.

a. Length: 24 inches.
b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to connection size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install expansion compensation hoses.

C. Install piping covers.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."Section 15179 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect radiators and components to piping according to Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."Section 15179 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

1. Install shutoff valves on inlet and outlet, and balancing valve on outlet.

C. Install control valves as required by 230900.

D. Install piping adjacent to radiators to allow service and maintenance.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 238229

# SECTION 238236 - FINNED-TUBE RADIATION HEATERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes hydronic, finned-tube radiation heaters.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include details and dimensions of custom-fabricated enclosures.
4. Indicate location and size of each field connection.
5. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
6. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
7. Include enclosure joints, corner pieces, access doors, and other accessories.
8. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HOT-WATER FINNED-TUBE RADIATION HEATERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Engineered Air.
2. Hydro-Air Components Inc.
3. Quincy Hydronic Technology Inc.

4. Rosemex Products.
5. Slant/Fin Corp.
6. Sterling HVAC Products; a Mestek company.
7. Trane.

B. Performance Ratings: Rate finned-tube radiation heaters according to Hydronics Institute's "I=B=R Testing and Rating Standard for Finned-Tube (Commercial) Radiation."

C. Heating Elements: Copper tubing mechanically expanded into flanged collars of evenly spaced aluminum fins resting on element supports. One end of tube shall be belled.
1. See Schedule for Performance Details.

D. Element Supports: Ball-bearing cradle type to permit longitudinal movement on enclosure brackets.

E. Floor-Mounted Pedestals: Conceal insulated piping at maximum 36-inch (914-mm) spacing. Pedestal-mounted back panel shall be solid panel matching front panel. Provide stainless-steel escutcheon for floor openings at pedestals.

F. Support Brackets: Locate at maximum 36-inch (914-mm) spacing to support front panel and element.

G. Enclosure Style: bare element within custom enclosure.

H. Accessories: Filler sections, corners, relay sections, and splice plates all matching the enclosure and grille finishes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINNED-TUBE RADIATION HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install enclosure continuously around corners, using outside and inside corner fittings.

C. Join sections with splice plates and filler pieces to provide continuous enclosure.

D. Install access doors for access to valves.

E. Install enclosure continuously from wall to wall.

F. Terminate enclosures with manufacturer's end caps except where enclosures are indicated to extend to adjoining walls.

G. Install valves within reach of access door provided in enclosure.

H. Install air-seal gasket between wall and recessed flanges or front cover of fully recessed unit.

I. Install piping within pedestals for freestanding units.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect hot-water finned-tube radiation heaters and components to piping according to Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

1. Install shutoff valves on inlet and outlet, and balancing valve on outlet.

C. Install control valves as required by 230900.

D. Install piping adjacent to finned-tube radiation heaters to allow service and maintenance.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 238236

# SECTION 238239.19 - WALL AND CEILING UNIT HEATERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes wall and ceiling heaters with propeller fans and electric-resistance heating coils.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
4. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chromalox, Inc.
2. INDEECO.
3. Marley Engineered Products.

4. QMark; Marley Engineered Products.
5. Trane.

## 2.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Assembly including chassis, electric heating coil, fan, motor, and controls. Comply with UL 2021.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 CABINET

A. Front Panel: Extruded-aluminum bar grille, with removable panels fastened with tamperproof fasteners.

B. Finish: Baked enamel over baked-on primer with manufacturer's standard color selected by Architect, applied to factory-assembled and -tested wall and ceiling heaters before shipping.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet Enclosure: Steel with finish to match cabinet.

## 2.4 COIL

A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in corrosion-resistant metallic sheath. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware, and limit controls for high-temperature protection. Provide integral circuit breaker for overcurrent protection.

## 2.5 FAN AND MOTOR

A. Fan: Aluminum propeller directly connected to motor.

B. Motor: Permanently lubricated. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

## 2.6 CONTROLS

A. Controls: Unit-mounted thermostat. Low-voltage relay with transformer kit.

B. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single field connection with disconnect switch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive wall and ceiling unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Install wall and ceiling unit heaters level and plumb.

C. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

END OF SECTION 238239.19

# SECTION 238316 - RADIANT-HEATING HYDRONIC PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes radiant-heating piping, including:

1. PEX pipe and fittings
2. PEX-AL-PEX pipe and fittings
3. Distribution manifolds
4. Piping specialties
5. Controls

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. PEX: Crosslinked polyethylene.

C. PEX/AL/PEX: Crosslinked polyethylene/aluminum/crosslinked polyethylene.

D. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data for piping, fittings, manifolds, specialties, and controls; include pressure and temperature ratings, oxygen-barrier performance, fire-performance characteristics, and water-flow and pressure-drop characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: Show piping layout and details drawn to scale, including valves, manifolds, controls, and support assemblies, and their attachments to building structure.

1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which radiant-heating piping will be attached.
3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

a. Lighting fixtures.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.

4. Perimeter moldings.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For radiant-heating piping valves and equipment to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PEX PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. REHAU.
2. Uponor.
3. Viega LLC.
4. Watts Radiant; A WATTS Brand.

B. Pipe Material: PEX plastic according to ASTM F 876.

C. Oxygen Barrier: Limit oxygen diffusion through the tube to maximum 0.10 mg per cu. m/day at 104 deg F according to DIN 4726.

D. Fittings: ASTM F 1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.

E. Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 100 psig and 180 deg F.

## 2.2 DISTRIBUTION MANIFOLDS

A. Manifold: Minimum NPS 1, brass.

B. Main Shutoff Valves:

1. Factory installed on supply and return connections.
2. Three-piece body.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
5. Seals: PTFE.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

C. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Key furnished with valve, or screwdriver bit.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

D. Balancing Valves:

1. Body: Plastic or bronze, ball or plug, or globe cartridge type.
2. Ball or Plug: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Globe Cartridge and Washer: Brass with EPDM composition washer.
4. Seat: PTFE.
5. Visual Flow Indicator: Flowmeter with visible indication in a clear plastic cap at top of valve.
6. Differential Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable meter to measure loss across calibrated orifice.
7. Handle Style: Lever or knob, with memory stop to retain set position if used for shutoff.
8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Zone Control Valves:

1. Body: Plastic or bronze, ball or plug, or globe cartridge type.
2. Ball or Plug: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Globe Cartridge and Washer: Brass with EPDM composition washer.
4. Seat: PTFE.
5. Actuator: Replaceable electric motor.
6. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

F. Thermometers:

1. Mount on supply and return connections.
2. Case: Dry type, metal or plastic, 2-inch diameter.
3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
4. Movement: Mechanical, connecting element and pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Black metal.
7. Window: Plastic.
8. Connector: Rigid, back type.
9. Thermal System: Liquid- or mercury-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

G. Mounting Brackets: Copper, or plastic- or copper-clad steel, where in contact with manifold.

## 2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Cable Ties:

1. Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, one-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
2. Minimum Width: 1/8 inch.
3. Tensile Strength: 20 lb, minimum.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.

B. Floor Mounting Staples:

1. Steel, with corrosion-resistant coating and smooth finish without sharp edges.
2. Minimum Thickness: 3/32 inch.
3. Width: Minimum, wider than tubing.

C. Floor Mounting Clamps:

1. Two bolts, steel, with corrosion-resistant coating and smooth finish without sharp edges.
2. Minimum Thickness: 3/32 inch.
3. Width: Minimum, wider than tubing.

D. Floor Mounting Tracks:

1. Aluminum or plastic channel track with smooth finish and no sharp edges.
2. Minimum Thickness: 1/16 inch.
3. Slot Width: Snap fit to hold tubing.
4. Slot Spacing: 2-inch intervals.

E. Modular Interlocking Blocks:

1. Polypropylene snap-together blocks with grooves to support piping.
2. Galvanized sheet metal or aluminum emission plates.
3. Natural mineralboard cover panel.

## 2.4 CONTROLS

A. Temperature-control devices and sequence of operations are specified in Section 230900 and on drawings.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Danfoss Inc.
2. Honeywell Building Solutions; Honeywell International, Inc.
3. REHAU.
4. tekmar; A WATTS Brand.
5. Watts Radiant; A WATTS Brand.

C. Precipitation and Temperature Sensor:

1. Microprocessor-based control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
2. Precipitation and temperature sensors shall sense the surface conditions of pavement and shall be programmed to operate pump and zone control valves as follows:

    a. Temperature Span: 34 to 44 deg F.
    b. Adjustable Delay Off Span: 30 to 90 minutes.
    c. Start Pump or Open Zone Control Valves: Following two-minute delay if ambient temperature is below set point and precipitation is detected.
    d. Stop Pump or Close Zone Control Valves: On detection of a dry surface plus time delay.

3. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and precipitation and temperature sensors.
4. Minimum 30-A contactor to start pump and open valves.
5. Precipitation sensor shall be mounted in pavement.
6. Provide relay with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, for interface with central HVAC control-system workstation.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive radiant-heating piping for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Ensure that surfaces and pipes in contact with radiant-heating piping are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
2. Ensure that surfaces and substrates are level and plumb.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Install the following types of radiant-heating piping for the applications described:

1. Piping in Exterior Pavement: PEX.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings or coordination drawings.

B. Install radiant-heating piping continuous from the manifold through the heated panel and back to the manifold without piping joints in heated panels.

C. Connect radiant piping to manifold in a reverse-return arrangement.

D. Do not bend pipes in radii smaller than manufacturer's minimum bend radius dimensions.

E. Install manifolds in accessible locations, or install access panels to provide maintenance access as required in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

F. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties" for pipes and connections to hydronic systems and for glycol-solution fill requirements.

G. Fire- and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

H. Piping in Exterior Pavement:

1. Secure piping in concrete floors by attaching pipes to reinforcement using cable ties.
2. Space cable ties a maximum of 18 inches o.c. and at center of turns or bends.
3. Maintain 3-inch minimum cover.
4. Install a sleeve of 3/8-inch- thick, foam-type insulation or PE pipe around tubing and extending for a minimum of 10 inches on each side of slab joints to protect the tubing passing through expansion or control joints. Anchor sleeve to slab form at control joints to provide maximum clearance for saw cut.
5. Maintain minimum 40-psig pressure in piping during concrete placement and continue for 24 hours after placement.

I. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and ensure integrity of piping and as approved by Architect.

J. After system balancing has been completed, mark balancing valves to permanently indicate final position.

K. Perform the following adjustments before operating the system:

1. Open valves to fully open position.
2. Check operation of automatic valves.
3. Set temperature controls so all zones call for full flow.
4. Purge air from piping.

L. After concrete or plaster heating panel has cured as recommended by concrete or plaster supplier, operate radiant-heating system as follows:

1. Start system heating at a maximum of 10 deg F above the ambient radiant-panel temperature and increase 10 deg F each following day until design temperature is achieved.
2. For freeze protection, operate at a minimum of 60 deg F supply-water temperature.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare radiant-heating piping for testing as follows:

1. Open all isolation valves and close bypass valves.
2. Open and verify operation of zone control valves.
3. Flush with clean water and clean strainers.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Subject piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure but not more than 100 psig. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Radiant-heating piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Protect hydronic piping system from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 238316

# SECTION 238413 - HUMIDIFIERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes self-contained humidifiers.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
   1. Product data showing compliance with ASHRAE 62.1.
   2. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
   3. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
   4. Laboratory Test Reports: For insulation, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and installation of humidifiers. Include piping details, plans, elevations, sections, details of components, manifolds, and attachments to other work.

   1. Include wiring diagrams. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control test reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with ARI 640, "Commercial and Industrial Humidifiers."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-CONTAINED HUMIDIFIERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong International, Inc.
2. Neptronics.
3. Condair / Nortec Industries Inc.

B. Summary: provide electrode humidifier generating mineral-free, sterile steam from a potable water supply packaged unit, wall mounted, atmospheric steam generation using an electrode steam cylinder. Resistive element technology not acceptable.

C. Touchscreen controller with standard building automation and Online connectivity:
1. Intuitive touchscreen control with color graphic user interface.
2. Standard building automation communication protocols BACnet IP, BACnet MSTP and Modbus. Additional hardware required for building automation communication not acceptable.
3. Standard online connectivity for remote monitoring and factory diagnostic.
4. Embedded web interface for easy configuration and remote monitoring from any computer with a web browser over a local area network (LAN) connection.
5. USB interface for new software/feature upload and download of operational information.
6. Single or dual channel analog signal acceptance, supporting both demand and transducer control. Ability to control setpoint from humidifier control when using transducer controls.

D. Standard remote monitoring online:
1. Integrated hardware and software allows for remote end-user and factory diagnostic of humidifier(s) via the internet.
2. Humidifier parameter data and performance trending data can be exported remotely using the internet.

E. Packaged system with electrode cylinder technology:
1. Cylinder optimized for humidifier capacity and supply voltage. Cylinder must have welded seam to ensure watertight and have high water sensor to prevent overfilling.
2. Durable powder coated steel cabinet with zero side clearance requirement for minimal footprint.
3. Insulating air gap between plumbing and electrical compartment for increased electronic reliability.
4. Standard internal drain water tempering to ensure maximum 140° F drain water. External drain water cooler not acceptable.
5. Integral fill cup with minimum 1-inch air gap to prevent back siphoning.
6. Full cylinder indication and pre-notification of automatic shutdown at end of cylinder life.
7. Automatic pulse feature to clean any obstruction from the drain solenoid valve if required.

8. Automatic off-season shut-down [after 3 days of "no call"] will completely drain the cylinder[s] and automatically restart on call for humidity. Adjustable on/off and time sequence. Provides extended cylinder life, while ensuring stagnant water does not remain in the system.
9. Plumbing door interlock safety switch to allow power interruption when installing or servicing the humidifier.

F. Auto-adaptive control water management:
1. Advanced water management utilizing the patented Proportional plus Integral Auto-Adaptive Control system for optimal energy efficiency, water usage and cylinder life.
2. 98% thermal efficiency from startup until end of cylinder life.
3. Drains automatically optimized to water conditions to maximize cylinder and reduce water usage.
4. Modulating output between 20% and 100% of rated capacity.

G. Manifold: ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless-steel short-absorption distance manifold extending across entire width of duct or plenum and equipped with mounting brackets on ends. Absorption distance to be under 12” for scheduled load conditions. Tube and insulation constructed from 304 SS shielding to be isolated from distributor using plenum rated synthetic foam strips. Insulation to provide air-gap to minimize conduction and convection, and reflective surface to minimize radiating heat transfer.

H. Cabinet: Sheet metal enclosure for housing heater cylinder, electrical wiring, components, controls, and control panel. Enclosure shall include baked-enamel finish, hinged or removable access door, and threaded outlet in bottom of cabinet for drain piping.

I. Accessories:
1. Duct-mounting, modulating high-limit humidistat.
2. Airflow switch for preventing humidifier operation without airflow.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install humidifiers with required clearance for service and maintenance. Maintain path, downstream from humidifiers, clear of obstructions as required by ASHRAE 62.1.

B. Seal humidifier manifold duct or plenum penetrations with flange.

C. Install humidifier manifolds in metal ducts and casings constructed according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible."

D. Install stainless-steel drain pan under each manifold mounted in duct.

1. Construct drain pans with connection for drain; insulated and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Connect to condensate trap and drainage piping.

3. Extend drain pan upstream and downstream from manifold a minimum distance recommended by manufacturer but not less than required by ASHRAE 62.1.

E. Install manifold supply piping pitched to drain condensate back to humidifier. Utilize 304 SS for supply piping material.

F. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install steam generators per manufacturer's recommended guidance for wall-mount or stand-mount application.

G. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

1. Install piping adjacent to humidifiers to allow service and maintenance.
2. Install shutoff valve, strainer, backflow preventer, and union in humidifier makeup line.

H. Install electrical devices and piping specialties furnished by manufacturer but not factory mounted.

I. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

## 3.3 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain humidifiers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 238413

# SECTION 260100 - BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Electrical, Architectural, Mechanical, Structural, Civil/Site, and all other Drawings as well as the Specifications for all the Divisions are a part of the Contract Documents.

B. Drawings and Specifications shall be considered as supplementing each other. Work specified but not shown, or shown but not specified, shall be performed or furnished as though mentioned in both the Specifications and the Drawings.

C. Visit the site of the work and become familiar with the conditions affecting the installation. Submission of a proposal shall presuppose knowledge of such conditions and no additional compensation shall be allowed where extra labor or materials are required due to lack of awareness of these conditions.

D. Definitions
1. "Contractor" as used within the context of the Electrical Contract Documents shall explicitly refer to the "Electrical Contractor".
2. “Wiring” shall be defined and construed as to be all inclusive of raceways and conductors.
3. "Furnish" shall be defined as to supply and deliver to the Project Site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
4. "Install" shall be defined as work which includes the actual unloading, unpacking, assembly, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
5. "Provide" shall be defined as to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.

### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Include all labor, material, equipment, services and permits necessary for the proper completion of all electrical work shown. Items omitted, but necessary, to make the electrical system complete and workable shall be understood to form part of the work.

B. It is the purpose of the Electrical Drawings to indicate the approximate location of all equipment, outlets, etc. Ascertain exact locations and arrange work accordingly. The right is reserved to effect reasonable changes in the location of outlets up to the time of roughing-in, without additional cost to the Owner. Changes in location of outlets or equipment necessitated by interference with the work of other trades shall be made only with the consent of the Architect or Owner's Representative, and at no additional cost.

C. Work Includes:
1. Temporary Lighting and Power for Construction.
2. Demolition of Lighting and Power Systems as noted.

3. Demolition of telecommunication systems as noted.
4. Demolition of security systems as noted.
5. Permanent Electrical, Telephone, and Cable Television Service.
6. Power Distribution System.
7. Interior and Exterior Lighting Systems.
8. Grounding and Bonding Systems.
9. Fire Alarm System.
10. Sound system.
11. Communication System.
12. Security System.
13. Connections to equipment furnished by others.

D. Operation and Maintenance of all Electrical Systems for one (1) year after substantial completion.

## 1.3 WORK REQUIRED FOR EQUIPMENT FURNISHED BY OTHERS

A. Line voltage (120 Volt) control devices, such as thermostats and aquastats, which control fractional horsepower, 120 volt motors are furnished by Division 21 through 24, and are wired by Division 26. The exact wiring requirements shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the equipment and shall be verified by the Contractor with the equipment manufacturer.

B. Wire items normally associated with equipment supplied by others such as motor operated dampers.

C. Starters supplied as an integral part of the equipment shall be furnished under the Division providing the equipment. Unless otherwise noted on the Drawings, the wiring and power disconnects shall be provided by Division 26. All other starters and auxiliary control equipment shall be provided and wired by Division 26, unless otherwise shown.

## 1.4 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Temporary Power Service for Construction, Sanitary Facilities, Fire Protection, Lighting and Heating for Construction.

B. Division 1 - General Requirements

C. Division 2 – Existing Conditions

D. Division 3 – Concrete

E. Division 4 – Masonry

F. Division 5 - Metals

G. Division 6 – Wood, Plastics and Composites

H. Division 7 – Thermal and Moisture Protection

I. Division 8 – Openings

J. Division 9 – Finishes

K. Division 10 - Specialties

L. Division 12 – Furnishings

M. Division 14 – Conveying Systems

N. Division 21 – Fire Suppression

O. Division 22 – Plumbing

P. Division 23 – Heating Ventilation and Air Conditioning

Q. Division 27 – Communications

R. Division 28 – Electronic Safety and Security

S. Division 32 – Exterior Improvements

T. Division 33 – Utilities

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Codes and standards
   1. Comply with all applicable codes, rules and regulations and standards of Authority having jurisdiction over the premises, including but not limited to the following. Do not construe this as relieving Contractor from complying with Specifications which may exceed minimum code requirements.
      a. Annotated Code of Maryland Public Safety
      b. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act
      c. NFPA 70 2014 – National Electrical Code
      d. NFPA 101 2012 – Life Safety Code, 2012
      e. International Existing Building Code 2015
      f. International Energy Conservation Code 2015
      g. International Mechanical Code 2015
      h. International Plumbing Code 2015
      i. International Green Construction Code-IGCC 2012
      j. State of Maryland Fire Prevention Code Title 29
      k. Md-Current-State Standards Subtitle 4. Energy Conservation Building Standard.
      l. ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90 and IECC.
      m. OSHA – Federal Occupational Safety and Health Act
   2. Deliver official record of approval, by governing agencies, to Architect.
   3. Secure and pay for all permits and certificates of inspection required. Make payments to all Public Utilities for work performed by them in providing service connections. Coordinate with the owner regarding which permit fees are waived.

4. Deliver official record of approval, by governing agencies, to Architect.

B. Standards
1. Comply with applicable provisions of latest editions of the following Standards:
a. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
b. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
c. Certified Ballast Manufacturer's Association (CBM)
d. Electronic Industries Association (EIA)
e. Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)
f. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
g. Insulated Cable Engineering Association (ICEA)
h. National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA)
i. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
j. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace
k. Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA)

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings and Product Data
1. Prepare shop drawings and product data for electrical equipment with adequate details and scales as necessary to clearly show construction. Indicate the operating characteristics for each required item and the design conditions for each. Clearly identify each item on the drawings as to mark, location and use.
2. Shop drawings and product data shall include:
a. Automatic Transfer Switches
b. Building Wire and Cable
c. Cable Trays
d. Circuit Breakers, Fuses
e. Enclosures, Outlet Boxes
f. Fire Alarm System
g. Ground Connectors, Clamps
h. Lighting Fixtures, Lamps and Ballasts
i. Miscellaneous Ancillary systems
j. Motor Controllers, Contactors, Relays, Time Clocks, etc.
k. Panelboards (Lighting and Appliance)
l. Power Distribution System Studies
m. Safety Switches
n. Security System
o. Sound System
p. Switchboards
q. Television Systems
r. Transformers
s. Voice and Data Systems
t. Wiring Devices (Dimmers, Receptacles, Switches, etc.)

3. The submittals will be reviewed only for general compliance and not for dimensions, quantities, etc. The submittals that are returned and marked "REVIEWED" shall be used for procurement. The responsibility of correct procurement remains solely with the Contractor. The submittal review shall not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for errors or omissions and deviations from the Contract requirements.
4. If the submittal shows variations from the requirements of the Contract Documents for any reason, the Contractor shall make mention of such variation in his letter of transmittal. Contractor shall note in red on the submittal any change in design or dimension on the items submitted including changes made by the manufacturer which may differ from catalog information. Failure to provide such written notification shall result in the assumption there are No variations and/or deviations.
5. Contractor agrees that shop drawing submittals processed by the Engineer are not change orders; that the purpose of shop drawing submittals by the Contractor is to demonstrate to the Engineer that the Contractor understands the design, that he demonstrates his understanding by indicating which equipment and material he intends to furnish and install, and by detailing the fabrication and installation methods he intends to use.
6. Contractor further agrees that if deviations, discrepancies or conflicts between shop drawing submittals and the Contract Documents in the form of design drawing and specifications are discovered, either prior to or after shop drawing submittals are processed by the Engineer, the design drawings and specifications shall control and shall be followed.
7. Shop drawings and product data shall be submitted as follows:
    a. Conform to submittal requirements outlined in Division 1.
    b. Where contents of submittal literature includes data not pertinent to the submittal, clearly indicate which portion of content is being submitted for review.
8. Where additional installation drawings, wiring diagrams or other drawings are specified as a part of the submittal, they shall be submitted at the same time with shop drawings and product data. Partial submittals are not acceptable.
9. Submittals which are not required under this Division shall be returned to the Contractor. The Contractor is solely responsible for providing complete submittals that include all items required by the specifications. The Architect/Engineer will not be responsible for discovering any missing submittal items or incomplete submittals. Any submittal reviewed by the Architect/Engineer that is later discovered to be incomplete shall not be considered complete by virtue of the Architect/Engineer's review or failure to notice missing element.
10. Submittals that are observed to be incomplete or inappropriate shall be returned to the Contractor without review.
11. Contractor is solely responsible for providing all required submittals in a timely manner. Architect/Engineer will not be responsible for keeping track of submittals received or not received. In addition, Architect/Engineer will not be responsible for requesting missing submittals.
12. All submittal materials, including, but not limited to, manufacturers' catalog cuts, wiring diagrams, dimensioned drawings, charts, graphs, and data sheets shall be of original printing or fully legible first generation photocopy quality. Multiple generation photocopies and/or facsimile copies will be deemed as not legible and will be rejected, upon receipt. The Architect/Engineer will not be responsible for any delayed approvals and/or project delays resulting from submittals that are rejected due to illegibility as describe herein. Contractor shall accept all responsibility for such delays.

B. Record Drawings

1. Contractor for the Electrical Work shall keep one complete set of the contract working drawings on the project site on which he shall record any deviations or changes from such Contract Drawings made during construction. Record Drawings shall show changes in:
   a. Size, type, capacity, etc. of any material, device or piece of equipment.
   b. Location of any device or piece of equipment.
   c. Location of any outlet or device and associated wiring.
   d. Routing of main and sub feeder conduits.
   e. Branch circuit number assignments.

2. Refer to Division 1 Specifications for additional requirements related to Record Drawings.

1.7 DISCREPANCIES:

A. Should it appear that there is a discrepancy between or within the drawings and/or specifications concerning the nature, quality or extent of materials or work to be furnished and/or installed, and such discrepancy is not clarified by Addendum during the bidding period, this Contractor shall base his bid on performing the work in the manner having the higher cost. The Engineer shall have the option of selecting either of the manners shown and/or specified. In the event the lower cost manner is selected, a credit shall be due the Owner in the amount of the difference between the lower cost and higher cost manner. All discrepancies shall be called to the attention of the Engineer before proceeding with work affected thereby.

B. The design drawings, as submitted, are diagrammatic and are not intended to show exact location of equipment, electrical devices, etc. unless dimensions are given. Drawings are not to be scaled.
   1. Equipment shall be installed per the general arrangement indicated on the drawings, and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
      a. Provide at least the minimum manufacturer's recommended and code required clearance around the equipment for normal maintenance.
      b. Locate and arrange equipment in relationship to other system components to assure that the equipment will be operating under the best possible conditions to meet the scheduled performance requirements.
   2. Raceways shall be installed per the general plans shown on the drawings keeping in mind the constraints of the available space and the need to coordinate with the work of other trades. Additional bends, pull and splice boxes shall be provided as necessary to meet space constraints and to facilitate the work of other trades.

C. Electrical equipment, specified hereinafter as shown on the drawings shall be furnished and installed by this Contractor, unless specifically indicated to the contrary.

D. Occasionally, certain references may be indicated on the Drawings to items which are suggested to be furnished and/or installed by various subcontractors. This is done to assist the applicable Prime Contractor in organizing his subcontractor's bids. However, no attempt has been made, nor is it implied, that this specification or plans are attempting to specifically divide all responsibilities for subcontractors. It is the Prime Contractor's responsibility that all items covered on electrical plans and Division 26 specifications are included in his bid and are coordinated with his subcontractors. No consideration will be given for Prime Contractor's failure to include all applicable electrical work in his bid.

E. Where more than one (1) manufacturer is named for major items of equipment, the manufacturer noted on the Drawings has been used as a basis for design. If another manufacturer is used, other than the one named on the Drawings, it shall be the responsibility of this contractor to ensure that the equipment will fit the space with all legal clearances, or bear the expense to change the space and structure to accommodate equipment used.

## 1.8 COORDINATION AND SUPERVISION

A. Examine work of other trades which comes in contact with or is covered by this work. Do not attach to, cover, or finish against any defective work, or install work of this Division in a manner which will prevent other trades from properly installing their work. Consult all drawings, specifications and details of other Divisions of the work and make adjustments accordingly in laying out the Electrical work.

B. If any work is installed so that the architectural design cannot be adhered to, Contractor is liable for cost of making such changes as Architect/Engineer may require. Before installing work, report any interferences between work of this Division and work of other Divisions to Architect/Engineer as soon as discovered. Architect/Engineer will determine which work must be relocated, or make adjustments to maintain clearances, maximum headroom and to avoid conflict with other work.

C. Provide adequate competent supervision at all times when work is being performed. Cooperate with all other trades to avoid interferences and delays.

D. All outlets, switches and receptacles shall be centered with regard to paneling, trim equipment, etc., and shall line up with either bottom or top of masonry courses. Changes to the specified mounting heights of any device shall be approved by the Owner's representative before rough-in.

E. Take all field measurements necessary and assume responsibility for their accuracy.

F. Coordination Drawings:
   1. Before beginning construction of the Project, the Electrical Contractor shall provide to the Mechanical Contractor marked-up prints on sepias indicating all electrical items which affect the location of heating, ventilating, air conditioning, plumbing, piping and ductwork.
   2. Refer to Division 1 and Division 21 - 24 for related work.

## 1.9 PROVISIONS FOR LATER INSTALLATION

A. When Electrical Work cannot be installed concurrent with building construction, arrange for building-in-back boxes, sleeves, inserts, etc., as necessary for installation thereof at a later date. Assume responsibility for location of chases, other openings through masonry and concrete construction.

B. Become acquainted with nature of construction against which this work attaches. Review structural drawings for coordination of openings. Cut no structural members or slabs without Architect/Engineer's written instructions.

1.10 LOCAL CONDITIONS

A. All persons proposing to submit quotations for work in accordance with these plans and specifications are expected to visit the site of the work covered by the plans and specifications and are to familiarize themselves with existing conditions as they affect the work of this section of the specifications. Claims resulting from a failure to visit the site or inspect the existing conditions will not be considered.

B. This project involves rework of equipment and systems supporting of existing areas in an operating facility. Plan work including alterations and connections to existing facilities to permit carrying on normal building functions. When necessary to temporarily interrupt a service, arrange with the owner in advance as to time which will be least disruptive. Consider all work requiring interruption of building functions as off hours work to be scheduled during off hours through owner's representative. Work not requiring interruption of building functions may be performed during normal working hours and shall be performed in conformity with approved progress schedule.

C. This project includes shutdown of existing electrical services as may be required by the contract documents. All major shutdowns shall be discussed and scheduled at the outset of the project when the initial project schedule is established. These shutdown schedules shall be coordinated with all trades and with the owner, owner's representative and the project architect and project electrical engineer. Provide temporary services of any nature required to keep building functioning. Remove temporary services when permanent facilities are completed.

D. Work on energized electrical equipment will not be permitted, with the exception of diagnostics and testing that must be completed while energized.

1.11 PROTECTION

A. When setting up pipe shop, cutting, and threading machines, protect area against staining and/or abrasion. Cost of correcting any such condition will be charged against the respective Contractor.

B. Protect finish floors from chips and cutting oil by use of a chip receiving pan and oilproof cover.

C. Protect from paint droppings, by use of drop cloths.

1.12 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Pay all costs for transportation of materials and equipment to job site.

B. Provide all scaffolding, tackle, hoists, rigging necessary for placing electrical materials and equipment in their proper place. Scaffolding and hoisting equipment shall comply with applicable Federal, State, and Local regulations. Remove temporary work when no longer required.

C. Arrange for packaging of equipment, which must be hoisted, so that there will be no damage or distortion caused by hoisting operation. Protect all transformers, switchboards, etc. from damage during hoisting operation.

D. Store all electrical distribution equipment, etc., in dry location until building is ready to receive them. Protect all openings from dirt and moisture.

1.13 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

A. Provide to owner after all equipment is in operation and at an agreeable time, competent instructors for the purpose of training owner's personnel in all phases of operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

B. The training of owner's personnel shall be performed during the one year period after substantial completion.

1.14 GUARANTEE AND WARRANTIES

A. Warrant that equipment and all work is installed in accordance with good engineering practice and that all equipment will meet the requirements specified. Any equipment failing to perform or function as specified shall be replaced with complying equipment without cost to the owner.

B. Guarantee against defects in workmanship and materials; repair or replace any defective work, material or equipment within one year from date of formal written acceptance or substantial completion, whichever is the later date, unless longer warranty periods are called for in other sections of the Division 26 Specifications.

C. Coordinate guarantees and warranties with Division 1 Specification Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIAL SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Where an "approved equal manufacturer" is indicated on the Drawings or in these Specifications, it simply means the Architect/Engineer has determined the "approved equal manufacturer" is equivalent to the specified manufacturer and shall be expected to perform in an equivalent manner in areas such as manufacturing methods, product offerings, quality, quality control, pricing, product warranty, warranty resolution, delivery, and after-sale product support. Listing a manufacturer as an "approved equal" in no way guarantees the Architect/Engineer has verified the "approved equal manufacturer" actually has a product offering available that is equal to the specified product or item. However, if the listed "approved equal manufacturer" does in fact offer an equal product, then it shall be submitted by the Contractor for the Architect/Engineer's and/or owner's consideration as an alternative or substitution for the specified item. It remains entirely at the Architect/Engineer's discretion whether or not the substituted product item from the "approved equal manufacturer" is, in fact, equal to the specified item and acceptable for use on the project.

B. Bids shall be based upon the specified products or listed alternatives. The Drawings and Specifications are based on the products specified by type, model and size and thus establish minimum qualities which substitutes must meet to qualify for review.

C. Should the Contractor propose to furnish materials and equipment other than those specified, submit a written request for substitutions to the Architect/Engineer at the bid opening. The request shall be an alternate to the original bid and shall be accompanied with complete descriptive (manufacturer, brand name, catalog number, etc.) and technical data for all items. Indicate any additions or deductions to the contract price on the bid form/substitution sheet.

D. Where listed alternatives or substitutions alter the design or space requirements indicated on the Drawings, include all items of cost for the revised design and construction, including the cost of all allied trades involved.

E. Acceptance or rejection of the proposed substitutions shall be subject to approval of the Architect/Engineer. If requested, the Contractor shall submit inspection samples of both the specified and the proposed substitute items.

F. In all cases where substitutions are proposed, the Contractor shall bear any extra cost of evaluating the equality of the material and equipment to be installed. In the event that the substitution is accepted, the Contractor shall pay all costs and engineering fees associated with re-design and/or revisions to the electrical drawings as shall be required by the owner, owner's Representative, or by the jurisdictional review and/or inspection authority as a result of the implementation of the substitution.

G. Verbal requests or approvals shall not be binding on the Architect, Engineer, or owner.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. Equipment and materials used on this project shall be new and UL listed and labeled for the application. If equipment is not available with a UL listing, submit documentation along with bid and provide documentation that product is listed and labeled for the application with a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NTRL) as part of product shop drawing submittal.

B. Provide material and labor which is neither drawn nor specified, but which is obviously a component part of, and necessary to complete work, and which is customarily a part of work of similar character.

C. Equipment and materials for the construction shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be protected by same until formally accepted by the owner.

D. All manufacturers of electrical equipment shall verify to the satisfaction of the Contractor and Engineer that their equipment will function properly under the conditions of use, as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein. Dimensions, weights, operating characteristics and all other related appurtenances shall be verified before submittal of shop drawings.

## 2.3 BRANCH CIRCUITS

A. The branch circuit wiring shall be installed substantially as indicated on the drawings. No major changes in the grouping or general routing of the branch circuits shall be made without the approval of the Engineer in writing.

B. Contractor shall install separate neutrals for all lighting, convenience power and computer power branch circuits. Shared neutral conductors are not acceptable. Systems furniture connections require a shared neutral at the furniture connection and a two pole circuit breaker in the branch circuit panelboard.

C. The number of conductors in each run of conduit is indicated on the drawings and where there is a conflict between the number of wires indicated and the actual number required as determined by the functional design requirements, the number of wires determined by the functional design requirements shall govern.

D. In general, there is a number associated with each branch circuit outlet which identifies the particular branch circuit to which the device served by the outlet is to be connected. The circuit number indicated has been assigned only for reference and guidance, and is not intended to limit panelboard circuitry. All branch circuits shall be connected to breakers in accordance with circuit requirements and good engineering practice.

E. All branch circuits shall be provided with a dedicated neutral conductor for each phase conductor unless otherwise noted.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. After installation and prior to energizing any circuit, test for grounds, short circuits and proper function of each system and related wiring. Faults in the installation shall be corrected.
1. All testing shall conform to the requirements of the testing section of these specifications.
2. All tests shall be made with an approved insulation tester/megohmmeter, and the equipment shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Contractor shall provide necessary electrical personnel and testing instruments as required in testing of installation.

B. Insulation resistance tests shall be made on the electrical system with an approved megohmmeter.
1. All cables shall be inspected for physical damage before installation. After installation, proper connection of feeder cables in accordance with the single line diagram shall be verified.
2. Cable mechanical connections at major pieces of equipment shall be tested to manufacturer's recommended values with a calibrated torque wrench.
3. Perform an insulation resistance test on each feeder cable and each branch circuit cable with respect to ground, neutral and adjacent phase cables. All circuits and feeders must be de-energized before performing tests.
4. Insulation resistance shall be determined with all power distribution equipment, fuse holders, switches, and overcurrent protective devices in place, and the insulation resistance shall be tested at 500 volts D.C.
5. The minimum acceptable insulation resistance shall be as determined by manufacturer's recommendations.

C. A ground continuity test shall be made on the entire grounding system from the service to every outlet.
   1. Inspect ground system for compliance with plans and specifications.
   2. Perform ground continuity tests from each outlet to the service entrance equipment. All circuits and feeders must be de-energized before performing tests.
   3. All branch circuit outlets shall be verified as solidly grounded, using a receptacle tester and the Contractor shall confirm this in writing.

D. All receptacles shall be tested for the following:
   1. Visual inspection of physical integrity
   2. Grounding continuity
   3. Voltage
   4. Polarity
   5. Retention force of the grounding blade shall not be less than four-ounces (4 oz.).

E. Balance loads on all branch circuit panelboards, such that variation in amperes per phase readings will not exceed 5% under normal operating conditions. Special care shall be taken during load balance to assure that reverse rotation of motors is not caused.

F. Conduct such other tests and adjustments of the equipment as required by Architect/Engineer or necessary to verify performance requirements.

G. Conduct such other tests and adjustments of electrical equipment as required by other Division 26 sections to verify performance requirements.

H. Submit legible written documentation of all tests to the Architect/Engineer along with the Operating/Maintenance Manuals. At minimum, test documentation shall contain the following information:
   1. Date of test
   2. Device(s) tested identified by room number and/or area designation
   3. Test procedure (i.e. ground continuity, impedance, voltage, visual inspection, etc.)
   4. Indication of pass or failed test
   5. Date of re-test, if required.

## 3.2 DEMONSTRATION OF COMPLETE ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

A. Before final payment, demonstrate to the Owner’s satisfaction the proper operation of each of the systems comprising this Contract.

B. Instruct the Owner’s maintenance personnel in the operation and maintenance of all electrical equipment and controls. Videotape sessions for future reference by the Owner.

C. Deliver to the Owner all special tools and appurtenances for proper operation and maintenance of the equipment provided and request receipt for same. Attach to the Contractor’s request for final payment.

## 3.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Workmanship shall be in accordance with the best practices of the trade. Electrical work shall be installed by journeymen electricians under the supervision of a competent foreman.

B. Make adjustments in operating equipment and systems to ensure smooth and unhindered operation. Make re-adjustments in equipment and systems after six (6) months of being turned over to the Owner, of all items in need of adjustment for smooth and proper operation.

## 3.4 CLEANING AND FINISHING

A. After all tests and adjustments have been completed, clean all equipment leaving everything in working order at the completion of this work. Clean lighting fixtures, outlet box plates, panel interiors and exteriors, and like items of dirt, dust, debris and paint, after all other trades have completed their work.

B. All debris created by the execution of this work shall be removed as directed by the Architect/Engineer or Owner from the premises and the site and disposed of legally.

## 3.5 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

A. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of electrical systems, materials, and equipment.

B. Coordinate electrical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.

C. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.

D. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in other building components during progress of construction, to allow for electrical installations.

E. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.

F. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.

G. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.

H. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.

I. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel, and perpendicular to other building systems and components.

J. Install electrical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations.

K. Install access panel or doors where units are concealed behind finished surfaces such as drywall and/or plaster construction, etc. Coordinate the access panel type with the Architect. Where possible, locate electrical devices at accessible ceiling areas to eliminate the need for access panels.

L. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

M. All wiring other than within an item of equipment, to be in raceways unless shown otherwise on Drawings or covered otherwise in these Specifications.

N. Raceways, boxes, cables, conductors, etc., installed in plenum spaces and similar areas shall be supported from the building structure and shall be installed symmetrical with the axis of the space (do not cross room at an angle). Support wires for lay-in type grid ceilings shall not be used to support electrical equipment, raceways, cables, etc. Use bridle rings, cable trays and other approved similar device to support communications cables, etc. as required on drawings.

O. Wiring of Motors and/or Equipment:
   1. Provide necessary power wiring to motors and/or equipment where shown on Electrical Drawings.
   2. Make final "line" connections to respective items of equipment as shown on Drawings.
   3. Provide "control" wiring, regardless of voltage, only when shown on Electrical Drawings.
   4. In general, all 120, 208, 277, or 480 volt wiring to be construed as power wiring. However, line voltage control wiring shall not be construed as power wiring unless shown on Electrical Drawings.

P. Wiring of Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Equipment:
   1. Provide power wiring as shown on Electrical Drawings. In general, this shall consist of power conductors and raceway up to and including connections to line terminals of respective items of equipment.
   2. Where Contractor furnishes motor starter and/or disconnect switch, this also shall include the power wiring between the load side of starter and/or disconnect switch and line terminals of respective item of equipment.
   3. Where other trades furnish motor starter and/or disconnect switch (other than factory-mounted, pre-wired items), the Contractor shall provide power wiring as described in previous paragraph and shall mount respective starter and/or disconnect switch.
   4. Where electric heating equipment is involved, wiring responsibilities to be as shown on Electrical Drawings.
   5. Control wiring, regardless of voltage characteristics, is not to be construed as power wiring and is not the responsibility of the Contractor unless indicated as such on Electrical Drawings. In certain cases, such as between a thermostat and a cabinet heater or a unit heater, or between

a switch and a small exhaust fan, wiring may be required by Contractor only if shown on Electrical Drawings.

6. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor, prior to rough-in of conduits serving mechanical equipment, to verify with respective equipment supplier the required ampacity and quantity of conductors serving the equipment. In the event changes are required from those shown on the Drawings, this information shall be brought to the attention of the Architect and authorization obtained from the Architect in writing prior to proceeding with the necessary changes.

Q. Wiring of Plumbing Equipment:
1. Provide necessary power wiring to plumbing equipment requiring same, where shown on Electrical Drawings.
2. Control equipment such as thermostats, pressure switches, etc., to be furnished, set in place, and wired by other trades, unless shown otherwise on Electrical Drawings.
3. Provide necessary disconnect switches, starters, or contactors where shown on Electrical Drawings.

R. Temperature Control Wiring:
1. Temperature control wiring, regardless of voltage characteristics, is not the responsibility of this Contractor unless indicated as such on Electrical Drawings or herein described.
2. In general, the furnishing and installing of all temperature control devices and respective wiring shall be the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.

## 3.6 LAYOUT DRAWINGS

A. Layouts for conduit runs, holes and sleeves in walls, ceilings, or floors shall be made to coordinate with the General Contractor, and Mechanical Contractors, and shall be reviewed by the Architect/Engineer.

B. Equipment Room Feeder Layouts
1. Submit reproducible 1/4” scale plans and sections of every electrical room to indicate exact location of all power distribution equipment including but not limited to switchboards, panelboards, transfer switches, circuit breakers, auxiliary mechanical equipment serving room, and routing of feeders including location and size of all pull and junction boxes. Drawings shall be submitted by Contractor and approved by Architect/Engineer after equipment shop drawings have been approved and prior to or concurrent with coordination drawing submittal and, before housekeeping pads are poured, electrical equipment is procured or installed and before feeder conduits are routed.
2. Equipment room layouts shall indicate field verified dimensions of room, dimensions of all submitted equipment and conduits, size of equipment and NEC required working clearances around electrical equipment. Equipment room layouts shall include all piping, ductwork, and equipment to be located in the electrical room including but not limited to HVAC, sprinkler, telecommunications, security, and lighting.

## 3.7 TEMPORARY ELECTRIC SERVICE

A. Provide temporary electrical service adequate in size for heating, for the use of all trades and for the lighting of each room and area during construction. Obtain Owner's express written approval prior to utilizing building power to support construction activity.

B. Temporary wiring shall conform to OSHA requirements, and in compliance with pertinent provisions of Division 1.

C. Temporary wiring shall be removed in its entirety at the conclusion of the work.

D. Include all costs associated with temporary electric service installations in compliance with pertinent provisions of Division 1.

## 3.8 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Avoid cutting into the work of others by using sleeves, inserts, chases and similar items necessary for the installation.

B. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces necessary for electrical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of the trades involved.

C. Do all cutting and patching as necessary for installation of this work. All cutting and patching work shall be included in this Division. Have cutting performed by skilled mechanics as carefully as possible and with as little damage as possible. Do not cut any structural member without specific permission from the Architect/Engineer.

D. Use Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR) to examine all floor slabs prior to cutting or core drilling. If GPR results are inadequate, x-ray all floor slabs prior to cutting or core drilling. All x-rays shall be performed during non-business hours as approved by the contracting officer. Evacuate a 100 ft radius of site of X-ray. Avoid cutting structural reinforcing bars(rebars).

E. Repair disturbed surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces.

## 3.9 OPERATING/MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Furnish complete bound sets of operating/maintenance manuals containing operating and maintenance instructions, and manufacturer start-up reports for all electrical equipment and controls. Refer to Division 1 Specifications for quantities and additional requirements.

B. Operating/Maintenance manuals shall be assembled into one book with written instructions for each system listed in the Specifications.

C. Bind the written operating instructions, submittal drawings, wiring diagrams, equipment catalog data sheets and manufacturer's instructions into a hard-backed binder where they can be accommodated into 8-1/2" x 11" size.

D. Manuals shall include:
   1. Title of Project, Owner, Address, Date of Submittal, Contractor Name and Architect/Engineer Name.
   2. Index of entire contents.
   3. Written description of system contents where actually located in facility, and how system functions.
   4. Written list of items requiring service with reference to manufacturer's data describing proper service.
   5. Submittal drawings and catalog product data sheets with an index at the beginning of the section.
   6. Manufacturer's operating instructions with an index at the beginning of the section.
   7. Wiring diagram utilized in the installation.
   8. Test results in chart form performed by the Contractor.
   9. Warranties, approvals, etc.

E. Submit one copy to the Architect/Engineer for approval. After approval, submit the required quantity of copies to the Architect/Engineer for delivery to the Owner. Engineer shall retain one (1) copy.

## 3.10 FIRST YEAR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE

A. Perform training of Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of the systems. This shall include the training specified in the individual sections of this Division.

B. Perform "debugging" of all systems including those which programming is specifically required.

C. Make repairs to equipment and replace defective parts that occur during this time period. Provide all labor and materials required during this time period.

D. Owner shall be responsible for all utility costs occurring during this time period.

E. Direction for settings and schedules shall be given by the Owner.

F. Include normal maintenance functions at the time periods recommended by the various equipment manufacturers.

G. Provide Owner with the following documentation at the conclusion of the operation and maintenance period:
   1. A copy of each purchase of replacement parts or equipment
   2. A log of the maintenance performed including the date when it was performed.

H. To monitor progress of the operation and maintenance period, meet with Owner on a monthly basis. Provide for each meeting, a written synopsis of the work performed and the repairs made in the previous month and a schedule of the work for the upcoming month.

3.11 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION

A. Where electrical work to remain is damaged or disturbed in the course of the Work, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity, quality, and functionality.

B. Accessible Work Indicated to Be Demolished: Remove exposed electrical installation in its entirety.

C. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried raceway and wiring indicated to be abandoned in place, 2 inches below the surface of adjacent construction. Cap and patch surface to match existing finish.

D. Temporary Disconnection: Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational components indicated for relocation.

E. Contractor shall remove and/or relocate all of the existing electrical work made necessary because of alteration, both structural and electrical, as indicated or implied on the Drawings.

F. Remove all electrical conductors from the service point of equipment all the way back to the panel board whose circuit breaker is the source of electrical power.

G. All demolition work under this Contract shall be accomplished by this Contractor in complete accordance with the construction procedure and progress schedule herein specified under General or Special Conditions. Demolition is not shown comprehensively and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to remove and/or relocate existing construction as required to accomplish the new work shown or reasonably implied. Figure a complete job as none other shall be accepted.

H. All equipment to be salvaged shall be carefully removed and turned over to the Owner. All equipment not indicated to the re-used shall be disposed of properly and legally, and as directed by the Owner. The Owner shall have the first right of refusal for all equipment removed during demolition.

I. The operation of the existing life safety systems and related components (fire alarm, emergency lights, exit signs, etc.) shall be maintained at all times during the entire period of construction. The installation of the new life safety components and/or systems shall not affect the operation or integrity of the existing systems both inside and outside the contract area. At no time shall the facility, both inside and outside the contract area, be left without fire alarm protection and emergency egress lighting in all contracted areas.

J. Contractor shall field verify all existing services (i.e., branch circuit wiring, etc.) that originate in the area of demolition but, serve items located in areas outside of contracted work. These services shall remain as is.

K. Disconnect and remove all existing electrically operated equipment unless otherwise noted, including but not necessarily limited to lighting fixtures, power, phone and data receptacles, junction and floor boxes, all associated wiring (raceways and conductors), control devices, and other related ancillary items in their entirety.

L. Existing conduits may be re-used, provided they meet National Electrical Code (NEC) requirements and they are cleaned and swabbed prior to installation of new wiring. Any existing conduit, wiring,

electrical or mechanical devices being disturbed by the demolition work shall be re-worked as required to return to its former existing operating condition.

M. In all cases, where existing branch circuit conduit and wiring is to be re-used within the contracted area, Contractor shall test for the grounding continuity and test the existing branch circuit wiring as though new.

N. All cutting, relocation, patching, finishing, etc. of existing and relocated electrical equipment necessitated by the work under this Contract shall be included as part of the Electrical Work. Where required, re-support existing conduits above ceilings being removed.

O. Disconnect and remove abandoned conduit and wiring to source of supply (branch circuit panel), including abandoned conduit above accessible ceiling finishes. Cut conduit flush with walls and floors, and patch surfaces to match adjacent area. In the event branch circuit wiring services existing loads to remain, maintain the operation of the existing loads to remain.

P. Disconnect and remove abandoned back boxes and devices if conduit servicing them is abandoned and removed.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
2. Sleeve seals.
3. Grout.
4. Common electrical installation requirements.
5. Access Doors.
6. Concrete Equipment Bases.
7. Touchup Painting.
8. Fire Stopping
9. Utility Requirements

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical product data and installation instructions for each type of product specified including dimensions and finishes.
1. Sleeve Seals
2. Access Panels and Doors
3. Fire Stopping Materials

### 1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

E. Coordinate electrical equipment installation with other building components.

F. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for electrical installations.

G. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

H. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.

I. Coordinate connecting electrical service to components furnished under other Sections.

J. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors where electrical items requiring access are concealed by finished surfaces.

K. Coordinate installing electrical identifying devices and markings prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar finishes that conceal such items.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code" for components and installation.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain like electrical items through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.

D. Comply with NECA's "Standard of Installation."

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Receive products on site. Inspect for damage.

C. Protect raceways from corrosion and entrance of debris by storing above grade. Provide appropriate covering.

D. Protect PVC conduit from sunlight.

E. Deliver conductors and cables according to NEMA WC 26.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm

D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping”.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. Calpico, Inc.
c. Metraflex Co.
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel, or Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Contractor shall provide installation of firestopping for such locations in fire rated floors, ceilings and walls. Refer to Division 07 Section “Penetration Fire Stopping”.

2.5 ACCESS DOORS

A. Contractor shall provide quantities and installation of steel access doors and frames applicable for such locations in ceilings, partitions, walls, etc. requiring access to concealed junction boxes, devices and equipment for service and/or inspection. This contractor shall be responsible for providing this item, refer to Division 08 Section “Access Doors and Frames”.

2.6 CONCRETE EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Provide pads and foundations required for electrical equipment. All floor mounted equipment shall be installed on 4" concrete pads with 1" chamfer edge unless otherwise indicated.

B. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.

D. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of base.

E. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.

F. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

G. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

H. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

I. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2.7 TOUCHUP PAINTING

A. For Equipment: Provided by equipment manufacturer and selected to match equipment finish.

B. For Non-equipment Surfaces: Matching type and color of undamaged, existing adjacent finish.

C. For Galvanized Surfaces: Zinc-rich paint recommended by item manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

F. Wiring from legally required emergency and standby power generation sources shall be kept independent of each other and independent of all other branch circuit wiring, and shall not enter the same raceway, cable, box or cabinet with other wiring, unless specifically allowed by the NEC

## 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.

G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
   1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.

I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

## 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.5 TOUCHUP PAINTING INSTALLATION

A. Thoroughly clean damaged areas and provide primer, intermediate, and finish coats to suit the degree of damage at each location.

B. Follow paint manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and for timing and application of successive coats.

END OF SECTION 260500

# SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
3. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
4. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.

B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
2. Service Wire Co.
3. Southwire Company.
4. WESCO.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

E. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2 75 degree: Comply with UL 83.

2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
2. Service Wire Co.

3. Southwire Company.
4. WESCO.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

G. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.

H. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

## 2.3 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
3. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corp.
4. Superior Essex Inc.
5. West Penn Wire.

B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG. Size as recommended by system manufacturer.

1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. 3M Electrical Products.
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: Copper.
2. Type: Two hole with long barrels.
3. Termination: Compression.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.

B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."

1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.

C. Wiring Method:

1. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.

D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.

H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

## 3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) of slack.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

## 3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

## 3.8 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.

2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:

a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:

1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
2) Calibrated torque wrench.
3) Thermographic survey.

c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
d. Inspect for correct identification.
e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.

3. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

4. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

# SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.
2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
3. Foundation steel electrodes.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Test wells.
2. Ground rods.
3. Ground rings.
4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

C. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

    a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of system described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

        1) Test wells.
        2) Ground rods.
        3) Ground rings.
        4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

    b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.

        1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
        2) Include recommended testing intervals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ERICO; a brand of nVent.
2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
3. Hubbell Incorporated (Construction and Energy Group).
4. ILSCO.
5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
6. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
7. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

## 2.3 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
3. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.

D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.

F. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.

G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.

H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.

I. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.

J. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.

K. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.

L. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.

M. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal one or two-piece clamp.

N. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

O. Water Pipe Clamps:

1. Mechanical type, two pieces with zinc-plated bolts.

a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
b. Listed for direct burial.

2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2400 mm).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.

1. Bury at least 30 inches (750 mm) below grade.

C. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation.

D. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with more than one continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

E. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

F. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

## 3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

## 3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

## 3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

C. Utility Company Pad-Mounted Transformers: Install ground rods and ring per Utility company requirements. Ground equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items per Utility company requirements. Install ground conductor sized per Utility company requirements.

## 3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated green equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

C. Water Heater and Heat-Tracing Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

D. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from

panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

E. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated. See Audio Clean Power Diagram on drawings.

F. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

G. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.

1. Grounding Conductor: Bare, tinned copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

## 3.6 FENCE GROUNDING

A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet (450 m) except as follows:

1. Fences within 100 Feet (30 m) of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet (225 m).

a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.

1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches (460 mm) below finished grade.

B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.

C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.

D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.

E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.

F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.

C. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.

1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.

H. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.

1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building's foundation.

I. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.

1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells , and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural

drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.

b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment, including but not limited to all panels serving AV equipment, all panels serving dimmer equipment, all panels serving data racks, and all panels serving multipurpose room and office space: 1 ohm(s).
5. Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

# SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
b. Clamps.
c. Hangers.
d. Sockets.
e. Eye nuts.
f. Fasteners.
g. Anchors.
h. Saddles.
i. Brackets.

2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

a. Luminaires.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Projectors.

B. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

PART 2 - RODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

## 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
b. B-line, an Eaton business.
c. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
e. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.

2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria, not less than 1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm).
5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded-aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Cooper Industries, Inc.
b. Flex-Strut Inc.
c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
d. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.

2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channel Material: 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
4. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria, not less than 1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm).
6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least one surface.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
b. B-line, an Eaton business.
c. G-Strut.

2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria, not less than 1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm).
4. Fittings and Accessories: Products provided by channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
5. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as those for channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
6. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Stainless-steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Hilti, Inc.
2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) B-line, an Eaton business.
2) Hilti, Inc.
3) MKT Fastening, LLC.

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:

1. NECA 1.
2. NECA 101
3. NECA 105.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.

F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

## 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts or Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

## 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099100 " Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

END OF SECTION 260529

# SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Surface raceways.
5. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
6. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
    b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
    c. FSR Inc.
    d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
    e. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
    f. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
    g. Wheatland Tube Company.

2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.

    a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
    b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

5. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
6. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
    b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
    c. FSR Inc.
    d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
    e. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
    f. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
    g. Wheatland Tube Company.

2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Fittings for EMT:

    a. Material: Steel or die cast.
    b. Type: Setscrew.

6. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
7. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

C. Joint Compound for GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
    b. Condux International, Inc.
    c. Electri-Flex Company.
    d. FRE Composites.
    e. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
    f. Kraloy Fittings.
    g. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
    h. United Fiberglass of America (UFA).

2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fiberglass:

    a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
    b. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.
4. RNC: Type EPC-80-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
b. Condux International, Inc.
c. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
3. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

## 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. B-line, an Eaton business.
2. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
3. Square D.

B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover, Flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 SURFACE RACEWAYS

A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Prime coated, ready for field painting.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
b. Panduit Corp.

c. Wiremold / Legrand.

## 2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
4. FSR Inc.
5. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
6. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
7. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
8. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
9. Wiremold / Legrand.

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.

I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep) or 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm by 60 mm by 60 mm deep).

K. Gangable boxes are prohibited.

L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 3R galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.6 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Armorcast Products Company.
b. Hubbell Incorporated (Power Systems Group - Quazite).
c. NewBasis.
d. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
e. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.

2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." Or as otherwise noted on drawings.
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long) and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of polymer concrete.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Armorcast Products Company.
b. Hubbell Incorporated (Power Systems Group - Quazite).
c. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
d. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
e. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.

2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray or Green as selected by Architect.
4. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
5. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
6. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
7. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." Or other as indicated on drawings.
8. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
9. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long) and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried or concrete encased as indicated.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:

    a. Loading dock.
    b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    c. Mechanical rooms.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. EMT: Use setscrew, steel or cast-metal fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

C. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.

D. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

E. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

F. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

G. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.

H. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.

I. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

J. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC to GRC before rising above floor.

L. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

N. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

O. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

Q. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

T. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

U. Surface Raceways:

1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

V. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

W. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

X. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

Y. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

Z. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

BB. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

CC. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

DD. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

EE. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

FF. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

GG. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.

D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

## 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

## 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

# SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. CALPICO, Inc.
c. Metraflex Company (The).
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
e. Proco Products, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.

4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

D. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

F. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

## 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

## 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

# SECTION 260549 – NOISE & VIBRATION CONTROL FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
1. Vibration isolation of electrical equipment.
2. Vibration isolation of performance audio equipment.
3. Vibration isolation of theatrical dimming equipment.
4. Vibration isolation and support of conduit.
5. Sealing of conduit penetrations through walls and slabs.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. The IBC: International Building Code.

B. The term "Contractor" as used in this Section refers to that contractor directly responsible for the supply and installation of the Electrical Systems, including noise and vibration control.

C. The term "approved equivalent" means the contractor may propose an alternate vibration isolation product(s) or product lines prior to bid completion, for approval by the Architect. For any proposed alternates made post-award, the Architect reserves the sole right to judge the acceptability of alternate product(s), and may require that specified product(s) be used at no additional cost to the owner.

D. The following spaces are designated as Acoustically Sensitive Rooms [ASRs] and are subject to the specifications noted herein for ASRs:
1. Audience Chamber
2. Stage and Stagehouse
3. Sound Locks (S.L.L.)
4. Control Room
5. Orchestra Pit
6. Multipurpose Room
7. Areas open to Audience Chamber.
8. Areas opening into Audience Chamber

E. The following spaces are designated as Noise Producing Rooms [NPRs] and are subject to the specifications noted herein for NPRs:
1. Mechanical Equipment Rooms
2. Electrical Equipment Rooms
3. IT Rooms
4. Dimmer & AV Rack Room
5. Piano Lab

6. Concessions and Catering Rooms

## 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements and Design Intent:
   1. In a performing arts building, the total vibration isolation design is intended to prevent noise and vibration from vibrating, reciprocating or rotating equipment from transferring into the building structure and re-radiating as noise in other parts of the building. This intent of this specification is to isolate all interior and exterior equipment as well as the conduit and supports connected to the equipment from transferring vibration into the building structure.
   2. The building structure, including walls, floors, slabs and ceilings is intended to isolate airborne noise by surrounding all acoustically sensitive rooms and noise producing rooms. The sound isolation effectiveness of walls, floors and ceilings can be severely compromised by penetrations for conduit and other building services. Proper sizing of the penetration openings, sealing and/or lagging around electrical services penetrating these structures, as described, is necessary to maintain the integrity of the building structure.
   3. Permanently flexible sealant shall be used to seal all building service penetrations, as described.
   4. No electrical equipment except as expressly shown on the Contract Drawings shall be located within Acoustically Sensitive Rooms or installed on walls common to Acoustically Sensitive Rooms. The Contractor shall report all discrepancies between this requirement and the Contract Documents to the Architect prior to procurement or installation of such equipment.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

A. The Electrical Contractor is directly responsible for the supply and installation of noise and vibration control equipment and work for the Electrical Systems.

B. All vibration control apparatus shall be furnished by a single manufacturer who has supplied vibration isolation for at least five years. The vendor shall design and provide all hangers, isolators, bases, pads, sleeves and other devices specified, required, or detailed for the vibration isolation of all electrical equipment and conduit.

C. The Contractor shall be responsible for verifying the completeness of the isolation installation and the overall suitability of the equipment to meet the intent of this specification. Any additional equipment needed to meet the intent of this specification, even if not specifically mentioned herein or in the Contract Documents, shall be supplied by the Contractor without claim for additional payment.

D. Performance or waiving of inspection, testing or surveillance for any portion of the Work shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to conform strictly with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not construe performance or waiving of inspection, testing or surveillance by the Owner or Architects to relieve the Contractor from total responsibility to perform in strict accordance with the Contract Documents.

E. Following the installation of isolated conduits, resilient penetrations or other isolated electrical equipment, the Contractor shall be responsible for requesting inspection of vibration isolators which will be hidden from view as construction by others proceeds.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data and Shop Drawings:
1. A fully coordinated submittal for all noise and vibration control products, equipment and systems shall be submitted as one complete package for review. The submittal shall state, but not be limited to, the following information:
a. The model number and type of isolator.
b. The size of the isolator.
c. Height of isolator when uncompressed.
d. Static deflection of isolator when fully loaded, including load deflection curves.
e. The overload capacity of each isolator.
f. The total weight and weight distribution of the isolated equipment.
g. Detail drawings of inertia bases and associated isolators.
h. Isolator locations shown on an outline of the isolated equipment, with loads on isolators clearly identified.
i. Installation details including locations of isolated conduit hangers on conduit layout plans.
j. Materials and details for conduit penetrations, including penetrations by groups of conduits.
k. A description or sketch of trapezes or other structures used in conjunction with isolators.
2. Fully coordinated shop drawings showing the detailed routing of conduits serving the production and house lighting systems shall be submitted by the Contractor for review by the Architect. These drawings shall show:
a. The size and count of conduits.
b. The precise locations in plan and on elevation drawings where conduits penetrate walls common to Acoustically Sensitive Rooms.
c. The path of audio conduits which cross or are within 8 feet of conduits serving the production lighting system.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or by another manufacturer approved by the Architect prior to bid completion:
1. **Mason Industries**
Hauppauge, New York
www.mason-ind.com

2. **Kinetics Noise Control**
   Dublin, Ohio
   www.kineticsnoise.com
3. **California Dynamics Corporation**
   Los Angeles, California
   www.caldyn.com
4. **The VMC Group / Amber-Booth**
   Bloomingdale, New Jersey
   www.thevmcgroup.com

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. General:
1. All equipment provided for vibration isolation or noise control shall be new and manufactured specifically for the purpose intended.
2. The static deflection of isolators shall be as given in the equipment schedule or as specified below. The isolator schedule shall take precedence in the event of conflicting information.
3. Vibration isolator sizes and layout shall be determined by the vibration isolator supplier. Isolator selection shall account for the possible non-uniform weight distribution of equipment.
4. Isolators shall be selected to achieve an installation where the isolator is loaded at near, but not beyond, the load capacity of the isolator.
5. All isolators protected from the outdoor elements shall utilize oil- and water-resistant neoprene of bridge bearing quality. All isolators exposed to the outdoor elements shall be hot-dipped galvanized and shall utilize oil- and water-resistant natural rubber with a durometer as specified herein.
6. The term ‘isolator’ shall be understood to mean a vibration isolation pad, mount, hanger, base or curb typically used for the support or suspension of equipment as recommended by the vibration isolation products manufacturer.

## 2.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Type 2 Base:
1. Type 2 base shall consist of an integral rectangular structural steel form into which concrete is poured. Perimeter members shall be beams of depth equal to 10% of the longest span of the base, but not more than 12 inches [300mm] nor less than 6 inches [150mm] deep. Forms shall include motor slide base and all reinforcing steel. Where anchor bolt locations fall in concrete, the reinforcing steel shall include drilled members with sleeves welded below the steel to accept the anchor bolts. Height saving steel brackets shall be used in all mounting locations. A minimum 1" [25mm] clearance shall be provided between the base and the supporting structural slab.
2. When the concrete base is "T" shaped, isolators shall be located under the projections as well as under the main body in order to prevent cantilever distortion.
3. Type 2 base shall be:
   a. Mason Industries BMK series;
   b. Kinetics CIB;
   c. California Dynamics CW;
   d. VMC Group MPF or WPF.

## 2.4 ISOLATION PADS

A. Type 1 Pad:

1. Type 1 pads shall be a minimum 5/16" [8mm] thick neoprene pad ribbed or waffled on both sides. The pads shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene, and selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and designed for strain of 10 to 15% of the pad thickness, but shall not exceed the rated maximum strain of the pad. If the isolated equipment does not load the pad uniformly over its entire area, steel load-spreading plates shall be incorporated between the equipment and the neoprene pad.
2. Type 1 pads shall consist of two or more 5/16" [8mm] thick ribbed or waffle neoprene pads sandwiching a 16 gauge stainless steel shim plate when greater thickness or multiple layers are indicated on contract documents.
3. If the isolator is bolted to the structure, a neoprene vibration isolation washer and bushing shall be installed under the bolt head between the steel washer and the base plate.
4. Type 1 pad shall be:
   a. Mason Industries W or WSW;
   b. Kinetics NPD or NGD;
   c. California Dynamics RP or EP;
   d. VMC Group Shear Flex Pads.

B. Type 2 Pad:
1. Type 2 isolation pads shall be ¾" [19mm] thick neoprene pads waffled on both sides. The pads shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene, and selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and designed for strain of 10 to 15% pad thickness. Where required, steel load-spreading plates shall be incorporated between the equipment and the isolation pad.
2. If the isolator is bolted to the structure, a neoprene vibration isolation washer and bushing shall be installed under the bolt head between the steel washer and the base plate.
3. Type 2 pads shall be:
   a. Mason Industries Super W;
   b. Kinetics RSP;
   c. California Dynamics ECP;
   d. VMC Group Maxi-Flex Pads.

## 2.5 ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Type 1 Mount:
1. Type 1 mounts shall be laterally stable, double deflecting, molded neoprene isolators. All metal surfaces shall be covered with neoprene. The top and bottom surfaces shall be ribbed and bolt holes shall be provided in the base. The mounts shall have leveling bolts rigidly secured to the equipment.
2. The isolator shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene, and selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and designed for strain of 10 to 15% of the pad thickness, but shall not exceed the rated maximum strain of the pad. Type 1 mounts shall be selected for a minimum static deflection of 0.3 inch [9mm] unless otherwise specified.
3. Type 1 mounts shall be:
   a. Mason Industries ND;
   b. Kinetics RD;
   c. California Dynamics RM or RM-D ;
   d. VMC Group RD.

B. Type 2 Mount:
1. Type 2 mounts shall have a free-standing and laterally stable steel spring without any housing. Springs shall be designed so that the ratio of the horizontal to vertical spring constant is between one and two. The spring diameter shall not be less than 0.8 times the compressed height of the

spring at rated load. Loaded springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the specified static deflection.

2. Unless otherwise specified, the minimum static deflection of type 2 mounts for equipment mounted on grade slabs shall be 1 inch [25mm], and the minimum static deflection for equipment mounted above grade level shall be 2 inches [50mm].
3. A minimum ¼" thick neoprene pad shall be bonded to the isolator base plate.
4. If the base plates are bolted to the structure, a neoprene vibration isolation washer and bushing shall be installed under the bolt head between the steel washer and the base plate.
5. Type 2 mounts shall be:
   a. Mason Industries SLF;
   b. Kinetics FDS;
   c. California Dynamics SSL;
   d. VMC Group AC.

C. Type 3 Mount:
1. Type 3 mounts shall be a spring and neoprene mount that incorporates a housing which includes vertical limit stops to prevent spring expansion when weight (water or other fluid) is removed from the equipment and limits the movement of equipment when it is subjected to wind loading. A minimum clearance of ½" [12 mm] shall be maintained around restraining bolts and between the housing and the spring so as not to interfere with the spring operation. Limit stops shall be out of contact with equipment during normal operation, start up and shut down. A neoprene washer shall be installed beneath the bolt head or washer used to restrain the isolator. In outdoor rooftop installations isolators must be bolted to the roof or supporting structure with a neoprene mounting sleeve.
2. Unless otherwise specified, the minimum static deflection for type 3 mounts shall be 2" [50mm].
3. Type 3 mounts shall be:
   a. Mason Industries SLR;
   b. Kinetics FLS;
   c. California Dynamics RJ or JQ series restrained spring isolators;
   d. VMC Group AWRS.
4. Where seismic code requirements dictate the use of a restraining mechanism, Type 3 mounts shall be utilized beneath equipment identified to be mounted on Type 2 mounts.

## 2.6 ISOLATION HANGERS

A. Type 1 Hanger:
1. Type 1 hangers shall consist of a molded neoprene in a steel hanger box. A neoprene sleeve shall be provided where the lower hanger rod passes through the steel hanger box, such that the hanger rod cannot contact the steel hanger. The diameter of the clear hole in the hanger box shall be at least ¾" [19mm] larger than the diameter of the hanger rod, or an alternative design approach shall be incorporated to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30° arc without defeating the vibration isolation effectiveness of the hanger.
2. The isolator shall be manufactured with bridge bearing quality neoprene, and selected for a maximum durometer of 50 and 10% to 15% strain. Unless otherwise specified, the static deflection shall be 0.3 inches [8mm].
3. Type 1 hangers shall be:
   a. Mason Industries HD;
   b. Kinetics RH;
   c. California Dynamics RH or RH-D;
   d. VMC Group RH or RHD.

## 2.7 CAPTIVE NEOPRENE MOUNTS

A. Captive Neoprene Mounts:
1. Captive neoprene mounts shall consist of a steel housing with a captive steel insert embedded in neoprene to prevent contact between the housing and the central threaded insert.
2. Captive neoprene mounts shall provide a multi-directional isolated connection, resisting forces in compression, tension and shear.
3. All mountings shall have bolts for rigid attachment to the equipment and adequate base bolting provision. Mountings shall have a minimum static deflection of 0.15" [4 mm].
4. Captive Neoprene mounts shall be suitable for securing equipment, conduit, unistrut, bracing or other electrical component(s) in a floor, wall or ceiling mounting condition.
5. Captive neoprene mounts shall be:
   a. Mason Industries RBA, RCA or RDA;
   b. Kinetics RQ;
   c. Approved equivalent from California Dynamics;
   d. VMC Group TTB Series.

## 2.8 FLEXIBLE NEOPRENE FITTING

A. Flexible neoprene fitting:
1. A flexible neoprene fitting shall consist of threaded metal fittings on both ends of a neoprene sleeve to create a resilient fitting for the connection of electrical conduits and allow for acoustic isolation, expansion and deflection.
2. A flexible grounding strap shall be provided to maintain electrical continuity between isolated conduits.
3. Neoprene shall be bridge-bearing quality with a maximum durometer of 50.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS NEOPRENE WASHERS, GROMMETS & BUSHINGS

A. Various neoprene washers, grommets and bushings may be necessary in irregular applications, hold-down conditions or at bolted restraints. All washers, grommets and bushings shall be matched to type and size of anchor bolts to be used for each application.
1. Miscellaneous neoprene isolator components shall include:
   a. Mason Industries series HLW, HLB, PB, HMIB and HG;
   b. Kinetics TG and other approved equivalents;
   c. California Dynamics KT Series;
   d. Approved equivalent by VMC Group.

## 2.10 SEALANT AND PACKING MATERIAL FOR CONDUIT PENETRATIONS

A. Permanently Flexible Sealant:
1. Permanently flexible sealant is required to seal conduit penetrations as described in Part 3. A sealant shall be used that maintains at least 12% movement after curing. Various sealants shall be selected for appropriate firestop, self-leveling [horizontal] and/or sag-resistant [vertical] applications and each shall maintain permanent flexibility for the applications described.

B. Packing Material for Penetrations:
1. Packing material for conduit penetrations shall be of glass- or mineral fiber; non-combustible; resistant to water, mildew and vermin. Expanding, permanently resilient foams manufactured for

this purpose are an acceptable alternative only if the material density is at least 15 lb/ft³ [40 kg/m³].

2.11 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish:
1. All metal isolator components for exterior use shall be hot-dip galvanized.
2. All metal isolator components for interior use shall powder coat finished.
3. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 GENERAL CONDITIONS

A. Unless otherwise indicated, all equipment mounted on vibration mounts or hangers shall have a minimum operating clearance of 2" [50mm] between the bottom of the equipment or inertia base and height-saving bracket and the concrete housekeeping pad [or bolt heads] beneath the equipment. The clearance shall be checked by the Contractor to ensure that no scraps have been left to short-circuit the vibration mounts or hangers. There shall be a minimum 2" [50mm] clearance between isolated equipment and the walls, ceiling, floors, columns and any other equipment not installed on vibration mounts or hangers.

B. Conduit and electrical equipment shall not be hung from nor supported on other equipment, conduit, pipes, or ductwork installed on vibration mounts or hangers. It shall be supported on or suspended from building structure.

C. All electrical equipment, enclosures or panel boards not specifically identified in this specification that contain transformers, inductors, ballasts, relays, choke coils, dimmers or switch gear shall be installed on Type 2 pads or supported using captive neoprene mounts. Provide supporting steel structure between the isolator and equipment if isolator does not readily connect to equipment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT VIBRATION ISOLATION

A. Transformers:
1. Transformers < 750 kVA located on a grade slab shall be mounted on Type 1 mounts.
2. Transformers < 45 kVA located above grade shall be installed on Type 1 mounts.
3. Transformers ≥ 45 kVA located above grade shall be installed on Type 2 or 3 mounts.
4. Transformers ≥ 750 kVA shall be constructed on Type 2 bases supported on Type 2 mounts.

5. Panelboards, distribution panels and other equipment enclosures requiring direct connection or positioning within two feet of a transformer ≥ 750 kVA shall also be constructed on the same Type 2 base supported on Type 2 mounts.
6. Mounting bolts shall not result in rigid connections between isolated transformers and the supporting structure. If required, neoprene washers and bushing should be utilized to avoid all rigid connections.
7. Transformers shall not be hung from or supported on other equipment, pipes or ductwork installed on vibration isolators, but shall be supported directly on or suspended directly from building structure.

B. Dimmer Racks:
1. Dimmer racks and other lighting equipment containing transformers, power supplies, fans, choke coils or relays shall be installed on Type 1 mounts and laterally stabilized using captive neoprene mounts, if necessary. Dimmer racks shall be located a minimum of three inches from adjacent walls.

C. Emergency Generators:
1. Emergency generators located on grade shall be installed on Type 1 mounts.
2. Comparable isolators with snubbers and/or restraints may be used, if required.

## 3.4 CONDUIT CONNECTIONS TO VIBRATION ISOLATED EQUIPMENT

A. All wiring connections to electrical equipment on Type 1 or Type 2 mounts or hangers either spring or neoprene type shall include a slack U-shaped segment of flexible conduit between the isolated equipment and the rigid connection to the building.. .

## 3.5 CONDUIT PENETRATIONS

A. Airtight and Resilient Penetrations in Walls and Slabs:
1. All conduit penetrations in the structure surrounding Noise Producing Rooms shall be sealed resiliently and airtight. This includes all slab penetrations, wall penetrations and roof or ceiling penetrations.
2. Conduit shall pass without directly contacting the walls, slabs or ceilings. Openings shall be oversized and sleeved to provide an inner diameter 1 to 2 inches greater than the outside dimension of the conduit.
3. The conduit shall be centered in the opening and shall not rigidly contact the wall, floor or ceiling. The resulting gap shall be packed with glass or mineral fiber packing material or a purpose-designed neoprene sleeve and caulked to an airtight seal, on both sides, using permanently flexible sealant.

B. Airtight Penetrations in Walls and Slabs:
1. All conduit penetrations through any and all walls, floors and ceilings of Acoustically Sensitive Rooms shall be sealed airtight, but no resilient penetration is required unless mandated elsewhere or common with a space requiring an airtight and resilient seal.
2. A clean and regular opening shall be provided around the conduit penetration, with no irregularities in shape, such that conduit passes with no more than a ± ½" clearance between it and the building structure.
3. Conduit penetrations requiring an airtight, but not resilient, seal as described above shall be grouted and caulked into the structure as follows:
   a. Before grout has set, rake a groove around the full perimeter of the conduit on both sides of the wall or slab; the grooves shall be ½" wide and ½" deep [12mm x 12mm].

b. After grout has set, fill the grooves full depth with permanently flexible sealant, on both sides of the wall or slab.

C. Large numbers of conduit penetrating walls, floors, slabs and ceilings of Acoustically Sensitive Rooms shall be individually sleeved and sealed, unless expressly indicated otherwise, or as approved by the Architect. At locations approved for multiple conduit penetrations, the multiple conduit penetration deal shall be followed, as illustrated in the Electrical Drawings.

D. Conduit shall penetrate perpendicularly through walls and ceilings of Acoustically Sensitive Rooms and Noise Producing Rooms.

## 3.6 CONDUIT ROUTING CONSIDERATIONS

A. Conduit carrying high voltage or high amperage wiring serving equipment subject to abrupt start-up and possible slapping of wiring within conduit shall not pass through Acoustically Sensitive Rooms.

B. Conduit connected to dimmer racks or transformers shall not pass directly into Acoustically Sensitive Rooms. Conduits connected to dimmer racks or transformers shall not penetrate into an interstitial space(s) before penetrating the walls, floors or slabs of Acoustically Sensitive Rooms.

C. Conduit serving performance audio systems shall not travel parallel to, within three feet of, conduits carrying power wiring.

D. Conduit shall not rigidly contact or connect to other non-electrical equipment or building systems which are vibration isolated.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall work in accord with best trade practices, shall fabricate and install all items in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and consistent with the Contract Documents, and shall consult with trades doing adjoining work in order to provide an installation of first class quality.

B. Adjustment of Isolators:
1. Adjust any limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
2. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units.

C. Inspection and Approval:
1. The vibration isolation manufacturer shall inspect and approve the installation of the vibration isolators, and shall submit a report to the Architect which verifies that all of the isolators for electrical equipment has been properly installed and that the installation is in full conformance with the specification. The report shall contain the type and measured static deflection of any spring isolators provided.
2. Upon completing installation and adjustment for suitable operation of all work specified under this section, the Contractor shall notify the Architect in writing that all work specified under this section is complete, operational and adjusted in every respect, and that all work is ready for the completion checkout.
3. Defective equipment and installation shall be repaired at no cost to the owner, and another inspection shall be scheduled.

4. For each inspection, workmen shall be furnished to perform such functions as are necessary for inspection of the equipment.

END OF SECTION

# SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.

F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system type.

B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.

1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Black.
b. Phase B: Red.
c. Phase C: Blue.

3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Brown.
b. Phase B: Orange.
c. Phase C: Yellow.

4. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
5. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
6. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.

C. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

E. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Champion America.
c. Panduit Corp.
d. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Panduit Corp.
c. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Brother International Corporation.
c. Ideal Industries, Inc.
d. Panduit Corp.
e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

A. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Panduit Corp.

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Carlton Industries, LP.
b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
c. Panduit Corp.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Carlton Industries, LP.
c. Marking Services, Inc.

C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Hellermann Tyton.
b. Marking Services, Inc.
c. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Carlton Industries, LP.
b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
c. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

2. Tape:

a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

3. Color and Printing:

a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.6 TAGS

A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Carlton Industries, LP.

c. emedco.
d. Marking Services, Inc.
e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

B. Write-on Tags:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
b. Carlton Industries, LP.
c. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

2. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

## 2.7 SIGNS

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Carlton Industries, LP.
b. Champion America.
c. emedco.
d. Marking Services, Inc.

2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).

B. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Carlton Industries, LP.
c. emedco.
d. Marking Services, Inc.

2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:

a. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.

c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face except white letters on red face for emergency equipment and black letters on red face for standby equipment..
d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. HellermannTyton.
2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
3. Marking Services, Inc.
4. Panduit Corp.

B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black.

D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.

G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.

1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.

H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

I. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.

J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
2. “STANDBY POWER”
3. "POWER."

L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.

M. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

O. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

P. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

Q. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.

R. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

S. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.

T. Underground Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use

multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.

2. Install underground-line warning tape for all raceways below grade.

U. Metal Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using general-purpose, UV-stabilized, and or plenum-rated cable ties as applicable to installation.

V. Write-on Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using general-purpose, UV-stabilized, and or plenum-rated cable ties as applicable to installation.

W. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.

X. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.

Y. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.

C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.

1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
2. “STANDBY POWER.”
3. "POWER."

E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in pull and junction boxes, and handholes, use vinyl wraparound labels or self-adhesive vinyl tape to identify the phase.

1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes and handholes, use write-on tags or self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.

G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes or self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.

H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.

I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.

J. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.

K. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

L. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.

M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Power-transfer switches.
    b. Controls with external control power connections.

N. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.

O. Operating Instruction Signs: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with mechanical fasteners.

P. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.

Q. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
3. Equipment to Be Labeled:

    a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    d. Generator Connection Cabinet
    e. Switchboards.
    f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    g. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
    h. Standby system boxes and enclosures.
    i. Enclosed switches.
    j. Enclosed circuit breakers.
    k. Enclosed controllers.
    l. Variable-speed controllers.
    m. Push-button stations.
    n. Power-transfer equipment.
    o. Contactors.
    p. Company Switches.
    q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
    r. Power-generating units.
    s. Monitoring and control equipment.
4. Generator Identification Signs:
    a. Provide identification of emergency sources in accordance with NEC 700.8. A sign shall be placed at the service-entrance equipment (main switchboard), indicating type and location of on-site emergency power sources. Obtain desired

legend from building owner.

R. Additional device labeling:

a. All receptacles, switches, junction boxes, and other electrical equipment shall be labeled as to power source and circuit number(s) serving the load. Provide additional labeling as required in Division 26 section “Wiring Devices”. Labels shall be self-adhesive, computer-generated tape type with black letters on white background. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) high letters on 3/4-inch- (18-mm-) high label. Where 2 lines of text are required, use labels 1-1/4 inches (50 mm) high.

END OF SECTION 260553

# SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.

B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.

C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.

G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.

a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. An approved study is required prior to procuring equipment.
2) Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:

a. Final one-line diagram.
b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
c. Short-circuit study data files.
d. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.
2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.

F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:

1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
2. A member company of NETA.
3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EDSA Micro Corporation.
2. ESA Inc.
3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.

1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. Executive summary of study findings.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchboard and panelboard designations and ratings.
6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.

D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document, separate from one-line diagram.

E. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:

1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
2. Power sources available.
3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
4. Conductors.
5. Transformer data.

G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:

1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

a. Voltage.
b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
d. Equivalent impedance.

2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

a. Voltage.
b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:

1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.

3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:

a. Voltage.
b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
e. Equivalent impedance.
f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. Qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be as defined by NFPA 70E.

B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in

the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
10. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
11. Derating factors.

## 3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.

B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.

C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:

1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.

F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

G. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

I. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION 260573.13

# SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.

1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.

B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.

C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

E. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.

G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.

    a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
    b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.

3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

    a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. An approved study is required prior to procuring equipment.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power System Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:

    a. Final one-line diagram.
    b. Final protective device coordination study.
    c. Coordination study data files.
    d. List of all protective device settings.
    e. Time-current coordination curves.
    f. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:

1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
2. A member company of NETA.
3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EDSA Micro Corporation.
2. ESA Inc.
3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.

C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

1. Optional Features:

a. Arcing faults.
b. Simultaneous faults.
c. Explicit negative sequence.
d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

## 2.2 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

A. Executive summary of study findings.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchboard and panelboard designations.
6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."

D. Protective Device Coordination Study:

1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.

a. Phase and Ground Relays:

1) Device tag.
2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.

b. Circuit Breakers:

1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.

c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.

E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:

1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:

a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.
c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
f. Cables and conductors damage curves.
g. Ground-fault protective devices.
h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
j. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.

5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
6. Maintain maximum achievable selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads on series-rated devices.
7. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
8. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

2. Equipment may only be procured after the study has been submitted and approved.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. Qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be as defined by NFPA 70E.

B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.

9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Maximum demands from service meters.
13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
14. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
15. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:

    a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
    b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
    c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
    d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
    e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
    f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
    g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
    h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
    i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
    j. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
    k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

## 3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.

B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.

D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.

E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:

1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.

F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:

1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:

a. Inrush current when first energized.
b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.

2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

H. Motor Protection:

1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.

I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.

K. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

M. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchboard, motor-control centers, overcurrent protective devices, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.
4. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

## 3.4 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY

A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:

1. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
2. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of load buses.
3. Prepare load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

## 3.5 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY

A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of motor starting on the power system stability.

B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141, and voltage sags so as not to affect operation of other utilization equipment on system supplying the motor.

## 3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING

A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under the "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.

B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.

C. Testing and adjusting shall be by a full-time employee of the Field Adjusting Agency, who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

## 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:

1. Acquaint personnel in fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
2. Hand-out and explain the coordination study objectives, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting time-current coordination curves.
3. For Owner's maintenance staff certified as NETA ETT-Certified Technicians Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III Technicians, teach how to adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION 260573.16

# SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.

C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.

F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.

G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.

B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form:

1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. An approved study is required prior to procuring equipment.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. Provide maintenance procedures in equipment manuals according to requirements in NFPA 70E.
2. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.

C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.

D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.

E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.

G. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:

1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
2. A member company of NETA.
3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EDSA Micro Corporation.
2. ESA Inc.
3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

### 2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

A. Executive summary of study findings.

B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.

C. One-line diagram, showing the following:

1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
5. Switchboard, panelboard designations, and ratings.

D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.

E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."

F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:

1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in the report:

    a. Voltage.
    b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
    e. Equivalent impedance.
    f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
    g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:

1. Arcing fault magnitude.
2. Protective device clearing time.
3. Duration of arc.
4. Arc-flash boundary.
5. Restricted approach boundary.
6. Limited approach boundary.
7. Working distance.
8. Incident energy.
9. Hazard risk category.
10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.

I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm) self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.

B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:

1. Location designation.
2. Nominal voltage.
3. Protection boundaries.

    a. Arc-flash boundary.
    b. Restricted approach boundary.
    c. Limited approach boundary.

4. Arc flash PPE category.
5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
6. Available incident energy.
7. Working distance.
8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.

B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.

1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
2. Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.

1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to IEEE 1584 recommendations.
3. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to NFPA 70E recommendations.
4. Calculate arc-flash energy with the utility contribution at a minimum and assume no motor contribution.

D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.

E. Include low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240 V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.

F. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.

G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:

1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).

H. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:

1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.

I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

## 3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.

B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
13. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

## 3.4 LABELING

A. Apply one arc-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment and on side or rear covers with accessible live parts and hinged doors or removable plates for each equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.

B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:
1. Low-voltage switchboard.
2. Low voltage transformers.

3. Panelboard, company switch, and safety switches(Regardless of voltage).
4. Control panel.

C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.

1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
2. Indicate protection level required.

## 3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

A. Install arc-flash warning labels under the direct supervision and control of Power System Analysis Specialist.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION 260573.19

# SECTION 260800 - COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following electrical components, systems, assemblies, and equipment:

1. Electrical equipment connected to Normal power systems, including the following:
   a. Transformers.
   b. Secondary service electrical systems.
   c. Distribution and branch-circuit panelboards.
   d. Lightning protection systems.
   e. Grounding systems.

2. Electrical equipment connected to Emergency and Standby power systems that provide an alternative source of power in the absence of power from the Normal power system, including the following:
   a. Distribution and branch-circuit panelboards.
   b. Grounding systems.
   c. Generators.

3. Controls and instrumentation, including the following:
   a. Equipment monitoring systems.
   b. Energy monitoring and control systems.
   c. Electrical metering and metering system.
   d. Lighting control systems.
   e. Security systems.
   f. Fire-alarm systems.

4. Systems testing and verification, including Normal, Emergency and Standby power systems, and transitions from Normal to Essential power systems and back.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BoD: Basis-of-Design Document, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

B. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

C. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

D. Essential Power Systems: A power system that a facility transitions to in the absence of Normal power. This power includes all systems classified as "standby" or "emergency," including "legally required."

E. Low Voltage: 600 V and below.

F. Medium Voltage: 601 V and above.

G. Normal Power Systems: A power system that provides primary power to a facility.

H. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."

I. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For BAS and electrical testing technician.

B. Construction Checklists: Draft construction checklists will be created by CxA for Contractor review.

C. Construction Checklists: Include the following and comply with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for construction checklists:

1. Instrumentation and control for electrical systems.
2. Instrumentation and control for lighting control systems.
3. Low-voltage power cables.
4. Control voltage power cables.
5. Electrical feeders and branch circuits.
6. Dry-type transformers.
7. Instrument transformers.
8. Switchboard assemblies.
9. Low-voltage motor starters.
10. Low-voltage air circuit breakers.

11. Low-voltage insulated case circuit breakers.
12. Low-voltage surge protective devices.
13. Metering devices.
14. Molded-case circuit breakers.
15. Low-voltage power circuit breakers.
16. Grounding systems.
17. Ground-fault protection systems.
18. Panelboards.
19. Receptacles and devices.
20. Engine generators.
21. Automatic transfer switches.
22. Variable-frequency drives.
23. AC synchronous motors and generators.
24. AC induction motors and generators.
25. DC motors and generators.
26. Battery systems.
27. Battery chargers.
28. Batteries.
29. Lighting.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electrical systems and components to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform electrical Construction Checklist verification tests, Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in electrical systems, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience as an apprentice or a journey-level electrician. Generally, required knowledge includes electrical and HVAC&R concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of electrical equipment, assemblies, and systems.
2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.

B. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration: For test equipment and instrumentation required to perform electrical Cx work, perform the following:

1. Submit test equipment and instrumentation list. For each equipment or instrument, identify the following:

a. Equipment/instrument identification number.
b. Planned Cx application or use.
c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.

2. Test equipment and instrumentation shall meet the following criteria:

a. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
b. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
c. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
d. Be recalibrated/repaired if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.

C. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:

1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, perform the following:

a. Submit proprietary instrumentation and tools list. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:

1) Instrument or tool identification number.
2) Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
3) Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
4) Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
c. Electrical proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and components. Complete and submit construction checklists.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.

B. Return draft Construction Checklist review comments within 10 days of receipt.

C. When review comments have been resolved, CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Certify that electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals.

B. Certify that electrical instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.

C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

D. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.

E. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.

F. Construction Checklists: Prepare and submit detailed construction checklists for electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1. Contributors to development of construction checklists shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Electrical systems and equipment installers.
b. Electrical instrumentation and controls installers.

G. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.

1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA, and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.

H. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the electrical system, document the deficiency and report it to Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

I. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

J. Coordinate schedule with and perform Cx activities at the direction of the CxA.

K. Comply with Construction Checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Sections specifying electrical systems and equipment.

L. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to complete and document the following:

1. Performance tests.
2. Demonstration of a sample of performance tests.
3. Cx tests.
4. Cx test demonstrations.

## 3.4 Cx TESTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Verification of Normal Power System Operation:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results for construction checklists for Division 26 electrical components associated with Normal power system.
2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested: Division 26 electrical equipment.
3. Test Purpose: Verify operation of Normal power system.
4. Test Conditions: Energize components of Normal power system, one at a time.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Proper operation of Normal power system over a 24-hour period.

B. Verification of Essential Power System Operation:

1. Prerequisites:

   a. Acceptance of results for construction checklists for Division 26 electrical components associated with Essential power system.
   b. Completion of "Verification of Normal Power System Operation" tests.

2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested: Division 26 electrical equipment.
3. Test Purpose: Verify operation of Essential power system.
4. Test Conditions:

   a. Energize components of Normal power system.
   b. Simulate a failure of Normal power system.

5. Acceptance Criteria: Transfer of power from Normal to Essential power system within OPR.

C. Verification of Control and Instrumentation:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results for construction checklists.

   a. Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
   b. Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
   c. Section 262713 "Electricity Metering."

D. Test Purpose: Verify operation of control and monitoring systems for Normal and Essential power systems.

E. Test Conditions:

1. Energize components of Normal power system.
2. Test operation of equipment.

F. Acceptance Criteria: Operation of equipment according to OPR.

END OF SECTION 260800

# SECTION 260913 - ELECTRICAL POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Electrical Metering: The international Green Construction Code, 2012 603.1 requires the distribution system to isolate load types, to install or allow for future installation of meters and data acquisition system and the installation or the ability to provide public displays and other appropriate reporting mechanisms in the future. Loads will be metered at locations as indicated on the drawings. The Electrical Power Monitoring System shall meter individual loads as shown on drawings and shall summarize building loads in the following load categories as defined by code for building load analysis:

HVAC System: energy used to heat, cool, and ventilate building including fans, pumps, boilers, chillers,

Water Heating.

Lighting System: energy used for interior and exterior lighting.

Plug Load System: energy used by devices, appliances and equipment connected to convenience receptacles.

Process Load System: energy use by any single load associated with activities within the building such as data centers, etc that exceed 5 percent of the peak connected load of the building. (theatrical lighting, stage rigging, performance power, and AV system loads.)

Building Operations/Miscellaneous Loads: vertical transportation systems, snow melt, exterior lighting mounted on building, and other loads that don’t fall into other categories.

B. Section includes equipment and systems used to monitor and control electrical consumption:

1. Multifunction meters.
2. Power meters.
3. Circuit meters and monitors.
4. Circuit meters and explorer instruments.
5. Electrical power monitoring system software.
6. Monitoring of power distribution equipment.
7. System operator interfaces.
8. Integration into BMS system workstations.
9. Raceways and boxes.

10. Wires and cables.
11. Identification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Active Power: The average power consumed by a unit. Also known as "real power."

B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.

C. Apparent (Phasor) Power: "S = VI" where "S" is the apparent power, "V" is the rms value of the voltage, and "I" is the rms value of the current.

D. Firmware: Software (programs or data) that has been written onto read-only memory (ROM). Firmware is a combination of software and hardware. Storage media with ROMs that have data or programs recorded on them are firmware.

E. KY Pulse: A method of measuring consumption of electricity that is based on a relay operating like a SPST switch.

F. KYZ Pulse: A method of measuring consumption of electricity based on a relay operating like a SPDT switch.

G. LAN: Local area network.

H. L-G: Line to ground.

I. L-L: Line to line.

J. L-N: Line to neutral.

K. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.

L. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.

M. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.

N. N-G: Neutral to ground.

O. Power Factor: The ratio of active power to apparent power, sometimes expressed in percentage.

P. rms: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

Q. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet.

R. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply; used both in singular and plural context.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for power monitoring and control.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For power monitoring and control equipment.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

a. Attach copies of approved Product Data submittals for products (such as switchboards, switchgear, and motor-control centers) that describe the following:

1) Location of the meters and gateways, and routing of the connecting wiring.
2) Details of power monitoring features to illustrate coordination among related equipment and power monitoring.

3. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
4. Network naming and numbering scheme.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with a block diagram.
6. Specifications for workstations.
7. Surge Suppressors: Data for each device used and where applied.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Design Data:

1. Manufacturer's system installation and setup guides, with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface.
b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.

d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for the system and products.
e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and variables.
f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to do the following:

1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
3) Debug hardware problems.
4) Repair or replace hardware.

h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface.
j. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
k. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, workstation software, and graphics software on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface.
l. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
m. Owner training materials.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power monitoring and control units to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Software licenses.
3. Software service agreement.
4. PC installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the PC and all installed peripherals. Provide separately for each PC.
5. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface of the hard-copy submittal.
6. Program Software Backup: On compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface, complete with data files.
7. Device address list.

8. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of distribution equipment and power monitoring and control components to form an integrated interconnection of compatible components.

1. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.

B. Coordinate Work of this Section with those in Sections specifying distribution components that are monitored or controlled by power monitoring and control equipment.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Microprocessor-based monitoring of electrical power distribution system(s) that includes the following:

1. Electrical meters that monitor, and connect to the data transmission network.
2. LAN: High-speed, multi-access, open, nonproprietary, industry-standard communication protocols.
3. Include Integration of Electrical Power Monitoring system into BMS system PC-based workstation with web access, with its operating system and application software, connected to data transmission network.

B. The electrical power monitoring system shall be Internet based.

1. System software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of internet technology.
2. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to power monitoring and control system via an Internet browser. No special software other than an Internet browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
3. Internet access shall be password protected.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 61010-1.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surge Protection: For external wiring of each conductor entry connection to components to protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Lines 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Lines: Comply with requirements as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

B. Addressable Devices: All transmitters and receivers shall communicate unique device identification and status reports to monitoring and control clients.

C. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Provide factory-installed hardware and software to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor, display, and record data for use in processing reports.

1. Hardwired Monitoring Points: metering points as defined on drawings.
2. Industry-accepted, open-protocol communication interface with the DDC system for HVAC shall enable the DDC system for HVAC operator to remotely monitor meter information from a DDC system for HVAC workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at metering panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

## 2.3 MULTIFUNCTION ENERGY METERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Siemens
2. ABB/General Electric Company.
3. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.

B. Multifunction Energy Meter: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power and energy metering and monitoring; complying with UL 61010-1.

1. Capable of metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, 3-wire delta, and single-phase power systems.
2. Equipped with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

C. Environment: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in nontemperature-controlled spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of minus 4 deg to 158 deg F (minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) dry bulb and 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

D. Overvoltage: Comply with UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating for CAT III.

E. Accuracy:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5.
2. Neutral Current Measurement: Not more than 0.65 percent.
3. Power Factor: 1.0 percent.
4. Frequency: 0.1 percent.
5. THD: 1.0 percent.
6. Waveform Sampling: 64 per cycle.

F. Data Link:

1. Protocol shall be BACnet for integration with the existing Johnson Controls Metasys building automation system.

G. Meter Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values:

a. One screen to show at least three user-selected values displayed at the same time. Selections available to display shall include the following:

1) All meters.
2) Measurements.
3) THD.
4) Energy.
5) Demand.
6) Minimum and maximum values.
7) Power demand.

H. Sampling Rate: Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than 64 samples per cycle, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

I. Meters:

1. Instantaneous, rms:

a. Current: Each phase, neutral and three-phase average.
b. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
c. Active Power (kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
d. Reactive Power (kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.
e. Apparent Power (kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.

f. Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.

2. Energy:

a. Active Energy (kWh): Three-phase total.

3. Demand, Derived from Instantaneous rms Meters:

a. Current: Present and maximum.
b. Active: Present and maximum.
c. Reactive: Present and maximum.
d. Apparent: Present and maximum.

4. Power Quality Measurements:

a. THD: Current and voltage from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, as can be calculated from the specified sampling rate.

J. I/O: Two optically isolated digital outputs for KY pulsing or control. Output signal characteristics shall be 150 mA at 200 V.

1. KY Pulse: Generate standard KY pulses for a user-defined increment of metered active energy as follows:

a. User-defined pulse output, associated with kWh.
b. User-defined pulse output, associated with kVARh.

K. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: from equipment metered.
2. Circuit Connections:

a. Voltage: Measurement autoranging, 60- to 400-V ac L-N. Connect directly to low-voltage (600 V and less) without using voltage transformers or connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V. Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater. Overload Tolerance: 1500-V ac, rms, continuously.
b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 10 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
c. Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz.
d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

## 2.4 POWER METERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Siemens
2. ABB/General Electric Company.
3. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.

B. Description: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power monitoring and control; complying with UL 61010-1.

1. Capable of metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, 3-wire delta, and single-phase power systems.
2. Equipped with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

C. Environment: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in nontemperature-controlled spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of minus 13 to 158 deg F (minus 25 to plus 70 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

D. Overvoltage: Comply with UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating for CAT III.

E. Accuracy:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5.
2. Neutral Current Measurement: Not more than 0.65 percent.
3. Power: 0.6 percent.
4. Power Factor: 0.5 percent.
5. Active Energy: 0.6 percent.
6. Reactive Energy: 2.5 percent.
7. Frequency: 0.05 percent.
8. THD: 1.0 percent.
9. Waveform Sampling: 32 per cycle.

F. Data Link:

1. Protocol shall match meter and integrated BMS system.

G. Meter Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least [**four**] <**Insert number**> lines of user-selected values on one screen at the same time. Provide graphical representation of user-selected values. The screen selections available at the display shall include the following:

a. All meters, including those listed under the following:

1) Measurements.
2) THD.
3) Energy.
4) Demand.
5) Minimum and maximum values.
6) Power demand.

H. Sampling Rate: Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than 32 samples per cycle, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

I. Meters:

1. Measurements: Instantaneous, in real time, rms to the 15th harmonic.

a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-N each phase, and three-phase average.
b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.
c. Unbalanced current, L-L V ac and L-N V ac.
d. Active Power (+/- kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
e. Reactive Power (+/- kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.
f. Apparent Power (+/- kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.
g. Displacement Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
h. Distortion Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
i. Frequency.

2. THD from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, through 15th harmonic.

a. Voltage THD: L-L each phase, L-N each phase, and three-phase average.
b. Current THD: Each phase and three-phase average.
c. Total demand distortion.

3. Energy: Accumulated, indicate whether in-flow or out-flow, net and absolute values. Store the values in instrument's nonvolatile memory.

a. Active kWh.
b. Reactive kVARh.
c. Apparent kVAh.

4. Demand: Present, last, predicted, peak.

a. Three-phase average current.
b. Three-phase total active power (kW).
c. Reactive power (kVAR).
d. Apparent power (kVA).

5. Minimum and Maximum Values:

a. L-L and L-N voltages.

b. Current in each phase.
c. Power factor.
d. Active power total.
e. Reactive power total.
f. Apparent power total.
g. THD L-L and L-N voltages.
h. THD current in each phase.
i. Frequency.

J. Power Demand, User Selectable:

1. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
2. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:

    a. Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes.
    b. Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
    c. Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.

3. Demand Calculation Initiated by a Synchronization Signal:

    a. Signal is a pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
    b. Signal is a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
    c. Provide for synchronizing the demand with the internal of this instrument.

K. Data Recording: Store the listed values in instrument's nonvolatile memory, indicate which of the three phases relates to the value. Attach a date and time stamp to the peak values and the alarms.

1. Minimum and maximum of real-time rms measurement.
2. Energy.
3. Demand values.
4. Alarms, store the last 40 events.

L. Alarms: Transmit a digital output and show on display when alarmed. Provide for no fewer than 15 metered items. Each alarm shall be user configured, by using the following options:

1. Date and time stamp.
2. Enable-disable (default) or enable.
3. Pickup magnitude.
4. Pickup time delay.
5. Dropout magnitude.
6. Dropout time delay.

7. Alarm type.
8. Alarm label.

M. Meter Face:

1. Display: Backlit LCD display, six lines, with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least four user-selected values on one screen at the same time.
3. Provide for the reset of metered peak values.

N. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
2. Circuit Connections:

a. Voltage: Measurements autoranging, 60- to 400-V ac L-N. Connect directly to low-voltage (600 V and less) without using voltage transformers or connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V. Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater. Overload Tolerance: 1500-V ac, rms, continuously.
b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 10 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
c. Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz.
d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

## 2.5 CIRCUIT METERS AND MONITORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Siemens
2. ABB/General Electric Company.
3. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.

B. Description: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power monitoring and control; complying with UL 61010-1. Capable of metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, 3-wire delta, and single-phase power systems.

1. Equipped with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

C. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in non-air-conditioned spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 14 to 122 deg F (minus 10 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

D. Overvoltage: Comply with UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating for CAT III.

E. Accuracy:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5.
2. For Voltage and Current: 0.5 percent of reading.
3. For Active Power: 0.2 percent.
4. For Active and Reactive Energy: ANSI 12.20, Class 0.2.
5. For Frequency: 0.01 Hz in the range of 45 to 65 Hz.
6. For Power Factor: 0.2 percent from 0.5 leading to 0.5 lagging.

F. Data Links:

1. Protocol shall match meter and integrated BMS system.

G. Meter Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD screen with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least four lines of user-selected values on one screen at the same time. Provide graphical representation of user-selected values.
3. Allow user to select a date/time format and the ability to create additional screens for user-specified views and custom quantities without overwriting existing standard screens.

H. Sampling Rate:

1. Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than 128 samples per cycle, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

I. Meters shall measure, record with time stamp, calculate, and on request display the following:

1. Measurements: Instantaneous, in real time, rms to the 31st harmonic:

a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.
c. Active Power (kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
d. Reactive Power (kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.
e. Apparent Power (kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.
f. Displacement Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
g. Distortion Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
h. Frequency.

2. THD from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, through 31st harmonic:

a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.

3. Energy: Accumulated, indicate in-flow or out-flow, net and absolute values. Store the values in instrument's nonvolatile memory. Provide for storing accumulated energy at user-defined intervals, up to three intervals per day.

a. Active kWh.
b. Reactive kVARh.
c. Apparent kVAh.

4. Demand: Three-phase totals, present, predicted, peak.

a. Average current.
b. Active power (kW).
c. Reactive power (kVAR).
d. Apparent power (kVA).

5. Average, Minimum and Maximum Values:

a. Record, date and time stamp, and save the minimum and maximum values of all rms metered values since the last reset.

J. Power Demand, User Selectable:

1. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
2. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:

a. Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes.
b. Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
c. Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.

3. Demand Calculation Initiated by a Synchronization Signal:

a. Synchronize demand with receipt of a signal pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
b. Synchronize demand with receipt of a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
c. Provide for synchronization to the clock in the instrument.

K. Trend Curves: Provide for recording four trend curves at intervals of one minute, one hour, one day, or one month; and forecast values for the trended parameters.

1. Record minimum, maximum, and average values of eight user-selected parameters as follows:

    a. Every second for one minute for the one-minute curve.
    b. Every minute for one hour for the one-hour curve.
    c. Every hour for one day for the one-day curve.
    d. Every day for one month for the one-month curve.

2. Forecast the trended parameters for the following:

    a. The next four hours.
    b. The next four days.

L. Waveform Capture:

1. Steady State Waveform Capture: Manually initiated.

    a. Capture, record with time stamp, and store voltage and current waveforms for two cycles.
    b. Capture, record with time stamp, and store 128 digitally sampled data points for each cycle of each phase voltage. The number of waveform captures stored onboard shall be user configurable.
    c. Harmonic analysis performed on the captured waveforms shall resolve harmonics through the 63rd.
    d. Captured waveforms shall be recorded from actual circuit performance.

2. Disturbance Waveform Capture:

    a. Capture, record with time stamp, and store 128 digitally sampled data points for each cycle of each phase voltage. Disturbance waveform capture may be initiated manually, by an external contact closure, or by an alarm. The waveform captures shall be user configurable from 185 cycles on 1 channel at 16 points per cycle, to 3 cycles on 6 channels at 128 points per cycle.

M. Disturbance Detection and Alarm:

1. Detect and initiate alarm when detecting voltage or current sag and swell.

    a. Detect disturbance events of less than half-cycle in length, by monitoring and calculating rms magnitude of each half-cycle.
    b. Event detection shall be with user-defined parameters of threshold and delay. The threshold shall be user defined as a fixed or relative set point. With relative set point, the instrument will alarm based on the nominal current or voltage equal to its present average value. The instrument shall automatically adjust the nominal current and voltage values to avoid nuisance alarms caused by gradual daily variations of currents and voltages.
    c. When detecting an alarm condition:

        1) Initiate disturbance waveform capture.

2) Record the disturbance parameters into an onboard alarm log with a date and time stamp to the millisecond.
3) Alarm on shall be visible on the display and be transmitted over the data link.
4) Display the voltage sag/swell events on ITIC or SEMI graphs to quantify the event for accepted industry standards.

N. Harmonics Information:

1. Calculate the harmonic magnitudes and angles for each phase voltage and current through the 63rd harmonic. Provide harmonic power flows up to the 41st harmonic for active, reactive, and apparent power.
2. The current and voltage information for all phases shall be obtained simultaneously from the same cycle.
3. Report harmonic information as a percentage of the fundamental or as a percentage of the rms values, as selected by the user.

O. Alarms: Alarm events shall be user definable. Provide a minimum of 40 user-defined alarm conditions.

1. User Configuration Options:

a. Date and time stamp.
b. Enable-disable (default) or enable.
c. Pickup magnitude.
d. Pickup time delay.
e. Dropout magnitude.
f. Dropout time delay.
g. Alarm type.
h. Alarm label.

2. The following classes of events shall be available to be programmed as alarm events:

a. Over/under current.
b. Over/undervoltage.
c. Current imbalance.
d. Phase loss, current.
e. Phase loss, voltage.
f. Voltage imbalance.
g. Over kVA.
h. Over kW or kVAR into/out of load.
i. Over/under frequency.
j. Under power factor, true or displacement.
k. Over THD.
l. Over demand, current or power.
m. Reverse power.
n. Phase reversal.
o. Status input change.
p. End of incremental energy interval.

q. End of demand interval.
r. Over/under analog inputs.
s. Current sag/swell.
t. Voltage sag/swell.

3. For each over/under metered alarm value, provide for the user to define a pickup, dropout, and delay.
4. The circuit meter and monitor alarms response time shall be not less than one second.
5. Provide for up to four alarms to be combined to give a single result using Boolean algebra operations.

P. EN 50160 Evaluation: Report EN 50160 evaluation data in the following formats: summary of active evaluations, summary of evaluation status, detailed information for each evaluated parameter, and detailed information for each abnormal event.

Q. I/O Module: Modular, with multiple I/O options to accomplish specified performance and one or more spare positions for future.

1. KY Pulse: Generate a standard KY pulses for a user-defined increment of metered active energy as follows:

a. User-defined pulse output, associated with kWh.
b. Alarm pulse output, which turns on the pulsing at user-defined point.

2. Digital Inputs: As follows:

a. One input connection rated 24- to 125-V ac or -V dc, +/- 10 percent, less than 5-mA burden, 1350-V rms isolation.
b. Two input connections rated 20- to 150-V dc or -V ac, 2 mA maximum.

3. Analog inputs, no fewer than two, adjustable from 0- to 5-V dc or 4 to 20 mA.
4. Outputs to operate field-installed relays, no fewer than two, providing 6- to 240-V ac or 6- to 30-V dc, 2 A rms. 5 A maximum for 10 seconds per hour.
5. Analog outputs, no fewer than two, 4- to 20-mA dc into 600 ohms maximum.

R. Data Recording: Store the listed values in instrument's nonvolatile memory, indicate which of the three phases relates to the value. Attach a date and time stamp to the peak values and the alarms.

1. Data Logs, General: User configurable. Automatically stamp each entry to the millisecond with date and time.

a. Each log entry shall hold data of up to 96 parameters each.
b. Each log shall be user configurable to log data at a different user-defined schedule interval.
c. Provide each log with user-defined event or a minimum/maximum condition that will trigger log file entries.
d. Configure log entries to be recorded as Fill & Hold or Circular (First in, First out, or FIFO), as defined by the user.

2. Minimum/Maximum Logs:

   a. Minimum/Maximum/Average interval log also logs minimum/maximum/average of selected parameters on a selected interval from a user-selected interval length from 1 to 1440 seconds.
   b. Minimum/Maximum log shall include the time, date, and value for the minimum and maximum of each of the real-time metered values.

3. Alarm Log: Record time, date, event information, and coincident information for each user-defined and automatically initiated alarm or event. Record selected parameters at 100-ms intervals during events and alarms. Automatically stamp each entry to the millisecond with date and time.
4. Waveform Logs: Capture and store waveforms, from 185 cycles on one channel at 16 samples per cycle, up to 3 cycles on six channels at 128 samples per cycle as defined by the user. Waveform log entries shall be externally triggered or forced in response to a user-defined event. Configure log entries to be recorded as Fill & Hold or Circular (FIFO), as defined by the user.

S. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: from equipment metered.
2. Circuit Connections:

   a. Voltage: Measurement autoranging, 0- to 600-V ac L-L, 0- to 347-V ac L-N. Connect directly to low-voltage (600 V and less) without using voltage transformers or connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V. Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater. Overload Tolerance: 1500-V ac, rms, continuously.
   b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 10 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
   c. Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz.
   d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

## 2.6 NETWORKED PC OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. Description: System software shall monitor, analyze, display, control, and save parameters and features available at each of the connected meters.

B. Software: Configured to run on a single PC, with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Software shall include interactive graphics client and shall be web enabled.

C. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32-bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

D. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device, touchscreen, or mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from 1 to 60 minutes in 1-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Record operator sign-on and sign-off activity.
6. Security Access:

    a. Operator access to electrical monitoring and control system shall be under password control.
    b. An alphanumeric password shall be user assignable to each operator.
    c. Software shall have at least five access levels.

        1) View - View information. No change privileges allowed.
        2) User - Same as View, but is able to initiate control functions.
        3) Controller - Same as User, but is able to initiate communications.
        4) Operator - Same as Controller, but is able to modify configurations.
        5) Supervisor - Same as Operator, but is able to administer security privileges.

    d. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator-assigned access level(s) and menu-item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
    e. Display menu items to operator with those menu items capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.

E. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator.
2. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms, and such shall be modified through workstation under password control.
3. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.

4. Help Features: On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.

## 2.7 POWER MONITORING SOFTWARE

A. Data Storage and Data Sharing:

1. Query and download logs of interval data stored on metering devices.
2. Query and download logs of alarm and event data stored on metering devices.
3. Query and download logs of waveform capture data stored on metering devices.
4. Query and download logs of interval data generated by the software and calculated by the meters.
5. Query and download logs of alarm and event data generated by the software and calculated by the meters.
6. Automatically re-arm the waveform recorders, on upload of information.
7. Provide a facility to archive, trim, and back up the database on demand, or on a schedule.
8. Provide a facility to view historical data from archived databases.
9. Support user changes to the database.

    a. Support on-line changes while the data storage/retrieval application is running.
    b. Suffer no interruption to its operation while changes are being made.
    c. Require no restart once the configuration has been performed.

B. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by the electrical power monitoring and control system.
2. Plan for each building floor, showing the following:

    a. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled electrical equipment.

3. Control schematic for each device that is controlled by the meters of this Section, including a graphic system schematic representation, similar to that indicated on Drawings, with device identification.
4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to the electrical monitoring and control system through a data link.
5. Electrical power monitoring and control system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including meters, gateways and other network devices.

## 2.8 NETWORK CONFIGURATION SOFTWARE

A. Network Management Graphical Interface Features:

1. Add and remove devices in the power monitoring and control network.
2. Application for naming devices based on a user-defined naming scheme.
3. Add and remove I/O servers in the power monitoring and control network.
4. Edit communication properties for devices including timeouts and delays.

5. Display mandatory fields when adding a new device.
6. Allow to manually connect and disconnect serial, Ethernet, modem, and Ethernet gateway sites.
7. Enable and disable devices and sites in the power monitoring and control network without interruption to other devices or sites.
8. Pool modem resources so that the software uses any available modem.
9. Monitor the following diagnostics:

    a. Communication request/response and error rates, and timeouts.
    b. Log acquisition services.

B. Database Maintenance Features:

1. Backup, archive, and trim data, event, and waveform logs.

    a. Record start and end date for operation.
    b. Allow copying data to another database.
    c. Be capable of selecting any or all of the logs specified for the meters that are Work of this Section.

        1) Data logs.
        2) Event logs.
        3) Waveform logs.

C. Web Reporter: Allow viewing historical data in preformatted report templates via a web browser.

1. Features:

    a. User-configurable report generator to trigger on event, based on a schedule, or manual initiation.
    b. Format reports in HTML, PDF, TIF, Excel, XML, or user-selected printer, or network folder.
    c. Distribution of reports via email.

2. Report on power and demand profiles.
3. Power quality report with CBEMA evaluation.
4. EN 50160 compliance report.
5. 100-ms PQ report.
6. Energy over Period Report:

    a. User-defined rollup interval by day, week, month, or year.
    b. Compare daily energy to the following:

        1) Previous day.
        2) Same day, previous week.
        3) Same day, previous month.
        4) User-defined specific day.

c. Compare weekly energy to the following:

1) Previous week.
2) Same week from previous month.
3) Same week from previous year.
4) User-defined specific week.

d. Compare monthly energy to the following:

1) Previous month.
2) Same month from previous year.
3) User-defined specific month.

e. Compare annual energy to the following:

1) Previous year.
2) User-defined specific year.

7. Energy by daily period report for the user-defined periods. Aggregate consumption of the periods by the day, week, and year.
8. Tabular Report: Show values for multiple measurements and measurements from multiple devices in tabular format.
9. Trend Report:

a. Show values for multiple measurements and measurements from multiple devices in any of the following graphical formats:

1) Line chart.
2) Pie graph.
3) Bar chart.
4) Column chart.
5) Smooth line chart.
6) Stacked column chart.
7) Stacked bar chart.

10. Alarm and Event History: User formatted, based on the meters and priority; and with user-defined alarm and event reports.
11. System Configuration Report:

a. Device name.
b. Device type.
c. Device address.
d. Connection status.
e. Device protocol.
f. Device description.

12. Each default report shall include the following:

a. Summary aggregation of data from the selected devices.

b. Individual device information.
c. Raw data.

13. The reporting tool shall provide a graphical interface to create and manage multiple Time of Use schedules:

a. Tariffs including energy cost rates per kWh, kVARh, and kVAh, and demand charges per kW, kVAR, and kVA.
b. Off-peak and on-peak times.

## 2.9 MONITORING OF POWER DISTRIBUTION EQUIPMENT

A. Power Distribution Equipment: Web-enabled, direct connected to the LAN or intranet.

B. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.

1. Potential Transformers: Secondary voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA C12.11 accuracy class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
2. Current Transformers: Burden and accuracy class suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.

C. Ethernet Connectivity:

1. A multipoint, RS-485 Modbus serial communications network shall be included within the equipment to interconnect breaker trip units, protective relays, drives, and metering devices equipped with communications.
2. Serial communications network shall be wired to an Ethernet server in the incoming section of the equipment. Hardware and cabling required for the connection to the network shall be included within the power distribution equipment.
3. Serial communications devices within the equipment shall be factory addressed and tested to verify reliable communications to the equipment's Ethernet Server.

D. Ethernet Gateways:

1. User configurable; complying with UL 60950-1, and IEEE 802.3, Class 3 PoE.
2. Include provisions to set initial Ethernet parameters via a local operator interface, or standard (RJ-45) Ethernet port, that is accessible from the front of the equipment. Initial setup shall be limited to basic Ethernet addressing parameters, as assigned by Owner.
3. Common Gateway Features:

a. User configurable, with secure password-protected login process.
b. Include communications diagnostic information for serial and Ethernet ports as well as internal health status and memory management information through embedded HTML web pages for viewing using a standard web browser.
c. Include embedded HTML pages providing real-time information from devices connected to the Ethernet gateway's RS-485 port(s) through a standard web browser.
d. Allow firmware upgrades through the communications port.

4. Include a "Quick-Start" guide with the equipment to describe the commissioning process for setting the equipment's Ethernet network address and for ensuring trouble-free data access from any PC on the network, using a standard web browser.
5. Implement a common user interface ("look and feel") across all styles of power equipment.

E. Distribution Equipment Monitoring:

1. Main menu and summary pages, factory configured, to display data for each communicating device within the power equipment lineup.
2. Display Data:

a. Circuit summary page to display circuit name, three-phase average rms current, real power (kW), power factor, and breaker status (if applicable).
b. Load current summary page to display circuit name, and phase a, b, and c rms current values.
c. Demand current summary page to display circuit name, and phase a, b, and c average demand current values.
d. Power summary page to display circuit name, present demand power (kW), peak demand power (kW), and recorded time and date.
e. Energy summary page to display circuit name, real energy (kWh), reactive energy (kVARh), and time/date of last reset.
f. For unit substations equipped with dry-type transformer(s) and microbased temperature controller(s), the circuit summary web page listed above shall be augmented with transformer coil temperatures, phase a, b and c current values, and cooling fan status (on/off).
g. For motor-control centers, the circuit summary web page shall be tailored specifically for this application, to display circuit name, three-phase average rms current, thermal capacity (percentage), drive output frequency (in Hertz, where applicable), and contactor status.

## 2.10 SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

A. Operator means of system access shall be through the following:
1. Remote connection using outside of system PC, tablet, or phone using an internet portal.

## 2.11 RACEWAYS AND BOXES

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power wiring and NFPA 70 Class 1 remote-control and signaling circuits.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for control wiring, RS-232 cable, and NFPA 70 Class 2 remote-control and signaling circuits.

## 2.12 WIRES AND CABLES

A. Electrical Power Wiring: Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1. Copper conductors are Type THHN/THWN-2.

B. Control Wiring:

1. Optical-Fiber Cable: Multimode, 50/125-micrometer OM3, six-fiber, nonconductive, tight-buffer, optical-fiber cable, with aqua jacket.
2. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable: 100-ohm, four-pair Category 6.
3. RS-485 Cable: Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
4. Low-Voltage Control Cable: Multiple conductor, color-coded, No. 20 AWG copper, minimum.

    a. Sheath: PVC; except in plenum-type spaces, use sheath listed for plenums.
    b. Ordinary Switching Circuits: Three conductors unless otherwise indicated.
    c. Switching Circuits with Pilot Lights or Locator Feature: Five conductors unless otherwise indicated.

C. RS-232 Cable:

1. PVC-Jacketed, RS-232 Cable: Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; PVC jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

    a. Type CM.
    b. Flame Resistance: UL 1581, vertical tray.

2. Plenum-Type, RS-232 Cable: Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; plastic jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

    a. Type CMP.
    b. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, flame test.

## 2.13 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
2. PowerLogics, Inc./PQ Protection.
3. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.

4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.

B. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 2.

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

C. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual metal-oxide varistors in a given mode.

D. Comply with UL 1283.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SPD for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V and 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. L-N: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V/700 V for 208Y/120 V.
2. L-G: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V/700 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. N-G: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V/700 V for 208Y/120 V.
4. L-L: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V/1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.

G. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

H. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

I. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Wiring and Cabling Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power wiring.

E. Raceways Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power wiring and NFPA 70 Class 1 remote-control and signaling circuits.
2. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for control wiring, RS-232 cable, and NFPA 70 Class 2 remote-control and signaling circuits.

F. Identification Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power wiring.
2. Comply with Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for identification products and cable management system requirements for twisted pair cable, RS-485 cable, low-voltage control cable, and RS-232 cable.

## 3.3 WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

A. Desktop Workstations Installation:
1. Install software on BMS workstation(s) and verify that software functions properly.
2. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs, and historical database.

B. Graphics Application:

1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's and Architect's review before creating graphic using graphics software.
5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's review and feedback.

7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy to include in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of the system operation and maintenance manual.

## 3.4 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.

## 3.5 GROUNDING

A. For data communication wiring, comply with NECA/BICSI 568.

B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

1. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
2. Visually inspect balanced twisted pair cabling and optical-fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
4. Test balanced twisted pair cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    b. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

5. Optical-Fiber Cable Tests:

a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.0. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

1) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to IEC 61280-4-1.
2) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.0.

c. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

6. Power Monitoring and Control System Tests.

a. Test Analog Signals:

1) Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
2) Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
3) Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.

b. Test Digital Signals:

1) Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2) Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.

c. I/O Control Loop Tests:

1) Test every I/O point to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2) Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3) Test every control loop to verify that operation is stable and accurate.
4) Adjust control loop proportional, integral, and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5) Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6) Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation.
7) Operate each analog point at the following:

a) Upper quarter of range.
b) Lower quarter of range.

c) At midpoint of range.

8) Exercise each binary point.
9) For every I/O point in the system, read and record each value at workstation, at controller, and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at workstation and at field instrument shall match.
10) Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in the system, and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desire results.

B. Wiring and cabling will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.7 FINAL REVIEW

A. Submit written request to Architect when the power monitoring and control system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:

1. The system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with Contract Documents and found to be in full compliance.
2. The system has been calibrated, adjusted, and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed, and other performance requirements indicated.
3. The system monitoring and control of electrical distribution systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
4. The system is complete and ready for final review.

B. Review by Architect will be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.

C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.

D. Final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.

## 3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12months' full maintenance by manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of defective components, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper system operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

## 3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the power monitoring and control system.

B. Extent of Training:

1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of power monitoring and control system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
3. Minimum Training Requirements:

a. Provide no fewer than two days of training total.
b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than four separate training classes.
d. Each training class shall be no fewer than two consecutive day(s).

C. Attendee Training Manuals:

1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.

D. Instructor Requirements:

1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
2. Instructors shall have no fewer than five years of providing instructional training on no fewer than five past projects with similar electrical monitoring and control system scope and complexity.

E. Training Outline: Submit training outline for Owner review at least [**10**] <**Insert number**> business days before scheduling training. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into each training session that day, training objectives for each training session, and synopses for each lesson planned.

F. On-Site Training:

1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power, and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector, and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration, and service requirements.
5. The workstation provided with the system shall be used in training. If workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.

G. Off-Site Training:

1. Provide conditioned training rooms and workspace with ample tables, chairs, power, and data connectivity for each attendee.
2. Provide capability to remotely access to Project monitoring and control system for use in training.
3. Provide a workstation for use by each attendee.

3.11 At Completion of Training:

A. Staff familiar with the system installed are capable of demonstrating operation of the system during final review.

B. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Accuracy and calibration of 10 I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
2. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and workstations.
3. Trends, summaries, logs, and reports set-up for Project.
4. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, workstations, and uploading and downloading of control programs.
5. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.

6. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.
7. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
8. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
9. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
10. Online user guide and help functions.
11. For Each Meter:

    a. Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend, and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
    b. Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each meter with a portable workstation.
    c. Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
    d. Network Communication: Ability to locate a meter on the network. Communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
    e. Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators, and devices.

12. For Each Workstation:

    a. I/O point lists agree with naming conventions.
    b. Graphics are complete.

END OF SECTION 260913

# SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
6. Outdoor motion sensors.
7. Lighting contactors.
8. Emergency shunt relays.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:

a. Occupancy sensors.
b. Vacancy sensors.

2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

a. Luminaires.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Control modules.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.

2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRONIC TIME SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.

3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and application.
2. Contact Configuration: SPST.
3. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac.
4. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
5. Programs: Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
6. Programs: 6 channels; each channel is individually programmable with eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule.
7. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
8. Astronomic Time: Selected channels.
9. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
10. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

## 2.2 ELECTROMECHANICAL DIAL-TIME SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Contact Configuration: SPST.
3. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac.
4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
5. Astronomic time dial.
6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
7. Skip-a-day mode.
8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

## 2.3 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, SOLID STATE, FLEXIBLE MOUNTING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3. NSi Industries LLC.

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a agency NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with ANSI C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure from same source and manufacturer as switch.
6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

## 2.4 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING SWITCHING CONTROLS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
5. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. Description: System operates indoor lighting.

C. Sequence of Operation: As daylight increases, the lights are turned off at a predetermined level. As daylight decreases, the lights are turned on at a predetermined level.

1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:

a. When no daylight is present.
b. When significant daylight is present (target level).
c. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.

D. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with integrated power pack, that detects changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated power pack, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered by the power pack.
4. Sensor Output: Digital signal compatible with power pack.
5. Sensor type: Open loop.
6. Zone: Single.
7. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.

    a. LED status lights to indicate load status.
    b. Plenum rated.

8. General Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 10 to 200 fc (108 to 2152 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
9. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling.
10. Set-Point Adjustment: Equip with deadband adjustment of 25, 50, and 75 percent above the "on" set point, or provide with separate adjustable "on" and "off" set points.
11. Test Mode: User selectable, overriding programmed time delay to allow settings check.
12. Control Load Status: User selectable to confirm that load wiring is correct.
13. Indicator: Two digital displays to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.

## 2.5 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
5. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Integrated power pack.
4. Hardwired connection to switch and BAS.
5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

6. Operation:

    a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.

7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
8. Power: Line voltage.
9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
10. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet (110 square meters) when mounted48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.

## 2.6 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
5. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
6. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox, with provisions for connection to BAS using hardwired connection.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA ballast or LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.

C. Wall-Switch Sensor:

1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 2100 sq. ft (196 sq. m).
2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
3. Switch Type: SP, manual "on," automatic "off."
4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
5. Voltage: Dual voltage - 120 and 277 V.
6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
10. Color: As selected by Architect.
11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

## 2.7 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
2. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
3. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. Description: Solid-state outdoor motion sensors.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. PIR type, weatherproof. Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm). Comply with UL 773A.
3. Switch Rating:

    a. Luminaire-Mounted Sensor: 1000-W incandescent, 500-VA fluorescent/LED.
    b. Separately Mounted Sensor: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.

4. Switch Type: SP.
5. Voltage: Dual voltage, 120- and 277-V type.
6. Detector Coverage:

    a. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
    b. Long Range: 180-degree field of view and 110-foot (34-m) detection range.

7. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
8. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
9. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
10. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and help eliminate false "off" switching.
11. Operating Ambient Conditions: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (minus 40 to plus 54 deg C), rated as "raintight" according to UL 773A.

## 2.8 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Lighting Control and Design.
2. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.

1. Coil Rating: 120 or 277 V.

2.9 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

## 3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual

occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 260923

# SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Lighting control panels using mechanically held relays for switching.

B. Section Includes: Networked lighting control panels using control-voltage relays for switching and that are interoperable with HVAC DDC system.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BAS: Building automation system.

B. DDC: Direct digital control.

C. IP: Internet protocol.

D. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for control modules, power distribution components, relays, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Sound data including results of operational tests of central dimming controls.
4. Operational documentation for software and firmware.

B. Shop Drawings: For each relay panel and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.

2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail wiring partition configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of relays.
5. Address Drawing: Reflected ceiling plan and floor plans, showing connected luminaires, address for each luminaire, and luminaire groups. Base plans on construction plans, using the same legend, symbols, and schedules.
6. Point List and Data Bus Load: Summary list of all control devices, sensors, ballasts, and other loads. Include percentage of rated connected load and device addresses.
7. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with Drawings and block diagram. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
8. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Software licenses and upgrades required by and installed for operation and programming of digital and analog devices.

D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting controls to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On USB drive.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
5. Testing and adjusting of panic and emergency power features.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lighting Control Relays: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than four.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handle and prepare panels for installation according to NECA 407.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of standalone multipreset modular dimming controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Damage from transient voltage surges.

2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Extended Warranty Period: Cost of replacement parts (materials only, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site), for eight years, that failed in service due to transient voltage surges.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Sequence of Operations: Input signal from field-mounted manual switches, or digital signal sources, shall open or close one or more lighting control relays in the lighting control panels. Any combination of inputs shall be programmable to any number of control relays.

B. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-mounted surge suppressors complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.

E. Comply with UL 916.

## 2.2 LIGHTING CONTROL RELAY PANELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Acuity nLight
   2. General Electric Company.
   3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   4. Lightolier; a Philips group brand.
   5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
   6. WattStopper; a Legrand® Group brand.

B. Description: Standalone lighting control panel using mechanically latched relays to control lighting and appliances.

C. Lighting Control Panel:

   1. A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, control circuits, switching relays, and on-board timing and control unit.
   2. A vertical barrier separating branch circuits from control wiring.

D. Control Unit: Contain the power supply and electronic control for operating and monitoring individual relays.

   1. Timing Unit:

      a. 365-day calendar, astronomical clock, and automatic adjustments for daylight savings and leap year.
      b. Clock configurable for 12-hour (A.M./P.M.) or 24-hour format.
      c. Four independent schedules, each having 24 time periods.
      d. Schedule periods settable to the minute.
      e. Day-of-week, day-of-month, day-of-year with one-time or repeating capability.
      f. 10 special date periods.

   2. Sequencing Control with Override:

      a. Automatic sequenced on and off switching of selected relays at times set at the timing unit, allowing timed overrides from external switches.
      b. Sequencing control shall operate relays one at a time, completing the operation of all connected relays in not more than 10 seconds.
      c. Override control shall allow any relay connected to it to be switched on or off by a field-deployed manual switch or by an automatic switch, such as an occupancy sensor.
      d. Override control "blink warning" shall warn occupants approximately five minutes before actuating the off sequence.

   3. Nonvolatile memory shall retain all setup configurations. After a power failure, the controller shall automatically reboot and return to normal system operation, including accurate time of day and date.

E. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 5 kA. Control shall be three-wire, 24-V ac.

F. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 120-V tungsten, 30 A at 277-V ballast, 1.5 hp at 120 V, and 3 hp at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 14 kA. Control shall be three-wire, 24-V ac.

G. Power Supply: NFPA 70, Class 2, sized for connected equipment, plus 20 percent spare capacity. Powered from a dedicated branch circuit of the panelboard that supplies power to the line side of the relays, sized to provide control power for the local panel-mounted relays, bus system, low-voltage inputs, field-installed occupancy sensors, and photo sensors.

H. Operator Interface:

1. Integral alphanumeric keypad and digital display, and intuitive drop-down menus to assist in programming.
2. Log and display relay on-time.
3. Connect relays to one or more time and sequencing schemes.

## 2.3 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.

1. Match color and style specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
2. Integral green LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
3. Internal white LED locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.

B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."

C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 FIELD-MOUNTED SIGNAL SOURCES

A. Daylight Harvesting Switching Controls: Comply with Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.

B. Indoor Occupancy Sensors: Comply with Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG.

C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

D. Twisted-Pair Data Cable: Category 6a. Comply with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panels according to NECA 407.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panels for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

## 3.3 PANEL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install panels and accessories according to NECA 407.

C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

D. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm). Insert dimension above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

E. Mount panel cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Create a directory to indicate loads served by each relay; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a PC or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are unacceptable.

D. Lighting Control Panel Nameplates: Label each panel with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers described below and low-voltage surge arrestors. Certify compliance with manufacturer's test parameters.

    a. Circuit-Breaker Tests:

1) Compare nameplate with Drawings and Specifications.
2) Inspect physical and mechanical conditions.
3) Inspect anchorage and alignment.
4) Verify that the units are clean.
5) Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
6) Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:

    a) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
    b) Verify tightness of bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque wrench.
    c) Thermographic survey.

7) Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and arc chutes in unsealed units.
8) Perform adjustments for final protective device settings according to the overcurrent protective device coordination study. Comply with requirements in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
9) Perform insulation resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase, and phase-to-ground with the circuit breaker closed and across each pole using manufacturer's published data.
10) Perform a contact/pole-resistance test.
11) Perform insulation-resistance tests on control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be for one minute. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for solid-state units.
12) Determine long-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.
13) Determine short-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.
14) Determine ground-fault pickup and time delay by primary current injection.
15) Determine instantaneous pickup by primary current injection.
16) Test functions of the trip unit by means of secondary injection.
17) Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils according to manufacturer's published data.
18) Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, anti-pump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset trip logs and indicators.
19) Verify operation of charging mechanism.

b. Surge Arrestor Tests:

1) Compare nameplate with the Contract Documents.
2) Inspect physical and mechanical conditions.
3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
4) Verify that the units are clean.
5) Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:

    a) Low-resistance ohmmeter.

b) Verify tightness of bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque wrench.

6) Verify that the ground lead on each device is individually attached to a ground bus or ground electrode.
7) Perform an insulation-resistance test on each arrestor, phase terminal-to-ground using voltage according to manufacturer written instructions.
8) Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding tests.

2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

E. Lighting control panel will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies lighting control panels and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between panels, and program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-of-day schedules, and input override assignments.

## 3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

## 3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within [**two**] <**Insert number**> years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the control unit and operator interface.

END OF SECTION 260943.23

# SECTION 262213 - LOW-VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes distribution, dry-type transformers with a nominal primary and secondary rating of 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type and size of transformer.
2. Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inspection: On receipt, inspect for and note any shipping damage to packaging and transformer.

1. If manufacturer packaging is removed for inspection, and transformer will be stored after inspection, re-package transformer using original or new packaging materials that provide protection equivalent to manufacturer's packaging.

B. Storage: Store in a warm, dry, and temperature-stable location in original shipping packaging.

C. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

D. Handling: Follow manufacturer's instructions for lifting and transporting transformers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. General Electric Company.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

C. Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:

1. Comply with 10 CFR 431 (DOE 2016) efficiency levels.
2. Marked as compliant with DOE 2016 efficiency levels by an NRTL.

D. Shipping Restraints: Paint or otherwise color-code bolts, wedges, blocks, and other restraints that are to be removed after installation and before energizing. Use fluorescent colors that are easily identifiable inside the transformer enclosure.

## 2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

A. Comply with NFPA 70, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.

B. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.

1. One leg per phase.
2. Core volume shall allow efficient transformer operation at 10 percent above the nominal tap voltage.
3. Grounded to enclosure.

C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.

1. Coil Material: Copper.
2. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
3. Terminal Connections: Bolted.

D. Encapsulation: Transformers smaller than 30 kVA shall have core and coils completely resin encapsulated.

E. Enclosure: Ventilated.

1. NEMA 250, Type 3R: Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound using a vacuum-pressure impregnation process to seal out moisture and air.
2. KVA Ratings: Based on convection cooling only and not relying on auxiliary fans.
3. Wiring Compartment: Sized for conduit entry and wiring installation.
4. Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.

a. Finish Color: Gray weather-resistant enamel.

Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.

G. Insulation Class, Smaller Than 30 kVA: 180 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 115 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

H. Insulation Class, 30 kVA and Larger: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 80deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.

I. Grounding: Provide ground-bar kit or a ground bar installed on the inside of the transformer enclosure.

J. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.

1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor, without exceeding the indicated insulation class in a 40 deg C maximum ambient and a 24-hour average ambient of 30 deg C.
2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.
3. Unit shall comply with requirements of DOE 2016 efficiency levels when tested according to NEMA TP 2 with a K-factor equal to one.

K. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.

1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.

L. Neutral: Rated 200 percent of full load current for K-factor-rated transformers.

M. Wall/pendant Brackets: Manufacturer's standard wall brackets or wall/pendant brackets fabricated from design drawings signed and sealed by a licensed structural engineer.

N. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Maximum sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91, as follows:

1. 9.00 kVA and Less: 40 dBA.
2. 9.01 to 30.00 kVA: 45 dBA.
3. 30.01 to 50.00 kVA: 45 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9; 48 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20.
4. 50.01 to 150.00 kVA: 50 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9; 53 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20.
5. 150.01 to 300.00 kVA: 55 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9; 58 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20 .
6. 300.01 to 500.00 kVA: 60 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9; 63 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20.

## 2.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Nameplates: Engraved, labels for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.01 and IEEE C57.12.91.

1. Resistance measurements of all windings at rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
2. Ratio tests at rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
3. Phase relation and polarity tests at rated voltage connections.
4. No load losses, and excitation current and rated voltage at rated voltage connections.
5. Impedance and load losses at rated current and rated frequency at rated voltage connections.
6. Applied and induced tensile tests.
7. Regulation and efficiency at rated load and voltage.
8. Insulation-Resistance Tests:

    a. High-voltage to ground.
    b. Low-voltage to ground.
    c. High-voltage to low-voltage.

9. Temperature tests.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.

B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.

D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.

E. Environment: Enclosures shall be rated for the environment in which they are located.

F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall/pendant-mounted transformers level and plumb with wall/pendant brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer or from design drawings signed and sealed by a licensed structural engineer.

1. Coordinate installation of wall-mounted and pendant/structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

B. Install transformers level and plumb on a concrete base with vibration-dampening supports. Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.

C. Construct concrete bases according to Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and anchor floor-mounted transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

D. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten all bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to reduce noise generation.

F. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

D. Provide flexible connections at all conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to the building structure.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Small (Up to 167-kVA Single-Phase or 500-kVA Three-Phase) Dry-Type Transformer Field Tests:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection.

a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
c. Verify that resilient mounts are free and that any shipping brackets have been removed.

d. Verify the unit is clean.
e. Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests recommended by manufacturer.
f. Verify that as-left tap connections are as specified.
g. Verify the presence of surge arresters and that their ratings are as specified.

2. Electrical Tests:

a. Measure resistance at each winding, tap, and bolted connection.
b. Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Calculate polarization index: the value of the index shall not be less than 1.0.
c. Perform turns-ratio tests at all tap positions. Test results shall not deviate by more than one-half percent from either the adjacent coils or the calculated ratio. If test fails, replace the transformer.
d. Verify correct secondary voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral, after energization and prior to loading.

C. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.

D. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.

1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
2. Perform two follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at four months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

E. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

B. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

## 3.6 CLEANING

A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262213

# SECTION 262413 - SWITCHBOARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Surge protection devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.
7. Identification.
8. Mimic bus.

B. Related Requirements

1. Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component.

1. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.

5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
8. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
9. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.

D. Delegated Design Submittal:

1. For arc-flash hazard analysis.
2. For arc-flash labels.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

B. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
c. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.

B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service to prevent condensation.

C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NEMA PB 2.1.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

B. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated and scheduling the outage at the convenience of the owner:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace switchboard enclosures, buswork, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and factory installed interconnection wiring that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's agrees to repair or replace surge protection devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SWITCHBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NEMA PB 2.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

G. Comply with UL 891.

H. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

I. Nominal System Voltage: as indicated on drawings.

J. Main-Bus Continuous: as indicated on drawings.

K. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.

L. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

M. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.

N. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.

O. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.

1. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point.
2. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in switchboard.

P. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment shall contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, a neutral bus with disconnecting link, a grounding electrode conductor terminal, and a main bonding jumper.

Q. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.

R. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections as required: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

S. Removable, Hinged Rear Doors and Compartment Covers: Secured by standard bolts, for access to rear interior of switchboard.

T. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

U. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:

1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
3. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
4. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
5. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.

V. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right when viewed from the front of the switchboard.
2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-plated.
3. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
4. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
5. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch- (6-by-50-mm-) hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors.
6. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
7. Disconnect Links:

    a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
    b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service equipment or separately derived systems.
8. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
9. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.

W. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

X. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.

## 2.2 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the switchboard manufacturer.

E. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1.

F. Features and Accessories:

1. SPD shall be internal to switchboard and shall be connected to the main bus via a branch breaker.

2. Integral disconnect switch.
3. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
4. Indicator light display for protection status.
5. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
6. Surge counter.

G. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 200 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

H. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V; 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
3. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V; 1000 V for 208Y/120 V.

I. SCCR: equal to protected equipment.

J. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

## 2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.

3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long and short time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
8. MCCB Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: Compressionstyle, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
    d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
    f. Shunt Trip where indicated: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at [**55**] [**75**] percent of rated voltage.
    g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
    h. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 100 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.

1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
3. Full-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Time adjustments for long- and short-time pickup.
    c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.

4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
5. Remote trip indication.
6. Communication Capability: Web enabled integral Ethernet communication module and embedded Web server with factory-configured Web pages (HTML file format). Provide functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
7. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.

C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

D. Fuses are specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."

## 2.4 INSTRUMENTATION

A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:

1. Potential Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 120 V, 60 Hz, [**single**] [**tapped**] [**double**] secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
2. Current Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; [**wound**] [**bushing**] [**bar or window**] type; [**single**] [**double**] secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.

B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:

1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:

a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 1 percent.
e. Megavars: Plus or minus 1 percent.
f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 1 percent.
g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 1 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 1 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.

2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

C. Analog Meters:

1. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with anti-parallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.

D. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.

E. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.

1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.

F. Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.

G. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
4. Potential indicating lamps.
5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
6. Four-dial clock register.
7. Integral demand indicator.
8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
11. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
12. Appropriate multiplier tag.

H. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Suitable for use with switchboard watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
3. Cyclometer.
4. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
5. Positive chart drive mechanism.
6. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
7. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
8. Capable of indicating and recording [**five**] [**15**] [**30**] <**Insert time period**>-minute integrated demand of totalized system.

## 2.5 CONTROL POWER

A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.

B. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.

C. Control Circuits: <**Insert control voltage**>-V dc.

D. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.

E. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.

F. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

## 2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.

C. Portable Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Floor-supported, roller-based, elevating carriage arranged for movement of circuit breakers in and out of compartments for present and future circuit breakers.

D. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.

E. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

F. Mounting Accessories: For anchors, mounting channels, bolts, washers, and other mounting accessories, comply with requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" or manufacturer's instructions.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on a photoengraved nameplate.

1. Nameplate: At least 0.032-inch- (0.813-mm-) thick anodized aluminum, located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.

B. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on an engraved laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate.

1. Nameplate: At least 0.0625-inch- (1.588 mm-) thick laminated plastic (Gravoply), located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.

C. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.

D. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.

E. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.

F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NEMA PB 2.1.

1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps following manufacturer's instructions.
2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not furnished.
3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
4. Install temporary heating during storage per manufacturer's instructions.

B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect the performance of the equipment.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 2.1.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install conduits entering underneath the switchboard, entering under the vertical section where the conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with the concrete base. Extend 2 inches (50-mm) above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
6. Anchor switchboard to building structure at the top of the switchboard if required or recommended by the manufacturer.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.

D. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount in same room on wall..

E. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.

F. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.

1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

G. Install spare-fuse cabinet.

H. Comply with NECA 1.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond conduits entering underneath the switchboard to the equipment ground bus with a bonding conductor sized per NFPA 70.

B. Support and secure conductors within the switchboard according to NFPA 70.

C. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified on drawings and in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified on drawings and in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified on drawings and in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Acceptance Testing:

    a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit. Open control and metering circuits within the switchboard, and remove neutral connection to surge protection and other electronic devices prior to insulation test. Reconnect after test.
    b. Test continuity of each circuit.

2. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment per NFPA 70.
3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
5. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated. as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

END OF SECTION 262413

# SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Electronic-grade panelboards.
4. Fusible panelboards.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

D. HID: High-intensity discharge.

E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

F. SPD: Surge protective device.

G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.

1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or ISO 9002 certified.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C) to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated and scheduling outage at owner’s convenience:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
7. Finishes:

a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.

F. Incoming Mains:

1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.

   a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
   b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Isolated Ground Bus where indicated: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus where indicated: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

I. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and

overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

J. Future Devices: Panelboards shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.

K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

L. Selective Coordination
1. Overcurrent protective devices shall be selectively coordinated with all supply side overcurrent protective devices.

## 2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker or Fused switch.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker or fused switch as indicated on drawings.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers or fused switches, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

G. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

## 2.4 ELECTRONIC-GRADE PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral SPD; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 and UL 1449 after installing SPD.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

D. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.

F. SPD.

1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V 1200 V; for 208Y/120 V.

3. SCCR: Equal to the SCCR of the panelboard in which installed.
4. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

G. Buses:

1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

## 2.5 FUSIBLE PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton Bussman
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Fusible branch circuit panelboards shall be listed to UL 67 and cULus to CSA Standard 22.2.

C. Equipment shall be shipped without branch circuit fuses installed. Branch circuit fuses shall be shipped separately with the chassis. Where greater than 100A main fuses are specified, equipment shall be shipped with main fuses installed. Where less than or equal to 100A main fuses are specified, fuses shall be shipped separately with the chassis.

D. Branch circuits must be interchangeable with fusible switches from 15A to 100A without additional required space.

E. Panelboard branch circuits shall incorporate overcurrent protection and branch-circuit rated disconnecting means into a single integrated component that prevents removal of the fuse while energized, provides open fuse indication, and fuse ampere rating rejection feature.

F. SPD.

1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V; 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V 1200 V; for 208Y/120 V.

3. SCCR: Equal to the SCCR of the panelboard in which installed.
4. Inominal Rating: 20 kA.

## 2.6 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.Square D; by Schneider Electric.MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

    a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:

    a. RMS sensing.
    b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
    c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
    d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
    e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
    f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
    g. Field-Adjustable Settings:

1) Instantaneous trip.
2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3) Long and short time adjustments.
4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:

a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
d. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
g. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
h. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
i. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
k. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle.
l. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
m. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:

a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.

b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.
c. Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.

## 2.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## 2.8 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

F. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch (16 mm) in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.

J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

L. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

M. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

N. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads. Incorporate Owner's final room designations. Update directory after balancing panelboard loads. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified on drawings and in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

## 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

# SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
3. Twist-locking receptacles.
4. Pendant cord-connector devices.
5. Cord and plug sets.
6. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
7. Wall-box dimmers.
8. Wall plates.
9. Floor service fittings.
10. Prefabricated multioutlet assemblies.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.

B. BAS: Building automation system.

C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

G. SPD: Surge protective device.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. RoHS compliant.

D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.

E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.

F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:

1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

G. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Electrical System: Red.
3. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.

H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
    b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
    b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
    b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.

3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

## 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
   b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

## 2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Twist-Lock, Single Receptacles, voltage and amperage as indicated on drawings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
   b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration as indicated on drawings.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

## 2.5 PENDANT CORD REEL-CONNECTOR DEVICES

A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector, heavy-duty grade.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

3. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

C. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configurations as indicated on drawings.

D. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.

E. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

F. Standards: Comply with FS W-C-596.

## 2.6 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.

B. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.

C. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

## 2.7 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
   b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

B. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
   b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

C. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
   b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

D. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
   b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Illuminated when switch is on.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

## 2.8 ALL PLATES

A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.

B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

## 2.9 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Flush-Type Floor Service Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
   b. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
   c. Wiremold / Legrand.

2. Description: Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used, with cover flush with finished floor.
3. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
4. Service Plate and Cover: Rectangular, die-cast aluminum with satin finish.
5. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Data Communication Outlet: as indicated on telecommunications drawings.

## 2.10 PREFABRICATED MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multioutlet harness.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
2. Wiremold / Legrand.

C. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

D. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.

2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

    a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

## 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use self-adhesive machine generated tape type label with black -filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

C. Dedicated Receptacles: Identify as “DEDICATED” on label on face of plate.

D. Essential Electrical System: Identify receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system as “EMERGENCY” or “STANDBY” with red-filled lettering on label on face of plate.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.

B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
2. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

D. Tests for Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

E. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

# SECTION 262813 - FUSES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:

    a. Control circuits.
    b. Panelboards.
    c. Switchboards.
    d. Enclosed controllers.
    e. Enclosed switches.

2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.

    a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.

2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures," and Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Bussmann, an Eaton business.
2. Edison; a brand of Bussmann by Eaton.
3. Littelfuse, Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages. Select fast acting or time delay type as required for selective coordination per coordination study.

1. Type RK-1: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
2. Type RK-5: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting, time delay.
4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting, time delay.
5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
7. Type T: 600-V, zero- to 800-A rating, 200 kAIC, very fast acting, time delay.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

## 2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.

1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Service Entrance: Class L, fast acting; Class L, time delay; Class RK1, fast acting; Class RK1, time delay; Class J, fast acting; Class J, time delay; or Class T, fast acting.
2. Feeders: Class L, fast acting; Class L, time dela;y Class RK1, fast acting; Class RK1, time delay; Class RK5, fast acting; Class RK5, time delay; Class J, fast acting; or Class J, time delay.
3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1; Class RK5; or Class CC, motor duty, time delay.
4. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
5. Power Electronics Circuits: Class J, high speed; or Class T, fast acting.
6. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay; Class RK5, time delay; Class J, fast acting; Class J, time delay; or Class CC, fast acting.
7. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
8. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Owner.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

# SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Molded-case switches.
5. Enclosures.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB/General Electric.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Double throw.
2. Three or six pole as indicated.
3. 600-V ac.

4. Amperage as indicated on drawings.
5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

## 2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.

6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

## 2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.

C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated.

E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.

F. Lugs shall be suitable for 167 deg F (75 deg C) rated wire.

G. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

I. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.

J. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:

1. Instantaneous trip.
2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.

K. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

L. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.

M. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).

N. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).

O. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
5. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
8. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
9. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
10. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered;.

## 2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company.
2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.

C. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
2. Lugs:

   a. Compression type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
   b. Lugs shall be suitable for 194 deg F (90 deg C) rated wire, sized according to the 167 deg F (75 deg C) temperature rating in NFPA 70.

3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
6. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
7. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
8. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered;.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1) or gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvannealed steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12).

C. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1) or directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R). The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
c. Verify that the unit is clean.
d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:

1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.

a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

C. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
d. Verify that the unit is clean.
e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:

1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.

a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.

h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

2. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
e. Determine the following by primary current injection:

1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.

f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.

i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.

3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

END OF SECTION 262816

# SECTION 262827 – COMPANY SWITCHES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Shop drawing submittals shall include data sheet identifying the following:
   1. Circuit breaker type and overcurrent protection rating
   2. SCCR rating
   3. Line connection lug sizes
   4. Load connection type, quantity, and size
   5. Enclosure construction and dimensions
   6. Listings and compliance data
   7. Mounting and installation details

C. Manufacturer shall furnish with the submittal and with each unit delivered an equipment manual that details the installation, operation and maintenance instructions for the specified unit.

### 1.3 LABELING

A. Switches shall be provided with permanently attached circuit identification labels as specified herein and indicated on drawings.

### 1.4 TESTING

A. All equipment shall be thoroughly tested in Manufacturer's shop prior to shipment to insure mechanical and electrical integrity.

B. Equipment shall be subjected to a factory dielectric strength (hipot) test in accordance with IEEE 4 or IEC 60950 to verify integrity of insulation and proper conductor clearances.

### 1.5 WARRANTY

A. Contractor shall assure that this equipment is provided free of defects in materials and workmanship and shall provide a warranty under this contract for a period of one (1) year from the date of final acceptance by the Owner.

B. During the warranty period, repair or replacement of defective materials and/or repair of faulty workmanship shall be provided, at no cost to the Owner, within ten (10) days of written notice of the defect(s).

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Switch manufacturer shall have been continuously engaged in the production of theatrical wiring devices for at least ten (10) years.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with NECA's "Standard of Installation."

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Electronic Theatre Controls (ETC), 3031 Pleasant View Road, Middleton, WI 53562
      a. Contact: Sylvia Sinclair
      b. Email: Sylvia.sinclair@etcconnect.com
      c. Phone: (800) 688-4116
      d. Fax: (608) 836-1736
   2. ESL Power Systems, Inc.
      a. Contact: John Chaney
      b. Email: jchaney@eslpwr.com
      c. Phone: (800) 922-4188
   3. SSRC, 2172-A River Road, Greer, SC 29650
      a. Contact: Aaron Clark
      b. Email: aclark@ssrconline.com
      c. Phone: (864) 848-9770
      d. Fax: (864) 848-3746
   4. Stagecraft Industries, Inc.
      a. Contact: Ted Ross
      b. Email: tedr@stagecraftindustries.com
      c. Phone: (503) 286-1600
   5. Union Connector Co. Inc.
      a. Contact: Andy Ratcliffe
      b. Email: ar@akt3.com
      c. Phone: (804)767-8730
      d. Fax: (703)247-1922

## 2.2 CONSTRUCTION

A. Enclosure:
   1. NEMA Type 1 dead-front panelboard enclosure, unless otherwise specified or required to meet environmental conditions of installed location.

2. Enclosure shall consist of matte black, powder-coated finish, minimum 14 gauge steel, with following maximum dimensions:

| Amps | Height | Width | Depth |
|---|---|---|---|
| 60A | 36” | 24” | 10” |
| 100A | 46” | 24” | 10” |
| 400A | 48” | 24” | 10” |

3. Enclosure shall contain minimum (4) mounting tabs for surface mounting. Refer to drawings for vibration control requirements and other mounting details.
4. Enclosure shall contain hinged door to provide access to load bus lugs within the connection chamber. Door shall be secured with panel latches that can be padlocked. Opening of this door shall result in shunt-trip of the circuit breaker.
5. Bottom of enclosure shall contain hinged flap or grommeted slot for load cable access. For exterior applications with NEMA 3R enclosures, this access shall be protected with rubber sweeps.
6. Top panel shall be blank to permit Contractor connection of line service conduit or wireway.

B. Electrical:
1. Main circuit breaker shall be UL listed molded case type, rated for 100% current load as scheduled on drawings, and shall have a shunt-trip mechanism with micro-switch at connection chamber access door. Breaker shall have a current interrupt rating of 65,000 AIC at 240 volts or as scheduled on drawings.
2. Circuit breaker or actuator handle shall be prominently accessible on the enclosure front panel. A locking bar or tabs shall be installed to permit padlock lockout of the circuit breaker in the ‘On’ or ‘Off’ position.
3. Line service connection shall be to lugs on bus/breaker, sized for feeders indicated on drawings.
4. Ground lug shall be bonded to enclosure.
5. Indicator lights shall be provided to indicate load voltage presence on each phase.
6. Cam-Style Load Connections, for company switches through 400A rating:
   a. Company Switch shall be equipped with six (6) single pole cam-style quarter turn locking connectors mounted to bottom of panel, color coded to match phase/neutral/ground conductors. Arrange connectors as follows:

| Connected to: | Phase 1 (Black) | Phase 2 (Red) | Phase 3 (Blue) | Neutral (White) | Neutral (White) | Ground (Green) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Type: | Female | Female | Female | Female | Female | Female |

   b. Each connector shall be rated for 400 amps at 600 volts continuous duty, and shall be listed to UL 1691. Approved manufacturer and series shall include:
      1) Cooper Interconnect Cam-Lok E1016 series
      2) Leviton Cam-Type 16 series
      3) Hubbell Kellums HBLFR series
   c. Each connector shall have a spring-action snap cover to protect conductor from contact or debris when not in use.
   d. Comply with NEC 300.20 as applicable where connector bodies penetrate panel enclosure.

e. Comply with NEC 520.53 labeling requirement for sequential connect/disconnect of single pole feeder cabling.

7. Bare Wire Load Connections:
   a. The bus bar for each phase, neutral, and ground shall be equipped with dual screw-style lugs to permit termination of bare copper feeder conductors sized from #4 to 4/0 per lug. All lugs shall accept one hex key size for tightening/loosening of lug screws.
      1) Exception: Switches rated at 60-100A may be equipped with single lugs per bus bar, sized for #4 to 2/0 per lug.
   b. Provide internal strain relief bar to prevent tensioning on cable terminations. Provide 5/16”-18 minimum eyebolt secured to enclosure bottom panel (or to adjacent structure beneath panel), for tie-off of feeder cabling below enclosure. Furnish 60” length of braided nylon or poly rope, choked to eyebolt.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches.

B. Mount individual wall-mounted switches with main breakers at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Install plumb and level, following Manufacturer’s written instructions.

C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.\

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare for acceptance testing as follows:
   1. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
   2. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
   3. Verify rating of installed fuses.
   4. Inspect proper installation of type, size, quantity, and arrangement of mounting or anchorage devices complying with manufacturer's certification.

B. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.

C. Perform megohmmeter testing of feeder cabling as outlined in Specification 260100, Tests and Adjustments.

D. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

3.4 CLEANING

A. On completion of installation, vacuum dirt and debris from interiors; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

B. Inspect exposed surfaces and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 263827

# SECTION 262913.03 - MANUAL AND MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manual motor controllers.
2. Enclosed full-voltage magnetic motor controllers.
3. Combination full-voltage magnetic motor controllers.
4. Enclosures.
5. Accessories.
6. Identification.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CPT: Control power transformer.

B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.

D. NC: Normally closed.

E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

G. SCPD: Short-circuit protective device.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of magnetic controller.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
4. Include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

C. Product Schedule: List the following for each enclosed controller:

1. Each installed magnetic controller type.
2. NRTL listing.
3. Factory-installed accessories.
4. Nameplate legends.
5. SCCR of integrated unit.
6. For each combination magnetic controller include features, characteristics, ratings, and factory setting of the SCPD and OCPD.

    a. Listing document proving Type 2 coordination.

7. For each series-rated combination state the listed integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of SCPD and OCPDs by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For magnetic controllers to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

    a. Routine maintenance requirements for magnetic controllers and installed components.
    b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
    c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.

d. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
e. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.

B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 50 W per controller.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Ambient Environment Ratings: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than23 deg F (minus 5 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).

2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m) for electromagnetic and manual devices.
3. The effect of solar radiation is not significant.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label magnetic motor controllers to comply with UL 508 and UL 60947-4-1.

C. NEMA Compliance: Fabricate motor controllers to comply with ICS 2.

### 2.2 MANUAL MOTOR CONTROLLERS

A. Motor-Starting Switches (MSS): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. General Electric Company.
   b. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
   c. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

2. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
3. Configuration: Nonreversing.
4. Flush or Surface mounting as indicated on drawings.
5. Red pilot light.

B. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers (FHPMC): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. General Electric Company.
   b. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
   c. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
4. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2, bimetallic class as schedule on Drawings.
5. Pilot Light: Red.

C. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers (IHPMC): "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. General Electric Company.
   b. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
   c. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
4. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2, bimetallic class as scheduled on Drawings.

## 2.3 ENCLOSED FULL-VOLTAGE MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Across-the-line start, electrically held, for nominal system voltage of 600-V ac and less.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. General Electric Company.
   b. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
   c. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.

C. Configuration: Nonreversing.

D. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors when indicated.

1. Operating Voltage: Manufacturer's standard, unless indicated.

E. Control Power:

1. For on-board control power, obtain from line circuit or from integral CPT. The CPT shall have capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.

   a. Spare CPT Capacity as Indicated on Drawings: 50 VA.

F. Overload Relays:

1. Solid-State Overload Relay:

   a. Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
   b. Sensors in each phase.

c. Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
d. Class II ground-fault protection shall comply with UL 1053 to interrupt low-level ground faults. The ground-fault detection system shall include circuitry that will prevent the motor controller from tripping when the fault current exceeds the interrupting capacity of the controller. Equip with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting, and a trip indicator.

G. Digital communication module, using RS-485 Modbus, RTU protocol, 4-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port to transmit the following to the LAN:

1. Instantaneous rms current each phase, and 3-phase average.
2. Voltage: L-L for each phase, L-L 3-phase average, L-N each phase and L-N 3-phase average - rms.
3. Active Energy (kWh): 3-phase total.
4. Power Factor: Each phase and 3-phase total.

## 2.4 COMBINATION FULL-VOLTAGE MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLER

A. Description: Factory-assembled, combination full-voltage magnetic motor controller consisting of the controller described in this article, indicated disconnecting means, SCPD and OCPD, in a single enclosure.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. General Electric Company.
   b. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
   c. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.

C. Configuration: Nonreversing.

D. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors when indicated.

1. Operating Voltage: Manufacturer's standard, unless indicated.

E. Control Power:

1. For on-board control power, obtain from line circuit or from integral CPT. The CPT shall have capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.

   a. Spare CPT Capacity as Indicated on Drawings: 50 VA.

F. Overload Relays:

1. Solid-State Overload Relay:

a. Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
b. Sensors in each phase.
c. Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.

G. Class II ground-fault protection shall comply with UL 1053 to interrupt low-level ground faults. The ground-fault detection system shall include circuitry that will prevent the motor controller from tripping when the fault current exceeds the interrupting capacity of the controller. Equip with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting, and a trip indicator.

H. Digital communication module, using RS-485 Modbus, RTU protocol, 4-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port to transmit the following to the LAN:

1. Instantaneous rms current each phase, and 3-phase average.
2. Voltage: L-L for each phase, L-L 3-phase average, L-N each phase and L-N 3-phase average - rms.
3. Active Energy (kWh): 3-phase total.
4. Power Factor: Each phase and 3-phase total.

I. Fusible Disconnecting Means:

1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

J. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:

1. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

K. MCP Disconnecting Means:

1. UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
2. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

L. MCCB Disconnecting Means:

1. UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse-time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
2. Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
3. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

## 2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. Comply with NEMA 250, type designations as indicated on Drawings, complying with environmental conditions at installed location.

B. The construction of the enclosures shall comply with NEMA ICS 6.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Standard-duty, except as needed to match enclosure type. Heavy-duty or oil-tight where indicated in the controller schedule.

    a. Push Buttons: As indicated in the controller schedule.
    b. Pilot Lights: As indicated in the controller schedule.

2. Elapsed Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; resettable.
3. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus two percent accuracy. Where indicated, provide selector switches with an off position.

B. Motor protection relays shall be with solid-state sensing circuit and isolated output contacts for hardwired connections.

1. Phase-failure.
2. Phase-reversal, with bicolor LED to indicate normal and fault conditions. Automatic reset when phase reversal is corrected.
3. Under/overvoltage, operate when the circuit voltage reaches a preset value, and drop out when the operating voltage drops to a level below the preset value. Include adjustable time-delay setting.

C. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in Type 3R enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.

D. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.

## 2.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Controller Nameplates: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as described in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems," for each compartment, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

B. Arc-Flash Warning Labels:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch (89-by-127-mm) self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch (89-by-127-mm) self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

    a. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:

        1) Location designation.
        2) Nominal voltage.
        3) Flash protection boundary.
        4) Hazard risk category.
        5) Incident energy.
        6) Working distance.
        7) Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

    b. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for motor controllers, their relationship with the motors, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install magnetic controllers on walls with tops at uniform height indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install controllers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

E. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

F. Setting of Overload Relays: Select and set overloads on the basis of full-load current rating as shown on motor nameplate. Adjust setting value for special motors as required by NFPA 70 for motors that are high-torque, high-efficiency, and so on.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" Chapter.
2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
d. Verify the unit is clean.
e. Inspect contactors:

1) Verify mechanical operation.
2) Verify contact gap, wipe, alignment, and pressure are according to manufacturer's published data.

f. Motor-Running Protection:

1) Verify overload element rating is correct for its application.
2) If motor-running protection is provided by fuses, verify correct fuse rating.

g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:

1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values with values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or

NETA ATS Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

h. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.

3. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.1. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.5. Values of insulation resistance less than those of this table or manufacturer's recommendations shall be investigated and corrected.
b. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
c. Test motor protection devices according to manufacturer's published data.
d. Test circuit breakers as follows:

1) Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
2) For adjustable circuit breakers, adjust protective device settings according to the coordination study. Comply with coordination study recommendations.

e. Perform operational tests by initiating control devices.

4. Infrared Inspection: Perform the survey during periods of maximum possible loading. Remove all necessary covers prior to the inspection.

a. Comply with the recommendations of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" Chapter, "Infrared Inspection" Article.
b. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared inspection of the electrical power connections of each motor controller.
c. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each motor controller 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
d. Report of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies the testing technician and equipment used, and lists the following results:

1) Description of equipment to be tested.
2) Discrepancies.
3) Temperature difference between the area of concern and the reference area.
4) Probable cause of temperature difference.
5) Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and equipment.
6) Load conditions at time of inspection.
7) Photographs and thermograms of the deficient area.
8) Recommended action.

e. Equipment: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1 deg C at 30 deg C. The equipment shall detect emitted radiation and convert detected radiation to a visual signal.
f. Act on inspection results and recommended action, and considering the recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are corrected.

C. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 SYSTEM FUNCTION TESTS

A. System function tests shall prove the correct interaction of sensing, processing, and action devices. Perform system function tests after field quality control tests have been completed and all components have passed specified tests.

1. Develop test parameters and perform tests for the purpose of evaluating performance of integral components and their functioning as a complete unit within design requirements and manufacturer's published data.
2. Verify the correct operation of interlock safety devices for fail-safe functions in addition to design function.
3. Verify the correct operation of sensing devices, alarms, and indicating devices.

B. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass the system function tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchgear.

END OF SECTION 262913.03

# 5SECTION 262923 - VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CE: Conformite Europeene (European Compliance).

B. CPT: Control power transformer.

C. DDC: Direct digital control.

D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. NC: Normally closed.

G. NO: Normally open.

H. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

I. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.

J. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

K. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.

1. Include dimensions and finishes for VFCs.

2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.

1. Include mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Required working clearances and required area above and around VFCs.
2. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
3. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
4. Indicate field measurements.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Product Certificates: For each VFC from manufacturer.

D. Harmonic Analysis Report: Provide Project-specific calculations and manufacturer's statement of compliance with IEEE 519.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and motor-circuit protector trip settings.
b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.

c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
e. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.
4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish one spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
5. Power Contacts: Furnish three spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers and connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company.
2. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General Requirements for VFCs:

1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Variable Frequency Controller standard and optional features shall be tested and shall Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508A.

B. Application: Constant torque and variable torque.

C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.

1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors, as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."
2. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
3. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.

E. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

F. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 10 percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.

4. Minimum Efficiency: 97 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: equal to upstream, distribution equipment.
7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F (0 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
8. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
9. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).
10. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.
11. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
12. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
13. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent.
14. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.
15. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

G. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 16 bit, isolated from all power circuits.

H. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.

1. Signal: Electrical.

I. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
4. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.

J. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
2. Surge Suppression: Field-mounted surge suppressors complying with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," UL 1449 SPD, Type 2.
3. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
4. Under- and overvoltage trips.
5. Inverter overcurrent trips.
6. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
7. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
8. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
9. Loss-of-phase protection.

10. Reverse-phase protection.
11. Short-circuit protection.
12. Motor-overtemperature fault.

K. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.

L. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.

M. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.

N. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.

O. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.

P. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: UL 489, molded-case switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
2. Auxiliary Contacts: NO or NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
3. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
4. NC alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

## 2.3 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:

1. Power on.
2. Run.
3. Overvoltage.
4. Line fault.
5. Overcurrent.
6. External fault.

B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.

1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.

2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.

    a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.

C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:

1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
2. Running log of total power versus time.
3. Total run time.
4. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.

D. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:

1. Output frequency (Hz).
2. Motor speed (rpm).
3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
4. Motor current (amperes).
5. Motor torque (percent).
6. Fault or alarming status (code).
7. PID feedback signal (percent).
8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
9. Set point frequency (Hz).
10. Motor output voltage (V ac).

E. Control Signal Interfaces:

1. Electric Input Signal Interface:

    a. A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 4- to 20-mA dc.
    b. A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.

2. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the DDC system for HVAC or other control systems:

    a. 0- to 10-V dc.
    b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
    c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
    d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.

3. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (4- to 20-mA dc), which can be configured for any of the following:

    a. Output frequency (Hz).
    b. Output current (load).
    c. DC-link voltage (V dc).

d. Motor torque (percent).
e. Motor speed (rpm).
f. Set point frequency (Hz).

4. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:

a. Motor running.
b. Set point speed reached.
c. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
d. PID high- or low-speed limits reached.

F. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.

1. Number of Loops: One.

G. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software shall interface with DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports. VFC settings shall be retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.

1. Hardwired Points:

a. Monitoring: On-off status.
b. Control: On-off operation.

2. Communication Interface: Comply with ASHRAE 135. Communication shall interface with DDC system for HVAC to remotely control and monitor lighting from a DDC system for HVAC operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

## 2.4 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING

A. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the manufacturer's harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit total demand (harmonic current) distortion and total harmonic voltage demand at the defined point of common coupling to meet IEEE 519 recommendations.

B. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

## 2.5 BYPASS SYSTEMS

A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.

B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor, and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.

C. Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, NEMA-rated contactor.
2. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, NEMA-rated contactors.
3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

D. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) type.

1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.

    a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.

5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.

    a. CPT Spare Capacity: 50 VA.

6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.

    a. Solid-State Overload Relays:

        1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
        2) Sensors in each phase.
        3) Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
        4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
        5) Analog communication module.

    b. NC isolated overload alarm contact.

c. External overload, reset push button.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.

B. Plenum Rating: UL 1995; NRTL certification label on enclosure, clearly identifying VFC as "Plenum Rated."

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.

1. Push Buttons: Covered.
2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
3. Selector Switches: Rotary type.
4. Stop and Lockout Push-Button Station: Momentary-break, push-button station with a factory-applied hasp arranged so padlock can be used to lock push button in depressed position with control circuit open.

B. Reversible NC/NO bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).

C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.

D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.

1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.

E. Supplemental Digital Meters:

1. Elapsed-time meter.
2. Kilowatt meter.
3. Kilowatt-hour meter.

F. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.

G. Cooling Fan and Exhaust System: For NEMA 250, Type 1; UL 508 component recognized: Supply fan, with composite intake and exhaust grills and filters; 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT.

H. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.

I. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks; wired.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.

1. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor.
2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.

B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.

D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall.

For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

B. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install VFCs on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

C. Roof-Mounting Controllers: Install VFC on roofs with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished roof surface unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to curbs or mounting on freestanding, lightweight, structural-steel channels bolted to curbs. Seal roof penetrations after raceways are installed.

1. Curbs and roof penetrations are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
2. Structural-steel channels are specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

E. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.

F. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Section 262813 "Fuses."

G. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors are installed.

H. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.

I. Comply with NECA 1.

## 3.3 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices and facility's central-control system. Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control devices where applicable.

1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor-overload protectors.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
3. Test continuity of each circuit.
4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Architect before starting the motor(s).
5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
6. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.

B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.

C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify [**Architect**] [**Construction Manager**] [**Owner**] before increasing settings.

D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.

E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

## 3.8 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.

B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

## 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 262923

# SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged diesel engine generators for emergency use with the following features:

1. Diesel engine.
2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
3. Control and monitoring.
4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
6. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
7. Vibration isolation devices.
8. Finishes.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches, including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPS: Emergency power supply.

B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation, from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.

3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour (liters per hour) at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute (cubic meters per minute) at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F (35, 27, 21, and 10 deg C). Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer, and testing agency.

B. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
c. Training plan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
2. Cummins Power Generation.
3. Kohler Power Systems.
4. MTU Onsite Energy Corporation.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators along with Automatic Transfer Switches and other accessories and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer for one source responsibility.

## 2.2 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a Class 2 according to NFPA 110.

D. Service Load: as indicated on drawings

E. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.

F. Frequency: 60 Hz

G. Voltage: 480 V ac.

H. Phase: Three-phase, four-wire wye.

I. Induction Method: Turbocharged.

J. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

K. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.

1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.

L. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

M. Engine Generator Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.

2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.

N. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:

1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.

    a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.

2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.
3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content, measured line to neutral, shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.

9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.

    a. Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.

10. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

## 2.3 DIESEL ENGINE

A. Fuel: ASTM D975 diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and with UL 499.

E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant, from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant-system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.

    a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
    b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.

G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

H. Starting System: 12 V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle, with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
4. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F (10 deg C) regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:

    a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C) to 140 deg F (plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.

e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1 wall-mounted cabinet.

## 2.4 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

A. Comply with NFPA 30.

B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.

C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.

D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.

E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.

F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:

1. Tank level indicator.
2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills, plus fuel for the hours of continuous operation for indicated EPSS class.
3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.5 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic-Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

B. Manual-Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts engine generator. The off position of same switch initiates

engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

C. Provide minimum run time control set for 30 minutes, with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.

D. Comply with UL 508A.

E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

1. Wall-Mounting Cabinet Construction: Rigid, self-supporting steel unit complying with NEMA ICS 6.

F. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Analog control panel with dedicated gages and indicator lights for the instruments and alarms indicated below.
3. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.

a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
d. Running-time meter.
e. AC voltmeter, for each phase connected to a phase selector switch.
f. AC ammeter, for each phase connected to a phase selector switch.
g. AC frequency meter.
h. Generator-voltage-adjusting rheostat.

4. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:

a. Cranking control equipment.
b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
d. Overcrank alarm.
e. Overcrank shutdown device.
f. Low water temperature alarm.
g. High engine temperature pre-alarm.
h. High engine temperature.
i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
j. Overspeed alarm.
k. Overspeed shutdown device.
l. Low-fuel main tank.

1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for the duration required for the indicated EPSS class.

m. Coolant low-level alarm.
n. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
o. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
p. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
q. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
r. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
s. EPS load indicator.
t. Battery high-voltage alarm.
u. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
v. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
w. Battery low-voltage alarm.
x. Lamp test.
y. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
z. Remote manual-stop shutdown device.
aa. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
bb. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
cc. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.

G. Connection to Datalink:

1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to BMS system. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

H. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

I. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.

J. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

## 2.6 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

C. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

D. Generator Circuit Breaker: Insulated-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

E. Generator Disconnect Switch: Molded-case type, 100 percent rated.

1. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
2. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip switch when signaled by generator protector or by other protective devices.

F. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:

1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for load shed functions.
2. Under single- or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the engine generator.

4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.

G. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.

1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.
2. Trip generator protective device on ground fault.

## 2.7 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide six-lead alternator.

E. Range: Provide extended range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

G. Enclosure: Dripproof.

H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.

1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
4. Maintain frequency within 10percent and stabilize at rated frequency within five seconds.

J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

## 2.8 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

B. Description: Prefabricated or pre-engineered, galvanized-steel-clad, integral structural-steel-framed, walk-in enclosure, erected on concrete foundation.

C. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads of up to 100 mph (160 km/h).

D. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.

E. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.

F. Lighting: Provide weather-resistant LED lighting with 50-fc (550-lx) average maintained.

G. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.

H. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.

I. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
3. Ventilation: Provide temperature-controlled exhaust fan interlocked to prevent operation when engine is running.

J. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.

1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.

K. Convenience Outlets: Factory-wired GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

## 2.9 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of

sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.

B. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient, vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment-mounting and -leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch (25 mm).

C. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for steel piping.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.

E. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

## 2.10 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.

B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
3. Full-load run.

4. Maximum power.
5. Voltage regulation.
6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.
9. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
10. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two working days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.

B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

C. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
3. Install packaged engine generator with restrained spring isolators having a minimum deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) on 4-inch- (100-mm-) high concrete base. Secure enclosure to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases.

D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

E. Cooling System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints for cooling water piping between engine generator and heat exchanger. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

1. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces. Provide a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) of clearance from combustibles.
2. Insulate cooling-system piping and components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

F. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.

1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
2. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
3. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
4. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) of clearance from combustibles.

G. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40 black steel pipe with welded joints.

1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
2. Drain piping valves, connectors, and installation requirements are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

H. Fuel Piping:

1. Diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
2. Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.

I. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine generator and heat exchanger with flexible connectors.

D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

E. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.

1. Additional requirements for diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."

F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.

H. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and in "Visual and Mechanical Inspection" and "Electrical and Mechanical Tests" subparagraphs below, as specified in the NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
4) Verify that the unit is clean.

b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:

1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
a) Machines 200 hp (150 kW) or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.

2) Test protective relay devices.
3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
6) Conduct performance test according to NFPA 110.
7) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.

2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
7. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
8. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
9. Noise-Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four

locations 25 feet (8 m) from edge of the generator enclosure and on the property line, and compare measured levels with required values.

C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches, and run them concurrently.

D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.

J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component, indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

K. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels, so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

## 3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 263213.13

# SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes automatic and nonautomatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

1. Bypass/isolation switches.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, annunciators, and control panels.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer-authorized service representative and testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Member company of NETA.

a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 110.

D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
2. Short-time withstand capability for 3 cycles.

G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.

I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.

Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.

K. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.

L. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.

Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.

N. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.

4. Accessible via front access.

O. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division
2. Cummins Power Generation
3. MTU Onsite Energy Corporation
4. Russelectric, Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators along with Automatic Transfer Switches and other accessories and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer for one source responsibility.

C. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

D. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
8. Ground bar.
9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

E. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.

F. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

G. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

H. Electric Nonautomatic Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.

I. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

J. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

K. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:

1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

    a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30

minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:

a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

L. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

## 2.3 GENERATOR CONNECTION CABINET

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Union Connector.
2. Eaton.

B. Manual Switching

C. Solid neutral

D. Series 16 Cam devices, 3 phase, single neutral and ground, color-coded per electrical standards. The inlet panel shall contain slots between devices to eliminate heating by hysteresis as required by the NEC.

E. Provide mechanical lugs on load side of switch on phase, neutral and ground.

F. Copper bus with dual-rated mechanical lugs sized for incoming cables.

G. Dead front panel design. No live components shall be accessible when the door is closed.

H. Hinged main access door hinged with a padlock hasp. Locking access door for portable cable entry. Internally locked cable entrance door shall allow portable cable to enter generator connection cabinet for the purpose of terminating to the inlets.

I. Galvanized steel, powder coated, wall mounted, Type 3R enclosure with grey powder coat.

J. Interlocked Molded Case Circuit Breakers

K. Interrupting rating shall be higher than available fault current as determined by the submitted coordination study.

L. UL listed

## 2.15 TRANSFER SWITCH ACESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:

    a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
    b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuit for testing and maintenance purposes.
    c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.
    d. Transition: Provide closed-transition operation when transferring from main transfer switch to bypass/isolation switch on the same power source.
    e. Transition: Provide open-transition operation when transferring between power sources.
    f. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
    g. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
    h. Manual Control: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by one person in no more than two operations in 15 seconds or less. Operating handles shall be externally operated.
    i. Automatic and Nonautomatic Control: Automatic transfer-switch controller shall also control the bypass/isolation switch.

j. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
k. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.

4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

## 2.16 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency and legally required systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:

a. Overvoltage.
b. Undervoltage.
c. Loss of supply voltage.
d. Reduction of supply voltage.
e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
f. Temperature rise.
g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
h. Overload.
i. Contact opening.
j. Endurance.
k. Short circuit.
l. Short-time current capability.
m. Receptacle withstand capability.
n. Insulating base and supports damage.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.

1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

3. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.

B. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

D. Comply with NECA 1.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.

D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

G. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

H. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions and Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems." Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.

I. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

    a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
    b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
    d. Verify that the unit is clean.
    e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
    f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
    g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
    h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:

        1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
        2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.

    i. Perform manual transfer operation.
    j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
    k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
    l. Inspect control power transformers.

        1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
        2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
        3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.

3. Electrical Tests:

    a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
    b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
    c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
    d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
    e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
    f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
    g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:

        1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
        2) Engine start sequence.
        3) Time delay on transfer.
        4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
        5) Automatic transfer operation.
        6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
        7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
        8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.

4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

    a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
    b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    d. Perform manual transfer operation.

5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.

    a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
    b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    c. Verify time-delay settings.
    d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
    f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
    g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.

6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

    a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.

C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

D. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

G. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

## 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.

B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.

C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

# SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes lightning protection system for ordinary structures.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be used in the installation.
2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and terminations, including concealment requirements.
4. Include roof attachment details, coordinated with roof installation.
5. Calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of metal bodies.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Lightning protection system Shop Drawings, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Lightning protection cabling attachments to roofing systems and accessories.
2. Lightning protection strike termination device attachment to roofing systems, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
3. Lightning protection system components penetrating roofing and moisture protection systems and system components, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of roof adhesive for attaching the roof-mounted air terminal assemblies, approved by the roofing-material manufacturer.

D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For lightning protection system to include in maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Dimensioned site plan showing dimensioned route of the ground loop conductor and the ground rod locations. Comply with requirements of Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
b. A system testing and inspection record, listing the results of inspections and ground resistance tests, as recommended by NFPA 780, Annex D.

B. Completion Certificate:

1. LPI Master Certificate.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: LPI Master Installer.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ERICO; a brand of nVent.
2. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co. Inc.
3. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
4. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NFPA Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with NFPA 780 requirements for Class I buildings.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

A. Air Terminals:

1. Copper unless otherwise indicated.

2. 5/8-inch (16-mm) diameter by 12 inches (305 mm) long.
3. Rounded tip.
4. Threaded base support.

B. Class 1 Main Conductors:

1. Stranded Copper: 57,400 circular mils in diameter.
2. .

C. Class II Main Conductors:

1. Stranded Copper: 115,000 circular mils in diameter.

D. Secondary Conductors:

1. Stranded Copper: 26,240 circular mils in diameter.

E. Ground Loop Conductor: Stranded copper**.**

F. Ground Rods:

1. Material: Copper-clad steel.
2. Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
3. Rods shall be not less than 120 inches (3050 mm) long.

G. Conductor Splices and Connectors: Compression fittings that are installed with hydraulically operated tools, or exothermic welds, approved for use with the class type.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to NFPA 780.

B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less than 90 degrees and 8 inches (203 mm) in radius and narrow loops.

C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building. Comply with requirements for concealed systems in NFPA 780.

1. Roof penetrations required for down conductors and connections to structural-steel framework shall be made using listed through-roof fitting and connector assemblies with solid rods and appropriate roof flashings. Use materials approved by the roofing manufacturer for the purpose. Conform to the methods and materials required at roofing penetrations of the lightning protection components to ensure compatibility with the roofing specifications and warranty.
2. Install conduit where necessary to comply with conductor concealment requirements.

3. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Ground Ring Electrode: The conductor shall be not less than the main-size lightning conductor.

## 3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.

B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed and labeled for the purpose: high compression.

C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

## 3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.

B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
2. Perform inspections to obtain an LPI certification.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

END OF SECTION 264113

# SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Cylinder.
2. Downlight.
3. Linear industrial.
4. Recessed, linear.
5. Strip light.
6. Surface mount, linear.
7. Suspended, linear.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

    a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

D. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment and or luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.

e. Access panels.
f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

D. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Sample warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
c. CCT and CRI.

C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

### 2.2 CYLINDER.

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

### 2.3 DOWNLIGHT.

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.4 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL.

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Housing and Heat Sink Rating:
1. IP 54.
2. IP 66.
3. CSA C22.2 No 137.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

D. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. With integral mounting provisions.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

2.5 RECESSED, LINEAR.

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Finish as selected by architect.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

D. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

2.6 STRIP LIGHT.

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Finish as selected by Archtiect.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

D. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.7 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR.

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Finish as selected by Architect.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

D. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.8 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

A. See drawings for Light fixture schedule and fixture specifications.

B. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Finish as selected by Architect.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

D. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.9 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

## 2.10 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.11 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:

a. Two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
b. Pendant mount with 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.

c. Hook mount.

2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

## 3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

# SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting units.
2. Exit signs.
3. Luminaire supports.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.

D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.

1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
3. Battery and charger for light units.
4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires and signs, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires and signs shall be certified by manufacturer.
b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

D. Product Schedule, see luminaire schedule on drawings:

1. For emergency lighting units.
2. For exit signs.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

a. Other luminaires.
b. Air outlets and inlets.
c. Speakers.
d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
e. Sprinklers.
f. Access panels.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: Five years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.

C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.

D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.

E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.

F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.

G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Luminaires: See luminaire Schedule on drawings.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit: See luminaire Schedule on drawings.
1. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
2. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
3. Two LED lamp heads.
4. Internal emergency power unit.

D. EXIT SIGNS- See luminaire Schedule on drawings.
1. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Internally Lighted Signs- See luminaire Schedule on drawing:
1. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Finish as selected by Architect.

E. Conduit: Electrical metallic tubing, minimum 3/4 inch (21 mm) in diameter.

## 2.4 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service:
   1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

   1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, signs, or luminaires that are defective.

      a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

   2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265213

# SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.

B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.

C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.

D. Standard: See "Pole."

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.

1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
3. Anchor bolts.
4. Manufactured pole foundations.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of poles and pole accessories.

4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of installation.
5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.

C. Samples: For each exposed lighting pole, standard, and luminaire-supporting device and for each color and texture specified.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements according to AASHTO LTS-6-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

C. Material Test Reports:

1. For each foundation component, by a qualified testing agency.
2. For each pole, by a qualified testing agency.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty.

G. Soil test reports

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include pole inspection and repair procedures.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole repair materials.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for foundation testing.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B660.

B. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

C. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of pole(s) that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within a specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs from special warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Corrosion Resistance: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design pole foundation and pole power system.

B. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.

C. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

D. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2200 N) distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

E. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.

F. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 100 mph (45 m/s).

    a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
    c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.

G. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

H. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 ALUMINUM POLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Lighting, an Eaton business.
2. Hubbell Incorporated (Lighting Group - Kim).
3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
4. LSI Industries.

B. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T6, with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: as indicated on drawings.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

C. Mast Arms: type as scheduled on drawings or as recommended by manufacturer, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.

D. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.

1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adapter, then bolted together with galvanized-steel bolts.
2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.

E. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

F. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Bolted 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

G. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as to substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

H. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

I. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 POLE ACCESSORIES

A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

## 2.4 MOUNTING HARDWARE

A. Anchor Bolts: Manufactured to ASTM F1554, Grade 55, with a minimum yield strength of 55,000 psi (380 000 kPa).

1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C.
2. Threading: Uniform National Coarse, Class 2A.

B. Nuts: ASTM A563, Grade A, Heavy-Hex.

1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C.
2. Two nuts provided per anchor bolt, shipped with nuts pre-assembled to the anchor bolts.

C. Washers: ASTM F436, Type 1.

1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C.
2. Two washer(s) provided per anchor bolt.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.

C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 POLE FOUNDATION

A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Pre-Cast Foundations: Factory fabricated, with structural steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied template, uniformly spaced.

3.3 POLE INSTALLATION

A. Alignment: Align poles as indicated.

B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.

1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: 60 inches (1520 mm).
2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet (3 m).
3. Trees: 15 feet (5 m) from tree trunk.

C. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
4. Use a short piece of 1/2 -inch (13-mm) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.

D. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.

E. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

## 3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum using insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

## 3.5 GROUNDING

A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Inspect poles for nicks, mars, dents, scratches, and other damage.
2. System function tests.

END OF SECTION 265613

# SECTION 265619 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards" for panelboard-based lighting control.
3. Section 265613 "Lighting Poles and Standards" for poles and standards used to support exterior lighting equipment.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color rendering index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-80.

    a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
7. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Submit BUG Rating per LEED v4
2. Submit luminaire calculations per LEED v4
3. Submit sustainable design data as part of lighting submittals per LEED v4

D. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. See luminaire schedule on drawings.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.

1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Structural members to which luminaires will be attached.
3. Underground utilities and structures.

4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
5. Building features.
6. Vertical and horizontal information.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Sample warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

D. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS-See luminaire schedule on drawings

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.

E. In-line Fusing: Separate in-line fuse for each luminaire.

F. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.

G. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 LUMINAIRE TYPES

A. Area and Site-See fixture schedule on drawings:

B. Bollard-See fixture schedule on drawings:

C. Canopy-See fixture schedule on drawings:

## 2.3 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes as scheduled

E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: as scheduled.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Provide all applicable labels. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## 2.4 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
3. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.

a. Color: Color as selected by Architect.

## 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, roofs, and canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the owner and Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.

E. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.

G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.

I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.

J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

## 3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:

A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

## 3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Illumination Tests:

1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):

   a. IES LM-5.
   b. IES LM-50.
   c. IES LM-52.
   d. IES LM-64.
   e. IES LM-72.

2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

## 3.9 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265619

# SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.
4. Grounding rods.
5. Grounding labeling.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.

B. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.

C. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.

D. Service Provider: The operator of a service that provides telecommunications transmission delivered over access provider facilities.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:

1. Ground rods.
2. Ground and roof rings.
3. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a designer RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

## 2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
2. Panduit Corp.
3. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.

D. Cable Tray Grounding Jumper:

1. Not smaller than No. 6 AWG and not longer than 12 inches (300 mm). If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with two holes and long barrel for two crimps. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.
2. Not smaller than No. 10 AWG and not longer than 12 inches (300 mm). If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with one hole and standard barrel for one crimp. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one- or two-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.

E. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils (14.2 sq. mm), 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

## 2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Hubbell Incorporated (Construction and Energy Group).
3. Panduit Corp.

4. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

D. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.

E. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm) centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

F. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
3. Panduit Corp.

B. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with TIA-607-B.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch (100-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with TIA-607-B.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.

3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-607-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

## 2.5 GROUND RODS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
2. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) in diameter.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification products in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.

B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with TIA-607-B.

## 3.3 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.

C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

D. Conductor Support:

1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches (900 mm).

E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch (900-mm) intervals.
4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch (21-mm) PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.

a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

## 3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.

## 3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

## 3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pretwist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.

D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.

E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot (1 sq. mm/linear meter) of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.

F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install top-mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.

G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

H. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.

I. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.

J. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

K. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.

L. Equipment Room Signal Reference Grid: Provide a low-impedance path between telecommunications cabinets, equipment racks, and the reference grid, using No. 6 AWG bonding conductors.

1. Install the conductors in grid pattern on 4-foot (1200-mm) centers, allowing bonding of one pedestal from each access floor tile.
2. Bond the TGB of the equipment room to the reference grid at two or more locations.
3. Bond all conduits and piping entering the equipment room to the TGB at the perimeter of the room.

M. Towers and Antennas:

1. Ground Ring: Buried at least 30 inches (760 mm) below grade and at least 24 inches (610 mm) from the base of the tower or mounting.
2. Bond each tower base and metallic frame of a dish to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches (460 mm) below grade.
3. Bond the ground ring and antenna grounds to the equipment room TMGB or TGB, buried at least 30 inches (760 mm) below grade.
4. Bond metallic fences within 6 feet (1.8 m) of towers and antennas to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches (460 mm) below grade.
5. Special Requirements for Roof-Mounted Towers:

    a. Roof Ring: Meet requirements for the ground ring except the conductors shall comply with requirements in Section 264113 "Lightning Protection for Structures."
    b. Bond tower base footings steel, the TGB in the equipment room, and antenna support guys to the roof ring.
    c. Connect roof ring to the perimeter conductors of the lightning protection system.

6. Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:

a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the TGB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.

## 3.7 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

B. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

C. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) extends above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

D. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect grounding conductors to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

## 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

    a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.

    a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB and in each TGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.

D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 270526

# SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
4. Hooks.
5. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.

B. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.

C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

D. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product data for the following:

1. Surface pathways
2. Wireways and fittings.
3. Tele-power poles.
4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
3. Underground ducts, piping, and structures in location of underground enclosures and handholes.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Provide seismic bracing for all pathway racks, enclosures, cabinets, equipment racks, and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Description: Metal raceway of circular cross section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
2. Republic Conduit.
3. Southwire Company.
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
5. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.

C. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-D.

D. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

E. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.

F. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

G. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated GRC.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

H. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
2. Fittings for EMT:

a. Material: Steel.
b. Type: Set screw.

3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Description: Nonmetallic raceway of circular section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
2. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
3. Arnco Corporation.
4. Cantex Inc.
5. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
6. CertainTeed Corporation.
7. Condux International, Inc.
8. Dura-Line.
9. Electri-Flex Company.
10. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).

11. Kraloy Fittings.
12. Lamson & Sessions.
13. Niedax Inc.
14. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

C. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-D.

D. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

E. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.

F. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.

G. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.

H. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

I. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

## 2.3 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway with a circular cross section, approved for plenum installation unless otherwise indicated.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire.
2. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
3. Dura-Line.
4. Endot Industries Inc.
5. IPEX USA LLC.

C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with TIA-569-D.

## 2.4 HOOKS

A. Description: Prefabricated sheet metal cable supports for telecommunications cable.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. MonoSystems, Inc.
2. Panduit Corp.
3. Wiremold / Legrand.

C. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with TIA-569-D.

E. Galvanized steel.

F. J shape.

## 2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Description: Enclosures for communications.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
2. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
3. FSR Inc.
4. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
5. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
6. Hubbell Incorporated (Power Systems Group - Quazite).
7. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
8. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
9. Wiremold / Legrand.

C. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:

1. Comply with TIA-569-D.
2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for use in wet locations.
3. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
4. Device Box Dimensions: 4-11/16 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
5. Gangable boxes are prohibited.

D. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

E. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

F. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.

1. Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

J. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

K. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 4, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures:

a. Material: Plastic.
b. Finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.

3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

L. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, concrete encased.
4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Pathway locations include the following:

    a. Loading dock.
    b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    c. Mechanical rooms.
    d. Gymnasiums

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
6. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway.
7. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway Plenum-type, communications-cable pathway EMT.
8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel units in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size for copper and aluminum cables, and 1 inch (25 mm) for optical-fiber cables.

D. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use set-screw or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

F. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.

G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the following standards for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:

1. NECA 1.
2. NECA/BICSI 568.
3. TIA-569-D.
4. NECA 101
5. NECA 102.
6. NECA 105.
7. NECA 111.

B. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling" for sleeves and sleeve seals for communications.

F. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.

G. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.

H. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

I. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.

J. Conceal rigid conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

K. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

L. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings. Comply with requirements for expansion joints specified in this article.
3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.

4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from nonmetallic conduit and fittings to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, and fittings before rising above floor.

M. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.

Q. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus one additional quarter-turn.

R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure, to assure a continuous ground path.

S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch (50-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.

T. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Secure pull wire, so it cannot fall into conduit. Cap pathways designated as spare alongside pathways in use.

U. Surface Pathways:

1. Install surface pathway for surface telecommunications outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
2. Install surface pathway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

V. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. 3/4-Inch (21-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).

2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

W. Install pathway-sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway-sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

X. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals, so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

Y. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.

Z. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.

5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

AA. Hooks:

1. Size to allow a minimum of 25 percent future capacity without exceeding design capacity limits.
2. Shall be supported by dedicated support wires. Do not use ceiling grid support wire or support rods.
3. Hook spacing shall allow no more than 6 inches (150 mm) of slack. The lowest point of the cables shall be no less than 6 inches (150 mm) adjacent to ceilings, mechanical ductwork and fittings, luminaires, power conduits, power and telecommunications outlets, and other electrical and communications equipment.
4. Space hooks no more than 5 feet (1.5 m) o.c.
5. Provide a hook at each change in direction.

BB. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

CC. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

DD. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.

EE. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

FF. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

GG. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

HH. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe of less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to

provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete around conduit for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits, but a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.

D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

E. Field cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

## 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

## 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 270528

# SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. CALPICO, Inc.
c. HOLDRITE; Reliance Worldwide Company.
d. Metraflex Company (The).
e. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
f. Proco Products, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. HOLDRITE; Reliance Worldwide Company.

## 2.4 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
2. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for sealants.>

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit

Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

    a. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

## 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts

against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

## 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 270544

# SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backboards.
2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
3. Power strips.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and accessories.
2. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
3. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling" for optical-fiber data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
4. Section 271333 "Communications Coaxial Backbone Cabling" for coaxial data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
5. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
6. Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for coaxial data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
7. Section 271533 "Communications Coaxial Horizontal Cabling" for coaxial data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.

B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

C. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.

D. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.

E. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.

F. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Installer 2, Copper or Fiber, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.2 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm).

B. Backboard Paint: Light-colored interior latex paint.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
2. FSR Inc.
3. Hubbell Incorporated.
4. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
5. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - Wiring Device-Kellems).
6. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
7. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
8. Wiremold / Legrand.

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets shall be listed and labeled for intended location and use.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, Type FD, ferrous alloy, with gasketed cover.

E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

H. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

I. Device Box Dimensions: 4-11/16 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).

J. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 4 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

K. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.4 POWER STRIPS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 271116 "Communications Racks, Frames, and Enclosures."

B. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting, with detachable flanges.
3. Height: 1 RU..
4. Housing: Metal.
5. Six, 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
6. Front-facing receptacles.
7. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
8. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
9. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
10. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
11. Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m) line cord.
12. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
13. Surge Protection: UL 1449, Type 3.

    a. Maximum Surge Current, Line to Neutral: 27 kA.
    b. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground.
    c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating for line to neutral and line to ground shall be 600 V and 500 V. for neutral to ground.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" for layout of communications equipment spaces.

C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" for installation of equipment in communications equipment spaces.

D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in tracks and in room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.

1. Meet jointly with systems providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize configurations and space requirements of communications equipment.
4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.

F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

G. Backboards:

1. Install from 6 inches (150 mm) to 8 feet, 6 inches (2588 mm) above finished floor. If plywood is fire rated, ensure that fire-rating stamp is visible after installation.
2. Paint all sides of backboard with two coats of paint, leaving fire rating stamp visible.
3. Comply with requirements for backboard installation in BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D.

## 3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual," "Firestopping Practices" Ch.

END OF SECTION 271100

# SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. 19-inch equipment racks.
2. 19-inch freestanding equipment cabinets.
3. Open Rack equipment racks.
4. Power strips.
5. Grounding.
6. Labeling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271110 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings" for backboards and accessories.
2. Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Telecommunications Equipment" for TMGBs and TGBs.
3. Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and cable tray accessories.
4. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
5. Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling" for optical-fiber data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
6. Section 271333 "Communications Coaxial Backbone Cabling" for coaxial data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
7. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for copper data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
8. Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for optical-fiber data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
9. Section 271533 "Communications Coaxial Horizontal Cabling" for coaxial data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
10. Section 271611 "Communications Hybrid Cabling" for combined copper and optical fiber data cables associated with system panels and devices.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.

B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

C. LAN: Local area network.

D. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.

E. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.

F. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.

G. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, certifications, standards compliance, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications racks, frames, and enclosures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Grounding: Indicate location of TGB and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall-mounting brackets.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Installer 2, Copper or Fiber, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform on-site inspection.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

B. UL listed.

C. RoHS compliant.

D. Compliant with requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard.

## 2.2 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

## 2.3 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

A. Description: Two- post racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, 19-inch (482.6-mm) equipment mounting with an opening of 17.72-inches (450-mm) between rails.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. B-line, an Eaton business.
2. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
3. Legrand NA (Middle Atlantic Products Division).
4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
5. Panduit Corp.
6. Siemon Co. (The).

C. General Requirements:

1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Material: Sheet steel.
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
4. Color: Black.

D. Floor-Mounted Racks:

1. Overall Height: 84 inches (2133.6 mm).
2. Upright Depth: 3 inches (76.2 mm).
3. Two-Post Load Rating: 400 lb (181 kg).
4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 45.
    a. Numbering: Every rack units, on interior of rack.
5. Threads: Universal square.
6. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip.
7. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
8. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
9. Self-leveling.

E. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

## 2.4 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting.
3. Six 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R receptacles.
4. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
5. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
6. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
7. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
8. Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m) line cord.
9. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
10. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 kA per phase.
11. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all three modes shall be not more than 330 V.

## 2.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
3. Panduit Corp.

C. Rack and Cabinet TGBs: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-606-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted TGB: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal TGB: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (482.6- or 584.2-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical TGB: 72 or 36 inches (1828.8 or 914.4 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to rack.

2.6 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.

C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.

D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.

1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.

F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.2 GROUNDING

A. Comply with NECA/BICSI 607.

B. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Bonding, Grounding (Earthing) and Electrical Protection" Ch.

C. Locate TGB to minimize length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance behind TGB. Connect TGB with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from TGB to suitable electrical building ground. Connect rack TGB to near TGB or the TMGB.

1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to patch panel, and bond patch panel to TGB or TMGB.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Coordinate system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

D. Labels shall be machine printed. Type shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in height.

END OF SECTION 271116

# SECTION 271313 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER BACKBONE CABLING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. High-count Category 3 twisted pair cable.
2. High-count Category 5e twisted pair cable.
3. Category 6a twisted pair cable.
4. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs, jacks, patch panels, and cross-connects.
5. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.
6. Cabling identification.
7. Source quality control requirements for twisted pair cable.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

C. F/FTP: Overall foil screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.

D. FTP: Shielded twisted pair.

E. F/UTP: Overall foil screened cable with unscreened twisted pair.

F. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

G. Jack: Also commonly called an "outlet," it is the fixed, female connector.

H. LAN: Local area network.

I. Plug: Also commonly called a "connector," it is the removable, male telecommunications connector.

J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

K. Screen: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.

L. S/FTP: Overall braid screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.

M. Shield: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.

N. S/UTP: Overall braid screened cable with unscreened twisted pairs.

O. UTP: Unscreened (unshielded) twisted pair.

## 1.4 COPPER BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Copper backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:

    a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    b. Telecommunications pathways.
    c. Telecommunications system access points.
    d. Telecommunications grounding system
    e. Cross-connects.
    f. Patch panels.
    g. Patch cords.

5. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On USB media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
2. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
3. Plugs: Ten of each type.
4. Jacks: Ten of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and cabling administration Drawings by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.

3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

## 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.12 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

## 1.13 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

D. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

## 2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway.
2. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
3. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR complying with UL 1666 and ICEA S-103-701.
4. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMP or Type CMR in listed plenum or riser communications raceway.
5. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMP or Type CMR in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. RoHS compliant.

## 2.3 HIGH-COUNT CATEGORY 5e TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: 25-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
6. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
8. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.
9. West Penn Wire.

C. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded balanced twisted pairs (UTP).

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Gray thermoplastic.

## 2.4 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
6. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
8. Superior Essex Inc.
9. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.

C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded balanced twisted pairs (UTP).

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Blue thermoplastic.

## 2.5 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
2. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
3. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
4. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
5. CommScope, Inc.
6. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
7. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
8. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
9. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
10. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
11. Panduit Corp.
12. Siemon Co. (The).
13. Superior Essex Inc.
14. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.

C. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware:

1. Twisted pair cable hardware shall meet the performance requirements of Category 5e Category 6a.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
4. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as twisted pair cable, from single source.

D. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 5e. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

E. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

F. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Features:

a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
c. Replaceable connectors.
d. 24 or 48 ports.

2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

G. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; eight position (8P8C); color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

H. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

I. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm)lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

J. Faceplates:

1. Two and Four port, vertical single gang faceplates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
2. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."

3. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical-fiber, and coaxial work-area cords.

    a. Flush-mount jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

K. Legend:
1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

## 2.6 CABLING IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

## 2.7 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.

C. Factory test cables according to TIA-568-C.2.

D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

## 3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, attics, and gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install cables parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, cabinets, and racks specified in Section 271100 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."

B. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

C. Comply with Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."

D. Comply with Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."

E. Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF COPPER BACKBONE CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, and TIA-568-C.2.
2. Comply with BICSI's "Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM)," Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend twisted pair cabling, not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways, power lines, and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

## 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BISCI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

## 3.6 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

## 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

1. Administration Class: 1.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.

D. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.

F. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

## 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

F. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications

Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.

G. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

H. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 271313

# SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Single-mode optical fiber cable.
2. Optical fiber cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
3. Cabling identification products.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

C. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

### 1.4 OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Optical fiber backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.

2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:

    a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    b. Telecommunications pathways.
    c. Telecommunications system access points.
    d. Telecommunications grounding system.
    e. Cross-connects.
    f. Patch panels.
    g. Patch cords.

5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

C. Optical fiber cable testing plan.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For [**RCDD,** ] [**Installer,** ]installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For optical fiber cable, splices, and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Patch-Panel Units: [**One**] <**Insert number**> of each type.
2. Plugs: [**Ten**] <**Insert number**> of each type.
3. Jacks: [**Ten**] <**Insert number**> of each type.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings[ **and Cabling Administration Drawings**][**, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development**] by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of [**Technician**] [**Level 2 Installer**], who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an [**RCDD**] [**Technician**].

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use [**optical fiber flashlight**] [**or**] [**optical loss test set**] <**Insert test instrument**>.
2. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.

## 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.12 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

## 1.13 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for [**two**] <**Insert number**> years.

B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within [**two**] <**Insert number**> years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide [**30**] <**Insert number**> days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: [**25**] <**Insert value**> or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: [**50**] [**450**] <**Insert value**> or less.

C. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

D. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

### 2.2 9/125 MICROMETER, SINGLE-MODE, INDOOR-OUTDOOR OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS2)

A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, [**6**] [**8**] [**12**] fibers, single loose tube, [**unarmored**] [**armored**] optical fiber cable.

B. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, [**24**] [**36**] [**48**] [**72**] [**96**] [**144**] fibers, stranded loose tube, [**armored**] optical fiber cable.

C. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

D. Standards:

1. Comply with TIA-492CAAB for detailed specifications.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with ICEA S-104-696 for mechanical properties.

E. Armored cable shall be [**steel**] [**aluminum**] armored type.

F. Maximum Attenuation: [**0.5**] <**Insert number**> dB/km at 1310 nm; [**0.5**] <**Insert number**> dB/km at 1550 nm.

G. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: [**Yellow**] <**Insert color**>.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

H. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
2. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
3. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit.
4. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262; Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway; or Type OFN, Type OFNG, Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit.
5. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: [**Type OFNR**] [**or**] [**Type OFNP**], complying with UL 1666.
6. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP or Type OFNR in listed riser or plenum communications raceway.
7. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit installed per NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
8. Plenum Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCP, complying with NFPA 262.
9. Plenum Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCP or Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
10. Plenum Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCP, Type OFNP, Type OFCR, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit installed per NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
11. Riser Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCR[ **or Type OFCP**]; complying with UL 1666[ **and ICEA S-103-701**].
12. Riser Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCP, Type OFNP, or Type OFCR or Type OFNP in listed riser or plenum communications raceway.
13. Riser Rated, Armored (Conductive): Type OFCP, Type OFNP, Type OFCR, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit.

## 2.3 9/125 MICROMETER SINGLE-MODE, INSIDE PLANT OPTICAL FIBER CABLE (OS2)

A. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, [**6**] [**8**] [**12**] fibers, single loose tube, optical fiber cable.

B. Description: Single mode, 9/125-micrometer, [**24**] [**36**] [**48**] [**72**] [**96**] [**144**] fibers, stranded loose tube, optical fiber cable.

C. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

D. Standards:

1. Comply with TIA-492CAAB for detailed specifications.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.

E. Maximum Attenuation: [**0.5**] <**Insert number**> dB/km at 1310 nm; [**0.5**] <**Insert number**> dB/km at 1550 nm.

F. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: [**Yellow**] <**Insert color**>.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-D.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

G. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
2. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway.
3. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit.
4. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262; Type OFNP in listed plenum communications raceway; or Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit.
5. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: [**Type OFNR**] [**or**] [**Type OFNP**], complying with UL 1666.
6. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP or Type OFNR in listed riser or plenum communications raceway.
7. Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, or Type OFNR in metallic conduit installed per NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

## 2.4 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products>.

B. Standards:

1. Comply with Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard (FOCIS) specifications of the TIA-604 series.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.3.

C. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

D. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.

E. Connector Type: Type LC complying with TIA-604-10-B, connectors.

F. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

G. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; quick-connect, simplex and duplex; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single optical fiber cable.
2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
4. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.

## 2.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

C. Factory test pre-terminated optical fiber cable assemblies according to TIA-526-14-B and TIA-568-C.3.

D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

## 3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.

2. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 301, and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. General Requirements for Optical Fiber Cabling Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1 and TIA-568-C.3.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all cables; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
6. Bundle, lace, and train cable to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
9. In the communications equipment room, provide a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.

3. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

## 3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Grounding (Earthing), Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

1. Administration Class: Class 1.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.

D. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, [**entrance pathways and cables,**] terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.

F. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA 606-B, for the following:

1. Flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA-526-14-B, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than those calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.1.

F. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

G. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

H. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 271323

# SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Category 6a twisted pair cable.
2. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs and jacks.
3. Cable management system.
4. Cabling identification products.
5. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.
6. Source quality control requirements for twisted pair cable.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 270513 "Conductors and Cables for Communications Systems" for data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

C. FTP: Shielded twisted pair.

D. F/FTP: Overall foil screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.

E. F/UTP: Overall foil screened cable with unscreened twisted pair.

F. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

G. LAN: Local area network.

H. Jack: Also commonly called an "outlet," it is the fixed, female connector.

I. Plug: Also commonly called a "connector," it is the removable, male telecommunications connector.

J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

K. Screen: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.

L. Shield: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.

M. S/FTP: Overall braid screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.

N. S/UTP: Overall braid screened cable with unscreened twisted pairs.

O. UTP: Unscreened (unshielded) twisted pair.

## 1.4 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Horizontal cable cabling system shall provide interconnections between Distributor A, Distributor B, or Distributor C, and the equipment outlet, otherwise known as "Cabling Subsystem 1," in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.

1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.

B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m), and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.

C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.

3. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment, including the following:

    a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
    b. Telecommunications pathways.
    c. Telecommunications system access points.
    d. Telecommunications grounding system.
    e. Telecommunications conductor drop locations.
    f. Typical telecommunications details.
    g. Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems.

C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On USB media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Connecting Blocks: One of each type.
2. Faceplates: One of each type.
3. Jacks: Ten of each type.
4. Patch-Panel Units: One of each type.
5. Plugs: Ten of each type.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, cabling administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

## 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.12 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

## 1.13 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

### 2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway or Type CMP in listed cable routing assembly.
2. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
3. Communications, Non-plenum: Type CMP or Type CMR in listed plenum or riser communications raceway.
4. Communications, Non-plenum: Type CMP or Type CMR in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. RoHS compliant.

### 2.3 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
6. Hitachi Cable America Inc.
7. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
8. Superior Essex Inc.
9. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.

C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.

D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>

E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP) Shielded twisted pairs (FTP).

F. Cable Rating: Plenum.

G. Jacket: Blue, Red thermoplastic.

## 2.4 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
2. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
3. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
6. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
7. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
8. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
9. Panduit Corp.
10. Siemon Co. (The).
11. Superior Essex Inc.
12. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope Inc. brand.

C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:

1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as twisted pair cable, from single source.

E. Connecting Blocks:

1. 110-style IDC for Category 5e.
2. 110-style IDC for Category 6a.
3. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Features:

a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
c. Replaceable connectors.
d. 24 or 48 ports.

2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:

1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:

1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

K. Faceplate:

1. Two and Four port, vertical single gang faceplates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
2. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
3. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.

    a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.
3. UL 2043.

## 2.5 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database and graphic capabilities.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. iTRACS Corporation.
2. Telsoft Solutions.

C. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.

D. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.

1. AutoCAD drawing software shall be used as drawing and schematic plans software.

E. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:

1. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
2. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

## 2.7 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.

C. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.

D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, attics, and gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, cabinets, and racks specified in Section 271100 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."

B. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

C. Comply with Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."

D. Comply with Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."

E. Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, and TIA-568-C.2.
2. Comply with BICSI's "Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM), Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
6. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
7. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to equipment outlets:

    a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
    b. Locate consolidation points for twisted-pair cables at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.

8. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.

9. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
10. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual , Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
11. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
12. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
13. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
14. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend twisted pair cabling, not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways, power lines, and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

   a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
   b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
   c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BISCI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

## 3.5 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

B. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

1. Administration Class: Class 1.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.

C. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

D. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.

E. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

    a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
    b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

F. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.

G. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

H. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.

B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

END OF SECTION 271513

# 274116 INTEGRATED AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS

## PART I – GENERAL

### 1.1 GENERAL NOTES

A. Audiovisual System Designer herein shall be referred to as architect.

### 1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract including instructions to Bidders, General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections apply to the work of this Section.

B. ANSI-Infocomm standards (10:2013) Audiovisual Systems Performance Verification

C. AVIXA S601.01:201X Energy Management for Audiovisual Systems (revises ANSI/INFOCOMM 4:2012)

D. AVIXA F501.01:2015 (Formerly INFOCOMM F501.01:2015) Cable Labeling for Audiovisual Systems

E. AVIXA V20I.0I:20IX Projected Image System Contrast Ratio (replaces 3M: 2011)

F. AVIXA A102.01.2017 (Formerly A103.01:2017 Audio Coverage Uniformity in Listener Area

G. ANSI/AVIXA D401.01:20IX Standard Guide for Audiovisual Systems Design and Coordination Processes (replace 2M: 2010)

H. AVIXA F502.01:201X Rack Building for Audiovisual Systems

I. AVIXA V202.01:2016 Display Image Size for 2D Content in Audiovisual Systems

J. AES 67-2015

K. 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AHJ: authorities having jurisdiction

B. AS DIRECTED means as directed by the Architect, or his representative.

C. CONCEALED means embedded in masonry or other construction, installed behind wall furring or within drywall partitions, or installed within hung ceilings.

D. ENGINEER: Where referenced in this Division, “Engineer” is the Design Professional for the Work under this Division, and is a Consultant to, and an authorized representative of, the Architect, as defined in the General and/or Supplementary Conditions. When used in this Division, it means increased involvement by, and obligations to, the Design Professional, in addition to involvement by, and obligations to, the “Architect.”

E. EXISTING TO REMAIN: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.

F. FURNISH: “To supply and deliver to the project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembling, installing, and similar operations.”

G. FURNISHED BY OWNER (or OWNER-FURNISHED) or FURNISHED BY OTHERS: “An item furnished by the Owner or under other Divisions or Contracts, and installed under the requirements of this Division, complete, and ready for the intended use, including all items and services incidental to the Work necessary for proper installation and operation. Include the installation under the warranty required by this Division.

H. INSTALL: “To perform all operations at the project site, including, but not limited to, and as required: unloading, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, testing, commissioning, starting up and similar operations, complete, and ready for the intended use.”

I. PROVIDE: “To furnish and install complete, and ready for the intended use.”

J. PLENUM: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.

K. SUBMIT means submit to Architect for review.

L. SUBSTITUTION means a product meeting all requirements and specifications and having been approved by the engineer to replace another product specifically identified herein.

M. SYSTEM BLOCK DIAGRAM: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.

N. WHERE REQUIRED means where required by code or authorities having jurisdiction.

O. ZONE means a region or area set off as discreet, independent or distinct from surrounding or adjoining areas.

1.4 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHER

A. Power, and all conduits for both power and low voltage, shall be furnished and installed by Electrical Contractor. All back boxes to be furnished and installed by Electrical Contractor as indicated in the Schedule of Responsibility on drawing TA0.01 unless otherwise noted.

B. Coordination with the Electrical Contractor is required to assure correct audiovisual conduit routing, audiovisual back box locations, and technical power circuit locations as specified in Division 26 – Electrical.

C. Coordination with the Low Voltage Contractor is required to assure pathways for low voltage and fiber optic cabling for audiovisual signals meet or exceed those required for telecommunications, security, data, and other signal type cabling as provided by the Low Voltage contractor. Coordination between the Electrical Contractor, Low Voltage Contractor, and the Audiovisual Contractor shall also be required to provided technical grounding for all dedicated AV racks rooms. Grounding and pathways shall be as specified in Division 27 - Communications.

D. Requirements and materials that apply to the work of others related to audiovisual systems are listed here to define and establish audiovisual system requirements. Coordinate the work of this section with the work of other sections as required in order to maintain satisfactory progress of the work of other sections. Refer to schedule of responsibility on TA0.01, UON.

1.5 WORK OF THIS SECTION

A. This section covers all audiovisual (AV) systems as described for Garrett College CEPAC in Mchenry, Maryland. The objective is to provide professional systems, installed, acceptance tested, and ready to use.

B. This written specification and the large format TA series drawings shall be collectively referred to herein as the Contract Documents. These documents including the drawings, specifications, and equipment lists are for reference and are not to be viewed as complete or correct. The AV Contractor is ultimately responsible for completing the systems to the owner’s intent, and for bringing any design changes, errors, or modifications to the owner’s attention before purchasing any equipment or beginning any installation. System features that show up in one part may not be shown in others. In the case of conflict between written specifications and drawings, Contractor must seek written clarification from the Owner. In the event the Contractor fails to obtain such written clarification, the interpretation of the Owner shall

prevail. Where conflict exists with other specifications concerning such work or materials, this specification takes precedence unless otherwise approved in writing by the owner.

C. This section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to furnish and install the Audiovisual Systems for Garrett College CEPAC in Mchenry, Maryland as show on the drawings, including but not limited to the following:
1. Projectors and Projector Screens
2. Computers for soft conferencing and wireless sharing applications
3. Control System Touch Panels
4. Custom Racks installed in Millwork
5. Ceiling Speakers
6. Ceiling Microphones
7. Table Microphones
8. Audio Digital Signal Processing
9. Video Conferencing Codecs and Cameras
10. PTZ Cameras for Performance Recording
11. Audio Amplification
12. IP Controlled Power Distribution
13. Network Switches for AV Networking and Control
14. Video Switching and Control System Processors and related transmitters/receivers
15. Custom Faceplates
16. Equipment Racks and Rack Accessories

D. Equipment purchased through this contract, whether stored on the job site in a construction manager designated space or in the AV contractors own storage facility, shall require the AV contractor to furnish a certificate of insurance that verifies that the contractor shall be responsible for replacement of equipment due to theft or damages from the time of purchase by the AV Contractor till official turn-over to the owner confirmed by owner sign-off.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. All dimensions and equipment locations shall be verified in the field prior to fabrication by the Audiovisual Contractor, who shall make at least one (1) visit to the job site prior to preparation of shop drawings.

B. Coordinate conduit placement, routing, and separation with the Electrical Contractor to ensure proper installation.

C. Room numbers as shown for all rooms and tags on drawings are for reference only, For the purpose of labeling equipment, plates, wiring runs, and all other equipment to be labeled by the AV integrator the integrator shall coordinate with the Architect and owner to verify the final room numbers.

D. When working in spaces where architectural finishes are complete including but not limited to:

carpeting, finished wall surfaces, finished ceiling materials, finished millwork products, and any glass surfaces. The AV contractor is required to wear protective hand and foot coverings while working in finished spaces. Coordinate with the construction manager to confirm prior to the start of on-site work to verify where this caution and care for architectural surfaces is required. Any surface that is soiled or damaged as a result of the AV contractors work is the responsibility of the AV contractor to clean and/or repair per the Architects and Construction Managers specification at the AV Contractor's expense.

E. No claims for additional compensation shall be allowed due to the Audiovisual Contractor's misunderstanding of the work involved or lack of a thorough investigation of the job site.

1.7 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY

A. It shall be the responsibility of the Audiovisual Contractor to furnish and install equipment complete in all respects and to furnish and install any additional equipment required to fulfill the intent of the Contract Documents regardless of whether or not such items are herein specified or indicated without claim for additional payment or costs.

B. The work specified herein shall be accomplished by a single Audiovisual Contractor who has complete responsibility for the systems described. The Audiovisual Contractor is required to have five (5) years of experience with systems of similar size and scope in Higher Education and Theatrical Performance Venues.

C. The Audiovisual Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with other trades a complete and suitable installation of electrical isolation equipment to meet the intent of this specification.

D. No electrical equipment (except approved equipment) shall be located within the Acoustically Sensitive Spaces or installed on walls common to Acoustically Sensitive Spaces (Refer to Part 1 Paragraph 11). The Audiovisual Contractor shall report all discrepancies between this requirement and the Contract Documents to the Architect, Owner, and Electrical Engineer prior to installation of such equipment.

E. Upon completion of installation, the AV Contractor shall be responsible for drafting and delivering As-built drawings to the owner.

F. . The Audiovisual Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with other trades a complete and suitable installation of electrical isolation equipment to meet the intent of this specification.

G. F. General Contractor shall provide all necessary blocking and structural bracing and backing for audio and video display/monitor devices within the space.

H. G. Electrical Contractor shall provide all conduit, power receptacles, branch circuits and other scope shown of the coordinated electrical drawings based on the approved final design.

I. H. It is the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor to coordinate a pre-install meeting with the Audiovisual Contractor and the architect to ensure that the proper installation of conduit including the required sizing and separation as shown on the audiovisual drawings is provided. Failed operation and/or signal performance of audiovisual cabling infrastructure to meet audiovisual equipment requirements due to signal interference shall result in removal and reinstallation of all conduit, backboxes, and related hardware in addition to the demolition and repair of any items needed to be removed to remove and reinstall the conduit at the Electrical Contractors expense.

J. Upon completion, AV contractor shall provide all documentation to allow owner to register for A+ partner points.

K. The Audiovisual Contractor shall have a non-working project manager on site from the beginning of installation through owner approved sign-off of system installation, programming, and configuration.

L. If the contractor installs any equipment specified in the contract documents without verifying that the performance of said equipment meets the functional requirements of this written specification or the design intent as indicated in the contract documents, the contractor shall be responsible for all labor, materials, and work of other trades to remove said equipment, restock it, and furnish installation of a compliant solution in addition to any other payments to other trades to complete their scope of work. The difference in cost between the specified materials and equipment and the materials and equipment required to meet design intent shall be furnished to the architect and owner prior to substitution and replacement of any equipment or materials and shall not be provided without written consent from the architect and owner.

## 1.8 DESIGN INTENT

A. The Audiovisual Contractor shall furnish and install turnkey infrastructure and equipment for a fully functional system including but not limited to wire, cable, equipment racks, wiring devices, and listed major equipment, and all equipment as shown on the design drawings.

B. The Audiovisual Contractor shall furnish line item pricing for Infrastructure and Major Equipment List written in this specification.

## 1.9 FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. PROSCENIUM THEATER, CONTROL ROOM, AND STAGE

1. SUMMARY

a. The proscenium theater is a space intended primarily for theatrical drama productions. The space includes a stage house, gallery catwalk level in the stage house, and orchestra pit. The audience chamber is configured with audio mix position at the cross aisle with the ability to set up a tech table for rehearsal, a

control booth, and catwalk for technical access above the audience chamber.

2. AUDIO
   a. The main audio reinforcement system of the space shall be Left Right line arrays and a Center Subwoofer array configured to optimize audio in the space for the proscenium configuration of the venue. Additional loudspeakers shall be provided when needed for monitoring and front fills designed to sit on the front lip of the stage. Amplifiers for all speakers shall live in the third floor AV rack room and be connected to the digital audio network for ease of routing and management.
   b. A total of (8) wireless microphones shall have their receivers installed in the control room for use in productions speech reinforcement for presentation. These receivers shall be connected to a remote antenna within the audience chamber to pick up signal from performers on the stage and in the house.
   c. For ADA compliance an FM transmitter with receivers to accommodate 4% of the occupancy of the venue capacity shall be provided for hearing assistance. The transmitter shall live in the control booth with its antenna remotely located in the audience chamber to broadcast to the portable receivers.
   d. Stage panels shall be located in the stage house as well as the pit for interface of wired microphones and audio sources to be interfaced with the digital audio network for routing to a digital mixing console or DSP device for audio management.
   e. Various intercom interfaces shall be located around the venue and in the stage production panels to allow for 2 channels of production intercom. A power supply will allow for intercom to work at all times, and a remote station in a portable rack shall be provided for the stage manager to interface with the two channels simultaneously.
   f. Speaker patch points shall be located around the audience chamber of the venue to accommodate both multi-channel sound design for theatrical productions as well as surround audio for video playback from 5.1 surround sources.
   g. A quantity of loose powered loudspeaker shall be procured for various applications such as sound effects, fills, and production monitoring
   h. Ethernet patch points and fiber optic patch points shall be located around the house and in production panels to allow for networked digital audio devices to be connected to expand input and output capabilities in key locations around the room.
   i. These patch points shall land on patch bays found in the control room and in the third floor AV Rack Room.
   j. A DSP unit shall be used to manage streams on the audio network so that output streams to the amplifiers can be selectable from the output of the console or from AVB devices directly via the DSP unit. The intent is to have a system that may run with an operator at the digital mixing console or to manage a few sources from the control system for less sophisticated events. Owner to verify requirements for simple presentation set up to be controlled by a control interface.
   k. A portable stage manager back of house paging system shall be furnished to allow for announcements between stage manager and production personnel. This system shall override local volume control devices to allow for a distributed announcement to back of house spaces and front of house spaces. AV contractor shall provide DC power supply to meet specification required to control relays associated with

overridable volume control devices. An integrated touch panel shall be furnished to allow for loudspeakers zones to specifically selected for paging. The layout of the touch panel shall be coordinated with the owner.

3. VIDEO
   a. A permanent ceiling mounted projector shall be provided in the control room. The projector shall project through a projector window onto a truss framed fast fold projection screen mounted to a line-set.
   b. A loose projector shall also be provided for video projection mapping on the stage. The loose projector shall be furnished with additional lenses and mounting hardware so that they may be used and installed by the end user in various locations on a per production basis
   c. A video matrix frame shall be installed in the space for routing of various video sources to video display devices in the system. Sources shall include a PTZ camera, IR Camera, PCs providing video content for productions, and patchable video transmitter devices found on the stage, the stage house and the catwalks. Outputs shall include the patchable video receiver devices throughout the space, lobby display, green room display, video receiver device for a local monitor in the booth, and to any of the ethernet patch points on the frame to interface a transmitter for distributing content to receivers with displays or projectors for monitoring or production purposes.
   d. Ethernet patch points, fiber optic patch points, and SDI patch points shall be located around the house and in production panels to allow for video sources and displays to be connected to expand input and output capabilities in key locations around the room. These patch points shall land on patch bays found in the control room and in the third floor AV Rack Room.
   e. A video presentation matrix switcher shall be used to route video sources to multiple video outputs. Video Inputs Shall Include:
      1) Inputs
         a) Input #1 From IR Camera
         b) Input #2 Spare SDI Input
         c) Video Transmitter #1 (PTZ Camera)
         d) Video Transmitter #2 (Media Player)
         e) Video Transmitter #3 (Stage Left)
         f) Video Transmitter #4 (Stage Right)
         g) Video Transmitter #5 (Downstage Right)
         h) Video Transmitter #6 (Control Room)
         i) DM Patch #19
         j) DM Patch #20
         k) DM Patch #21
         l) Fiber Video Transmitter #1 (Multipurpose Room)

      Outputs
         a) Video Receiver #1 (Theater Projector)
         b) Video Receiver #2 (Lobby Display)
         c) Video Receiver #3 (Box Office Display)

d) Video Receiver #4 (Green Room Display)
e) Spare DM Output #1
f) Spare DM Output #2
g) DM Patch #22
h) DM Patch #23
i) DM Patch #24
j) Fiber Output to Multipurpose Room

4. CONTROL/NETWORK
   a. Control of all AV components in the system shall be from the AV system control processor. The control protocol for interfacing with devices shall be IP based, unless otherwise noted.
   b. This shall include the cameras, video matrix switcher, all displays permanently connected to the video switcher, and wireless microphones.
   c. A permanently installed control touch panel shall provide system control in the control booth. The programming and configuration of this panel shall be determined by the owner prior to deployment.
   d. Several patch bays shall be provided to allow manual patching and routing of audio and video signals for various production needs. The contractor shall be responsible for furnishing patch cabling of appropriate length and assembly to meet the production needs as determined by the client. Confirm the exact quantity of patch cabling to be provided with the system with end users during training.
   e. A managed network switch shall be provided for control, monitoring, digital audio routing, and providing PoE to devices as required for a complete and functional system. The switch shall have its uplink connected to the building's enterprise network and is to be coordinated with the Owner to confirm IT requirements and IP addressing of all devices. VLAN configuration should be enabled to provide a VLAN that segregates IP Control and AVB. Connection of the switch to the enterprise network shall also require integration with the clients existing Fusion reporting server.
   f. A rack mounted engineering PC shall be provided for programming all IP control able devices as required for this project.
   g. The AV contractor shall furnish a portable iOS touch screen tablet with the following list of programs at a minimum as well as any programs necessary to have control over a majority of systems necessary for a production. Coordinate with owner any additional owner furnished applications.
      1) Presonus - UC Surface
      2) Tascam SS250 Control
      3) Q-SYS Control

B. MULTIPURPOSE ROOM
   1. SUMMARY
      a. The Multipurpose room consists of three partitioned spaces that is designated for meetings and large gatherings. The meeting room will also be used for performances and other events. The Meeting room will be outfitted with various network, audio,

and video connections for flexible use of the space that will headend to a designated rack room.

2. AUDIO
   a. Each partitioned space will feature zoned audio which will consists of three zone defined by each partition. Each audio zone will feature (4) pipe mounted loudspeakers.
   b. A quantity of wireless microphones shall be provided to cover each partitioned space. The AV contractor shall provide omni directional remote antennas that must be located in the field and coordinated with architecture.
   c. For ADA compliance an IR transmitter with receivers to accommodate 4% of the occupancy of the venue capacity shall be provided for hearing assistance. The transmitter shall live in the equipment rack with its antenna remotely located in the space to broadcast to the portable receivers.
   d. Floor boxes shall be located throughout the space for interface of wired microphones and audio sources to be interfaced with the digital audio network for routing to a DSP device for audio management.
   e. A portable wireless intercom system shall be provided to allow for production communication for a per production basis.
   f. Ethernet patch points shall be located in floor boxes to allow for networked digital audio devices to be connected to expand input and output capabilities in key locations around the room.
   g. A DSP unit shall be used to manage streams on the audio network so that output streams can be managed for each partition space or used in an uncombined mode for larger presentations and productions. Owner to verify requirements for simple presentation set up to be controlled by a control interface.

3. VIDEO
   a. A pipe mounted projector shall be furnished for each partitioned space to project an image on a recessed motorized projection (184") screen.
   b. A video matrix frame shall be installed in the space for routing of various video sources to the projectors in the system. Sources shall include auxiliary HDMI inputs, and patchable video transmitter devices in floor boxes. Outputs shall include the patchable video receiver devices throughout the space, (3) projectors, and to any of the ethernet patch points on the frame to interface a transmitter for distributing content to receivers with displays or projectors for monitoring or production purposes.
   f. A video presentation matrix switcher shall be used to route video sources to multiple video outputs. Video Inputs Shall Include:
      2) Inputs
         a) Video Transmitter #1 (Floorbox Room 802)
         b) Video Transmitter #2 (Floorbox Room 803)
         c) Video Transmitter #3 (Floorbox Room 804)
         d) DM Patch #19
         e) DM Patch #20

f) DM Patch #21
g) Fiber Video Transmitter #1 (Proscenium Theater)

Outputs

k) Video Receiver #1 (Projector Room 802)
l) Video Receiver #2 (Projector Room 803)
m) Video Receiver #3 (Projector Room 804)
n) Video Receiver #4 (Green Room Display)
o) DM Patch #22
p) Fiber Output to Proscenium Theater

c.
d. These projectors shall be furnished to the owner with additional lenses and mounting hardware so that they may be used and installed by the end user in various locations on a per production basis.
e. Ethernet patch points shall be located around the space to allow for video sources and displays to be connected to expand input and output capabilities in key locations around the room. These patch points shall land on patch bays found in the AV Closet.

4. CONTROL/NETWORK
   a. Control of all AV components in the system shall be from the AV system control processor. The control protocol for interfacing with devices shall be IP based, unless otherwise noted.
   b. This shall include the projectors, video matrix switcher, projection screens, and any devices permanently connected to the video switcher, and wireless microphones.
   c. 3 permanently installed control touch panels shall provide system control in each partitioned space. The programming and configuration of this panel shall be determined by the owner prior to deployment.
   d. A larger touch panel shall be mounted in the equipment rack in the AV Closet for non-end user control of the space. The programming and configuration of this panel shall be determined by the owner prior to deployment.
   e. A rack mounted engineering PC shall be provided for programming all IP control able devices as required for this project.
   f. A network video patch bay shall be provided to allow manual patching and routing of video signals for various production needs. The contractor shall be responsible for furnishing patch cabling of appropriate length and assembly to meet the production needs as determined by the client. Confirm the exact quantity of patch cabling to be provided with the system with end users during training.
   g. A managed network switch shall be provided for control, monitoring, digital audio routing, and providing PoE to devices as required for a complete and functional system. The switch shall have its uplink connected to the building's enterprise network and is to be coordinated with the Owner to confirm IT requirements and IP addressing of all devices. VLAN configuration should be enabled to provide a VLAN that segregates IP Control and Dante.
   h. AV contractor shall coordinate the integration of the automatic window shade's control into the AV control system. Presets and other controls for shades shall

mimic what has been designed by the shade's vendor on all applicable AV touch panels.

i. The AV contractor shall furnish a portable iOS touch screen tablet with the following list of programs at a minimum as well as any programs necessary to have control over a majority of systems necessary for a production. Coordinate with owner any additional owner furnished applications.
   1) QSC - Q-SYS Control
   2) Crestron - X Panel

C. BACK OF HOUSE AND AUXILIARY SPACES

1. SUMMARY

The back of house and auxiliary spaces consists of the Lobby, Corridors, Dressing Rooms, Multipurpose Dressing Rooms, Green Room, Public Men's and Women's Restrooms, Box Office, and Coat Room.

a. LOBBY 800
   3) First Level Front of House Lobby space with access to Multipurpose Room and Proscenium Theater with audio for background and playback, and digital signage for video playback from Proscenium Theater.
   4) An audio network endpoint shall be provided for a wired or wireless microphone for presentations in the Lobby.

b. CORRIDOR 800B
   1) Front of House Corridor with access to Piano lab with audio background and playback.

c. CORRIDOR 800A
   1) First Level Front of House Corridor space with access to Multipurpose Room, Proscenium Theater, and Back of House Spaces with audio for background and playback.

d. CORRIDOR 850
   1) Back of House Corridor providing access between front of house to back of house, and between the back of house support spaces for Proscenium Theater with audio background and playback.

e. PRINCIPLE DRESSING/PRACTICE ROOM 858
   1) Back of House Dressing Space for performers with audio monitoring and intercom functionality.

f. PRINCIPLE DRESSING/PRACTICE ROOM 857
   1) Back of House Dressing Space for performers with audio monitoring and intercom functionality.

g. DRESSING/ MULTIPURPOSE ROOM 852
1) Back of House Dressing Space for performers with audio monitoring and intercom functionality.

h. DRESSING/ MULTIPURPOSE ROOM 853
1) Back of House Dressing Space for performers with audio monitoring and intercom functionality.

i. GREEN ROOM 808
1) Back of house green room for performers with audio and video monitoring of the Proscenium Theater and intercom functionality.

j. PUBLIC WOMEN'S RESTROOM 814
1) Front of House space with audio background and playback audio.

k. PUBLIC MEN'S RESTROOM 812
1) Front of House space with audio background and playback audio.

l. COAT ROOM 811
1) Front of House space with audio background and playback audio.

m. BOX OFFICE 810
1) Front of House space with audio background and playback audio.
2) AV Contractor shall also provide a monitor for displaying digital signage and owner furnished content.

D. AV ALTERNATE (#4)
1. IN-EAR MONITORING SYSTEM ALTERNATE #4
a. In-ear monitoring system to include 8 channels of wireless transmitters, 8 receivers with earphones, a portable rack, power distribution, and a utility drawer for storage of receivers and earphones.

1.10 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish shop drawings and receive approval, prior to fabrication and installation.

B. Furnish all materials and labor and any engineering services to supply a complete and professionally installed system in working order. Labor furnished shall be specialized and experienced in audiovisual system installation.

C. Furnish and install all wire and cable called out in the Contract Documents.

D. Coordinate all backbox locations with the Electrical Contractor and appropriate general trades.

E. Furnish any additional items, not specifically mentioned herein, to meet system requirements as specified, without claim for additional payment.

F. Perform initial adjustments and verification tests. Submit verification test report to the Architect and Owner five days prior to commissioning.

G. Participate in acceptance testing and perform final adjustments utilizing Audiovisual contractor furnished test equipment and project engineers.

H. Furnish and participate in user training.

I. Furnish system documentation including copies of all relevant drawings and equipment manuals in compliance with the Contract Documents.

J. Furnish maintenance services for the specified period from the date of acceptance.

K. Guarantee all new equipment, software, hardware, components, and workmanship for the specified period from the date of acceptance.

L. Refer to drawing TA0.01 Audiovisual General Notes for the Schedule of Responsibility.

M. Attend daily production meetings on site to review

N. Contractor shall be responsible for exchanges and returns of all equipment shown or described in the contract documents whether they are provided by the vendor or owner furnished.

O. Furnish to owner spares, additional parts, optional parts, specialty tools, or any miscellaneous equipment included with purchase of equipment described herein.

P. The AV Contractor is responsible for furnishing all software, configuration, and programming files to the owner required for integration upon completion of system commissioning. These files shall become property of Garrett College.

## 1.11 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-bid Submittals:

1. Contractors must pre-qualify in order to bid on this project. Contractors must provide proof of the following qualifications and certifications and evidence of experience in similar audio and/or video installations. Submit listed qualifications to Architect for review ten (10) days prior to submission of a bid. Late submittal will result in exclusion from bid.
    a. Credential for project manager, project engineer, and lead installer which must include NICET, EST, and/or CTS-I certifications.
    b. Proof of the AV Contractor’s membership in NSCA or AVIXA (Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association). Indicate current AVSP level.
    c. Proof that the AV Contractor has been continuously engaged in the installation and service of AV equipment for at least five (5) years in systems of similar size, scope, and project type.

d. Proof that the AV Contractor holds current certifications necessary to perform Graphic User Interface Programming and Configuration.
e. AV contractor shall submit copies of shop drawings/as-builts to indicate the ability to create drafts and drawings in CAD/Revit.

B. Bid Submittals:
1. Contractors shall examine all drawings and read all divisions of this specification in order to avoid omissions and duplications and to ensure a complete job. No allowances shall be made for failure to read and understand the Contract Documents. Discrepancies between drawings and the specifications or obvious omissions shall be referred to the Architect and Owner prior to the bid date. Where discrepancies occur, and pre-bid instructions have not been obtained, the Contractor agrees to abide by the Owner's decisions.
2. Bid proposals shall include all work and all equipment as specified, as well as any additional equipment and materials not listed here, to be used in assembling the system to fulfill the design intent.
3. The bid submittal shall include the following:
a. Infrastructure and Major Equipment List and installation bid.
b. Major Equipment List line item pricing.
1) Installation costs for General Equipment including hardware and labor shall be furnished.
2) Pricing shall include in-bound freight, shipping, and all delivery charges.
3) This project is Tax exempt, and this shall be reflected in the pricing for this project.
i. The AV Contractor shall provide proof that they are a Crestron Electronics Inc. Commercial A+ Partner in good standing, and hold all relevant DMC certifications for proper installation, programming, and engineering of systems herein. A minimum of a Silver Certified Crestron Programmer with the proper credentials on staff is required to bid on this project.

C. Shop Drawings Submittals:
1. Within thirty (30) days of contract award, submit four (4) copies of detailed shop drawings to the Architect and Owner for approval. All shop drawings shall be marked with the related drawing number when submitted.
2. System installation and fabrication shall not begin without written approval from the Architect and Owner.
3. Review of shop drawings shall not constitute final approval of system function. Said review does not in any way relieve the Contractor from the responsibility of furnishing material or performing work as required by the Contract Documents.
4. Failure of the Contractor to submit shop drawings in ample time for the evaluation shall not entitle the contractor to an extension of contract time, and no claim for extension by reason of such default shall be allowed.
5. At a minimum, shop drawings shall include:
a. Table of Contents

b. Itemized list of all equipment and materials to be used in assembling the system.
c. Catalog cut sheet or data sheet for each listed item.
d. One-line Signal Flow diagrams for all sound reinforcement systems, visual systems, and auxiliary systems showing point to point wiring interconnections of all equipment with wire run numbers and patch bay designations. Show all transformers, switches, relays, control circuits, and modifications to equipment. Show all equipment items which are required for realization of the functions described herein.
e. Complete lists of all wire run numbers along with the termination location of each end of each wire run.
f. Schematic diagrams for any custom circuitry and all typical connections between audio lines, patch bays, visual system lines and rack mounted equipment.
g. Drawings of all items which are to be custom fabricated or modified. Drawing shall be in scale suitable for fabrication. They shall show materials, finishes, hardware, back boxes, connectors, and panel/control markings. Submit samples of lettering/label size and typeface to be employed on custom plates, panels, and other equipment.
h. Submit samples of custom work, finishes, or other materials as required by the Architect and/or Owner to verify appearance and quality. All costs for shipping samples shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
i. Full size drawings illustrating the physical layout and labeling of patch bays.
j. Mechanical drawings of all assemblies, major and sub-assemblies, racks, cabinets, and enclosures, indicating provisions for proper cable management, power management, and thermal management.
k. Mechanical drawings showing all proposed mounting details of all major equipment (e.g. loudspeakers, cameras, projectors, video displays, projection screens), and associated rigging and interface with adjacent architecture.
l. Vibration and noise control information shall be included and coordinated with the Electrical Contractor.
m. Conduit Routing Plan, to be coordinated with electrical contractor prior to cable pull.

6. The above listed drawings shall be produced on AutoCAD 2004 min. or similar computer drafting program. Scans or photocopies of the Contract Documents are not acceptable.
7. The use of electronic files from other sources (e.g. Architect's backgrounds, Architect's drawings, vendor-supplied panel drawings) shall not absolve the Contractor of the responsibility for ensuring that the Shop Drawings represent a completely engineered coordinated system. The Contractor has final responsibility for providing systems that conform to all requirements in the Contract Documents.
8. The Contractor shall review Electrical Contractor shop drawings for all vibration and noise control equipment and systems information.
9. Proposed Touch panel Graphical User Interface (GUI) layouts shall be submitted for approval prior to the commencement of control system programming. AV Contractor must have written confirmation from the owner of approved GUI layouts prior to development of system control code.

D. Substitutions:
   1. No substitutions shall be permitted as part of the submittal process. It is the responsibility of the AV Contractor to provide all equipment as specified herein, and immediately inform the owner in writing of any equipment that is inaccessible to the AV Contractor.
   2. Any items which may incur excessive lead times and delay must be reported to the owner in writing immediately, and modification to the equipment provided as part of this specification to prevent delay as a result of excessive lead times must be approved by the owner in writing prior to AV Contractor purchase.
   3. The Owner reserves the right to substitute new products which become available subsequent to the issuance of the Contract Documents, provided that:
      a. The contractor has not yet purchased the originally specified equipment.
      b. The substitute equipment shall not materially increase the Contractor's cost.

## 1.12 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Keep the job adequately staffed at all times. Unless illness, loss of personnel, or other circumstances beyond the control of the Contractor intervene, keep the same individual charge throughout.

B. Cooperate with all appropriate parties in order to achieve well-coordinated progress with overall construction completion schedule and satisfactory results.

C. Watch for conflicts with work of other contractors on the job and execute, without fair claim for extra payment, moderate moves or changes as are necessary to accommodate other equipment or to preserve acoustic or visual performance, symmetry, and pleasing appearance.

D. Immediately report to the Owner any design or installation irregularities, particularly architectural elements that interfere with the intended coverage angles of loudspeakers, camera, or projection equipment, so that appropriate action may be taken.

E. The AV Contractor is required to have prior approval from the Construction Manager before any and all cutting, patching, and painting for proper and finished installation of the system, and repair any damage done as a result of such installation.

F. Audiovisual System work areas are to be maintained in a clean and orderly condition. Clean up and dispose of trash from all audiovisual system work areas.

## 1.13 ACOUSTICALLY SENSITIVE SPACES

A. The following areas have been designated as "Acoustically Sensitive Space:
   1. Control Rooms
   2. Electrical Equipment Spaces
   3. Mechanical Equipment Spaces

B. An acoustically sensitive space is defined as a room or space, which requires special construction consideration to meet room acoustic, acoustic isolation, and noise control or vibration control requirements.

C. All conduit runs penetrating acoustically sensitive spaces shall have both ends sealed by means of removable closed cell neoprene foam after all cables have been run to prevent sound transmission from adjacent spaces.

D. All audiovisual wiring devices in acoustically sensitive spaces shall have a gasket sealing the faceplate to the back box to prevent sound transmission from adjacent spaces.

1.14 DELIVERY AND HANDLING

A. The Audiovisual Contractor shall coordinate delivery and installation of all equipment with the Construction Manager and/or Electrical Contractor.

B. Equipment purchased through this contract, whether stored on the job site in a construction manager designated space or in the AV contractors own storage facility, shall require the AV contractor to furnish a certificate of insurance that verifies that the contractor shall be responsible for replacement of equipment due to theft or damages from the time of purchase by the AV Contractor till official turn-over to the owner confirmed by owner sign-off.

C. If required by the Construction Manager or Electrical Contractor, audiovisual equipment shall be delivered in a minimum of three (3) separate shipments that shall include:
1. Shipment #1: All items in which conduit is terminated which includes backboxes, wiring device faceplates with receptacles, projection screen cases, etc.
2. Shipment #2: All items which require structural backing such as rigging components, monitor and projector mounts, etc.
3. Shipment #3: All items that are not required until the building/area of work is secure and ready for electronic equipment. This shall include equipment racks, wiring device face plates, portable equipment, etc.

D. Audiovisual Contractor shall deliver all material to the job site suitably crated, packed, and protected and bearing the label and the nomenclature of the product(s) found in each carton or crate.

1.15 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Parts listed shall be complete and equipment furnished shall conform to manufacturer’s specifications.

B. All materials shall be new and shall conform to the applicable provisions of Underwriter’s Laboratories (ULEQ) and American Standards Association (ASA).

C. Procure and pay for all permits, licenses, and inspections, and observe any requirements stipulated therein. Conform in all trades with all local regulations and codes.

D. Comply with federal, state, and local labor regulations and applicable union regulations.

E. Installation shall conform to the latest federal, state, and local electrical safety codes of authorities having jurisdiction. Where conflict exists, the most stringent code or regulation shall apply.

1.16 GUARANTEE AND SERVICE

A. The Audiovisual system shall conform to all applicable code requirements and shall be in conformance with industry standards of operation and practice.

B. All new systems and components shall be guaranteed free of defects in materials and workmanship for a period of (18) eighteen months from the date of the AV contractor receiving written owner sign-off of acceptance and shall be repaired or replaced within forty-eight (48) hours following report of such defects by the owner.

C. Installation of relocated existing equipment shall be guaranteed free of defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of acceptance and shall be repaired or replaced within forty-eight (48) hours following report of such defects by the owner.

D. All audiovisual system software and firmware updates shall be automatically issued to and deployed for the Owner free of charge during the warranty period.

E. The Contractor shall be available on call and on eight (8) hour notice during the first month following acceptance of the system, to assist the Owner’s representatives in any problems which may arise during the initial period of operation.

F. The Contractor shall provide same day response to service requests, via 24/7 phone support.

G. If during guarantee period any component is out of service for more than seven (7) consecutive days due to unavailability of parts or service, the contractor shall furnish and install identical new component. If an identical component is not available, the contractor shall substitute equivalent equipment with written approval of the owner.

H. During the course of the guarantee period, the Contractor shall provide a minimum of three (3) service visits to the site for inspection and adjustment of equipment and programming. Contractor shall submit proposed schedule for these visits and shall notify Owner and Architect in writing at least one (1) month in advance of each visit.

1.17 INSURANCE

A. All equipment and materials shall be fully insured against loss or damage up until acceptance of the system by the Owner or until the Owner relieves the Contractor in writing of this responsibility, whichever is earlier.

PART 2 – EQUIPMENT

2.1 GENERAL

A. AV contractor is to verify all equipment listed in this specification prior to purchase with owner to confirm if any items not listed as OFE have been purchased directly through the owner to expedite arrival on site due to the construction timeline. Any equipment purchased by the owner as a result of this shall be credited back to the owner from the bid, but shall still be required to be installed by the AV Contractor per the construction documents. Failure to coordinate with the owner prior to AV Contractor purchase of equipment to confirm any equipment purchased directly by the owner shall not incur additional costs to the owner for equipment purchase, shipping, restocking fees, or related expenses to equipment purchase.

B. All materials and equipment shall be new and of the latest design or model offered for sale by the manufacturer.

C. Equipment models furnished shall operate at the required AC line voltage (i.e. 120 Volts) and frequency (i.e. 60 Hz)

D. Contractor shall furnish at minimum, quantities as indicated in the Contract Documents as required for complete installation.

E. Coordinate all color options for equipment with owner prior to purchase of equipment.

F. Audiovisual Wire and Cable:
   1. Approved manufacturers:
      a. Belden – As Noted for specific cabling runs on drawings
      b. Berk-Tek - As Noted for specific cabling runs on drawings
      c. Crestron - As Noted for specific cabling runs on drawings
      d. Extron - As Noted for specific cabling runs on drawings
      e. Kramer - As Noted for specific cabling runs on drawings
   2. All wire numbers listed in the Contract Documents are Belden unless otherwise noted.
   3. Where required, install plenum rated cable listed and labeled for plenum installation.
   4. Cabling jacket color shall adhere to owners cabling standards. Confirm cabling type and jacket color meet owner standards prior to pulling and termination. The following jacket colors are approved by the owner and should be verified prior to cable purchase and pull
      a. AV Category Cabling (Other than Crestron DM Cable) shall be Gray
      b. Speaker Wire shall be Gray
      c. DM Cabling shall be Blue

d. SDI Cabling shall be purple
e. Microphone and Line Level cable shall be Black. Where stereo audio cabling exists, the Left Chanel Shall be White and the Right Channel shall be Red.
f. Any cabling related to the Simulation Center Equipment (Where applicable) shall be Black, coordinate with Sim Vendor where required to confirm this.

5. Where cabling is run under raised access floor, provide 2" ENT nonmetallic flexible raceway between cabling source and destination with pullstring. Coordinate color with other trades so that ENT for Audiovisual cable is unique from other ENT used for other services. Verify color as part of shop submittal process.

G. Electrical Wire and Cable (including ground conductors)
1. Where conflict exists with any codes or ordinances, such codes and ordinances shall take precedence.
2. Where conflict exists with Electrical Specifications, the higher standard or more stringent requirement shall apply.

H. Wiring Devices:
1. Specifications – Duplex Receptacles – AV Technical Power
a. Grade: Specification, Hubbel IG5362 or equal
b. Type: NEMA 5-20R
c. Color: Orange
2. Specifications – Plug Mold
a. Grade: Wiremold V/G 2000 Series or equal
b. Size: As specified or required.
3. Specifications – Outlet Strips
a. Grade: UL Listed, Wiremold or equal.
b. Size: As specified or required.
4. Approved Manufacturers:
a. Waber
b. Wiremold
c. Hubbell
d. Bryant
e. GE
f. Leviton

I. Electrical Plates and Panels:
1. Specifications – Rack mount panels
a. Material: 11 gauge steel or 1/8" aluminum, minimum thickness.
b. Finish: Black or to match adjacent equipment.
c. Size: 19" wide, standard EIA mounting hole spacing, height as specified or required.
2. Specifications – Back Box Enclosures
a. Material: Code grade steel.
b. Finish: Black or Galvanized.
c. Size: As specified or required.

3. Specifications – Plug Box and Termination Panels
    a. Material: 11 gauge steel or 1/8" aluminum, minimum thickness.
    b. Finish: Black (unless otherwise noted by the Owner).
4. Any and all recessed face plates shall have a minimum ¾" reveal beyond the back box to hide the intersection between the wall material and the back box excluding standard decora-style plates. The color of all visible plates shall be coordinated with the owner.
5. Approved Manufacturers:
    a. Hoffman
    b. Whirlwind
    c. Pro-Co
    d. Wireworks.

J. Any equipment to be located outdoors or in damp locations must carry a NEMA 3R rating and be labeled accordingly.

K. Control System Programming:
1. All control system programming, installation, testing, and debugging to be performed by a manufacturer certified programmer, supplied either directly by the AV Contractor staff or via a manufacturer authorized and certified independent programmer.
2. AV Contractor shall furnish complete control system programming, including all source code and on-site coordination, testing, and debugging. This includes delivery of uncompiled source code at project close out to the owner as well as an archived project filed. Confirm any additional requirements for the delivery of code for AV control systems with owner.
3. AV Contractor shall furnish all programming of control system equipment including:
    a. Nightly system shut down.
    b. Janitorial/Off-hour maintenance control.
    c. Emergency Life/Safety override.
    d. Audiovisual source equipment selection (e.g. Audio Source, Video Source, Display Selection)
    e. Audiovisual source equipment transport control (e.g. play, pause, stop, forward, reverse).
    f. Master Volume control
4. Touch Panel interfaces shall have two (2) modes of operation:
    a. User Mode:
        1) Basic controls of all system components
        2) Streamlined user interface.
        3) Room modes available via single button presets
    b. Tech Mode:
        1) Advanced control and configuration of system components.
        2) Setup of presets
5. Pushbutton interfaces shall have the following control options:
    a. Presentation Mode:
        1) Display of presenter's computer through an audiovisual wiring device to the display

2) Presenter's microphone through the system to the loudspeakers.
3) Audio from the presenter's computer through the system to the loudspeakers.

b. Video Mode:
1) Display of a video source through the audiovisual system to the display.
2) Audio from the same video source through the audiovisual system through the system to the loudspeakers.

c. Aux Mode:
1) Display of a video source through the system via an auxiliary input.
2) Audio from the same video source though the system via and auxiliary input to the loudspeakers.

d. Source Selection Control, which provides the ability to:
1) Select any source equipment to be displayed on any video display in the system and routing audio from that source through the system to the loudspeakers.

e. Source Transport Control, which at minimum provides the ability to:
1) Play, pause, stop, forward, reverse and source equipment in the system.

f. Master Volume Control of the system.

6. In rooms where a volume control system and digital signal processor (DSP) exist, the control system shall be programmed such that:
a. The appropriate preset on the DSP system and display system shall be selected based on that activity taking place.
7. Provisions for control from a computer via web interface shall be included.
8. Control system programming shall accommodate future addition of touch panels and mobile applications for Apple iPhone/iPad and Android devices.
9. AV Contractor to schedule meeting with Owner and Architect to review control system functionality and operational requirements prior to the commencement of work.
10. AV Contractor shall coordinate with owner for Icons required for GUI configuration prior to programming.
11. AV Contractor shall verify with owner the direction of GUI configuration to match existing GUI on their campus.
12. Owner Must approve all GUI design prior to integration.
13. GUI design for spaces included in this bid package must match all spaces in the building regardless of vendor.

L. Crestron Fusion Integration:
1. Coordinate with the owner regarding current Crestron Fusion Deployment in order to gather the appropriate protocols, addressing, and systems.
2. Crestron Fusion shall be utilized to monitor and report information from the following equipment:
a. All Displays
b. All Projectors
c. All Projection Screens
d. All Crestron Presentation Switchers and Video Switchers
e. All Crestron Control Panels
f. All QSC DSP Units

g. All Hardware Video Codecs
h. All Amplifiers
i. All Loudspeakers

M. Audio DSP System:
1. Audio Inputs
a. All system audio inputs shall be programmed with limiters.
b. It shall be possible to matrix any input to any output within the system.
2. Audio Outputs:
a. All audio outputs shall be programmed with high pass filters, parametric equalization, delay, and limiters.
b. It shall be possible to matrix any input to any output within the system.

N. Equipment furnished shall be that specified herein.

O. Detailed performance specifications shall be those published by the manufacture effective on the date of this document for all equipment specified herein.

P. The AV Contractor shall verify the final location of all installed projection screens, projection lifts, and AV Contractor installed projectors in coordination with the Construction Manager, Architect, and Owner prior to the purchase of any projection equipment, and provide projector performance calculations based on this final location for throw ratio, image brightness, contrast ratio, as well as verification of image size vertically, horizontally, and diagonally to confirm proper installation. The AV contractor shall submit the information with the required shop drawings for approval by the architect and owner prior to ordering any materials or equipment for the projection systems. Failure to coordinate screen information shall not result in additional costs to the Owner.

Q. The AV Contractor shall verify all projector lenses for appropriate focal length and intended image size with the Contract Documents, based on field measurements of actual throw distance. Failure to coordinate lens information shall not result in additional costs to the Owner.

R. All miscellaneous materials including brackets, pole extensions, mounting hardware, electrical connectors, and other items to properly install the equipment specified shall be included as part of this project whether it is listed or not.

S. Existing structural mounting to be reused as conditions permit.

T. If required, Cost Reduction and/or Value Engineering shall be conducted by the Architect and Owner based on final bid amounts.

U. Programming of all managed switches shall be coordinated with owner

V. Wireless microphone frequencies to be coordinated with owner. AV contractor shall coordinate with owner before equipment purchase and verify operational frequency range of

equipment to be installed with an AV contractor furnished list of proposed operational frequencies of all wireless equipment for owner review.

2.2 MAJOR EQUIPMENT

A. Equipment List Per Room Type:
1. The major equipment list itemizes system components and their quantities to provide the systems as shown in the contract documents. It is the responsibility of the contractor to provide any additional accessories, patch cabling, interfaces, and other miscellaneous equipment not described herein to provide a working system as called out in the functional requirements section of this specification (1.7), unless otherwise noted as owner furnished or future equipment. For items not given specific quantities in these documents, it is the responsibility of the contractor to verify those quantities with the owner and architect prior to system installation.
2. The Integrator is responsible for providing a complete inventory per room of all equipment being furnished as part of this bid package to the owner. The following equipment lists are for reference and are supplemental to information and system requirements included elsewhere in the contract documents to create a complete itemized inventory to the owner which shall include manufacturer, model, serial number, build number, current firmware, and MAC address as applicable.
3. Equipment List Per Room Type:

a. Proscenium Theater, Control Room, and Rack Room

| **Manufacturer** | **Model/Part #** | **Description** | **Qty** | **Notes** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| AKG | C414 XLS MATCHED PAIR | MATCHED PAIR STEREO SET | 1 | |
| AKG | DGN99 | DYNAMIC GOOSENECK MICROPHONE | 1 | |
| AKG | C1000 S | HIGH-PERFORMANCE SMALL DIAPHRAGM CONDENSER MICROPHONE | 2 | |
| ALLOWANCE | MICROPHONE ACCESSORIES ALLOWANCE - $2000 | MICROPHONE ACCESSORIES TO BE COORDINATED WITH OWNER TEAM | 1 | |
| ALLOWANCE | PROJECTOR LENS AND MOUNTING HARDWARE ALLOWANCE LOOSE | PROJECTOR LENS AND MOUNTING HARDWARE ALLOWANCE FOR PROJECTION MAPPING | 1 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PROJECTOR - $14,000 | IN PROSCENIUM THEATER | | |
| APPLE | IMAC PRO | SPECIFICATION FOR PC SHALL BE COORDIANTED WITH OWNER | 1 | |
| APPLE | IPAD | SPECIFICATION FOR IPAD SHALL BE COORDIANTED WITH OWNER, IPAD SHALL BE FURNISHED WITH RUGGED CASE | 1 | |
| BELDEN | AX103114 | DM PATCH PANEL | 1 | |
| CHIEF | VCTU | XL UNIVERSAL TOOLESS PROJ MOUNT | 1 | |
| CHIEF | MONTOUR K1 | | 1 | |
| CHIEF | CMA700 | CMA CEILING PLATE WITH ADJUSTABLE COLUMN | 1 | |
| CLEAR-COM | MS-702 | "2 CH. HEADSET/SPEAKER MAIN STATION: ENCORE TWO-CHANNEL HEADSET/SPEAKER MAIN STATION. BUILT-IN 1-AMP (2-AMP PEAK) POWER SUPPLY, 1RU RACK MOUNT. THREE XLR-3 MALE CONNECTORS FOR EACH PARTYLINE A AND B, ONE XLR-3 FEMALE FOR PROGRAM AUDIO IN AND ONE XLR-3 MALE FOR STAGE ANNOUNCE OUT ON THE REAR PANEL. JACK FOR HOT MIC OUT." | 1 | |
| CLEAR-COM | RM-701 | 2 CH. REMOTE STATION RACK MOUNT: ENCORE TWO- | 1 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | CHANNEL 1RU REMOTE STATION RACK MOUNT WITH INTERNAL SPEAKER AND PORTS FOR GOOSENECK MICROPHONE AND/OR HEADSET. MUST BE USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH A POWER SUPPLY SUCH AS A PS-702 OR MS-702. | | |
| CLEAR-COM | CZ11513 | 4-UP DX210 SYSTEM W/ CC-15 HEADSETS: BS210 LICENSE-FREE BASE STATION W/2 ANTENNAS; 115-230 VAC POWER SUPPLY; 115 VAC POWER CORD, 4 BP210 BELTPACKS WITH; 8 BAT41 BATTERIES AND 4 POUCHES; 5 CC-15-MD4 SINGLE EAR NOISE CANCELING HEADSETS; AC40A BATTERY CHARGER; 115-230 VAC POWER SUPPLY, POWER CORD, MANUAL. | 1 | |
| CLEAR-COM | KB-702GM | "2 CH. FLUSH-MOUNT HEADSET/SPEAKER GM MIC: ENCORE TWO-CHANNEL SELECTABLE FLUSH-MOUNT HEADSET/SPEAKER STATION, GOOSENECK MICROPHONE JACK AND VOX. MOUNTS IN FOUR-GANG BOX, | 2 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | CONSOLE, OR V-BOX ACCESSORY ENCLOSURE 21.6CM/8.25"" X 11.4CM/4.5"". INCLUDES A FOUR-PIN MALE HEADSET CONNECTOR." | | |
| CLEAR-COM | CZ11517 | BP210 BELTPACK WITHOUT HEADSET: TWO-CHANNEL BELTPACK WITH 2 BAT41 BATTERIES, AND POUCH. FOR USE WITH THE DX210 BASE STATION. | 2 | |
| CLEAR-COM | CZ11450 | CC-15-MD4 HEADSET: SINGLE EAR NOISE-CANCELING HEADSET, ELECTRET MIC, WITH MINI DIN CONNECTOR. | 2 | |
| CLEAR-COM | 107G065 | DX BELT PACK POUCH: RUBBER OUTER CASE FOR DX, BP200, BP210. BP300 BELT PACKS | 2 | |
| CLEAR-COM | CC-300 | SINGLE-EAR STANDARD | 5 | |
| CLEAR-COM | CC-110 | LW SINGLE-EAR STANDARD | 5 | |
| CLEAR-COM | RS-701 | SINGLE-CHANNEL STANDARD BELTPACK: ENCORE SINGLE-CHANNEL STANDARD BELTPACK. FOUR-PIN MALE HEADSET CONNECTOR AND THREE-PIN FEMALE/MALE LOOP THROUGH INTERCOM LINE CONNECTORS. | 10 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| COMMUNITY | DS8-B | SURROUND SPEAKERS | 6 | |
| COMMUNITY | DS-WMPB | MOUNTING HARDWARE | 6 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-MD16X16650718 4 | 16X16 DIGITALMEDIA™ SWITCHER | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-S2 | DIGITALMEDIA 8G™ SINGLE-MODE FIBER INPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-S2O-HD | 2-CHANNEL DIGITALMEDIA 8G™ SINGLE-MODE FIBER OUTPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | AV3 | CONTROL PROCESSOR | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | TS-1542-B-S 6507096 | 15.6" HD TOUCH SCREEN, WALL MOUNT OR VESA, BLACK SMOOTH | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4KZ-HD6508070 | HDMI® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR INPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 2 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-SDI6502685 | 3G-SDI INPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 2 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4KZ-CO-HD6508074 | 2-CHANNEL DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR OUTPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 3 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4K-HDO6507120 | 2-CHANNEL 4K SCALING HDMI® OUTPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 4 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-TX-4K-100-C-1G-B-T | WALL PLATE 4K DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® TRANSMITTER 100, BLACK TEXTURED | 4 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-TX-4KZ-202-C | DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR TRANSMITTER 202 | 4 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CRESTRON | DM-RMC-4KZ-SCALER-C | DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR RECEIVER AND ROOM CONTROLLER WITH SCALER | 4 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-RMC-4K-100-C-1G-B-T | WALL PLATE 4K DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® RECEIVER & ROOM CONTROLLER 100, BLACK TEXTURED | 2 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4K-C-DSP-HDCP26507322 | HDBASET® CERTIFIED 4K DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® INPUT CARD W/DOWNMIXING FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 9 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-CONN-ULTRA-RECP-50 | DIGITALMEDIA™ ULTRA KEYSTONE RJ45 JACK, 50-PACK W/TERMINATION TOOL | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-PSU-16 | DM POWER SUPPLY | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | HD-DA-2 | 1-TO-2 HDMI® DISTRIBUTION AMPLIFIER & AUDIO CONVERTER | 1 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 8RU CUSTOM FOAMED ROAD CASE FOR 8CHANNELS WIRELESS AND ALL ACCESSORIES | 1 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 32 WAY NL4 PATCHBAY | 1 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 20 WAY BNC SDI PATCHBAY | 1 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 12 WAY LC SM FIBER PATCHBAY | 1 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 48 WAY BANTAM PATCHBAY | 2 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 24 WAY RJ45 NETWORK PATCHBAY | 2 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | BODYPACK SOFT PACK FOR WARDROBE | 8 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 16RU CUSTOM FOAMED ROAD CASE FOR 8 CHANNELS OF WIRELESS | 1 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | MICROPHONES AND ALL ACCESSORIES | | |
| DA-LITE | 87319 | FAST-FOLD TRUSS FRAME SCREEN 108"X192" - 208" DIAGONAL | 1 | |
| DA-LITE | 87323 | FAST-FOLD TRUSS FRAME SCREEN DUAL VISION | 1 | |
| DA-LITE | 36635 | FAST-FOLD TRUSS FRAME DRAPERY KIT | 1 | |
| DECIMATOR | MD-LX | HDMI / SDI BI-DIRECTIONAL CONVERTER | 2 | |
| DENON | DN-500BD MKII | BLU-RAY/ DVD./ CD/ SD/ USB PLAYER | 1 | |
| EPSON | ELPLL08 | LONG-THROW LENS 7.22 TO 10.12/ 5.28 TO 7.42 | 1 | |
| EPSON | V11H910120 | PREMIUM LARGE-VENUE LASER PROJECTOR WITH 4K ENHANCEMENT | 2 | |
| EXTREME | X460-G2-48T-10GE4 | NETWORK SWITCH | 2 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR CISCO IN PLACE OF EXTREME SOLUTION. CONFIRMATION OF MODEL TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED TO BE PROVIDED IN FUTURE DRAWING REVISION. |
| EXTRON | SSP 7.1 | SURROUND SOUND PROCESSOR | 1 | |
| GATOR CASES | GR-3S | 3U PORTABLE RACK CASE | 1 | |
| GATOR CASES | GR-4S | 4U PORTABLE RACK CASE | 1 | |
| LISTENTECH | LT-800-072-P1 | RF TRANSMITTER PACKAGE 1 (72MHZ); INLCUDES ANTENNA AND SIGNAGE | 1 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LISTENTECH | LA-123 | 90 DEGREE HELICAL ANTENNA (72MHZ) | 1 | |
| LISTENTECH | LP-51-072-01 | ADVANCED INTELLIGENT DSP RF RECIEVER 12-PACK (72MHZ) | 2 | |
| LISTENTECH | LA-380 | 12 UNIT CHARGING/CARRING CASE | 2 | |
| LISTENTECH | LA-382 | CABLE MANAGEMENT UNIT FOR COLLECTING RECEIVERS. | 2 | |
| LISTENTECH | LA-167 | REPLACEMENT CUSHIONS FOR STEREO HEADPHONES | 2 | |
| LISTENTECH | LA-166 | NECK LOOPS | 4 | |
| LISTENTECH | LA-403 | EAR PHONES | 15 | |
| MARSHALL | CV503 | MINIATURE FULL-HD CAMERA (3G/HDSDI) | 1 | |
| MARSHALL | CV2812-3MP | 2.8~12MM, F1.4 3MP VARIFOCAL M12 LENS; HORIZ AOV = 108~30° | 1 | |
| MARSHALL | CVM-15 | WALL MOUNT PLATE WITH 1/4" CENTER SCREW HOLE | 1 | |
| MARSHALL | CVM-7 | 7" ARTICULATING LOCKING ARM | 1 | |
| MARSHALL ELECTRONICS | M-LYNX-702V.3 | DUAL 7" 1280 X 800 RACKMOUNT LCD DISPLAYS | 1 | |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | VFD-45A | VENTED FRONT DOOR, 45 RU RACKS, CURVED | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | CBS-BGR | CASTER BASE, BGR SERIES | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | LT-1R | RACKMOUNT LIGHT, 1 RU, POWDER COATED | 1 | |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | UTR1 | RACK SHELF1 RU | 4 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | BGR-4527 | BGR-SA SERIES RACK, 45 RU, 27"D, W/O REAR DOOR | 4 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| APC | ACF505 | ROOF FAN TRAY 120VAC 50/60HZ FOR NETSHELTER AV | 4 | |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | BGR-RR45 | RACKRAIL, 10-32, 45 RU, BGR SERIES | 4 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| APC | AP8932 | POWER STRIP, 24 OUTLET, 30A, TWISTLOCK PLUG | 4 | |
| APC | AP7900B | RACKMOUNT POWER, 9 OUTLET, 15A, BASIC SURGE | 4 | |
| APC | SMX1500RM2UNC | NETWORK - UPS BACKUP POWER, 2RU, 1500VA | 1 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | D3 | DRAWER, 3 RU, ANODIZED, W/LOCK | 4 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | FI-3 | FOAM INSERT, FITS 3 RU DRAWER | 4 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| PRESONUS | STUDIOLIVE SERIES 3 | 32 CHANNEL MIXING DESK W/ AVB | 1 | |
| PRESONUS | NSB16.8 RACK KIT | STURDY METAL RACK EAR MOUNTING KIT FOR ONE (1) PRESONUS NSB 16.8 | 1 | |
| PRESONUS | NSB16.8 | 16X8 AVB STAGE BOX | 2 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| QSC | AF218-SW-BK | ALUMINUM ARRAY FRAME FOR STACKING FOUR (4) OR FLYING EIGHT (8) WL218-SW SUBWOOFERS | 1 | |
| QSC | CORE 510I | Q-SYS CORE | 1 | |
| QSC | CAN32 | Q-SYS AVB BRIDGE CARD, 16X16 / 0X32 / 32X0 | 1 | |
| QSC | I/O-8 FLEX | Q-SYS CHANNEL EXPANDER | 1 | |
| QSC | CX108V | 8 CHANNELS, 100 WATTS/CH AT 70V | 1 | |
| QSC | TSC-55W-G2-BK | Q-SYS 5.5” POE TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLLER | 1 | |
| QSC | AF2102-LA-BK | LARGE ALUMINUM ARRAY FRAME FOR THE WIRELINE 10 (WL2102) AVAILABLE IN BLACK. | 2 | |
| QSC | WL218-SW | 18" SUBWOOFER | 2 | |
| QSC | CIML4 | FOUR CHANNELS OF MICROPHONE / LINE-LEVEL ANALOG AUDIO INPUT WITH 48V PHANTOM POWER | 4 | |
| QSC | COL4 | FOUR CHANNELS OF BALANCED, LINE-LEVEL ANALOG OUTPUT | 4 | |
| QSC | PLD4.5 | 4 CHANNEL AMPLIFIER @ 2000W | 5 | |
| QSC | K12.2 | POWERED SPEAKER 12" | 8 | |
| QSC | WL2102 | LINE ARRAY SPEAKERS | 14 | |
| RADIAL | JDI | PASSIVE DIRECT BOX | 2 | |
| RADIAL | J48 | ACTIVE DIRECT BOX | 2 | |
| RADIAL | JDI DUPLEX | 2 CHANNEL PASSIVE DIRECT BOX | 2 | |
| SENNHEISER | EW 100 G4 ME2-XX | WIRELESS LAVALIER SET. INCLUDES (1) SK 100 G4 BODYPACK, (1) | 2 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | ME 2-II LAVALIER MICROPHONE (OMNIDIRECTIONAL, CONDENSER), (1) EM 100 G4 RACKMOUNT RECEIVER, (1) GA3 RACK KIT AND (1) RJ10 LINKING CABLE, | | |
| SENNHEISER | A 2003-UHF | RECEIVING/TRANSMITTING ANTENNA, PASSIVE, DIRECTIONAL, BNC CONNECTOR, 3/8" MOUNTING THREAD | 2 | |
| SENNHEISER | ASA 214-UHF | ACTIVE ANTENNA SPLITTER WITH DC POWER DISTRIBUTION FOR EW G3 AND EW G4 RECEIVERS. INCLUDES (1) NT 1-1 POWER SUPPLY AND (8) BNC CABLES | 5 | |
| SENNHEISER | EW 100 G4 ME2/835-S-XX | WIRELESS LAVALIER/VOCAL COMBO SET. INCLUDES (1) SKM 100 G4-S HANDHELD WITH MUTE SWITCH, (1) E 835 MIC CAPSULE (CARDIOID, DYNAMIC), (1) SK 100 G4 BODYPACK, (1) ME 2-II LAVALIER MICROPHONE (OMNIDIRECTIONAL, CONDENSER), (1) EM 100 G4 RACKMOUNT RECEIVER, (1) GA3 RACK KIT, (1) RJ10 LINKING CABLE AND (1) MIC CLIP, | 6 | |
| SENNHEISER | EW 100 G4 ME3-XX | WIRELESS HEADMIC SET. INCLUDES (1) SK 100 G4 BODYPACK, (1) ME 3-II HEADMIC | 8 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | (CARDIOID, CONDENSER), (1) EM 100 G4 RACKMOUNT RECEIVER, (1) GA3 RACK KIT AND (1) RJ10 LINKING CABLE, | | |
| SHURE | BETA52A | KICK DRUM MICROPHONE | 1 | |
| SHURE | MX202 | HANGING MICROPHONE | 6 | |
| SHURE | SM58 | CARDIOID DYNAMIC VOCAL MICROPHONE | 10 | |
| SUPERLOGICS | SL-RMKB-W119B | 1U RACKMOUNT 19" WIDE SCREEN (1440X900) LCD DRAWER (SHORT DEPTH: 18.1") WITH INTEGRATED KEYBOARD AND TRACKBALL (DVI-D AND VGA INPUTS), INCLUDES CABLES FOR USB CONNECTIONS | 1 | |
| SUPERLOGICS | SL-1U-LLQ370M-LA | 1U RACK MOUNT INDUSTRIAL PC | 1 | |
| TASCAM | SS-CDR250N | 2-CHANNEL NETWORKING CD/MEDIA RECORDER | 1 | |
| TRIPP LITE | U360-007 | 7-PORT USB 3.0 HUB | 1 | |
| VADDIO | 999-99630-100 | ROBOSHOT 30 ONELINK BRIDGE SYSTEM N/A | 1 | |
| VADDIO | 535-2000-240 | THIN PROFILE WALL MOUNT ROBOSHOT BLACK | 1 | |

b. Multipurpose Room

| **Manufacturer** | **Model/Part #** | **Description** | **Qty** | **Notes** |
|---|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| BELDEN | AX103114 | DM PATCH PANEL | 1 | |
| CHIEF | MONTOUR K1 | | 1 | |
| CHIEF | CMA365 | TRUSS CEILING ADAPTER | 3 | |
| CHIEF | CMA348 | HARDWARELARGE VENUE VIBRATION ISOLATING COUPLER, BLACK | 3 | |
| CHIEF | CMS0305 | 3-5' ADJUSTABLE EXTENSION COLUMN | 3 | |
| CLEAR-COM | CZ11433 | 4-UP DX100 SYSTEM W/ CC-15 HEADSETS: MB100 SINGLE-CHANNEL STAND-ALONE LICENSE-FREE MOBILE BASE STATION W/2 ANTENNAS; 115-230 VAC POWER SUPPLY, 115VAC POWER CORD, AA BATTERY SLED FOR BASE; 4 BP200 BELTPACKS WITH; 8 BAT41 BATTERIES AND 4 POUCHES; 4 CC-15-MD4 SINGLE EAR NOISE CANCELING HEADSETS, AC40A BATTERY CHARGER,115-230 VAC POWER SUPPLY, POWER CORD, MANUAL | 1 | |
| COMMUNITY | DS8-B | COMPACT, TWO-WAY, FULL-RANGE COAXIAL SURFACE MOUNT LOUDSPEAKER; LF 1 X 8", HF 1 X 1.25" | 12 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | COMPRESSION DRIVER, 70 HZ - 20 KHZ, 115° CONICAL COVERAGE, 95 DB SPL 1W/1M, 150W RMS, 8 OHM OR 70V/100V OPERATION WITH MULTI-TAP SETTINGS. H X W X D: 18.5" X 9" X 10.1" | | |
| COMMUNITY | DS-WMP | MOUNTING HARDWARE | 12 | |
| COMMUNITY | ALC-404D | 4 CHANNELS X 400W + DSP AND DANTE | 3 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-MD8X8-CP3U | 8X8 DIGITALMEDIA™ SWITCHER | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4K-C-DSP-HDCP26507322 | HDBASET® CERTIFIED 4K DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® INPUT CARD W/DOWNMIXING FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 6 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4KZ-HD6508070 | HDMI® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR INPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-S2 | DIGITALMEDIA 8G™ SINGLE-MODE FIBER INPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4KZ-CO-HD6508074 | 2-CHANNEL DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR OUTPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 2 | |
| CRESTRON | DMC-4K-HDO6507120 | 2-CHANNEL 4K SCALING HDMI® OUTPUT CARD FOR DM® SWITCHERS | 2 | |
| CRESTRON | AV3 | CONTROL PROCESSOR | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | TS-1542-B-S 6507096 | 15.6" HD TOUCH SCREEN, WALL MOUNT OR VESA, BLACK SMOOTH | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | TSW-1060-B-S | 10.1" TOUCH SCREEN, BLACK SMOOTH | 3 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CRESTRON | DMC-RMC-4K-SCALER-C | 4K DM TO HDMI SCALER | 4 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-TX-201-C | HDMI OVER DM TX | 5 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-TX-4K-100-C-1G-B-T | HDMI OVER DM TX, BLACK WALL PLATE | 3 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-PSU-8 | 8 PORT DM POWER SUPPLY | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-TX-201-S2 | DIGITALMEDIA 8G™ SINGLE-MODE FIBER TRANSMITTER 201 | 1 | *ON RACK SHELF |
| DA-LITE | 35179 | INSTALLED SMALL SCREENS | 3 | *MATTE WHITE 6’ 6” OF TOP BLACK DROP |
| EPSON | V11H739120 | PRO L1405U LASER WUXGA 3LCD PROJECTOR W/ 4K ENHANCEMENT & STANDARD LENS | 3 | |
| EXTREME | X460-G2-48T-10GE4 | NETWORK SWITCH | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR CISCO IN PLACE OF EXTREME SOLUTION. CONFIRMATION OF MODEL TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED TO BE PROVIDED IN FUTURE DRAWING REVISION. |
| LISTEN TECHNOLOGIES | LS-100-01-GY | LISTENIR IDSP STANDARD SYSTEM | 3 | |
| LISTEN TECHNOLOGIES | LA-347-GY | WALL MOUNTING PLATE | 3 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | BGR-4527 | BGR-SA SERIES RACK, 45 RU, 27"D, W/O REAR DOOR | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. AP C NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATIO N. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | VFD-45A | VENTED FRONT DOOR, 45 RU RACKS, CURVED | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. AP C NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | ATLANTIC SPECIFICATIO N. |
| APC | ACF505 | ROOF FAN TRAY 120VAC 50/60HZ FOR NETSHELTER AV | 1 | |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | BGR-RR45 | RACKRAIL, 10-32, 45 RU, BGR SERIES | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. AP C NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATIO N. |
| APC | AP8932 | POWER STRIP, 24 OUTLET, 30A, TWISTLOCK PLUG | 1 | |
| APC | AP7900B | RACKMOUNT POWER, 9 OUTLET, 15A, BASIC SURGE | 1 | |
| APC | SMX1500RM2 UNC | NETWORK - UPS BACKUP POWER, 2RU, 1500VA | 1 | |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | D3 | DRAWER, 3 RU, ANODIZED, W/LOCK | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | FI-3 | FOAM INSERT, FITS 3 RU DRAWER | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. APC NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATION. |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | CBS-BGR | CASTER BASE, BGR SERIES | 1 | *AV CONTRACTOR TO PRICE EQUIVALENT SOLUTION FOR APC IN PLACE OF MIDDLE ATLANTIC SOLUTION. AP C NETSHELTER SX ASSEMBLE-TO-ORDER ENCLOSURE TO BE FURNISHED AND INSTALLED BASED UPON MIDDLE ATLANTIC SPECIFICATIO N. |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | LT-1R | RACKMOUNT LIGHT, 1 RU, POWDER COATED | 1 | |
| QSC | CORE 510I | Q-SYS CORE | 1 | |
| QSC | CIML4 | FOUR CHANNELS OF MICROPHONE / LINE-LEVEL ANALOG AUDIO INPUT WITH 48V PHANTOM POWER | 5 | |
| QSC | COL4 | FOUR CHANNELS OF BALANCED, LINE-LEVEL ANALOG OUTPUT | 2 | |
| QSC | CDN64 | Q-SYS DANTE BRIDGE CARD, 64X64 | 1 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| QSC | I/O-8 FLEX | Q-SYS CHANNEL EXPANDER | 1 | |
| RADIAL | JPC | ACTIVE HYBRID DI, STEREO INPUTS FOR COMPUTERS & CD PLAYERS, 48V PHANTOM | 4 | |
| RADIAL | DINET DAN-TX | 2-CHANNEL DANTE™ TRANSMITTER FOR ADDING INSTRUMENT OR LINE LEVEL INPUTS TO ANY DANTE SYSTEM | 4 | |
| SENNHEISER | SL DI 4 XLR | ANALOG/DIGITAL AUDIO CONVERTER, 4X MIC/LINE-IN, P48, 2 NETWORK PORTS (DANTE DAISY CHAIN), 12 VDC, OR POE | 4 | |
| SENNHEISER | EW 100 G4 ME2/835-S-XX | WIRELESS LAVALIER/VOCAL COMBO SET. INCLUDES (1) SKM 100 G4-S HANDHELD WITH MUTE SWITCH, (1) E 835 MIC CAPSULE (CARDIOID, DYNAMIC), (1) SK 100 G4 BODYPACK, (1) ME 2-II LAVALIER MICROPHONE (OMNIDIRECTIONAL, CONDENSER), (1) EM 100 G4 RACKMOUNT RECEIVER, (1) GA3 RACK KIT, (1) RJ10 LINKING CABLE AND (1) MIC CLIP, | 6 | |
| SENNHEISER | ASA 214-UHF | ACTIVE ANTENNA SPLITTER WITH DC POWER DISTRIBUTION FOR EW G3 AND EW G4 RECEIVERS. INCLUDES (1) NT 1-1 POWER SUPPLY AND (8) BNC CABLES | 2 | |
| SENNHEISER | A 1031-U | RECEIVING/TRANSMITTI NGANTENNA, PASSIVE, OMNIDIRECTIONAL, BNC | 2 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | CONNECTOR, 3/8" MOUNTING THREAD | | |
| SUPERLOGICS | SL-RMKB-W119B | 1U RACKMOUNT 19" WIDE SCREEN (1440X900) LCD DRAWER (SHORT DEPTH: 18.1") WITH INTEGRATED KEYBOARD AND TRACKBALL (DVI-D AND VGA INPUTS), INCLUDES CABLES FOR USB CONNECTIONS | 1 | |
| SUPERLOGICS | SL-1U-LLQ370M-LA | 1U RACK MOUNT INDUSTRIAL PC | 1 | |
| CUSTOM | CUSTOM | 12 WAY XLR AUDIO PATCHBAY | 1 | |
| APPLE | IPAD | SPECIFICATION FOR IPAD SHALL BE COORDIANTED WITH OWNER, IPAD SHALL BE FURNISHED WITH RUGGED CASE | 1 | |

c. Back of House and Auxiliary Spaces

| **Manufacturer** | **Model/Part #** | **Description** | **Qty** | **Notes** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| JBL | 26CT | 6.5" CEILING LOUDSPEAKER TRANSDUCER ASSEMBLY | 25 | |
| ATLAS IED | SHS-6T2 | STRATEGICALLY HIDDEN SPEAKER WITH 32-WATT 70/100V TRANSFORMER AND ENCLOSURE | 15 | |
| QSC | MP-A80V | POWER AMPLIFIER, 8 CHANNEL @ 200W | 2 | |
| ATTEROTECH | AXON C1-W | NETWORK VOLUME CONTROL DEVICE | 1 | |
| ATLAS IED | AT100-PA | WALL CONTROL PLATE WITH ROTARY POTENTIOMETER, PRIORITY RELAY | 6 | |
| NEC | C551 | 55" HD PROFESSIONAL DISPLAY | 4 | |
| CHIEF | LSTU | LARGE THINSTALL™ FIXED WALL DISPLAY MOUNT | 3 | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| CHIEF | RMT2 | MEDIUM FIT™ TILT WALL MOUNT | 1 | |
| CRESTRON | DM-RMC-4KZ-SCALER-C | DIGITALMEDIA 8G+® 4K60 4:4:4 HDR RECEIVER AND ROOM CONTROLLER WITH SCALER | 3 | |
| CRESTRON | C2N-CBF-P-W-T | CAMEO® KEYPAD, FLUSH MOUNT, WHITE TEXTURED | 1 | *PROVIDE AN 8 BUTTON PANEL |

d. In-Ear Monitoring System (**Alternate #4**)

| **Manufacturer** | **Model/Part #** | **Description** | **Qty** | **Notes** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SHURE | P3TRA215CL | WIRELESS IN EAR | 8 | |
| SHURE | PA411 | ANTENNA COMBINER | 2 | |
| FURMAN | M-8DX | POWER CONDITIONER | 1 | |
| SKB | 1SKB-R8UW | ROLLING ROTO RACK CASE | 1 | |
| MIDDLE ATLANTIC | UD2 | RACK DRAWER | 1 | |

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEMS

A. Locate all apparatus requiring adjustments, cleaning, or similar attention so that it shall be accessible for such attention. Equipment racks shall be positioned to permit full access for operation and service.

B. Furnish and install brackets, braces, and supports. Minimum fastening or support safety factor shall be at least five (5). Design shall be approved by the Architect and Owner.

C. All supporting structures supplied by the Contractor not having standard factory paint finish shall be painted. Paint specifications shall be supplied by the architect and owner or indicated herein.

D. Provide custom color or finish for any equipment or materials supplied which are exposed to public view. Color and finish of all such equipment or materials shall be approved in writing by the Architect and Owner. This does not exclude equipment or materials where standard colors or finishes may be specified herein.

E. Finish of blank panels and custom assembly panels shall match adjacent equipment panels.

F. Switches, connectors, jacks, receptacles, outlets, cables, and cable terminations shall be logically and permanently marked. Custom panel nomenclature shall be engraved, etched, or screened. Markings for these items are detailed in the contract documents to ensure consistency and clarity. Verify any changes in working type size and/or placement with the Architect and Owner prior to marking.

G. The equipment specified herein is designed to operate in environments of normal humidity, dust, and temperature. Protect equipment and related wiring where extreme environmental conditions can occur.

H. Coordinate with millwork fabricator for installation of audiovisual equipment into credenzas, lecterns, etc.

I. Review and coordinate Graphic User Interface Control System appearance and functionality:
1. Crestron DigitalMedia© System: The DigitalMedia© systems shall be installed, configured, and tested by a DMC-E certified technician and/or engineer, in accordance with the guidelines set forth in the Crestron HD-DTDS Specification.

J. The contractor shall not install any custom plates with the integrators name or contact information in any rack or written on any blank panel.

K. All speakers shall be furnished and installed without logos or badges.

L. Should any hardware/equipment required for functional systems be missing to meet design intent, the owner must be notified in writing to provide direction for installation of a completed system.

M. The integrator is responsible for all programming associated with hardware installed as part of this specification. The integrator is responsible for coordination with owner to ensure equipment programming meets design intent.

N. Displays and display mounts shall be installed by the AV contractor, and shall be coordinated with the General Contractor prior to installation to verify any special requirement for installation on specific wall types.

3.2 CONDUIT

A. Review and coordinate audio installation with the Electrical Contractor to ensure proper operation of the audio system.

B. All wiring shall be in conduit unless authorized by the Architect and Owner, approved by the Architect and Owner in writing, and permitted by code. Exceptions are short runs at equipment terminations where there are no means of connecting conduit to the equipment.

C. Where installed exposed, conduits shall be parallel with or at right angles to walls or ceiling

and /or follow surface contours and shall be supported from walls or ceilings by means of approved clamps or hangers. Conduit connections to equipment racks shall be insulated.

D. Minimum size conduit shall be trade size ¾". All conduits shall be sized for maximum 40% fill or less if required by code.

E. Conduits carrying high voltage or high amperage wiring serving equipment subject to abrupt start-up and possible slapping of wiring within conduit shall not pass through Acoustically Sensitive Spaces.

F. Conduits connected to dimmer racks or to transformers shall not pass directly into Acoustically Sensitive Spaces. Conduits connected to dimmer racks or transformers shall not penetrate walls, floors, or slabs of Acoustically Sensitive Spaces within thirty (30) feet of those equipment room walls or slabs. All penetrations in the path of conduits within thirty (30) feet of electrical rooms containing dimmer racks or transformers shall be resilient penetrations.

G. Large numbers of conduits penetrating walls of Acoustically Sensitive Spaces shall be individually sleeved and shall pass through walls, floors, slabs, and ceilings perpendicularly.

H. Conduits shall not be installed to connect or contact rigidly other non-electrical equipment or building systems which are vibration isolated.

I. Coordinate all conduit sizes, locations, and quantities with the Electrical Contractor to provide proper routing, signal separation, and wire group type. Failure to do so shall not allow for additional compensation. Provide a conduit routing plan for approval by the Architect and Owner prior to installation. Routing plan shall include intended sizes, separation, and cable fill chart.

3.3 RESILIENT PENETRATIONS OF WALLS AND SLAB

A. All penetrations for conduit, innerduct, cabling, or any additional pathways for installation of equipment as part of this specification must be coordinated with the construction manager, architect, and owner prior to start of work.

B. All conduit and cable penetrations shall be sleeved, packed, and caulked airtight to form a resilient penetration at the following locations:
1. Mechanical Equipment Rooms
2. Electrical and Dimmer Equipment Rooms
3. Acoustically Sensitive Spaces
4. Rooms with Acoustically Isolated Construction.

C. Openings shall be oversized and sleeved to provide an inner diameter of one (1) to two (2) inches greater than the outside diameter of the duct or pipe. The conduit shall be centered in the opening and shall not rigidly contact the wall, floor, or ceiling. The resulting gap shall be packed with glass fiber packing material and foam rod. The gap shall be caulked to an airtight

seal using permanently flexile acoustical sealant.

D. Acoustical sleeves may be used in lieu of resilient penetrations described above. Multiple conduit penetrations may be constructed following the detail for multiple penetrations identified in the Contract Documents.

3.4 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Review and coordinate electrical power system installation including grounding with the Electrical Contractor to ensure proper operation of the audiovisual system.

B. Verify that All AC power circuits designated for audio equipment are wired with the correct polarity and ground. Report in writing any discrepancies found to the Architect and Owner for corrective action.
1. Provide distribution of electrical power within the equipment racks with a minimum of one space AC receptacle for each four (4) in use per branch circuit.
2. The Electrical Contractor shall ensure that all audio grounding does not intersect with any building ground except at earth.

3.5 STEEL SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate and install any supports so that the installation does not weaken or overload the building structure. Do not impose the weight of equipment or fixtures on supports provided for other trades or systems. No drilling or cutting of concrete beams, joists, or structural steel, nor welding to structural steel, shall be permitted except as authorized in writing by the Architect and Owner.

3.6 SEISMIC RESTRAINTS

A. All hanging or free-standing equipment and cabinets furnished, including but not limited to racks, loudspeakers, projection screens, and mounts shall be secured to substantial building structures. The equipment described herein shall resist seismic acceleration in any direction up to a limit of the greater of 1.0G or the limit prescribed by the local governing codes.

B. Loudspeaker hanging details, rack bracing, and other seismic restraints may not be shown on the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for development of these drawings to be submitted and approved by the Structural Engineer.

3.7 BOXES

A. With the exception of portable equipment, all boxes, conduits, cabinets, equipment, and wiring shall be held in place and the mounting shall be plumb and square.

B. All boxes shall be securely mounted to building structure. All boxes shall be installed so that

wiring contained in them is accessible. Install blanking devices or threaded plugs in all unused holes.

C. Wiring groups and circuits shall be isolated as indicated herein. Common pull or junction boxes are not permitted except as authorized in writing by the Architect and Owner.

D. Clean all box interiors prior to installing plates, panels, or covers.

3.8 WIRING METHOD AND PRACTICES

A. Furnish and install all audiovisual wire and cable ensuring proper pulling tension, bend radius, quantities, types, lengths, routing, wire group separation, and identification.

B. Spare wire runs of each group and type shall be pulled to each termination location. The number of spares shall be ten (10) percent of those in actual use or one, whichever is greater

C. Splicing of cables is not permitted between terminations of specified equipment.

D. Do not pull wire or cable through any box fitting or enclosures where change of raceway alignment or direction occurs; do not bend conductors to less than recommended radius. Employ temporary guides, sheaves, and rollers to protect cables from excess tension, abrasion, or damaging bending during installation.

E. Use wire pulling tensions in accordance with the wire and cable manufacturer's recommendations.

F. All wires shall be permanently identified at each wire end by marking with adhesive on crimp-on markers and a chart kept of each wire's function. This applies to wire within a rack assembly as well as wire running in conduit.

G. Wire ends shall be wrapped with appropriate heat shrink tubing. Each shield or drain wire shall be covered with heat shrink to avoid unintentional connections.

H. Use ring or tongue lugs on all barrier strip terminals. Do not exceed two (2) lugs per terminal. Use crimping tools that are designed for the application or solder. Do not cut strands from conductors to fit lug terminals. Spare terminal blocks, equivalent to ten percent (10%) of those in actual use shall be furnished.

I. Form in an orderly manner all conductors in enclosures and boxes, wire ways, and wiring troughs, furnishing circuit and conductor identification. Tie using tie wraps of appropriate size and type. Limit spacing between ties to twelve (12) inches and furnish and install circuit and conductor identification at least once in each enclosure.

J. When the audiovisual cables are pulled, leave a five foot (5') tail at each end to all field locations and a fifteen foot (15') tail at all equipment rack locations UON. Temporary labels

shall be applied at both ends of each cable. Permanent labels shall be applied when the cables are cut back and terminated.

K. All labeling of audiovisual cables shall comply with Infocomm standard F501.01:2015. The numbering system used in compliance with this standard shall be verified with the owner prior to implementation. A schedule of all cabling and its labels shall be provided to the owner and Architect for review prior to pulling and termination of cables.

3.9 GROUNDING

A. Audiovisual system wiring shall conform to the following procedures:
1. Audio equipment AC ground pins shall connect to AC ground.
2. Audio equipment chassis shall connect to rack frames.
3. Audio rack frames shall connect to AC ground bus in panel board by means of #2 gauge (minimum) conductor
4. Audio shields between AC powered pieces of equipment shall be connected to ground at one end only. Terminate capacitance as required.
5. Audio signal paths between AC powered pieces of equipment shall be connected using balanced lines and/or transformer isolation as required.
6. No unbalanced signal paths may be connected to patch bays.
7. Isolate all audiovisual system wiring from racks, back boxes, and conduit.
8. Isolate all audiovisual system racks from conduit and other conductive surfaces. Use insulated bushings for conduit connections and a dielectric plinth between racks and conductive flooring.
9. AC isolated ground system shall be isolated from all other facility grounds.

B. All metallic conduit, boxes, and enclosures shall be grounded in accordance with the current National Electric Code (NEC).

C. Metallic enclosures containing active equipment shall be grounded with due regard for the minimization of electrical noise. This may include the provisions of grounding conductors separate from AC ground.

3.10 EQUIPMENT RACKS

A. The equipment racks shall be considered as custom assemblies and shall be assembled, wired, and tested in the Contractor’s shop. Final assembly of racks shall take place on site after transportation but shall conform to the same test results achieved in the shop.

B. Placement of equipment in equipment racks, as shown in the drawings, is for maximum operator convenience. The insertion of additional equipment not indicated herein or any changes of placement of the equipment must be indicated in writing to the architect and owner before assembly.

C. Racks shall be installed plumb and square without twists in the frame or variations in level

between adjacent racks.

D. All wire, cable, terminal blocks, rack mounted equipment, and active slots of card frame systems shall be clearly and logically labeled as to their function, circuit, or system. Labeling on manufactured equipment shall be by engraved plastic laminate or by thermal printer on adhesive tape, with white lettering on black background or dark background that is similar to panel finish.

E. Provide stiffeners to custom panels to prevent panel deformation during normal plugging or switching operations.

F. All field termination shall enter the rack via a bulkhead panel(s) mounted to the rear-rails of the equipment rack.

G. All wires and cable used in assembling custom panels and equipment racks shall be formed into harnesses which are tied and supported in accordance with accepted engineering practice which shall include but is not limited to hook and loops cable ties, cable wrap, lacing bars, D-ring panels, etc. Locking cable ties are not an acceptable form of cable management and shall not be permitted as a substitution for hook and loop cable ties.

H. Harnessed cables shall be combed straight, tie wrapped every eight (8) to twelve (12) inches and attached to the structure as necessary. Each cable that breaks out from the harness for a termination shall be provided with ample service loop to permit equipment removal from the racks without disconnecting.

I. Harnessed cables shall be formed in either a vertical or horizontal relationship to equipment, controls components, or terminations.

J. Cables shields shall be connected to the isolated ground system with due regard for the ground loops.

K. All system components and related wiring shall be located with due regard from the minimization of induced electromagnetic and electrostatic noise, for the minimization of wiring length, for proper ventilation, and to provide reasonable safety and convenience of the operator.

L. All rack mounted equipment with front panel controls, shall be furnished with security covers to avoid tampering with preset levels.

M. All rack mounted equipment shall be installed with Middle Atlantic HTX 10-32 Star Post Screws, UON.

N. Every device shall be installed with regard for proper polarity. Absolute polarity shall be maintained through the entire audio chain.

O. All equipment racks shall be installed with a service loop of sufficient length for adjustment of

the rack to a serviceable position for complete serviceability. Service loops shall be sheathed in woven cable wrap for ease of service loop management.

P. Rack Shelves, Drawers, and other rack mounted equipment for housing and storing equipment within racks shall be provided as indicated on the drawings and installed with security screws.

## 3.11 INITIAL ADJUSTMENT

A. Verify all circuits and extensions for correct connection, continuity, and polarity. Absolute polarity shall be maintained between all points in the system.

B. Connector polarity shall be maintained except for terminations at equipment manufactured to other standards. Verify that polarity connections are consistent throughout the system.

C. Verify that the audio system is operational, and the system gain structure is within the recommendations of major component manufacturers.

D. Verify that the video system is operational and the video signal from all camera locations and projectors output to the correct locations including all control equipment.

## 3.12 VERIFICATION TESTS

A. Confirm that each individual wire and cable run (whether in rack or in a conduit) is identified with a unique number. These numbers are affixed to both ends of each cable and are clearly visible. Furnish a complete list of these numbers along with the termination location of each end of the wire run.

B. Confirm that all system outputs are free of spurious signals including oscillations and radio frequency signals. Contractor shall furnish a wide band oscilloscope in order to verify this condition.

C. Confirm that the system is free of audible clicks, pops, hums, and other noises when any operating control is activated, with or without an input signal

D. For all audio and video lines, confirm:
1. Proper circuits appear at each termination location.
2. Proper circuits appear at each jack bay location.
3. Continuity of all conductors.
4. Proper polarity is maintained.
5. Absence of shorts between conductors within each circuit.
6. Absence of shorts between circuit conductors and conduit.

E. Confirm that the loudspeakers and mountings are free of buzzes and rattles when the speaker is swept with sine wave tones over its rated bandwidth at one-half (1/2) its maximum rated power.

F. For all permanently mounted loudspeaker terminations, furnish impedance measurement of each pair of loudspeaker lines with all loudspeakers connected and all amplifiers disconnected. These measurements shall be documented in a table listing impedance for each third octave from 20 Hz to 20 kHz and shall be accurate to the nearest 0.1Ω.

G. For each installed data network cable or fiber optic cable, verify that performance conforms to the relevant TIA/EIA specifications.

H. For all electronic devices mounted in racks and connected to patch bays confirm:
1. Every audio input and output is balanced.
2. Proper polarity is maintained throughout the entire audio signal path.

I. Confirm that there are no short circuits between the neutral and isolated ground conductors for each clean power circuit.

J. Confirm every input and output for video system including:
1. Proper signal to displays.
2. Proper sync to playback and recording equipment.

## 3.13 VERIFICATION TEST REPORT

A. Submit five (5) copies of a written report detailing the results of Initial Adjustments and Verification Test including all relevant drawings, charts, test instrument data and photographs. This report shall be completed and submitted to the Architect and Owner for review a minimum of five (5) days prior to Acceptance Testing and final tuning. With this report, submit written certification that the installation conforms to the requirements stated herein, is complete in all respects, and is ready for inspection, testing, and tuning.

## 3.14 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. Acceptance Testing shall be performed by the Architect and Owner during a period designated by the Architect and Owner. Contractor shall furnish a minimum of two (2) technicians for the acceptance testing period.

B. All systems shall be compliant with Infocomm standard 1M:2009 Uniform Distributed Audio Standard as applicable.

C. The minimum time required for Acceptance Testing is two (2) working days of dedicated quiet. Coordinate this time period so that free access, work lighting, and electrical power are available on site.

D. The AV Contractor shall bear any costs incurred for additional Architect’s time and expenses due to failure to have the system functioning in accordance with specification requirements at the time scheduled for Architect’s Acceptance Testing and Tuning.

E. Ensure that audiovisual areas are in a clean and orderly condition ready for Acceptance Testing.

F. At the time of Acceptance Testing, submit one (1) copy each of the operation and maintenance manual to the Architect and Owner (refer to Paragraph 3.15).

G. Furnish test equipment meeting the following minimum specifications on site, at all times during the Acceptance Testing. Prior to Acceptance Testing, provide the Architect with a listing of the equipment model numbers and their software versions (if applicable) to be made available.
1. Oscilloscope: 1GHz bandwidth sensitivity – 1mV/cm
2. Digital Multi-meter: 1% accuracy
3. Function Generator: 1GHz bandwidth, distortion <1%
4. Real Time Analyzer: 1/3 octave with microphone.
5. Pink Noise Source: 20 Hz – 20 kHz
6. Impedance Sweep Meter: 20 Hz – 1 kHz range, 1Ω - 50Ω.
7. Polarity Checker: Microphone level, Line Level, and Loudspeaker Level.
8. NTSC bar graphs and other test patterns for video verification.
9. Ultra High definition (4K60) Video test generator with VGA, DVI, HDMI 2.0, SDI, and 3G-HDSDI outputs

H. Be prepared to verify the performance of any portion of the system by demonstrations, listening, and viewing tests, and instrumented measurements.

I. Make additional mechanical and electrical adjustments within the scope of the work which may be deemed necessary by the Architect and/or Owner as a result of the Acceptance Test. This may include realigning and re-aiming of video or audio systems, changes in system gain structures, grounding, filtering, or interfaces.

J. Final acceptance shall be contingent upon issuance by the Owner of a letter of acceptance stating that the work has been completed and is in accordance with the Contract Documents. The warranty period shall begin upon issuance of said letter.

## 3.15 SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION

A. Within fifteen (15) days of the Acceptance Testing, prepare and submit five (5) neatly bound copies of the operations and maintenance manuals to the Owner. Manuals shall be placed in an orderly fashion into a three-ring binder with spine labels indicating contents. These copies are in addition to the one (1) copy each furnished to the Architect and Owner during Acceptance Testing.

B. Manual shall include but not be limited to the following:
1. Table of contents
2. Written Guarantee and Service Policy
3. Basic power on/off and operational procedures.

4. All Available manufacturer's operation and service literature for each major system component
5. A one-line signal flow diagram with all cable runs and patch points identified by alphanumeric characters
6. A copy of the Verification Test Report
7. Two (2) copies of as-built conduit riser diagram obtained from the Electrical Contractor
8. A copy of the final tuning settings as furnished by the Architect
9. Electronic versions of all documents included in the manual and electronic back up of all software, firmware, and files to restore initial install presets for all applicable devices copied on to (2) USB storage devices.

C. Furnish a framed copy of the as-built signal flow diagrams to be mounted in AV Room 891 and 804B. This diagram shall have all cable runs and patch points identified by alphanumeric characters. This print shall be at minimum ARCH D sheet size (24" x 36").

3.16 TRAINING

A. The AV Contractor shall provide up to forty-eight (48) hours instruction in the safe and proper operation of the equipment, in particular the presentation systems, control systems, and use of interactive displays systems to the owner's designated representatives.
1. AV Contractor shall schedule instruction with the Owner's designated representatives.
2. Instruction shall not necessarily follow immediately after the system commissioning.
3. Instruction shall be independent of the system check-out and activation. Duration of system commissioning shall not affect the length of instruction time.
4. Instruction, at Owners discretion, may occur in multiple time blocks of less than eight (8) hours each.
5. AV Contractor shall be responsible for making and furnishing video documentation of instruction for future viewing to the Owner
6. AV Contractor shall provide a minimum of (4) physical storage drives to be given full ownership to the Garret College.
7. AV Contract shall include line item pricing for providing the service listed above.

END OF SECTION 27 41 16

# SECTION 280513 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balanced twisted-pair cabling.
2. Singlemode optical-fiber cabling.
3. Coaxial cabling.
4. RS-232 cabling.
5. RS-485 cabling.
6. Control-voltage cabling.
7. Control-circuit conductors.
8. Fire alarm wire and cable.
9. Identification products.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

C. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

D. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

E. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of electronic safety and security cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Installation data for cables as specified in TIA 569-D.
2. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:

    a. Nominal OD.
    b. Minimum bending radius.
    c. Maximum pulling tension.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:

    a. Cross-connects.
    b. Patch panels.
    c. Patch cords.

5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.

3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by BICSI.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test each pair of paired cables for open and short circuits.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

D. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

E. RoHS compliant.

## 2.2 CATEGORY BALANCED TWISTED-PAIR CABLE

A. Description: Shall comply with Division 27.

## 2.3 BALANCED TWISTED-PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

A. Description: Shall compl;y with Division 27.

2.4 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Description: Shall comply with Division 27.

2.5 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

2.6 Manufacturers: Shall comply with Division 27. RS-232 CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. Belden Inc.
3. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
5. Southwire Company.

B. Plenum-Type, TIA 232-F

1. Nine, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2.
3. PE insulation.
4. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
5. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
6. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
7. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.7 RS-485 CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. Belden Inc.
3. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
5. Southwire Company.

B. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 485-A Cables:

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. NFPA 70 Type: Type CM or Type CMG.

6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. NFPA 70 Type: Type CMP
6. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

## 2.8 CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. Belden Inc.
3. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
5. Southwire Company.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) andNo. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

## 2.9 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. Belden Inc.
3. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
5. Southwire Company.

B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in pathway.

C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in pathway.

D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF in pathway, complying with UL 83.

## 2.10 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
2. CommScope, Inc.
3. Comtran Corporation.
4. Draka Cableteq USA; a Prysmian Group company.
5. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
6. Radix Wire.
7. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corp.
8. Superior Essex Inc.
9. West Penn Wire.

B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG size as recommended by system manufacturer.

1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

## 2.11 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

## 2.12 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test balanced twisted-pair cables and optical-fiber cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.

C. Factory test balanced twisted-pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.

D. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results. Structural Return Loss shall be less than 20 db.

E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHOD

A. Install wiring in metal pathways and wireways.

1. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch (21 mm). Control and data-transmission wiring shall not share conduits with other building wiring systems.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
3. Comply with requirements in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
4. Comply with requirements in Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."

B. Install cable, concealed in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors when possible.

C. Wiring on Racks and within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Cable ties shall not be excessively tightened such that the transmission characteristics of the cable are altered.
3. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
4. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
5. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

6. Connect conductors associated with intrusion system that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure onto terminal blocks.
7. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams.
8. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

## 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1, NFPA 70, and TIA-568-C.1.

B. Comply with Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

C. Comply with requirements in Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for cable support installation.

D. Comply with BICSI Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual for installation of equipment in communications equipment spaces.

E. Conductors: Size according to system manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

F. Do not install conductors and cables that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

G. Install balanced twisted-pair, optical-fiber, and coaxial cables and connecting materials after spaces are complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

H. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels. Leave a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) of slack at outlet terminations and coil loosely into box after termination on outlet fitting.

I. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.

J. Maintain minimum cable bending radius during installation and termination of cables.

K. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.

L. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.

M. Pulling Cable: Monitor cable pull tensions. Do not exceed manufacturer's rated cable-pulling tension.

N. Riser Cable: Riser cable support intervals shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

O. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunication spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1525 mm) apart. Cable supports shall be fastened to structural members or floor slabs in accordance with Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
3. Cable shall not be run in contact
4. Cable shall not be run in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Cables shall not be run through structural members or use structural members, pipes, ducts, or equipment as a support.

P. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communication cables or cables in nonmetallic pathways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).

3. Separation between communication cables in grounded metallic pathways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

4. Separation between cables in grounded metallic pathways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).

c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

5. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or hp and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
6. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Luminaires: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

## 3.3 BALANCED TWISTED-PAIR CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Division 27.

## 3.4 OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with Division 27.

## 3.5 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.

B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.

C. Wiring Method:

1. Cables and pathways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is not permitted.
3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.

D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

F. Color Coding: Color code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.

H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

## 3.6 POWER AND CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" unless otherwise indicated.

B. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

## 3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 281643 "Perimeter Security Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 281600 "Intrusion Detection" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 281300 "Access Control" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 282300 "Video Surveillance" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 284619 "PLC Electronic Detention Monitoring and Control Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

## 3.8 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Comply with BICSI Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual.

## 3.9 GROUNDING

A. For communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" chapter.

B. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security."

## 3.10 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

## 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Visually inspect balanced twisted-pair and optical-fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test balanced twisted-pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross connection.

    a. Test instruments shall comply with or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords

and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

4. Optical-Fiber Cable Tests:

   a. Test instruments shall comply with or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
   b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
      1) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 db. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.1.

END OF SECTION 280513

# SECTION 280526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Signal Ground: The ground reference point designated by manufacturer of the system that is considered to have zero voltage.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
3. Panduit Corp.
4. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>

D. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.

E. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils (14.2 sq. mm), 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

## 2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
3. Hubbell Incorporated (Construction and Energy Group).
4. Panduit Corp.
5. TE Connectivity Ltd.

C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

D. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless or exothermic-type mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm) centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

E. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.3 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
3. Panduit Corp.

B. Grounding Busbars: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.)
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600 V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
4. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>

C. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with J-STD-607-A. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm long, with)stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
4. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."

1. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
2. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.

B. Signal Ground:

1. For each system, establish the signal ground and label that location as such.
2. Bond the signal ground to the alternating-current (ac) power system service by connecting to one of the following listed locations, using insulated No. 6 AWG, stranded, Type THHN wire:

a. Grounding bar in an electrical power panelboard if located in the same room or space as the signal ground.
b. Telecommunications grounding busbar.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

## 3.2 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch (900-mm) intervals.

## 3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

B. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pretwist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.

C. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the signal ground. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2 when grounding screened, balanced, twisted-pair cables.

D. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 280526

# SECTION 280528 - PATHWAYS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Optical-fiber-cable pathways and fittings.
4. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface pathways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 270543 "Underground Pathways and Structures for Communications Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
2. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, and faceplate adapters serving communications systems.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.

B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface pathways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for pathway racks, enclosures, cabinets, and equipment racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Source quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD.
2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.

2. Republic Conduit.
3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
4. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
5. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

D. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.

E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

H. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.

I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

J. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
2. Fittings for EMT:

   a. Material: Steel or die cast.
   b. Type: Setscrew or compression.

3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

K. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
2. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
3. Condux International, Inc.
4. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.

D. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

E. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

F. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.

G. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.

H. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.

I. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

J. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.

K. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

1. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for solvents and adhesives.>

## 2.3 OPTICAL-FIBER-CABLE PATHWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire.
2. Arnco Corporation.
3. Endot Industries Inc.
4. IPEX USA LLC.

5. Lamson & Sessions.

B. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible-type pathway, approved for plenum installation unless otherwise indicated.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-D.

## 2.4 SURFACE PATHWAYS

A. General Requirements for Surface Pathways:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with TIA-569-D.

B. Surface Metal Pathways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. MonoSystems, Inc.
b. Niedax Inc.
c. Panduit Corp.
d. Wiremold / Legrand.

C. Surface Nonmetallic Pathways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Hubbell Incorporated (Power Systems Group - Quazite).
b. Lamson & Sessions.
c. MonoSystems, Inc.
d. Panduit Corp.
e. Wiremold / Legrand.

D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Adalet.
2. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
3. EGS/Appleton Electric.

4. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
5. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
6. Hubbell Incorporated (Commercial and Industrial Group - RACO).
7. Hubbell Incorporated (Power Systems Group - Quazite).
8. Lamson & Sessions.
9. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
10. Molex Premise Networks.
11. MonoSystems, Inc.
12. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
13. Plasti-Bond.
14. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
15. Stahlin Non-Metallic Enclosures.
16. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
17. Wiremold / Legrand.

E. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:

1. Comply with TIA-569-D.
2. Boxes, enclosures and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

F. Sheet-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

G. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

H. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

I. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

J. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.

1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

K. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

L. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

M. Device Box Dimensions: 4" inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).

N. Gangable boxes are prohibited.

O. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

P. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 4 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures:

a. Material: Plastic.
b. Finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.

3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

Q. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.

B. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Pathway locations include the following:

a. Loading dock.
b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
c. Mechanical rooms.
d. Gymnasiums

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric-Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
7. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway.
8. Pathways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway Plenum-type, communications-cable pathway EMT.
9. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 nonmetallic in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size. Minimum size for optical-fiber cables is 1 inch (27 mm).

D. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

F. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.

G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 101, and TIA-569-D for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum pathways. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications wiring conduits for which only two 90-degree bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

I. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) <**Insert dimension**> of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC before rising above floor.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

M. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.

N. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

O. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to conduit assembly to assure a continuous ground path.

P. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.

Q. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground pathways designated as spare above grade alongside pathways in use.

R. Surface Pathways:

1. Install surface pathway for surface electrical outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
2. Install surface pathway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

S. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. 3/4-Inch (21-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
2. 1-Inch (27-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

T. Install pathway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

U. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

BB. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

CC. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

DD. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

EE. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

## 3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 280544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electronic Safety and Security Pathways and Cabling."

## 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 280528

# SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Security access central-control station.
2. One or more security access networked workstations.
3. Security access operating system and application software.
4. Security access controllers connected to high-speed electronic-data transmission network.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCTV: Closed-circuit television.

B. CPU: Central processing unit.

C. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.

D. dpi: Dots per inch.

E. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.

F. GFI: Ground fault interrupter.

G. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.

H. I/O: Input/Output.

I. LAN: Local area network.

J. Location: A Location on the network having a PC-to-controller communications link, with additional controllers at the Location connected to the PC-to-controller link with a TIA 485-A

communications loop. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.

K. PC: Personal computer. Applies to the central station, workstations, and file servers.

L. PCI Bus: Peripheral Component Interconnect. A peripheral bus providing a high-speed data path between the CPU and the peripheral devices such as a monitor, disk drive, or network.

M. PDF: Portable Document Format. The file format used by the Acrobat document-exchange-system software from Adobe.

N. RAS: Remote access services.

O. RF: Radio frequency.

P. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.

Q. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.

R. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.

S. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

T. USB: Universal serial bus.

U. WAN: Wide area network.

V. WAV: The digital audio format used in Microsoft Windows.

W. WMP: Windows media player.

X. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.

Y. Windows: Operating system by Microsoft Corporation.

Z. Workstation: A PC with software that is configured for specific, limited security-system functions.

AA. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location

on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Diagrams for cable management system.
2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:

    a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
    b. Patch cords.
    c. Patch panels.

4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, workstations, and controllers.

C. Product Schedules.

D. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, and faceplates. For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Microsoft Windows software documentation.
2. PC installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the PC and all installed peripherals. Software shall include system restore, emergency boot diskettes, and drivers for all installed hardware. Provide separately for each PC.
3. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy submittal.
4. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Alarm Printer Black/Red Ribbons: Package of 12.
2. Laser Printers: Three toner cassettes and one replacement drum unit.
3. Fuses of all kinds, power and electronic, equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size used, but no fewer than three units.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Cable installer must have on staff a registered communication distribution designer certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, workstations, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

E. Comply withSIA DC-03.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Central Station, Workstations, and Controllers:

1. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between 50 and 85 deg F (10 and 30 deg C), and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.
3. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
4. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 60 to 85 deg F (16 to 30 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
3. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h) and snow cover up to 24 inches (610 mm) thick.
4. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
5. Corrosive Environment: For system components subjected to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones, provide NEMA 250,Type 4X enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Readers: HES, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

2. Door Controllers: Lenel.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Security Access System: PC-based central station is existing Lenel On Guard.

B. Door Hardware Interface:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware" and Section 087111 "Door Hardware (Descriptive Specification)" for door hardware required to be monitored or controlled by the security access system.
2. Electrical characteristics of controllers shall match the signal and power requirements of door hardware.

## 2.3 SYSTEM DATABASE AND SOFTWARE

A. Provide database and database management software expansion to enable the addition of the readers detailed on the plans.

## 2.4 SURGE AND TAMPER PROTECTION

A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor-entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

## 2.5 CENTRAL-STATION HARDWARE

A. Central-Station Computer is existing.

## 2.6 CONTROLLERS

A. Controllers: Intelligent peripheral control unit, complying with UL 294, that stores time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data downloaded from the central station or workstation for controlling its operation.

B. Subject to compliance with requirements in this article, manufacturers may use multipurpose controllers.

C. Battery Backup: Sealed, lead acid; sized to provide run time during a power outage of 90 minutes, complying with UL 924.

D. Alarm Annunciation Controller:

1. The controller shall automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network, with dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.

a. Inputs: Monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions. Provides at least eight alarm inputs, which are suitable for wiring as normally open or normally closed contacts for alarm conditions.
b. Alarm-Line Supervision:

1) Supervise the alarm lines by monitoring each circuit for changes or disturbances in the signal by monitoring for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc change measurements. System shall initiate an alarm in response to an abnormal current, which is a dc change of 10 percent or more for longer than 500 ms.
2) Transmit alarm-line-supervision alarm to the central station during the next interrogation cycle after the abnormal current condition.

c. Outputs: Managed by central-station software.

2. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet inside the controller enclosure.

E. Entry-Control Controller:

1. Function: Provide local entry-control functions including one- and two-way communications with access-control devices such as card readers, keypads, biometric personnel identity-verification devices, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.

a. Operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the controller and the field-device network.
b. Accept information generated by the entry-control devices; automatically process this information to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal:

1) On authentication of the credentials or information presented, check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
2) Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control.

c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction. A transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.

2. Inputs:

a. Data from entry-control devices; use this input to change modes between access and secure.
b. Database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.

3. Outputs:

    a. Indicate success or failure of attempts to use entry-control devices and make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
    b. Grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
    c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
    d. Door Prop Alarm: If a portal is held open for longer than 20 seconds, alarm sounds.

4. With power supplies sufficient to power at voltage and frequency required for field devices and portal-control devices.
5. Data Line Problems: For periods of loss of communication with the central station, or when data transmission is degraded and generating continuous checksum errors, the controller shall continue to control entry by accepting identifying information, making authentication decisions, checking privileges, and controlling portal-control devices.

    a. Store up to 1000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the controller and access-control devices for subsequent upload to the central station on restoration of communication.

6. Controller Power: NFPA 70, Class II power-supply transformer, with 12- or 24-V ac secondary, backup battery and charger.

    a. Backup Battery: Premium, valve-regulated, recombinant-sealed, lead-calcium battery; spill proof; with a full one-year warranty and a pro rata 9-year warranty. With single-stage, constant-voltage-current, limited battery charger, comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current recommendations for maximum battery life.
    b. Backup Battery: Valve-regulated, recombinant-sealed, lead-acid battery; spill proof. With single-stage, constant-voltage-current, limited battery charger, comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current recommendations for maximum battery life.
    c. Backup Power-Supply Capacity: 90 minutes of battery supply. Submit battery and charger calculations.
    d. Power Monitoring: Provide manual, dynamic battery-load test, initiated and monitored at the control center; with automatic disconnection of the controller when battery voltage drops below controller limits. Report by using local controller-mounted digital displays and by communicating status to central station. Indicate normal power on and battery charger on trickle charge. Indicate and report the following:

        1) Trouble Alarm: Normal power-off load assumed by battery.
        2) Trouble Alarm: Low battery.
        3) Alarm: Power off.

## 2.7 CARD READERS, CREDENTIAL CARDS, AND KEYPADS

A. Card-Reader Power: Powered from its associated controller, including its standby power source, and shall not dissipate more than 5 W.

B. Response Time: Card reader shall respond to passage requests by generating a signal that is sent to the controller. Response time shall be 800 ms or less, from the time the card reader finishes reading the credential card until a response signal is generated.

C. Enclosure: Suitable for surface, semi-flush, pedestal, or weatherproof mounting. Mounting types shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:

1. Indoors, controlled environment.
2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
3. Outdoors, with built-in heaters or other cold-weather equipment to extend the operating temperature range as needed for operation at the site.

D. Display: Digital visual indicator shall provide visible and audible status indications and user prompts. Indicate power on or off, whether user passage requests have been accepted or rejected, and whether the door is locked or unlocked.

E. Touch-Plate and Proximity Readers:

1. Active-detection proximity card readers shall provide power to compatible credential cards through magnetic induction, and shall receive and decode a unique identification code number transmitted from the credential card.
2. Passive-detection proximity card readers shall use a swept-frequency, RF field generator to read the resonant frequencies of tuned circuits laminated into compatible credential cards. The resonant frequencies read shall constitute a unique identification code number.
3. The card reader shall read proximity cards in a range from direct contact to at least 6 inches (150 mm) from the reader.

F. Communication Protocol: Compatible with local processor.

G. Touch-Plate and Contactless Card Reader: The reader shall have "flash" download capability to accommodate card format changes. The card reader shall have capability of transmitting data to security control panel and shall comply with ISO/IEC 7816.

## 2.8 PUSH-BUTTON SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Securitron Magnalock Corporation; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

B. Push-Button Switches: Momentary-contact back-lighted push buttons with stainless-steel switch enclosures.

C. Electrical Ratings:

1. Minimum continuous current rating of 10 A at 120-V ac or 5 A at 240-V ac.
2. Contacts that will make 720 VA at 60 A and that will break at 720 VA at 10 A.

D. Enclosures: Flush or surface mounting. Push buttons shall be suitable for flush mounting in the switch enclosures.

E. Enclosures shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:

1. Indoors, controlled environment.
2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
3. Outdoors.

F. Power: Push-button switches shall be powered from their associated controller, using dc control.

## 2.9 DOOR AND GATE HARDWARE INTERFACE

A. Exit Device with Alarm: Operation of the exit device shall generate an alarm and annunciate a local alarm. Exit device and alarm contacts are specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

B. Exit Alarm: Operation of a monitored door shall generate an alarm. Exit devices and alarm contacts are specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

C. Electric Door Strikes: Use end-of-line resistors to provide power-line supervision. Signal switches shall transmit data to controller to indicate when the bolt is not engaged and the strike mechanism is unlocked, and they shall report a forced entry. Power and signal shall be from the controller. Electric strikes are specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

D. Electromagnetic Locks: End-of-line resistors shall provide power-line supervision. Lock status sensing signal shall positively indicate door is secure. Power and signal shall be from the controller. Electromagnetic locks are specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

E. Vehicle Gate Operator: Interface electrical operation of gate with controls in this Section. Vehicle gate operators shall be connected, monitored, and controlled by the security access controllers. Vehicle gate and accessories are specified in Section 323113 "Chain Link Fences and Gates."

## 2.10 FIELD-PROCESSING SOFTWARE

A. Operating System:

1. Local processors shall contain an operating system that controls and schedules that local processor's activities in real time.
2. Local processor shall maintain a point database in its memory that includes parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of all points connected to that local processor.
3. Execution of local processor application programs shall utilize the data in memory resident files.

4. Operating system shall include a real-time clock function that maintains the seconds, minutes, hours, date, and month, including day of the week.
5. Local processor real-time clock shall be automatically synchronized with the central station at least once per day to plus or minus 10 seconds (the time synchronization shall be accomplished automatically, without operator action and without requiring system shutdown).

B. Startup Software:

1. Causes automatic commencement of operation without human intervention, including startup of all connected I/O functions.
2. Local processor restart program based on detection of power failure at the local processor shall be included in the local processor software.
3. Initiates operation of self-test diagnostic routines.
4. Upon failure of the local processor, if the database and application software are no longer resident, the local processor shall not restart and systems shall remain in the failure mode indicated until the necessary repairs are made.
5. If the database and application programs are resident, the local processor shall immediately resume operation.

C. Operating Mode:

1. Local processors shall control and monitor inputs and outputs as specified, independent of communications with the central station or designated workstations.
2. Alarms, status changes, and other data shall be transmitted to the central station or designated workstations when communications circuits are operable.
3. If communications are not available, each local processor shall function in a stand-alone mode and operational data, including the status and alarm data normally transmitted to the central station or designated workstations, shall be stored for later transmission to the central station or designated workstations.
4. Storage for the latest 4000 events shall be provided at local processors, as a minimum.
5. Local processors shall accept software downloaded from the central station.
6. Panel shall support flash ROM technology to accomplish firmware downloads from a central location.

D. Failure Mode: Upon failure for any reason, each local processor shall perform an orderly shutdown and force all local processor outputs to a predetermined (failure-mode) state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device.

E. Functions:

1. Monitoring of inputs.
2. Control of outputs.
3. Reporting of alarms automatically to the central station.
4. Reporting of sensor and output status to central station upon request.
5. Maintenance of real time, automatically updated by the central station at least once a day.
6. Communication with the central station.
7. Execution of local processor resident programs.
8. Diagnostics.

9. Download and upload data to and from the central station.

## 2.11 FIELD-PROCESSING HARDWARE

A. Alarm Annunciation Local Processor:

1. Respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.
2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
4. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
5. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
6. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 milliseconds.
7. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central computer during the next interrogation cycle.
8. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
9. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
10. Local processor shall have at least four command outputs.
11. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.

B. Processor Power Supply:

1. Local processor and sensors shall be powered from an uninterruptible power source.
2. Uninterruptible power source shall provide eight hours of battery back-up power in the event of primary power failure and shall automatically fully recharge the batteries within 12 hours after primary power is restored.
3. If the facility is without an emergency generator, the uninterruptible power source shall provide 24 hours of battery backup power.
4. There shall be no equipment malfunctions or perturbations or loss of data during the switch from primary to battery power and vice versa.
5. Batteries shall be sealed, non-outgassing type.
6. Power supply shall be equipped with an indicator for ac input power and an indicator for dc output power.
7. Loss of primary power shall be reported to the central station as an alarm.

C. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet shall be furnished inside the local processor's enclosure.

D. Entry-Control Local Processor:

1. Entry-control local processor shall respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.
2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Entry-control local processor shall provide local entry-control functions including communicating with field devices such as card readers, keypads, biometric personnel identity-verification devices, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.
4. Processor shall also accept data from entry-control field devices as well as database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.
5. Processor shall send indications of successful or failed attempts to use entry-control field devices and shall make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
6. Processor shall grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
7. Entry-control local processor shall use inputs from entry-control devices to change modes between access and secure.
8. Local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
9. Processor shall operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station.
10. Processor shall store a minimum of 4000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station for subsequent upload to the central station upon restoration of communication.
11. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
12. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall also provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
13. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
14. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 ms.
15. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central station during the next interrogation cycle.
16. Entry-control local processor shall include the necessary software drivers to communicate with entry-control field devices. Information generated by the entry-control field devices shall be accepted by the local processor and automatically processed to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal.
17. Upon authentication of the credentials or information presented, the local processor shall automatically check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.

18. Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control. The local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction.
19. Transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.
20. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
21. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
22. Local processor shall have at least four addressable outputs.
23. The entry-control local processor shall also provide control outputs to portal-control devices.
24. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.
25. The system manufacturer shall provide strategies for downloading database information for panel configurations and cardholder data to minimize the required download time when using IP connectivity.

## 2.12 TIA 232-F ASCII INTERFACE SPECIFICATIONS

A. ASCII interface shall allow TIA 232-F connections to be made between the control station operating as the host PC and any equipment that will accept TIA 232-F ASCII command strings, such as CCTV switches, intercoms, and paging systems.

1. Alarm inputs in system shall allow for individual programming to output up to four unique ASCII character strings through two different COM ports on the host PC.
2. Inputs shall have the ability to be defined to transmit a unique ASCII string for alarm and one for restore through one COM port, and a unique ASCII string for a nonalarm, abnormal condition and one for a normal condition through the same or different COM port.
3. Predefined ASCII character strings shall have the ability to be up to 420 characters long with full use of all the ASCII control characters, such as return or line feed. Character strings shall be defined in the system database and then assigned to the appropriate inputs.
4. COM ports of the host PC used to interface with external equipment shall be defined in the setup portion of the software. COM port's baud rate, word length, stop bits, and parity shall be definable in the software to match that of the external equipment.

B. Pager-System Interface: Alarms shall be able to activate a pager system with customized message for each input alarm.

1. TIA 232-F output shall be capable of connection to a pager interface that can be used to call a paging system or service and send a signal to a portable pager. System shall allow an individual alphanumeric message per alarm input to be sent to the paging system. This interface shall support both numeric and alphanumeric pagers.

C. Alarm-System Interface:

1. TIA 232-F output shall be capable of transmitting alarms from other monitoring and alarm systems to central-station automation software.
2. Alternatively, alarms that are received by this access-control system are to be transferred to the alarm automation system as if they were sent through a digital alarm receiver.

    a. System shall be able to transmit an individual message from any alarm input to a burglar-alarm automation monitoring system.
    b. System shall be able to append to each message a predefined set of character strings as a prefix and a suffix.

## 2.13 FLOOR-SELECT ELEVATOR CONTROL

A. Elevator access control shall be integral to security access.

1. System shall be capable of providing full elevator security and control through dedicated controllers without relying on the control-station host PC for elevator control decisions.
2. Access-control system shall enable and disable car calls on each floor and floor-select buttons in each elevator car, restricting passengers' access to the floors where they have been given access.
3. System setup shall, through programming, automatically and individually secure and unsecure each floor-select button of a car by time and day. Each floor-select button within a car shall be separately controlled so that some floors may be secure while others remain unsecure.
4. When a floor-select button is secure, it shall require the passenger to use his or her access code and gain access to that floor before the floor-select button will operate. The passenger's credential shall determine which car call and floor-select buttons are to be enabled, restricting access to floors unless authorized by the system's access code database. Floor-select button shall be enabled only in the car where the credential holder is the passenger.

B. Security access system shall record which call button is pressed, along with credential and time information.

1. System controller shall record elevator access data.
2. The controller shall reset all additional call buttons that may have been enabled by the user's credential.
3. The floor-select elevator control shall allow for manual override from a workstation PC either by individual floor or by cab.

## 2.14 REAL-TIME GUARD TOUR

A. Guard tour module shall provide the ability to plan, track, and route tours. Module shall input an alarm during tour if guard fails to make a station. Tours can be programmed for sequential or random tour-station order.

1. Guard tour setup shall define specific routes or tours for the guard to take, with time restrictions in which to reach every predefined tour station.

2. Guard tour activity shall be automatically logged to the central-station PC's hard drive.
3. If the guard is early or late to a tour station, a unique alarm per station shall appear at the central station to indicate the time and station.
4. Guard tour setup shall allow the tours to be executed sequentially or in a random order with an overall time limit set for the entire tour instead of individual times for each tour station.
5. Setup shall allow recording of predefined responses that will display for the operator at the control station should a "Failed to Check In" alarm occur.

B. Guard tour module shall allow proprietary direct-connected systems to use security access-control hardware to perform guard tour management in real time.

C. A tour station is a physical location where a guard shall go and perform an action indicating that he or she has arrived. This action, performed at the tour station, shall be one of 13 different events with any combination of station types within the same tour. An event at a tour station shall be one of the following types:

1. Access Granted.
2. Access Denied Code.
3. Access Denied Card plus PIN.
4. Access Denied Time Zone.
5. Access Denied Level.
6. Access Denied Facility.
7. Access Denied Code Timer.
8. Access Denied Anti-Passback.
9. Access Granted Passback Violation.
10. Alarm.
11. Restored.
12. Input Normal.
13. Input Abnormal.

D. Guard tour and other system features shall operate simultaneously with no interference.

E. Guard Tour Module Capacity: 999 possible guard tour definitions with each tour having up to 99 tour stations. System shall allow all 999 tours to be running at the same time.

## 2.15 VIDEO AND CAMERA CONTROL

A. Control station or designated workstation displays live video from a CCTV source.

1. Control Buttons: On the display window, with separate control buttons to represent Left, Right, Up, Down, Zoom In, Zoom Out, Scan, and a minimum of two custom-command auxiliary controls.
2. Provide at least seven icons to represent different types of cameras, with ability to import custom icons. Provide option for display of icons on graphic maps to represent their physical location.
3. Provide the alarm-handling window with a command button that will display the camera associated with the alarm point.

B. Display mouse-selectable icons representing each camera source, to select source to be displayed. For CCTV sources that are connected to a video switcher, control station shall automatically send control commands through a COM port to display the requested camera when the camera icon is selected.

C. Allow cameras with preset positioning to be defined by displaying a different icon for each of the presets. Provide control with Next and Previous buttons to allow operator to cycle quickly through the preset positions.

## 2.16 CABLES

A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirement.

B. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 232-F Cables:

1. Two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, and individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; PVC jacket.
2. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
3. NFPA 70, Type CM.
4. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

C. Plenum-Type, TIA 232-F Cables:

1. Two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, and individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; plastic jacket.
2. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
3. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
4. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

D. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 485-A Cables: Two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, PVC jacket, and NFPA 70, Type CMG.

E. Plenum-Type, TIA 485-A Cables:

1. Two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, unshielded, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

F. Multiconductor, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. No. 22 AWG, paired and twisted multiple conductors, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, semirigid PVC insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage, plus tinned copper braid shield with 65 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.
4. For TIA 232-F applications.

G. Paired, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Three pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CM.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

H. Paired, PVC, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Three pairs, twisted, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned copper conductors, polyethylene (polyolefin) insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded (19x34) tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CM.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

I. Paired, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Three pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polypropylene-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

J. Multiconductor, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:

1. Six conductors, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage plus tinned copper braid shield with 85 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

K. Paired, Lock Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.

3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

L. Paired, Plenum-Type, Lock Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

M. Paired, Lock Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1581 vertical tray.

N. Paired, Plenum-Type, Lock Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, unshielded, and plastic jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

O. Paired, Input Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMR.
3. Flame Resistance: UL 1666 riser flame test.

P. Paired, Plenum-Type, Input Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield (foil side out), with No. 22 AWG drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and plastic jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

Q. Paired, AC Transformer Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (7x26) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, and PVC jacket.
2. NFPA 70, Type CMG.

R. Paired, Plenum-Type, AC Transformer Cables:

1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, unshielded, and plastic jacket.

2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

S. Elevator Travel Cables:

1. Steel center core with shielded, twisted pairs, No. 20 AWG conductor size.
2. Steel center core support shall be preformed, flexible, low-torsion, zinc-coated, steel wire rope; insulated with 60 deg C flame-resistant PVC and covered with a nylon or cotton braid.
3. Shielded pairs shall be insulated copper conductors; color-coded, insulated with 60 deg C flame-resistant PVC; each pair shielded with bare copper braid for 85 percent coverage.
4. Electrical grade, dry jute filler.
5. Helically wound synthetic fiber binder.
6. Rayon or cotton braid applied with 95 percent coverage.
7. 60 deg C PVC jacket specifically compounded for flexibility and abrasion resistance; and complying with UL VW-1 and CSA FT1 flame rated.

T. LAN Cabling:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."
2. NFPA 262.

## 2.17 TRANSFORMERS

A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.

B. Comply with TIA/EIA 606-A, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."

C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.

1. Record setup data for control station and workstations.
2. For each Location, record setup of controller features and access requirements.
3. Propose start and stop times for time zones and holidays, and match up access levels for doors.
4. Set up groups, facility codes, linking, and list inputs and outputs for each controller.
5. Assign action message names and compose messages.
6. Set up alarms. Establish interlocks between alarms, intruder detection, and video surveillance features.
7. Prepare and install alarm graphic maps.
8. Develop user-defined fields.
9. Develop screen layout formats.
10. Propose setups for guard tours and key control.
11. Discuss badge layout options; design badges.
12. Complete system diagnostics and operation verification.
13. Prepare a specific plan for system testing, startup, and demonstration.
14. Develop acceptance test concept and, on approval, develop specifics of the test.
15. Develop cable and asset-management system details; input data from construction documents. Include system schematics and Visio Technical Drawings in electronic format.

D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

## 3.3 CABLING

A. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."

B. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."

C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

D. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use NRTL-listed plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

E. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5E rating of components and fiber-optic rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and fiber-optic performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.

F. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.

G. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

## 3.4 CABLE APPLICATION

A. Comply with TIA 569-B, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."

B. Cable application requirements are minimum requirements and shall be exceeded if recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.

C. TIA 232-F Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 50 ft. (15 m).

D. TIA 485-A Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 4000 ft. (1220 m).

E. Card Readers and Keypads:

1. Install number of conductor pairs recommended by manufacturer for the functions specified.
2. Unless manufacturer recommends larger conductors, install No. 22 AWG wire if maximum distance from controller to the reader is 250 ft. (75 m), and install No. 20 AWG wire if maximum distance is 500 ft. (150 m).
3. For greater distances, install "extender" or "repeater" modules recommended by manufacturer of the controller.
4. Install minimum No. 18 AWG shielded cable to readers and keypads that draw 50 mA or more.

F. Install minimum No. 16 AWG cable from controller to electrically powered locks. Do not exceed 250 ft. (75 m).

G. Install minimum No. 18 AWG ac power wire from transformer to controller, with a maximum distance of 25 ft. (8 m).

## 3.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with Section 280526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security."

B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."

C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.

E. Signal Ground:

1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

## 3.6 INSTALLATION

A. Push Buttons: Where multiple push buttons are housed within a single switch enclosure, they shall be stacked vertically with each push-button switch labeled with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) high text and symbols as required. Push-button switches shall be connected to the controller associated with the portal to which they are applied, and shall operate the appropriate electric strike, electric bolt, or other facility release device.

B. Install card readers, keypads, push buttons, and biometric readers.

## 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and with TIA/EIA 606-A.

B. Using software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article, develop cable administration drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with the same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.

C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.

D. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

## 3.8 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

## 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use Class 2, bidirectional, Category 5 tester. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA/EIA 568-B.1, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for UTP cables must comply with minimum criteria in TIA/EIA 568-B.1.
2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.
3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.

C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.10 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

## 3.11 PROTECTION

A. Maintain strict security during the installation of equipment and software. Rooms housing the control station, and workstations that have been powered up shall be locked and secured with an activated burglar alarm and access-control system reporting to a central station complying with UL 1610, "Central-Station Burglar-Alarm Units," during periods when a qualified operator in the employ of Contractor is not present.

## 3.12 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system. See Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

B. Develop separate training modules for the following:

1. Computer system administration personnel to manage and repair the LAN and databases and to update and maintain software.
2. Operators who prepare and input credentials to man the control station and workstations and to enroll personnel.
3. Security personnel.
4. Hardware maintenance personnel.
5. Corporate management.

END OF SECTION 281300

# SECTION 282000 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE

Revise this Section by deleting and inserting text to meet Project-specific requirements.

Verify that Section titles referenced in this Section are correct for this Project's Specifications; Section titles may have changed.

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Retain or delete this article in all Sections of Project Manual.

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, digital video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.

B. Related Requirements:

Retain subparagraph below to cross-reference requirements Contractor might expect to find in this Section but are specified in other Sections.

1. Section 281300 "Access Control System Software and Database Management" to integrate access control system interface and control.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

Retain definition(s) remaining after this Section has been edited.

A. AGC: Automatic gain control.

B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.

C. B/W: Black and white.

D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.

E. FTP: File transfer protocol.

F. IP: Internet protocol.

G. LAN: Local area network.

H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.

I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.

J. PC: Personal computer.

K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.

L. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.

M. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.

N. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

O. WAN: Wide area network.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

Retain first paragraph below if custom equipment, such as operator panels and consoles, is specified in this Section. Coordinate with Drawings.

B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
4. UPS: Sizing calculations.

Retain subparagraph below if equipment includes wiring.

5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Design Data: Include an equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting

record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

Retain first paragraph below if required by seismic criteria applicable to Project. Coordinate with Sections specifying electrical supports and seismic controls. See ASCE/SEI 7 for certification requirements for equipment and components.

A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for cameras, camera-supporting equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

Retain first paragraph below if Contractor is responsible for field quality-control testing and inspecting.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Product Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

Retain subparagraphs below; revise conditions and specify features required to provide satisfactory service. See Editing Instruction No. 2 in the Evaluations for discussion of service conditions.

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 60 to 85 deg F (16 to 29 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
3. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non-air-conditioned temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
4. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h) and snow cover up to 24 inches (610 mm) thick. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.
5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
6. Corrosive Environment: System components subject to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.
7. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

When warranties are required, verify with Owner's counsel that special warranties stated in this article are not less than remedies available to Owner under prevailing local laws.

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

Verify available warranties and warranty periods for units and components with manufacturers listed in Part 2 articles.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Manufacturers and products listed in SpecAgent and MasterWorks Paragraph Builder are neither recommended nor endorsed by the AIA or Avitru. Before inserting names, verify that manufacturers and products listed there comply with requirements retained or revised in descriptions and are both available and suitable for the intended applications. For definitions of terms and requirements for Contractor's product selection, see Section 016000 "Product Requirements."

## 2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video. Composite video-signal termination shall be 75 ohms.

B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Retain this article with "Seismic Qualification Data" Paragraph in "Informational Submittals" Article for projects requiring seismic design. Model building codes and ASCE/SEI 7 establish criteria for buildings subject to earthquake motions. Verify requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

A. Seismic Performance: Video surveillance system shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

Retain subparagraph below to define the term "withstand" as it applies to this Project. Definition varies with type of building and occupancy and is critical to valid certification. Option is used for essential facilities where equipment must operate immediately after an earthquake.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

Retain paragraph below if integrating video surveillance system with access-control system.

E. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

## 2.3 STANDARD CAMERAS

See the Camera Schedule in the Evaluations. If cameras are scheduled on Drawings, revise camera characteristics accordingly.

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Axis Communications.
.

B. Color Camera:

Retain first subparagraph below for intrusion-detection units only.

1. Comply with UL 639.
2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 2 mega ) pixels.
3. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
4. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.

Retain one of first two subparagraphs below. See the "Cameras and Lenses" Article in the Evaluations for a discussion about specifying camera sensitivity. If retaining first subparagraph, insert light level and f-stop from manufacturer's data sheet. Light level and f-stop are associated with the camera and do not specify the lens. Specify lens speed in a schedule.

5. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
6. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by internally generated synchronization signal.
7. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
8. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.

C. Automatic Color Dome Camera: Assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera, motorized pan and tilt, zoom lens, and receiver/driver.

Retain first subparagraph below for intrusion-detection units only.

1. Comply with UL 639.
2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 2 mega pixels.
3. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
4. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.

Retain one of first two subparagraphs below. See the "Cameras and Lenses" Article in the Evaluations for a discussion about specifying camera sensitivity. If retaining first subparagraph, insert light level and f-stop from manufacturer's data sheet. Light level and f-stop are associated with the camera and do not specify the lens. Specify lens speed in a schedule.

5. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.

6. Preset Positioning: Eight user-definable scenes, each allowing 16-character titles. Controls shall include the following:

    a. In "sequence mode," camera shall continuously sequence through preset positions, with dwell time and sequencing under operator control.
    b. Motion detection shall be available at each camera position.
    c. Up to four preset positions may be selected to be activated by an alarm. Each of the alarm positions may be programmed to output a response signal.

7. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by internally generated synchronization signal.
8. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
9. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.

## 2.4 LENSES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Axis Communications.

B. Description: Optical-quality coated lens, designed specifically for video-surveillance applications and matched to specified camera. Provide color-corrected lenses with color cameras.

Coordinate subparagraphs below with Drawings. See the Camera Schedule in the Evaluations.

1. Auto-Iris Lens: Electrically controlled iris with circuit set to maintain a constant video level in varying lighting conditions.
2. Fixed Lens: With calibrated focus ring.
3. Zoom Lens: Motorized, remote-controlled unit, rated as "quiet operating." Features include the following:

    a. Electrical Leads: Filtered to minimize video signal interference.
    b. Motor Speed: Variable.
    c. Lens shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of specific scenes.

## 2.5 POWER SUPPLIES

A. Low-voltage power supplies matched for voltage and current requirements of cameras and accessories, and of type as recommended by manufacturer of camera, infrared illuminator, and lens.

1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1.

## 2.6 INFRARED ILLUMINATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Axis Communications.

See Editing Instruction No. 3 in the Evaluations for discussion of infrared illuminators and associated cameras.

B. Description: Lighting fixtures that emit light only in the infrared spectrum, suitable for use with cameras indicated, for nighttime surveillance, without emitting visible light.

1. Field-Selectable Beam Patterns: Narrow, medium, and wide.
2. Rated Lamp Life: More than 8000 hours.
3. Power Supply: PoE.

Retain first paragraph below if areas are not shown on Drawings.

C. Area Coverage: Illumination to 150 feet (50 m) in a narrow beam pattern.

See Editing Instruction No. 2 in the Evaluations for discussion of ambient conditions.

D. Exterior housings shall be suitable for same environmental conditions as the associated camera.

## 2.7 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Axis Communications.

Retain first paragraph below if Project is in a seismic area. Revise to insert wind and seismic loads to be carried by housings, illuminators, and pan-and-tilt units.

B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.

C. Pan Units: Motorized automatic-scanning units arranged to provide remote-controlled manual and automatic camera panning action, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.

1. Scanning Operation: Silent, smooth, and positive.
2. Stops: Adjustable without disassembly, to limit the scanning arc.

D. Pan-and-Tilt Units: Motorized units arranged to provide remote-controlled aiming of cameras with smooth and silent operation, and equipped with matching mounting brackets.

1. Panning Rotation: 0 to 355 degrees, with adjustable stops.
2. Tilt Movement: 90 degrees, plus or minus 5 degrees, with adjustable stops.

3. Speed: 12 degrees per second in both horizontal and vertical planes.
4. Wiring: Factory prewired for camera and zoom lens functions and pan-and-tilt power and control.

Retain first subparagraph below to require displaying pan-and-tilt information at control station. Delete optional text if heater is provided in camera enclosure.

5. Built-in encoders or potentiometers for position feedback, and thermostat-controlled heater.

Retain subparagraph below if any pan-and-tilt unit is remotely controlled and is scheduled with computer-controlled preset positioning feature.

6. Pan-and-tilt unit shall be available with preset positioning capability to recall the position of a specific scene.

Coordinate first paragraph below with Drawings.

E. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.

F. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: Steel or 6061 T6 aluminum enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.

Retain first subparagraph below if part of intrusion-detection system. Coordinate requirements with Section 283100 "Intrusion Detection."

1. Tamper switch on access cover sounds an alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central-control unit shall identify tamper alarms and indicate location in alarm display. Tamper switches and central-control unit are specified in Section 283100 "Intrusion Detection."
2. Camera Viewing Window: Lexan window, aligned with camera lens.
3. Duplex Receptacle: Internally mounted.
4. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
5. Built-in, thermostat-activated heater units. Units shall be automatically controlled so the environmental limits of the camera equipment are not exceeded.
6. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
7. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
8. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

See Editing Instruction No. 4 in the Evaluations for discussion of enclosure ratings.

9. Enclosure Rating: IP 67.

2.8 MONITORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Panasonic Corporation of North America.
2. Samsung Opto-Electronics.
3. SANYO North America Corporation.
4. Toshiba Corporation.

B. Color:

1. Provide 2 Video Surveuillance monitotr in Building 750, location as directed by College.

Retain first subparagraph below if screen size is not indicated on Drawings.

2. Screen Size (Diagonal Dimension): minimum of 48” diagonal, 9:12 ratio.
3. Resolution: 3840 x 2160 pixels.
4. Electrical: 120-V ac, 60 Hz.

2.9 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following running Milestone video management software:

1. Dell.

B. Internal 8 TB of hard disk drive.

1. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
2. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
3. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
4. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
5. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
6. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
7. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
8. Digital certification by watermarking.
9. Internal RAID storage.
10. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software.
11. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
12. Supports all new devices plus 20% future devices.
13. Include all software licenses, and assign same to College.

## 2.10 IP VIDEO SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products compatible with cameras by the following:

1. Axis Communications.

B. Description:

1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.
6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards.
7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN.
8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, PTZ joysticks, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.

## 2.11 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

A. Cable: Category cable, IP network, PoE with RJ-45 jacks and plugs.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 WIRING

Retain one of first two paragraphs below. Delete both if wiring method is indicated on Drawings.

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.

Retain one or both of first two subparagraphs below to make exceptions to the wiring method specified above.

1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

E. For communication wiring, comply with the following:
1. Division 27.

Retain paragraph below only if required by manufacturer. Show independent-signal circuit-grounding methods and details on Drawings.

F. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

## 3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.

Coordinate first paragraph below with Drawings.

B. Install cameras with 84-inch- (2134-mm-) minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.

C. Set pan unit and pan-and-tilt unit stops to suit final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.

D. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.

Retain first paragraph below if not indicated on Drawings, or coordinate with Drawings, schedules, and other Sections. Indicate which components are to be fitted with tamper switches and which Section covers tamper-switch connection.

E. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Division 27.

F. Assign all software licenses to the College.

G. Set passwords as directed by the College.

H. Delete all factory set passwords.

## 3.4 DISPLAY AND STORAGE EQUIPEMENT

A. Install displays and storage server in existing security control area in building 750, in location directed by the College. Adjust location of existing displays and storage as required to suit new installation.

B. Program all new cameras and software.

C. Set passwords as directed by college.

D. Delete factory set passwords.

E. Assign all software licenses to the College.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Retain first paragraph below to identify who shall perform tests and inspections. If retaining second option in first paragraph, or if retaining second or third paragraph, retain "Field quality-control reports" Paragraph in "Informational Submittals" Article.

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

Retain first paragraph below to require a factory-authorized service representative to perform inspections, tests, and adjustments.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

Retain first paragraph below to require Contractor to perform tests and inspections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

Retain subparagraph below to require a factory-authorized service representative to assist Contractor with inspections, tests, and adjustments.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

Retain first paragraph below to describe tests and inspections to be performed.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:

    a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
    b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
    c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
    d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m) away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
    e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
    f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
    g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
    h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.

3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.

See Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

E. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Check cable connections.
2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

## 3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

## 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 282000

# SECTION 284621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Device guards.
7. Magnetic door holders.
8. Remote annunciator.
9. Graphic annunciator.
10. Addressable interface device.
11. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
12. Network communications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.

B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.

C. HLI: High Level Interface.

D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

E. PC: Personal computer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within the airflow range of the air-sampling detector.
12. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.

    a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
    b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
    c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' control system.
    d. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
    e. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
    f. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.

13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
14. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.

2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

    a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
    b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
    c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:

    a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
    b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
    d. Riser diagram.
    e. Device addresses.
    f. Record copy of site-specific software.

g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:

1) Equipment tested.
2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.

h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.

C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by an NRTL (nationally recognized testing laboratory).

## 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Perform a full test of the existing system prior to starting work. Document any equipment or components not functioning as designed.

B. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Owner's written permission.

C. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.10 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational in adjacent occupied spaces. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service, and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.

B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components shall be compatible with, and operate as an extension of, the existing Edwards Fireworks EST3 system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.

B. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation.

C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.

D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Smoke detectors.

4. Duct smoke detectors.
5. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
6. Preaction system.
7. Fire standpipe system.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit, connected network control panels, off-premises network control panels, and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
8. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
9. Activate preaction system.
10. Activate emergency lighting control.
11. Record events in the system memory.
12. Record events by the system printer.
13. Indicate device in alarm on the graphic annunciator.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. Alert and Action signals of air-sampling detector system.
3. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
4. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit, connected network control panels, off-premises network control panels, and remote annunciators.

3. Record the event on system printer.
4. After a time delay of 200 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Transmit system status to building management system.
6. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

## 2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Edwards FireWorks EST3

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.

    a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
    b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
    c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
    d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
    e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.

2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.

C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.

D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:

1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A.
2. Pathway Survivability: Level 0.
3. Install no more than**256** addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.

4. Serial Interfaces:

    a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.
    b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
    c. One RS 232 port for PC configuration.
    d. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.

E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:

1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.

G. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.

H. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

I. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.

1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.

a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.

2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.

K. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also, print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

L. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters and digital alarm radio transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

M. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

N. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

## 2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Edwards.

B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show

visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

## 2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Edwards.

B.

C. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.

    a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
    b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
    c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
    d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

D. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

E. Ionization Smoke Detector:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Edwards.

B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.

C. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

A. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Edwards.

2.7

A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

B. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.

1. Rated Light Output:
   a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.

2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.

C. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:

1. Comply with UL 1480.
2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.

3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
5. Mounting: Flush.
6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

## 2.8 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.

1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf (111-N) holding force.
2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
4. Rating: 120-V ac.

B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

## 2.9 GRAPHIC ANNUNCIATOR

A. Modify existing graphic annunciator located at the entrance to the Student Center Building 400.

B. This graphic annunciator shall be upgraded to include the new Performing Arts Building on graphic and to include annunciation of new devices in the new Performing Arts Building.

1. Comply with UL 864.

2.10 Graphic representation of the facility shall be a CAD drawing and each detector shall be represented by an LED in its actual location. CAD drawing shall be at same scale as existing graphic.REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

## 2.11 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. General:

1. Include address-setting means on the module.
2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.

3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.

B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

C. Control Module:

1. Operate notification devices.
2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

## 2.12 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632.

B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically send external signal via internet communicators in compliance with NFPA 72. Therefore, the internet network switch shall be compliant with the requirements of NFPA 72 and shall be connected to NEC 700 power. Network switch shall be provided with UPS battery to maintain power to the system until the emergency generator is on line. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service is lost, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:

1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
2. Programming device.
3. LED display.
4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.

D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:

1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
2. Address of the supervisory signal.
3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply.
5. Loss of power.
6. Low battery.
7. Abnormal test signal.
8. Communication bus failure.

E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.

F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

## 2.13 RADIO ALARM TRANSMITTER

A. Transmitter shall comply with NFPA 1221 and 47 CFR 90.

B. Description: Manufacturer's standard commercial product; factory assembled, wired, and tested; ready for installation and operation.

1. Packaging: A single, modular, NEMA 250, Type 1 metal enclosure with a tamper-resistant flush tumbler lock.
2. Signal Transmission Mode and Frequency: VHF or UHF 2-W power output, coordinated with operating characteristics of the established remote alarm receiving station designated by Owner.
3. Normal Power Input: 120-V ac.
4. Secondary Power: Integral-sealed, rechargeable, 12-V battery and charger. Comply with NFPA 72 requirements for battery capacity; submit calculations.
5. Alarm Interface Devices: Circuit boards, modules, and other auxiliary devices, integral to the transmitter, matching fire-alarm and other system outputs to message-generating inputs of the transmitter that produce required message transmissions.

C. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit or from its own internal sensors or controls and shall automatically transmit signal along with a unique code that identifies the transmitting station to the remote alarm receiving station. Transmitted messages shall correspond to standard designations for fire-reporting system to which the signal is being transmitted and shall include separately designated messages in response to the following events or conditions:

1. Transmitter Low-Battery Condition: Sent when battery voltage is below 85 percent of rated value.
2. System Test Message: Initiated manually by a test switch within the transmitter cabinet, or automatically at an optionally preselected time, once every 24 hours, with transmission time controlled by a programmed timing device integral to transmitter controls.
3. Transmitter Trouble Message: Actuated by failure, in excess of one-minute duration, of the transmitter normal power source, derangement of the wiring of the transmitter, or any alarm input interface circuit or device connected to it.
4. Local Fire-Alarm-System Trouble Message: Initiated by events or conditions that cause a trouble signal to be indicated on the building system.
5. Local Fire-Alarm-System Alarm Message: Actuated when the building system goes into an alarm state. Identifies device that initiated the alarm.
6. Local Fire-Alarm-System, Supervisory-Alarm Message: Actuated when the building alarm system indicates a supervisory alarm.

## 2.14 NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

A. Provide network communications for fire-alarm system according to fire-alarm manufacturer's written requirements.

B. Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written requirements and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.

C. Provide integration gateway using BACnet for connection to building automation system.

## 2.15 SYSTEM PRINTER

A. Printer shall be listed and labeled as an integral part of fire-alarm system.

## 2.16 DEVICE GUARDS

A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.

1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."

1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.

B. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.

1. Connect new fire alarm panel to existing campus network

C. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches (1980 mm) above the finished floor.

D. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:

1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches (1520 mm) of the exit doorway.
2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches (1060 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

E. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m).
4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A [**or Annex B** ]in NFPA 72.
5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches (910 mm) from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.

F. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.

G. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches (9100 mm) long shall be supported at both ends.

1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.

H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

## 3.3 PATHWAYS

A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in nonaccessible locations may be routed exposed.

1. Exposed pathways located less than 96 inches (2440 mm) above the floor shall be installed in EMT.

B. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.

C. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

## 3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.

1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.

B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches (910 mm) from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
2. Magnetically held-open doors.
3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
4. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
5. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
6. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

## 3.6 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform tests and inspections.

D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

    a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

## 3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

## 3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 284621.11

# SECTION 311000 – SITE CLEARING

## PART 1 GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Removing existing vegetation.
3. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
4. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
5. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and/or removing site utilities and abandoning site utilities in place.
6. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for soil materials, excavating, backfilling and site grading.
2. Division 32 Section “Turf and Grasses” for finish grading including preparing and placing planting soil mixes and testing of topsoil material.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt and clay particles; friable and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials.

B. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Critical Root Zone: As a distance of three feet equal distance from the truck, for each inch of trunk diameter.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

A. Except for materials indicated to remain on Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-clearing photograph or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.

B. Record Drawings, according to Division 01 identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section “Project Management and Coordination.”
   1. Identify and accurately locate utilities and other substructure structural, electrical and mechanical conditions.

B. Topsoil Stripping and Stockpiling Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement and protection of stockpiles.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
   1. Do not close or obstruct roads, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner.
   2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner.

B. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.

C. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place.

D. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards tree protection zones.

E. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources and smoking within or near tree protection zones.

F. Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones: Protect according to requirements in the Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, Notes and Details sheet.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 3.1 MATERIALS

A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
   1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site.

## PART 3 - GENERAL

### 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.

B. Locate and clearly identify vegetation to remain or to be relocated.

C. Verify that trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated have been flagged and that protection zones have been identified and enclosed according to requirements in the Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, Notes and Details sheet.

D. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
   1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to Maryland Department of Environment (MDE) approved erosion- and sedimentation-control drawings.

B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree protection zones.

C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.

D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

## 3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

A. Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in the Erosion and Sediment Control Plan, Notes and Details sheet.

B. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations according to requirements in the Erosion and Sediment Control Plan Notes, and Details sheet.

## 3.4 UTILITIES.

A. Locate, identify, disconnect and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed or abandoned in place.
   1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
   2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by contractor

B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Architect not less than 72 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
   2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.

## 3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

A. Remove obstructions and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction as indicated on the Site Plan.

B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
   1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of **8 inches**, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

## 3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.

B. Strip topsoil to depth of 4 inches in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.

   1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects larger than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.

C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil or other materials. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.

1. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 120 inches**.**
2. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
3. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
4. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.

## 3.7 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove all excavated material, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 311000

# SECTION 312000 – EARTH MOVING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade walks, pavements, turf and grasses and plants.
   2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
   3. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
   4. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
   5. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
   6. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
   7. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for protecting and trimming vegetation remaining on-site that are affected by site operations.
   2. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   3. Divisions 21, 22, 23, 26, 27 and 28 Sections for installing underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical structures.
   4. Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing" for temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, site stripping, grubbing, stripping topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
   5. Section 31 23 19 "Dewatering" for lowering and disposing of ground water during construction.
   6. Section 31 50 00 "Excavation Support and Protection" for shoring, bracing, and sheet piling of excavations.
   7. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading, including preparing and placing topsoil and planting soil for lawns.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

A. Work of this section is affected by unit prices for earth moving specified in Division 01 Section "Unit Prices."

B. Rock Measurement: Volume of rock actually removed, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following. Unit prices for rock excavation include replacement with approved materials.
   1. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
   2. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
   3. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
   4. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
   5. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
   6. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material used to fill an excavation.
   1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
   2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil (Select Borrow) imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations.
   1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations as directed by the Geotechnical Engineer. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.
   2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than **10 feet** in width and more than **30 feet** in length.
   3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations without direction by the Geotechnical Engineer. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Geotechnical Engineer, shall be without additional compensation.

F. Fill: Soil materials approved by the Geotechnical Engineer to be used to raise existing grades.

G. Recycled Material: Recycled Material shall contain a minimum of 90% post consumer material.

H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
   1. Excavation of Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch-wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,090 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,650 lbf; measured according to SAE J-1179.
   2. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 210-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 48,510-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.

I. Structures: Buildings, footings, retaining walls, slabs, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

J. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.

K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.

L. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt and clay particles; friable and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials.

M. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Detectable warning tape.

2. Geotextile fabric.
3. Recycled Materials.
4. Requirements for local material source.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 1557 for each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.

D. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earthwork operations. Submit before earthwork begins.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.

B. Contractor shall follow all OSHA requirements and all local, State and Federal regulations for soil excavation.

C. Pre-excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Engineer and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
1. Notify Owner and Architect not less than 72 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.
3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
4. Verify existing utility services for area where Project is located before excavation.

B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.

C. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.
   1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner.
   2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner.

D. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.

E. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," are in place.

F. Do not commence earth moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Division 01 56 39 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" are in place.

G. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
   1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
   2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
   3. Foot traffic.
   4. Erection of sheds or structures.
   5. Impoundment of water.
   6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
   7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

H. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.

I. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. Refer to Section 916 of SHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.

B. General: Provide select borrow soil materials for replacement of all excavated material removed from the pipe trench. All excavated material removed from the trench excavations shall be hauled and disposed off-site. Provide test results or certification that borrow material meets the requirements for the specified material.

C. Recycled Content of Backfill: Provide recycled concrete (RC-6) for temporary roads, subbase, pipe bedding, and fill material, except under the building slab. Recycled aggregates shall contain a minimum of 90% post-consumer aggregate content.

D. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate and sand products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 300 mile radius of Project Site.

E. Satisfactory Soils: Select Borrow as Per Section 916.01.01 of the MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials and approved by the geotechnical engineer.

F. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve per Section 901 of the MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials .

G. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve per Section 901 of the MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.

H. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

I. Bedding Course and Initial Backfill:
1. Hydronic piping and insulated piping: Washed #8 Pea Gravel Per ASTM - D-448, 1/8” to 3/8” size.
2. Gas mains: ASTM C33 Sand
3. All other piping and duct banks: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

J. Topsoil: Loam, without stones or debris larger than 1/2 inch in diameter, without roots, vegetation, and without harmful materials or other debris which may be harmful to plant life. The topsoil shall contain a minimum of 5% of organic matter by weight when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 194. Other components shall be within the following percentages:

| | |
|---|---|
| Silt | 25 – 50% |
| Clay | 10 – 30 % |
| Sand | 20 – 35 % |
| pH | 6 – 7.5 |
| Soluble Salts | 600 ppm maximum |

1. Off-Site Topsoil: Topsoil furnished by the Contractor shall meet the requirements specified above, as tested by the Contractor and approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.

K. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

L. Sand: ASTM C33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.

M. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

N. Structural Fill and backfill soil materials may be used for fill and backfill around structures and beneath pavements, and within embankments with slopes not steeper than 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical). Structural fill and backfill materials would consist of soils classified as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP and SM in accordance with ASTM D 2487 and the liquid limits and plasticity indices of the soils should not exceed 30 and 6, respectively. In addition, the maximum dry density, determined in accordance with ASTM D 698, should be no less than 105 pcf. Structural fill and backfill should be placed in horizontal layers not more than 8 inches thick. Structural fill and backfill should be compacted to no less than 98% of the maximum dry density of the soil determined in accordance with ASTM D 698.

## 2.2 GEOTEXTILES

A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Woven; manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from fibers consisting of long chain synthetic polymers, composed of a minimum 95 percent by weight of polyolefins or polyesters; with 15 percent minimum elongation; complying with Maryland State Highway Administration type ST per SHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.

## 2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, low-density, flowable concrete material produced from the following:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I Type II or Type III.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, **3/8-inch** nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869.
5. Water: ASTM C 94.
6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, **6 inches** wide and **4 mils** thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with a metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches. Color shall be as follows.
1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

B. Prepare subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."

C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.

D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

## 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives: Do not use explosives on this project.

## 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. All excavations and trenching shall be accomplished in strict accordance with applicable OSHA regulations.

B. Do not excavate within twelve (12) inches of any building wall, column, pier, etc. Where excavation is required next to an existing building, excavate up to twenty-four (24) inches and allow the balance of soil to "fall away". Take care to not damage the existing waterproofing systems.

C. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
   1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
   2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
      a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
      b. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
      c. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
      d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
      e. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
      f. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

## 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to the indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
   1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

2. Excavation for Underground Basins and Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

## 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

## 3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to **12 inches** higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Clearance: As indicated.

C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints and barrels of pipes, unless otherwise indicated.
1. For pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe on an undisturbed subgrade.
2. For pipes 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tampered sand backfill.
3. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or

chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
3. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 015 6 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

## 3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Geotechnical Engineer when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Geotechnical Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
   1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
   2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for Unit Price Items.

E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Engineer, without additional compensation.

## 3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of **2500 psi**, may be used when approved by the Engineer.
   1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by the Engineer.

## 3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
   1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

## 3.11 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
   1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
   2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
   3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
   4. Removing concrete formwork.
   5. Removing trash and debris.
   6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
   7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

## 3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Backfill trenches excavated under structure and within 18 inches of bottom of structure with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete"

E. After installing compacted pipe bedding material, place and compact initial backfill of satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
   1. Carefully compact initial bedding material under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

G. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.

H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

I. Install detectable warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs. Detectable warning tape is not required for storm drains.

## 3.13 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
   1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
   2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
   3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
   4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
   5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

## 3.14 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
   1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
   2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

## 3.15 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
   1. Under structures and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
   2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
   3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
   4. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
   5. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
   6. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.

## 3.16 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
   1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
   2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
   1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   2. Walks: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
   3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
   4. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/4 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

## 3.17 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
   1. Install separation geotextile fabric on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
   2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
   3. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
   4. Place subbase and base course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
   5. Place subbase and base course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
   6. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

## 3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: The Contractor shall engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.

B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Geotechnical Engineer.

D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
   1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
   2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
   3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.

E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

## 3.19 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
   1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Engineer; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
   1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

## 3.20 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

# SECTION 312319 - DEWATERING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes construction dewatering.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation" for recording preexisting conditions and dewatering system progress.
   2. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, backfilling, site grading, and controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Verify availability of Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
   2. Review condition of site to be dewatered including coordination with temporary erosion-control measures and temporary controls and protections.
   3. Review geotechnical report.
   4. Review proposed site clearing and excavations.
   5. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
   6. Review observation and monitoring of dewatering system.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
   2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.

3. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.
4. Include written plan for dewatering operations including sequence of well and well-point placement coordinated with excavation shoring and bracings and control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dewatering system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer registered in Maryland responsible for their preparation.

C. Qualification Data: For Installer and professional engineer.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recordings, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by dewatering operations. Submit before Work begins.

F. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped wells and well points and other abandoned-in-place dewatering equipment.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer that has specialized in design of dewatering systems and dewatering work.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of the Owner.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has not been prepared for this Project. Contractor shall employ a geotechnical engineer as necessary, to be approved by the owner, to render opinions and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.
1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for dewatering according to the performance requirements.

B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Dewatering Performance: Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
   1. Design dewatering system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
   2. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, prevention of flooding in excavation, and prevention of damage to subgrades and permanent structures.
   3. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
   4. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
   5. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with water- and debris-disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.
   1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding site or surrounding area.
   2. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.

B. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
   1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.

D. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified on the MDE approved plans.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.
   1. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
   2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.

B. Place dewatering system into operation to lower water to specified levels before excavating below ground-water level.

C. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Provide standby equipment on-site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails.

## 3.3 OPERATION

A. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.

B. Operate system to lower and control ground water to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
   1. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
   2. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
   3. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of 24 inches below bottom of excavation.

C. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.

D. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of 36 inches below overlying construction.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Observation Wells: Provide observation wells or piezometers, take measurements, and maintain at least the minimum number indicated; additional observation wells may be required by authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Observe and record daily elevation of ground water and piezometric water levels in observation wells.
   2. Repair or replace, within 24 hours, observation wells that become inactive, damaged, or destroyed. In areas where observation wells are not functioning properly, suspend construction activities until reliable observations can be made. Add or remove water from observation-well risers to demonstrate that observation wells are functioning properly.
   3. Fill observation wells, remove piezometers, and fill holes when dewatering is completed.

B. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks regularly during dewatering and maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

C. Provide continual observation to ensure that subsurface soils are not being removed by the dewatering operation.

D. Prepare reports of observations.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect and maintain dewatering system during dewatering operations.

B. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.

END OF SECTION 312319

# SECTION 315000 – EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes temporary excavation support and protection systems.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating and backfilling and for controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.
   2. Section 31 23 19 "Dewatering" for dewatering excavations.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
   2. Review coordination for interruption, shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
   3. Review proposed excavations.
   4. Review proposed equipment.
   5. Review monitoring of excavation support and protection system.
   6. Review coordination with waterproofing.
   7. Review abandonment or removal of excavation support and protection system.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For excavation support and protection system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
   2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of soldier piles, piling, lagging, tiebacks, bracing, and other components of excavation support and protection system according to engineering design.
   3. Indicate type and location of waterproofing.

4. Include a written plan for excavation support and protection, including sequence of construction of support and protection coordinated with progress of excavation.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer and Professional Engineer.

C. Contractor Calculations: For excavation support and protection system. Include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recordings, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by inadequate performance of excavation support and protection systems. Submit before Work begins.

E. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped utilities, abandoned-in-place support and protection systems, and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.

## 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without Owner's written permission.

B. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has not been prepared for this Project. Contractor shall employ a geotechnical engineer as necessary, to be approved by the owner, to render opinions and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.
1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for excavation support and protection according to the performance requirements.
2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in Project Manual.

C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.

B. Provide, design, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls and of resisting earth and hydrostatic pressures and superimposed and construction loads.
   1. Contractor Design: Design excavation support and protection system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
   2. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
   3. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
   4. Continuously monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements to ensure stability of excavations and constructed slopes and to ensure that damage to permanent structures is prevented.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.

B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36, ASTM A 690, or ASTM A 992.

C. Steel Sheet Piling: ASTM A 328, ASTM A 572, or ASTM A 690; with continuous interlocks.
   1. Corners: Site-fabricated mechanical interlock.

D. Wood Lagging: Lumber, mixed hardwood, nominal rough thickness of size and strength required for application.

E. Tiebacks: Steel bars, ASTM A 722.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
   1. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.

B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
   1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner.

C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that construction and finishing of other work is not impeded.

## 3.2 SOLDIER PILES AND LAGGING

A. Install steel soldier piles before starting excavation. Extend soldier piles below excavation grade level to depths adequate to prevent lateral movement. Space soldier piles at regular intervals not to exceed allowable flexural strength of wood lagging. Accurately align exposed faces of flanges to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.

B. Install wood lagging within flanges of soldier piles as excavation proceeds. Trim excavation as required to install lagging. Fill voids behind lagging with soil, and compact.

C. Install wales horizontally at locations indicated on Drawings and secure to soldier piles.

## 3.3 SHEET PILING

A. Before starting excavation, install one-piece sheet piling lengths and tightly interlock vertical edges to form a continuous barrier.

B. Accurately place the piling, using templates and guide frames unless otherwise recommended in writing by the sheet piling manufacturer. Limit vertical offset of adjacent sheet piling to 60 inches Accurately align exposed faces of sheet piling to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.

C. Cut tops of sheet piling to uniform elevation at top of excavation.

## 3.4 TIEBACKS

A. Drill, install, grout, and tension tiebacks.

B. Test load-carrying capacity of each tieback and replace and retest deficient tiebacks.
   1. Have test loading observed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for design of excavation support and protection system.

C. Maintain tiebacks in place until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

## 3.5 BRACING

A. Bracing: Locate bracing to clear columns, floor framing construction, and other permanent work. If necessary to move brace, install new bracing before removing original brace.
   1. Do not place bracing where it will be cast into or included in permanent concrete work unless otherwise approved by Architect.
   2. Install internal bracing if required to prevent spreading or distortion of braced frames.
   3. Maintain bracing until structural elements are supported by other bracing or until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks regularly during installation of excavation support and protection systems, excavation progress, and for as long as excavation remains open. Maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

B. Promptly correct detected bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection system remains stable.

C. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installation or faulty performance of excavation support and protection systems.

## 3.7 REMOVAL AND REPAIRS

A. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and earth and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils and rock or damaging structures, pavements, facilities, and utilities.
   1. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches below overlying construction and abandon remainder.
   2. Fill voids immediately with approved backfill compacted to density specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
   3. Repair or replace, as approved by Architect, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.

B. Leave excavation support and protection systems permanently in place.

END OF SECTION 315000

# SECTION 321216 – ASPHALT PAVING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
   2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
   3. Pavement-marking paint.
   4. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 31 Section “Earth Moving” for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
   2. Division 32 Section “Pavement Joint Sealants” for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

B. DOT: Baltimore City Department of Transportation.

C. SHA: Maryland State Highway Administration.

### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Provide hot-mix asphalt paving according to materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Maryland State Highway standard specifications.
   1. Standard Specification: Maryland State Highway Administration Standard Specification for Construction and Materials.
   2. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

B. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.

C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.

D. Material Certificates: For each paving material, signed by manufacturers.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: manufacturer shall be registered with and approved by Maryland State Highway Administration.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with Maryland State Highway standard specifications for asphalt paving work.

D. Asphalt-Paving Publication: Comply with AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements," unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp or if the following conditions are not met:
   1. Prime and Tack Coats: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
   2. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations of ASTM D 3910.
   3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.

4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 50 deg F and not exceeding 100 deg F in a 24 hour period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.

B. Recycled Content: Provide maximum reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) as feasible.

C. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 100 mile radius of Project Site.

D. Coarse Aggregate: In accordance with Maryland State Highway standards and specifications.

E. Fine Aggregate: In accordance with Maryland State Highway standards and specifications.

F. Mineral Filler: In accordance with Maryland State Highway standards and specifications.

### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO MP 1, PG 64-22.

B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material; ASTM D 946 for penetration-graded material.

C. Prime Coat: Asphalt emulsion prime complying with Maryland State Highway Administration requirements.

D. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140, emulsified asphalt or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208, cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.

E. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141 or AASHTO M 238, pumping consistency.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Recycled Materials for Hot-Mix Asphalt Mixes: Reclaimed asphalt pavement; reclaimed, unbound-aggregate base material; and recycled tires, or asphalt shingles, from sources and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations, equal to performance of required hot-mix asphalt paving produced from all new materials.

B. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.

C. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288, nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.

D. Pavement-Marking Paint: Low-VOC alkyde traffic marking paint , with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
   1. Color: White.

## 2.4 MIXES

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by Maryland State Highway Administration; and complying with the following requirements:
   1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
   2. Base Course: Superpave 19 mm (heavy duty) / 12.5 mm
   3. Surface Course: Superpave 12.5mm (heavy duty) / 9.5 mm

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to support paving and imposed loads.

B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protection: Provide protective materials, procedures, and worker training to prevent asphalt materials from spilling, coating, or building up on curbs, driveway aprons, manholes, and other surfaces adjacent to the Work.

B. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
   1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
   2. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 10 tons.
   3. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

## 3.3 COLD MILLING

A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and
   1. Mill to a depth of as indicated on plans.
   2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of gouges, grooves, and ridges. deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
   3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
   4. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
   5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
   6. Transport milled hot-mix asphalt to asphalt recycling facility.
   7. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.

## 3.4 PATCHING

A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.

B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
   1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
   2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

C. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surfaces.

## 3.5 REPAIRS

A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
   1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.

B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
   1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
   2. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

## 3.6 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.

B. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
   1. Sweep loose granular particles from surface of unbound-aggregate base course. Do not dislodge or disturb aggregate embedded in compacted surface of base course.

C. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
   1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.

D. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure for 72 hours minimum.
   1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
   2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.

E. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
   1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
   2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

## 3.7 PAVING GEOTEXTILE INSTALLATION

A. Apply tack coat uniformly to existing pavement surfaces at a rate of 0.20 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd.

B. Place paving geotextile promptly according to manufacturer's written instructions. Broom or roll geotextile smooth and free of wrinkles and folds. Overlap longitudinal joints 4 inches and transverse joints 6 inches.
   1. Protect paving geotextile from traffic and other damage and place hot-mix asphalt paving overlay the same day.

## 3.8 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
   1. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
   2. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.

B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 8 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.

C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

## 3.9 JOINTS

A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
   1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
   2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
   3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
   4. Construct transverse joints as described in AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements."
   5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
   6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

## 3.10 COMPACTION

A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
   1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.

B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.

C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
   1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.

D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.

E. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.

F. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

## 3.11 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
   1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
   2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.

B. Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
   1. Base Course: 1/8 inch.
   2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.

## 3.12 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Prime asphalt surfaces with sealer, as recommended by thermoplastic material manufacturer based on surface conditions. Include adhesive or adhesion promoter when asphaltic surfaces exhibit polished aggregate.

E. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 30 mils.

## 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.

B. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

C. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.

D. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.

E. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
   1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
   2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
      a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
      b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.

F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

## 3.14 DISPOSAL

A. All excavated and demolished material shall be removed from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

END OF SECTION 321216

# SECTION 321313 – CONCRETE PAVING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
   1. Curbs and gutters.
   2. Sidewalks.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.
   2. Division 32 Section "Pavement Joint Sealants" for joint sealants of joints in concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture. Include alternate mixture designs when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

C. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

D. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:

1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.

E. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
1. Cementitious materials.
2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
3. Admixtures.
4. Curing compounds.
5. Joint fillers.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.

C. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

D. Concrete Testing Service: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

E. Source Limitations:
1. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer’s plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from one manufacturer.
2. Use of fly ash, slag, or Portland cement produced from methods using hazardous material, medical waste, municipal solid waste generators, or tire-derived fuels is prohibited.
3. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 100 mile radius of Project Site.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 50 deg F and not exceeding 100 deg F in a 24 hour period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

2.2 FORMS

A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.

B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Steel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed billet steel bars, unfinished.
1. Recycled Content: Provide steel with minimum 90 percent total recycled content, including at least 60 percent post-consumer recycled content.
2. Regional Materials: Provide steel products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 100 mile radius of the Project Site.

B. Plain Steel Wire: ANSI/ASTM A82, unfinished.

C. Welded Steel Wire Fabric: ASTM A185 in flat sheets galvanized.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
   1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, white. Supplement with the following:
      a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
      b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
   1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
   2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
   3. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 100 mile radius of Project Site.

C. Aggregate for Exposed Concrete Pavement: Selected, hard, and durable; washed; free of materials with deleterious reactivity to cement or that cause staining; from a single source, with gap-graded coarse aggregate as follows:
   1. Aggregate Size: 1/2 inch nominal.
   2. Aggregate Shape, and Color: Rounded, earth tone (white, beige, brown) color.

D. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) of Concrete Paving: Minimum value of 29.

## 2.5 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
   1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
   2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
   3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
   4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
   5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
   6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.

2.6 CURING MATERIALS

A. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

B. Water: Potable.

C. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
   1. Available Products:
      a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
      b. Burke by Edeco; BurkeFilm.
      c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
      d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Aquafilm.
      e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
      f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
      g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
      h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
      i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
      j. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Confilm.
      k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
      l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
      m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
      n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
      o. Symons Corporation; Finishing Aid.
      p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

D. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
   1. Available Products:
      a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
      b. Burke by Edoko; Aqua Resin Cure.
      c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
      d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
      e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
      f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
      g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
      h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
      i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
      j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
      k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
      l. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem Clear.
      m. Tamms Industries Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
      n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
      o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

## 2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
   1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

## 2.8 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Low-VOC alkyde traffic marking paint , with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
   1. Color: White.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
   1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.

B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
   1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3500 psi.
   2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
   3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
   1. Air Content: 5-1/2 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
   2. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.

E. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete required to be watertight and concrete with a water-cementitous materials ratio below 0.50.

F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements for concrete exposed to deicing chemicals. as follows:
1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

## 2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.

B. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

## 3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.

B. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

C. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete.

D. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer’s written instructions, to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

E. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work.

## 3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.

C. Accurately position, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

E. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

## 3.5 JOINTS

A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.

1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide tie bars at sides of pavement strips where indicated.
3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent or epoxy bonding adhesive at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.

D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete pavement:
1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.

E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

## 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.

B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.

D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.

E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site.

F. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.

G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.

H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
   1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.

I. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.
   1. Remove and replace concrete that has been placed for more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer, or use bonding agent if approved by Engineer.

J. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.

K. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

L. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
   1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.

M. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
   1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
   2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
   3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.

N. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
   1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
   2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
   3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## 3.7 CONCRETE FINISHING

A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.

B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
   1. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

C. Monolithic Exposed Aggregate Concrete Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in pavement surfaces as follows:
   1. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to pavement according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Cover pavement surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
   3. Without dislodging aggregate, remove excess mortar by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom.
   4. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat water flushing and brushing cycle until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.

## 3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.

D. Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound as follows:
   1. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

## 3.9 JOINT FILLING

A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month or as recommended by manufacturer, whichever is longer. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

## 3.10 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
   1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
   2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
   3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
   4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
   5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
   6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
   7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
   8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
   9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.

10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

## 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Contractor shall engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
   1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
      a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
   2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
   3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
   4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
   5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
   6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
      a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.

C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Engineer but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Engineer.

G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

## 3.12 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.

B. Drill test cores, where directed by Engineer, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.

C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

# SECTION 321373 –PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete and masonry pavement.
   2. Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
   2. Division 32 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for concrete base under unit pavers and for cast-in-place concrete curbs and gutters and paver edge restraints.
   3. Division 32 Section "Unit Paving" for constructing joints in brick pavement.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. Pavement-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
   1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
   2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
   3. Joint-sealant formulation.
   4. Joint-sealant color.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
   1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
   2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for sealants.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
   1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
   2. Submit not fewer than three pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
   3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
   4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
   5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

D. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in Division 1 "Submittal Procedures" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing of current sealant products within a 36-month period preceding the commencement of the Work.
   1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.

B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
   1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
   2. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
   3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
   4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Coal-Tar sealants shall not be used in parking or paved areas.

C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Owner’s Representative from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

A. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.
   1. Available Products:
      a. Crafco Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
      b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
      c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; SOF-Seal.

## 2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

## 2.5 PRIMERS

A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
   1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
   2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
   3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
   1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
   2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
   3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
   1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.
   2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.

F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

## 3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 321373

# SECTION 321400 – UNIT PAVING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Concrete pavers set in concrete setting bed – pedestrian application.
   2. Aluminum edge restraints.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavation and compacted subgrade.
   2. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for concrete base under unit pavers.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For materials other than water and aggregates.

B. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Unit pavers.
   2. Edge restraints.
   3. Mortar for setting bed and joints.

C. Sieve Analyses: For aggregate setting-bed materials, according to ASTM C 136.

D. Samples for initial Selection:
   1. Joint materials involving color selection.
   2. Unit pavers involving color selection.

E. Samples for Verification. Contractor shall submit the following product specific items prior to delivery of associated materials:

1. Joint materials involving color selection.
2. Units of each type of unit paver indicated; in sets for each color, texture, and pattern specified, showing the full range of variations expected in these characteristics.
3. Exposed edge restraints.

F. Prior to delivery of the associated material to the site, the Contractor shall submit the following product-specific documentation for approval:
   1. Aggregates
      a. Sieve analysis per ASTM C136 for subbase, base, bedding and joint aggregate materials
      b. Minimum 3 lb. sample of each material for independent testing.
   2. Concrete Pavers:
      a. Test results from an independent testing laboratory for compliance with ASTM C936.
      b. Manufacturer's catalog product data.
      c. Safety Data Sheets (SDS).
   3. Geotextile
      a. One 18-inch x 18-inch panel of each type of geotextile to be used for inspection and testing. The sample panels shall be uniformly rolled and shall be wrapped in plastic to protect the material from moisture and damage during shipment. Samples shall be externally tagged for easy identification. External identification shall include the name of the manufacturer; product type; product grade; lot number; and physical dimensions.
      b. Current National Transportation Product Evaluation Program (NTPEP) evaluation report.
      c. Safety Data Sheets (SDS).

G. Informational submittals:
   1. Material Certificates: For unit pavers. Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements, including compliance with standards. Provide for each type and size of unit.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed unit paver installations similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of unit paver, joint material, and setting material from one source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Install a 10 ft x 10 ft paver area following the installation practices described below. This area shall be used to verify joint sizes; lines; laying pattern(s); stitching details (for mechanical installation); color(s); and, texture of the job.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements and approval of owner or owner's representative, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Concrete pavers shall be delivered to the site in steel banded, plastic banded, or plastic wrapped cubes capable of transfer by forklift or clamp lift.

B. Store pavers on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.

C. Contractor shall check all materials upon delivery to assure that the proper materials have been received and are in good condition before signing off on the manufacturer's packing slip.

D. Contractor shall protect all materials from damage or contamination due to job site conditions and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Damaged or contaminated materials shall not be incorporated into the work.

E. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

F. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

G. Store liquids in tightly closed containers protected from freezing.

H. Store asphalt cement and other bituminous materials in tightly closed containers.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Unit Paver Replacements: No fewer than 1 full-size units per every 50 units placed for each type of unit shown.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.

B. Weather Limitations for Mortar and Grout:
   1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
   2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F and higher.
      a. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F, or when wind velocity exceeds 8 mph and ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F, set pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of unit paver, joint material, and setting material from single source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

### 2.2 CONCRETE PAVERS

A. Concrete Pavers: Solid interlocking paving units complying with ASTM C 936/C 936M and resistant to freezing and thawing when tested according to ASTM C 67, made from normal-weight aggregates.

   1. Manufacturer: Belgard (or approved equal)
      a. Paver Name: Moduline
      b. Paver Shape:
         1) 3” x 12” (Plank)
         2) 12” x 24”
      c. Thickness: 2-3/8 inches (60 mm)
      d. Color: Solid Color Foundry
      e. Finish: Standard (Smooth)

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Aluminum Edge Restraints: 3/16-inch-thick edging with loops pressed from face to receive stakes at 12 inches o.c.. maximum and stakes 12 inches long for each loop.
   1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. BRICKSTOP Corporation.
      b. Curve-Rite, Inc.
      c. Permaloc Corporation.
      d. Sure-Loc Edging Corporation.

e. Concrete Paver Manufacturer, if applicable.
f. Approved equal.

B. Masonry Cleaning Compound:
1. ProSoCo., Inc.
2. Dietrick Chemicals, Inc.
3. Approved equal.

C. Geotextile Fabric: Woven or non-woven geotextile manufactured from polyester or polypropylene fibers, with a permeability rating 10 times greater than that of soil on which paving is founded, and an apparent opening size small enough to prevent passage of fines from leveling course into graded aggregate of base course below.

D. Cork Joint Filler: Preformed strips complying with ASTM D 1752, Type II.

E. Compressible Foam Filler: Preformed strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1.

## 2.4 AGGREGATE SETTING-BED MATERIALS

A. Graded Aggregate for Subbase: Sound, crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 2940/D 2940M, subbase material requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for subbase material. Screenings or stone dust shall not be utilized.

B. Sand for Leveling Course: Sound, sharp, washed (clean), non-plastic, natural sand or crushed stone, free of deleterious or foreign matter, complying with gradation requirements in ASTM C 33/C 33M for fine aggregate.

C. Percent combined of sub-angular and sub-rounded shall be greater than 60% as per ASTM D2488.

D. LA Abrasion <40 as per ASTM C131

E. Verify gradation conforms to ASTM C33 requirements for concrete sand (listed in Table 1) as tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

Table 1
Gradation Requirements for Bedding Sand

| Sieve Size | Percent Passing |
|---|---|
| 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) | 100 |
| No. 4 (4.75 mm) | 95 to 100 |
| No. 8 (2.36 mm) | 85 to 100 |
| No. 16 (1.18 mm) | 50 to 85 |
| No. 30 (0.600 mm) | 25 to 60 |
| No. 50 (0.300 mm) | 5 to 30 |
| No. 100 (0.150 mm) | 0 to 10 |

No. 200 (0.075 mm) 0 to 1

## 2.5 BEDDING SAND

A. Bedding sand aggregate shall be clean, non-plastic sand, free from deleterious or foreign matter, and manufactured from crushed rock.

B. Screenings or stone dust shall not be utilized.

C. Percent combined of sub-angular and sub-rounded shall be greater than 60% as per ASTM D2488.

D. Micro Deval Degradation shall be less than 8% as per ASTM D7428

E. LA Abrasion <40 as per ASTM C131

F. Verify gradation conforms to ASTM C144 requirements for concrete sand (listed in Table 2) as tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

Table 2
Gradation Requirements for Joint Filling Sand

| Sieve Size | Percent Passing |
|---|---|
| No. 4 (4.75 mm) | 100 |
| No. 8 (2.36 mm) | 95 to 100 |
| No. 16 (1.18 mm) | 70 to 100 |
| No. 30 (0.600 mm) | 40 to 100 |
| No. 50 (0.300 mm) | 10 to 35 |
| No. 100 (0.150 mm) | 2 to 15 |
| No. 200 (0.075 mm) | 0 to 5 |

## 2.6 JOINT FILLING SAND

A. Joint sand aggregate shall be clean, non-plastic sand, free from deleterious or foreign matter, and manufactured from crushed rock.

B. Screenings or stone dust shall not be utilized.

C. Percent combined of sub-angular and sub-rounded shall be greater than 60% as per ASTM D2488.

D. LA Abrasion <40 as per ASTM C131

E. Verify gradation conforms to ASTM C144 requirements for concrete sand (listed in Table 2) as tested in accordance with ASTM C136.

Table 2
Gradation Requirements for Joint Filling Sand

| Sieve Size | Percent Passing |
|---|---|
| No. 4 (4.75 mm) | 100 |
| No. 8 (2.36 mm) | 95 to 100 |
| No. 16 (1.18 mm) | 70 to 100 |
| No. 30 (0.600 mm) | 40 to 100 |
| No. 50 (0.300 mm) | 10 to 35 |
| No. 100 (0.150 mm) | 2 to 15 |
| No. 200 (0.075 mm) | 0 to 5 |

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas indicated to receive paving, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove substances from concrete substrates that could impair mortar bond, including curing and sealing compounds, form oil, and laitance.

B. Prior to commencement of any work, the Contractor shall conduct a pre-construction meeting with the Owner, Designer, and affected sub-trades. The pre-construction meeting should establish contractor responsibilities and at a minimum verify:
   1. The location of the mock-up, and whether it will be part of the final construction or need to be removed.
   2. The site layout is in general conformance with the construction documents.
   3. The concrete base and edge restraints are in general conformance with the lines, grades, and locations shown in the construction documents. The surface of the base shall have a minimum slope of 1/4 inch per foot (2 percent grade) and be within a tolerance of 3/8 inch over a 10-foot straight edge. Surface to be free of dust, oil, grease, paint, wax, curing compounds, primer, sealer, form release agents, cracks over 3/16 inch, or any deleterious substances and debris.
   4. Concrete shall be fully cured and free of hydrostatic pressure, control joints are located at the specified interval, and the moisture content is less than 5 percent.

5. The location and spacing of weep holes and that weep holes are filled with pea gravel and covered with a 12-inch by 12-inch geotextile fabric.
6. The subgrade lines and elevations are in general conformance with the construction documents. The subgrade elevations shall be within +/- 0.1 ft of the specified grades.
7. Subgrade soil conditions and grades meet the requirements in the construction documents.
8. The details of the site's erosion and sediment control plan.

C. Clean concrete substrates to remove dirt, dust, debris, and loose particles.

D. Proof-roll prepared subgrade according to requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Proceed with unit paver installation only after deficient subgrades have been corrected and are ready to receive base course for unit pavers. Contractor shall verify compaction of the subgrade and base is in general conformance with the construction documents prior to commencing work

E. Once the Contractor has confirmed the base conditions are in general conformance with the requirements in the construction documents, the Contractor shall begin installing the bedding material. By initiating installation of the bedding material, the Contractor acknowledges acceptance of the base

## 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EDGE RESTRAINTS

A. Adequate edge restraint shall be provided along the perimeter of all paving as specified. The face of the edge restraint, where it abuts pavers, shall be vertical.

B. Edge restraint shall not be visible once installation of pavers is complete.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install 12 inch strip of geotextile and turn up against curb to contain bedding course.

B. Spread the bedding course evenly over the base course and screed to a nominal 1-inch thickness. Sand shall be lightly screeded in a loose condition to the proper depth only slightly ahead of the paving units and shall be protected against incidental compaction. Any incidental compaction or screeded sand left overnight, or exposed to rain, shall be loosened prior to placing paving units. The Contractor shall screed the bedding course using either an approved mechanical spreader (e.g.: an asphalt paver) or by the use of screed rails and boards. The screeded sand should not be disturbed. Place sufficient sand to stay ahead of the laid pavers. Do not use the bedding sand to fill depressions in the base course surface.

C. Do not use unit pavers with chips, cracks, voids, discolorations, and other defects that might be visible in finished work.

D. Mix pavers from several pallets or cubes of the same shape, size and color, as they are placed, to produce uniform blend of colors and textures. Paving units shall be installed from a minimum of 3 bundles by hand.

E. Lay the concrete pavers in the pattern(s) as shown on the drawings and in general conformance with the approved mock-up. Maintain straight pattern lines.

F. Cut unit pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Hammer cutting is not acceptable.

G. Joint Pattern: Pattern shall match the layout as shown on construction drawings or as instructed by the owner / landscape architect.

H. Tolerances: Do not exceed 1/32-inch unit-to-unit offset from flush (lippage) nor 1/8 inch in 10 feet from level, or indicated slope, for finished surface of paving.

I. Joints between the individual concrete pavers, and between concrete pavers and the edge restraints, buildings, collars, or other protrusions/edging, on average shall be between 1 /16 inch and 3 /16 inch (2 mm to 5 mm) wide.

J. Joint (bond) lines shall not deviate more than ±1/2 in. (±15 mm) over 50 ft. (15 m) from string lines.

K. Expansion and Control Joints: Provide joint filler at locations and of widths indicated. Install joint filler before setting pavers. Top of joint filler shall be flush with top of concrete base. Install joint filler at edge of building when pavers abut building surface.

L. Provide edge restraints as indicated. Install edge restraints before placing unit pavers.
   1. Install edge restraints to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install stakes at intervals required to hold edge restraints in place during and after unit paver installation.
   2. Top edge of edge restraint shall not be exposed at grade.

M. Fill gaps at the edges of the paved area with cut pavers or edge units. Do not install cut pavers smaller than one-third of a whole paver along edges subject to vehicular traffic – trim two pavers to fit.

N. Cut all pavers using a double-bladed splitter or masonry saw. Upon completion of cutting, the area must be swept clean of all debris to facilitate inspection and to ensure the concrete pavers are not damaged during compaction.

O. Using a low amplitude plate compactor capable of at least 5,000 lbs. (22 kN) compaction at a frequency of 75 Hz –100 Hz, compact the concrete pavers into the bedding course.

P. The pavers shall be compacted to achieve consolidation of the bedding sand and brought to level and profile by not less than three passes. Initial compaction should proceed as closely

as possible following the installation of the paving units and prior to the acceptance of any traffic or application of joint filling sand.

Q. Any units that are structurally damaged during compaction shall be immediately removed and replaced.

R. Sweep dry joint filling sand into the joints and vibrate until they are full. This will require two or three passes with the compactor. Do not compact within 3 feet (1 m) of the unrestrained edges of the paving units.

S. All work to within 3 feet (1 m) of the laying face must be left fully compacted with sand-filled joints at the end of each day.

T. Sweep off excess sand when the job is complete.

U. The surface elevation of pavers shall be 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm) above adjacent drainage inlets, concrete collars or channels.

## 3.5 SEALER APPLICATION

A. Sealant shall be a water based, silane-siloxane hybrid sealer
   1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Techniseal;
      b. Prosoco;
      c. Foundation Armor;
      d. Sure Seal-S;
      e. DryLok;
      f. Approved equal

B. Sealant shall have a natural-look / mate finish and shall be resistant to de-icing salt, oil, and rust.

C. Clear Sealer: Apply uniformly in two coats in continuous operations according to manufacturer's written instructions. Allow first coat to dry before applying second coat, at 90 degrees to the direction of the first coat, using same application methods and rates.

   1. Clean pavers, no sooner than one week after pavers have been placed
   2. Begin sealing dry surface no sooner than 24 hours after pavers has been cleaned, and as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.

## 3.6 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace unit pavers that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units

and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.

B. Cleaning: Remove excess grout and dirt from exposed paver surfaces; wash and scrub clean.

## 3.7 AS-BUILT CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Final inspection shall be conducted to verify conformance to the drawings after removal of excess joint sand. All pavements shall be finished to lines and levels to ensure positive drainage at all drainage outlets and channels.

B. The final surface elevations shall not deviate more than 3/8 (10 mm) inch under a 10-foot long (3 M) straightedge.

C. Lippage: No greater than 1/8 in. (3 mm) difference in height between adjacent pavers.

END OF SECTION 321400

# SECTION 321723 – PAVEMENT MARKINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes painted markings applied to asphalt and concrete pavement.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Review methods and procedures related to marking pavement including, but not limited to, the following:
      a. Pavement aging period before application of pavement markings.
      b. Review requirements for protecting pavement markings, including restriction of traffic during installation period.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

B. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For interior, field-applied, pavement-marking paints, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

C. Shop Drawings: For pavement markings.
   1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
   2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; on rigid backing, 8 inches square.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of MDSHA for pavement-marking work.
   1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for alkyd materials 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F .

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
   2. Duron, Inc.
   3. Glidden Professionals.
   4. PPG Industries.
   5. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
   6. Or Approved Equal.

2.2 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
   1. Color: White

B. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32, alkyd traffic-marking paint.
   1. Color: White

C. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
   1. Color: White

D. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #97, latex traffic-marking paint.
   1. Color: White

E. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1 made of 100 percent recycled glass.
   1. Roundness: Minimum 75 percent true spheres by weight.

F. VOC Content: Pavement markings used on building interior shall have a VOC content of 150 g/L or less.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that pavement is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow paving to age for a minimum of 30 days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
   1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to pavement. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond the stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath the stencil.
   2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

### 3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 321723

# SECTION 323113 – CHAIN-LINK FENCES AND GATES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. All work and materials shall be in accordance with Baltimore City Specifications and Details, latest edition.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Galvanized Steel Chain-Link Fabric.
   2. Galvanized Steel Framework.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 2 Section “Earthwork” for site excavation, fill, and backfill where chain-link fences are located.
   2. Division 3 Section “Cast-In-Place Concrete” for concrete post concrete fill.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CLFMI: Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for chain-link fences.
   1. Fence posts, rails, and fittings.
   2. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
   3. Privacy Slats.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of fences, posts, rails, tension wires, details of extended posts, extension arms, or other operation, hardware, and accessories. Indicate materials, dimensions, sizes, weights, and finishes of components.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, signed by product manufacturer.
   1. Strength test results for framing according to ASTM F 1043.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

F. LEED Submittals.
1. Product data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of pre-consumer and post-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost of each product with recycled content.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed chain-link fences similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations for Chain-Link Fences: Obtain each grade, finish, type, and variety of component for chain-link fences from one source with resources to provide chain-link fences of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

B. Interruption of Existing Utility Service: Do not interrupt utility services to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner and Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility services.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility services without Owner's written permission.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Chain-Link Fences:
a. Allied Tube & Conduit Corp., Harvey, IL
b. American Chain Link Fence Co., Medford, MA
c. Anchor Fence, Inc., Baltimore, MD
d. Long Fence, Baltimore, MD
e. Page-Wilson Corp., Monessen, PA
f. Security Fence Mfg. & Supply Co., Bladensburg, MD
g. Sonco Fence Mfg. Company, Bladensburg, MD
h. Approved Equal

## 2.2 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

A. Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric: Height indicated on Drawings. Provide fabric in one-piece widths for fencing in height of 12 feet and less. Comply with CLFMI CLF 2445 and requirements indicated below:
   1. Mesh and Wire Size: 2-inch mesh, 9 ga. diameter.
   2. Zinc-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 817 Type II, Class 1, 1.2 oz./sq. ft. with zinc coating (Aluminized) applied after weaving.
      a. Coat selvage ends of fabric that is metallic coated after the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.

## 2.3 INDUSTRIAL FENCE FRAMING

A. Round Steel Pipe: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, ASTM F 1083 for Group IC round pipe. Comply with ASTM F 1043, Material Design Group 1A, external and internal coating Type A, consisting of not less than 1.8-oz./sq. ft. zinc, and the following:
   1. Group: IA, round galvanized steel pipe, Schedule 40 minimum.
   2. Strength Requirement: Light industrial according to ASTM F 1043.
   3. Post Diameter and Thickness: According to ASTM F 1043.
   4. Post Size and Thickness: According to ASTM F 1043.

B. Post Brace Rails: Match top rail for coating and strength and stiffness requirements. Provide brace rail with truss rod assembly for each end, and pull post. Provide two brace rails extending in opposing directions, each with truss rod assembly, for each corner post and for pull posts. Provide rail ends and clamps for attaching rails to posts.

C. Top Rails: Fabricate top rail from lengths 21 feet or longer, with swedged-end or fabricated for expansion-type coupling, forming a continuous rail along top of chain-link fabric.

D. Intermediate Rails: Match top rail for coating and strength and stiffness requirements.

## 2.4 FITTINGS

A. General: Provide fittings for a complete fence installation, including special fittings for corners. Comply with ASTM F 626.

B. Post and Line Caps: Hot-dip galvanized pressed steel or hot-dip galvanized cast iron. Provide weathertight closure cap for each post.
   1. Line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.

C. Rail and Brace Ends: Hot-dip galvanized pressed steel or hot-dip galvanized cast iron. Provide rail ends or other means for attaching rails securely to each corner, pull, and end post.

D. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
   1. Top Rail Sleeves: Hot-dip galvanized pressed-steel or round-steel tubing not less than 6 inches long.

2. Rail Clamps: Hot-dip galvanized pressed steel. Provide line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting intermediate and bottom rails in the fence line-to-line posts.

E. Tension and Brace Bands: Hot-dip galvanized pressed steel.

F. Tension Bars: Hot-dip galvanized steel, length not less than 2 inches shorter than full height of chain-link fabric. Provide one bar for each end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.

G. Truss Rod Assemblies: Hot-dip galvanized steel rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.

H. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: Provide the following according to ASTM F 626:
1. Standard Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, complying with the following:
a. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: 0.106-inch- diameter wire; galvanized thickness matching coating thickness of chain-link fence fabric.

I. Round Wire Clips: Hot-dip galvanized steel for attaching chain-link fabric to H-beam posts.

J. Round Wire Hog Rings: Hot-dip galvanized steel or aluminum for attaching chain-link fabric to horizontal tension wires.

## 2.5 PRIVACY SLATS

A. Material: Polyethylene tubular slats, not less than 0.023 inch thick, manufactured for chain-link fences from virgin polyethylene containing UV inhibitor, sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated; with vandal-resistant fasteners and lock strips.

B. Color: Provide full selection of color options in fence submittal.

## 2.6 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

A. Materials: Portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I aggregates complying with ASTM C 33, and potable water. Measure, batch, and mix Project-site-mixed concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M.
1. Concrete Mixes: Normal-weight concrete with not less than 3000-psi compressive strength (28 days), 3-inch slump, and 1-inch maximum size aggregate.

B. Materials: Dry-packaged concrete mix complying with ASTM C 387 for normal-weight concrete mixed with potable water according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2.7 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

B. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance.
1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed, unless otherwise permitted by Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Stake locations of fence lines and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements specified.
1. Install fencing as shown on construction drawings.

3.4 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

A. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacing indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.

B. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil. Set posts in concrete footing.
1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.

2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
   a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
   b. Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.

C. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and post per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of as indicated on plans.

D. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 8 feet o.c. maximum.

E. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Install braces at end posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
   1. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric on fences with top rail and at 2/3 fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.

F. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch- diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric.
   1. Bottom Tension Wire: Install tension wire within 6 inches of bottom of fabric aand tie to each post with not less than same gage and type of wire.

G. Bottom Rails: Install, spanning between posts.

H. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to outside of enclosing framework. Leave 1 inch between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage, unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.

I. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.

J. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at 1 end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
   1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.

K. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of the fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

## 3.5 PRIVACY SLATS

A. Privacy Slats: Install slats in direction indicated as recommended by manufacturer, securely locked in place.
   1. Diagonally, for privacy factor of 90.

END OF SECTION 323113

# SECTION 326100 - TURF AND GRASSES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Seeding.
   2. Hydroseeding.
   3. Sodding
   4. Turf renovation.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 310000 "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling and backfilling, and rough grading.
   2. Section 329300 "Plants" for trees, shrubs, ground covers, and other plants as well as border edgings and mow strips.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

B. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

C. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. Pesticides include insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. They also include substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

D. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. Pests include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

E. Planting Soil: Native or imported topsoil; manufactured topsoil, or surface topsoil modified to become topsoil; mixed with soil amendments.

F. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

G. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Certification of Grass Seed: From seed vendor for each grass-seed mixture stating the botanical and common name, percentage by weight of each species and variety, and percentage of purity, germination, and weed seed. Include the year of production and date of packaging
   1. Certification of each seed mixture for turfgrass sod Include identification of source and name and telephone number of supplier.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified landscape installer.

D. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers, from manufacturer.

E. Material Test Reports: For existing surface soil and imported topsoil.

F. Planting Schedule: Indicating anticipated planting dates for each type of planting.

G. Pesticides and Herbicides: Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.

H. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of turf during a calendar year. Submit before substantial completion and project closeout.
   1. Maintenance data shall include recommended methods for prevention of soil compaction due to heavy foot traffic, as well as recommendations for repair of compacted or otherwise damaged lawn areas.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Maryland Turf Grass Law and Regulations published by the Maryland Department of Agriculture (MDA), as amended to date.

B. 2011 Maryland Standards and Specifications for Soil Erosion and Sediment Control (E&SC) published by the Maryland Department of the Environment (MDE) in association with the Soil Conservation Service and State Soil Conservation Committee, as amended to date.

C. Maryland Department of Transportation State Highway Administration Standard and Specifications for Construction and Materials, as amended to date.

D. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.

E. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape installer whose work has resulted in successful turf establishment.
   1. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when planting is in progress.
   2. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

F. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

G. Topsoil Analysis: Furnish soil analysis by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the topsoil.
   1. Laboratory analysis of composition and characteristics of topsoil for each source, whether onsite or offsite borrow, shall be in accordance with MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials Section 920. A qualified soils scientist, approved by the owner, shall furnish a nutrient management plan for soils amendments. Topsoil shall be amended as specified by the nutrient management plan. Costs of all testing, the nutrient management plan, and amendments shall be included in the base bid, with no additional compensation by the owner.
   2. Report suitability of tested topsoil for turf growth including testing laboratory recommended quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory topsoil.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers. Protect materials from damage and deterioration during delivery, and while stored at the project site.

B. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage and drying.

C. Bulk Materials:
   1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
   2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Planting Restrictions: Plant during planting season as indicated on approved Erosion and Sediment Control Plan. Coordinate planting periods with initial maintenance periods to provide required maintenance from date of planting completion.

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established but for not less than the following periods:
1. Sodded Turf: 90 days from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Seeded Turfs: 90 days from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace turf and grasses that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner.
2. Warranty Periods from Date of Substantial Completion:
a. Sodded Turf: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.
b. Seeded Turf: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.

**PART 2 -** PRODUCTS

2.1 SEED

A. Seed mixes shall be per the 2011 Maryland Standards and Specifications for Soil Erosion and Sediment Control (E&SC) published by the Maryland Department of the Environment (MDE) in association with the Soil Conservation Service and State Soil Conservation Committee, as amended to date and the approved Erosion and Sediment Control Plans.

## 2.2 TURFGRASS SOD & TOPSOIL

A. Refer to the Maryland SHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials Section 705 for Turf Establishment, Section 708 for Turfgrass Sodding and Section 701 for Topsoil.

## 2.3 FERTILIZERS

A. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
   1. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.

## 2.4 PESTICIDES

A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by the EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Nonselective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

## 2.5 EROSION-CONTROL MATTING

A. Jute Matting: Jute fabric matting, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. All areas to be turfed or seeded shall be covered with fully bio-degradable jute matting after installation. Jute matting is to remain in place and not be moved after completion.
   1. Matting shall have a minimum weight of 0.92 lb/sq. yd., with 50 to 65 percent open area
   2. Matting tie-downs shall be 100% bio-degradable.
   3.

**PART 3 -** EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions where material will be applied. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected, only apply product to stable slopes.

B. All slope gradients should be prepared to agricultural standard recommended by the MDE / Maryland SHA Standard Specifications. Agricultural Lime or pelletized lime should be added during the slope preparation stage at the rate recommended according to soil analysis. Apply agricultural lime or pellet lime at a rate of 2000lbs per acre if no soil analysis has been performed.

C. Examine related work including irrigation and grading of surface before proceeding with any work and notify the Engineer in writing on conditions which may prevent the proper execution of this work. All grading or tracking on slopes should be performed so that all cleats are running perpendicular to the flow of water down the hill.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, walkways, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
   1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydromulching overspray.
   2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.

B. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

3.3 TURF/SEEDED AREA PREPARATION

A. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

B. Refer to Sections 701.01 thru 701.03 and 705.01 thru 705.03 of the Maryland SHA Standard Specifications and all associated SHA Materials sections.

## 3.4 SEEDING

A. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds **5 mph**. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
   1. Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
   2. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
   3. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.

B. Refer to Sections 701.01 thru 701.03 and 705.01 thru 705.03 of the Maryland SHA Stand Specification and all associated SHA Materials sections.

## 3.5 HYDROSEEDING

A. Strictly comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations.

B. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, soil amendments, fertilizer, fiber mulch & other tackifiers (if necessary) in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.
   1. Mix slurry with fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended tackifier.
   2. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than **1500-lb/acre** dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.

C. Hydromulch should be applied in multiple directions so that shadowing does not occur and to insure uniformity of the application. Confirm the loading rates with equipment manufacturers. Do not leave seeded surfaces unprotected, especially if precipitation is imminent.

D. Exercise special care to prevent any of the slurry from being sprayed onto any hardscape areas including concrete walks, fences, walls, buildings, etc. Remove all slurry sprayed onto these surfaces immediately.

## 3.6 SODDING

A. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen or muddy.

B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to subgrade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted

soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.

1. Lay sod across angle of slopes exceeding 1:3.
2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs or steel staples spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than 2 anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.

C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of **1-1/2 inches** below sod.

## 3.7 TURF RENOVATION

A. Renovate existing turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.

1. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
2. Provide new topsoil as required.

B. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.

C. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new topsoil.

D. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.

E. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.

F. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off-site.

G. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6 inches.

H. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizers required for establishing new turfs and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches of existing soil. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.

I. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch as required for new turfs.

J. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

## 3.8 TURF/SEEDED AREA MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations. Mow only turfed areas. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
   1. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.

B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches. Take care not to super saturate soil or wash away any slurry or seed applied.
   1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
   2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

C. Repair all seed washings and erosion.

D. Future fertilization should occur whenever applications at the recommended rate based on soil analysis with a low Nitrogen fertilizer.

E. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Do not mow areas that are designated “No Mow Areas”. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
   1. Mow grass to a height of 2 to 3 inches.

F. Turf Post-fertilization: Apply fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.
   1. Use fertilizer that will provide actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. to turf area.

## 3.9 SATISFACTORY TURFS/SEEDED AREAS

A. Turf/Seeding installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by A/E:
   1. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

3.10 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.

C. Remove non-degradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 326100

# SECTION 329300 - PLANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Plants.
   2. Planting soils.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for protection of existing trees and plantings, topsoil stripping and stockpiling, and site clearing.
   2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling, and rough grading and for subsurface aggregate drainage and drainage backfill materials.
   3. Section 326100 "Turf and Grasses" for turf (lawn) planting, seeding, and erosion-control materials.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.

B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than sizes indicated or diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.

C. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

D. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

E. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

F. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

G. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

H. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.

I. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.

J. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.

K. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.

L. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

M. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

N. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including soils.
   1. Plant Materials: Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.
   2. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to the Project.

3. Plant Photographs: Include color photographs in digital format of each required species and size of plant material as it will be furnished to the Project. Take photographs from an angle depicting true size and condition of the typical plant to be furnished. Include a scale rod or other measuring device in each photograph. Identify each photograph with the full scientific name of the plant, plant size, and name of the growing nursery.

B. Schedules: Submit, in writing, within 60 days of planting installation, the tentative dates for tree selection and installation.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified landscape installer. Include list of similar projects completed by said installer demonstrating installer's capabilities and experience. Include project names, addresses, and year completed, and include names and addresses of Owners' contact persons.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of manufactured product, from manufacturer, and complying with the following:
1. Manufacturer's certified analysis of standard products.
2. Analysis of other materials by a recognized laboratory made according to methods established by the Association of Official Analytical Chemists, where applicable.

A. Material Test Reports for Topsoil Analysis: Furnish soil analysis by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the topsoil.
1. Laboratory analysis of composition and characteristics of topsoil for each source, whether onsite or offsite borrow, shall be in accordance with MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials Section 920. A qualified soils scientist, approved by the owner, shall furnish a nutrient management plan for soils amendments. Topsoil shall be amended as specified by the nutrient management plan. Costs of all testing, the nutrient management plan, and amendments shall be included in the base bid, with no additional compensation by the owner.
2. Report suitability of tested topsoil for plant and turf growth including testing laboratory recommended quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory topsoil.

B. Pesticides and Herbicides: Product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to Project.

C. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of plants during a calendar year. Submit before substantial completion and project closeout.

D. Warranty: Submit written warranty agreement for materials as specified.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified landscape Installer whose work has resulted in successful establishment of plants.
   1. Professional Membership: Installer shall be a member in good standing of either the Professional Landcare Network or the American Nursery and Landscape Association.
   2. Experience: Three years' experience in landscape installation in addition to requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
   3. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
   4. Personnel Certifications: Installer's field supervisor assigned to the Work shall have certification in one of the following categories from the Professional Landcare Network:
      a. Certified Landscape Technician - Exterior, with installation and/or maintenance specialty area(s), designated CLT-Exterior.
      b. Certified Landscape Technician - Interior, designated CLT-Interior.
      c. Certified Ornamental Landscape Professional, designated COLP.
   5. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.

B. Soil-Testing Laboratory Qualifications: An independent or university laboratory, recognized by the State Department of Agriculture, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated and that specializes in types of tests to be performed.

C. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the soil.
   1. Testing methods and written recommendations shall comply with USDA's Handbook No. 60.
   2. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling; with depth, location, and number of samples to be taken per instructions from A/E. A minimum of three representative samples shall be taken from varied locations for each soil to be used or amended for planting purposes.
   3. Report suitability of tested soil for plant growth.
      a. Based upon the test results, state recommendations for soil treatments and soil amendments to be incorporated. State recommendations in weight per 1000 sq. ft. or volume per cu. yd. for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
      b. Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals, including aluminum, arsenic, barium, cadmium, chromium, cobalt, lead, lithium, and

vanadium. If such problem materials are present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

D. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.

E. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.
1. Trees and Shrubs: Measure with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above the root flare for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above the root flare for larger sizes.
2. Other Plants: Measure with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.
3. If required root size is unavailable, obtain the next larger size of root.

F. Plant Material Observation: A/E may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. A/E retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of balls and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.
1. Notify A/E of sources of planting materials at least seven days in advance of delivery to site.

G. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:
1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

C. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.

D. Handle planting stock by root ball or container.

E. Store bulbs, corms, and tubers in a dry place at 60 to 65 deg F until planting.

F. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
   1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
   2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
   3. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.

B. Interruption of Existing Services or Utilities: Do not interrupt services or utilities to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary services or utilities according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner and A/E no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of each service or utility.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of services or utilities without Owner's written permission.

C. Planting Restrictions: Per Section 710 Refer of the Maryland SHA Stand Specification.

D. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

E. Coordination with Turf / Seeded Areas: Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf / seeded areas unless otherwise indicated.
   1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf / seeded areas, protect these areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
      b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
      c. Faulty performance of tree stabilization, edgings and tree grates.
      d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
   2. Warranty Periods from Date of Planting Completion:
      a. Trees, Shrubs, Vines, and Ornamental Grasses: 24 months from date of Substantial Completion, or 24 months after planting if planted after Substantial Completion.
      b. Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, and Other Plants: 24 months from date of Substantial Completion, or 24 months after planting if planted after Substantial Completion.
   3. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:
      a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
      b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
      c. A limit of one replacement of each plant will be required except for losses or replacements due to failure to comply with requirements.
      d. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material.

## 1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service for Trees and Shrubs: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.
   1. Maintenance Period: Two (2) years after substantial completion.

B. Initial Maintenance Service for Ground Cover and Other Plants: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.
   1. Maintenance Period: Two (2) years after substantial completion.

C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.
   1. Maintenance Period: Two (2) years after substantial completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PLANT MATERIAL

A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.
   1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.
   2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.

B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to A/E, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.

C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which shall begin at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.

D. Labeling: Label at least one plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant as shown on Drawings.

E. Provide plants harvested within 50-miles of Project Site unless otherwise approved by the A/E.
   1. If plant cannot be obtained within 50-miles of the Project site and/or the A/E does not provide approval for the plant material to be harvested outside of the 50-mile radius, a plant substitution of a similar plant type and size may be requested. All plant substitutions shall be approved by the A/E.

## 2.2 NON-PLANT MATERIALS

## 2.3 INORGANIC SOIL AMENDMENTS

A. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
   1. Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone.

## 2.4 FERTILIZERS

A. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
   1. Composition: 10 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.

## 2.5 PLANTING SOILS

A. Planting Soil Mix: Plant mix shall be composed of 50% existing soil and 50% amended soil mix.
   1. Amended soil mix is defined as 2/3 imported topsoil and 1/3 pulverized pine bark (Fine Bark, or approved equal).

## 2.6 MULCHES

A. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing of trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
   1. Type: Double Shredded hardwood bark.
   2. Size Range: 3 inches maximum, 1 inch minimum.
   3. Color: Natural.

## 2.7 WEED-CONTROL BARRIERS

A. Jute Matting: Jute fabric matting, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. All areas to be turfed or seeded shall be covered with fully bio-degradable jute matting after installation. Jute matting is to remain in place and not be moved after completion.
   1. Matting shall have a minimum weight of 0.92 lb/sq. yd., with 50 to 65 percent open area
   2. Matting tie-downs shall be 100% bio-degradable.

## 2.8 TREE STABILIZATION MATERIALS

A. Stakes and Guys:
   1. Stakes and Guys are to be used for Balled and Burlapped tree only.
   2. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2-by-2-inch nominal by length indicated, pointed at one end.
   3. Guy wire shall be No. 10 gauge galvanized steel wire, for staking of trees in at-grade conditions.
   4. Rubber hose shall be ¾" black corded hose.
   5. Stakes and Guys to be removed at the later of either one year or permanent stabilization of the tree.

## 2.9 PLANT MATERIALS

A. Plant List: Contractor shall furnish and install all plant material shown on the plans. The Plant List is provided for convenience only. The plant quantities indicated on the plans take precedence over plant lists. Contractor shall verify all quantities to their own satisfaction prior to bidding. Any discrepancies shall be reported to the Landscape Architect immediately.

B. The Contractor shall have investigated the sources of supply and satisfied themselves that they can supply all of the plants specified on the Plant List in the size, variety and quality noted before submitting their bid. Failure to take this precaution will not relive the successful bidder from their responsibility for furnishing and installing all the plant material in strict accordance with the contract requirements and without additional expense to the Owner.

C. All plants shall comply with the recommendations and requirements of ANSI 260.1 "American Standard" for Nursery Stock.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.
   1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
   2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.
   3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
   4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by A/E and replace with new planting soil.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

C. Lay out individual plant locations and areas for multiple plantings in accordance with the approved Landscape drawing. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain A/E's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.

D. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
   1. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.

E. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.

## 3.3 EDGING INSTALLATION

A. Shovel-Cut Edging: Separate mulched areas from turf areas with a 45-degree, 4- to 6-inch deep, shovel-cut edge.

## 3.4 EXCAVATION & PLANTING

A. Refer to Section 710 of the Maryland SHA Stand Specification.

## 3.5 TREE STABILIZATION

A. Install trunk stabilization as follows unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Upright Staking and Tying: Stake trees of 2- through 5-inch caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch caliper only as required to prevent wind tip out. Use a minimum of two stakes of length required to penetrate at least 18 inches below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend at least 72 inches above grade. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating root balls or root masses.
   2. Use two to three stakes for trees up to 12 feet high and 2-1/2 inches or less in caliper; three stakes for trees less than 14 feet high and up to 4 inches in caliper. Space stakes equally around trees.
   3. Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
   4. Support trees with two strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.

## 3.6 PLANT MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings for a period up to facility being formally handed over to the owner. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.

B. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

C. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated past management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

## 3.7 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

A. Refer to Section 710 of the Maryland SHA Stand Specification.

## 3.8 REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

A. General: Repair or replace existing or new trees and other plants that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
   1. Submit details of proposed pruning and repairs.
   2. Perform repairs of damaged trunks, branches, and roots within 24 hours, if approved.
   3. Replace trees and other plants that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Architect.

B. Remove and replace trees that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition before the end of the corrections period or are damaged during construction operations that Architect determines are incapable of restoring to normal growth pattern.
   1. Provide new trees of same size as those being replaced for each tree
   2. Species of Replacement Trees: Same species being replaced unless otherwise requested.

## 3.9 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.

B. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.

C. After installation and before Substantial Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

D. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

3.10 DISPOSAL

A. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 329300

# SECTION 330500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR UTILITIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Piping joining materials.
   2. Transition fittings.
   3. Dielectric fittings.
   4. Sleeves.
   5. Identification devices.
   6. Grout.
   7. Flowable fill.
   8. Piped utility demolition.
   9. Piping system common requirements.
   10. Equipment installation common requirements.
   11. Painting.
   12. Concrete bases.
   13. Metal supports and anchorages.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.

B. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

C. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.

D. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.

E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Dielectric fittings.
   2. Identification devices.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
   1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
   2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting if devices are applied to surfaces.

C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete.".

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
   1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
   2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
   1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
   2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
   3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
   4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.

H. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

## 2.2 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

B. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller:
   1. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
   2. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.

C. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 and Larger:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
   a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
   b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
   c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
   d. JCM Industries.
   e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
   f. Viking Johnson.
3. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.

D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or comparable equal:
   a. Spears Manufacturing Co.
   b. PolyCam, Inc.
   c. GF Piping Systems

3. Description: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint or threaded end.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
   a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
   b. NIBCO INC.
   c. Spears Manufacturing Co.
3. Description: MSS SP-107 CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass or stainless-steel threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.

F. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:

a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
b. Fernco, Inc.
c. Mission Rubber Company.
d. Plastic Oddities.

3. Description: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

## 2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Epco Sales, Inc.
d. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
e. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
3. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 and smaller.
a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig at 180 deg F.
b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Epco Sales, Inc.
d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
3. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 and larger.
a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
      a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
      b. Calpico, Inc.
      c. Central Plastics Company.
      d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   3. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
      a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.
      b. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
      c. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
      d. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Couplings:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
      a. Calpico, Inc.
      b. Lochinvar Corporation.
   3. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 and smaller.
      a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      b. End Connections: Threaded.

F. Dielectric Nipples:
   1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or comparable equal:
      a. Perfection Corporation.
      b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
      c. Victaulic Company.
   3. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
      a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      b. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

## 2.4 SLEEVES

A. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

D. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

G. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. General: Products specified are for applications referenced in other utilities Sections. If more than single type is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
   1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
   2. Location: Accessible and visible.

C. Stencils: Standard stencils prepared with letter sizes complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches for ducts, and 3/4 inch for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
   1. Material: Fiberboard or Brass.
   2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd-gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
   3. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Snap-on Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, color-coded, pressure-sensitive-vinyl type with permanent adhesive.

F. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.

G. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least three times letter height and of length required for label.

H. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by Architect.

I. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
   1. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions of flow, or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.

J. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive vinyl tape, at least 3 mils thick.
   1. Width: 1-1/2 inches on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches; 2-1/2 inches for larger pipes.
   2. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

K. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
   1. Material: 0.032-inch- thick, polished brass or aluminum.
   2. Material: 0.0375-inch- thick stainless steel.
   3. Material: 3/32-inch- thick plastic laminate with 2 black surfaces and a white inner layer.
   4. Material: Valve manufacturer's standard solid plastic.
   5. Size: 1-1/2 inches in diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
   6. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.

L. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.

M. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
   1. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
   2. Thickness: 1/8 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Thickness: 1/16 inch, for units up to 20 sq. in. or 8 inches in length, and 1/8 inch for larger units.
   4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.

N. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
   1. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
   2. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
   3. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
   4. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.

5. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
6. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:
   a. Name and plan number.
   b. Equipment service.
   c. Design capacity.
   d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
7. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.

O. Plasticized Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with mat finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3-1/4 by 5-5/8 inches.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommets and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.

P. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in piped utility identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of piped utility systems and equipment.
1. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

## 2.6 GROUT

A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.7 FLOWABLE FILL

A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, portland.
2. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft. .
3. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
4. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine.
5. Admixture: ASTM C 618, fly-ash mineral.
6. Water: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
7. Strength: 100 to 200 psig at 28 days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PIPED UTILITY DEMOLITION

A. Refer to Section 024100 " Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.

B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
   1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
   2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
   3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality at no additional cost to the owner.

## 3.2 DIELECTRIC FITTING APPLICATIONS

A. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
   1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
   2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Dielectric flanges or dielectric flange kits.

B. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
   1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Dielectric [couplings or dielectric nipples].
   2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Dielectric nipples.
   3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Dielectric nipples[ or dielectric flange kits].
   4. NPS 10 and NPS 12: Dielectric flange kits.

## 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Install piping according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

E. Install piping at indicated slopes.

F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

H. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

I. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

J. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.

K. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
   2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
      a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
      b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.

L. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

M. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

## 3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and utilities Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.

I. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
   1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
   2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
   3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
   4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
   5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
   6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.

L. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

M. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

N. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
   1. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
   2. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

O. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.5 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   3. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.

## 3.6 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.

C. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.

## 3.7 PAINTING

A. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting," Section 099123 "Interior Painting," and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

## 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
   1. Stenciled Markers: According to ASME A13.1.
   2. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot noninsulated piping.
   3. Locate pipe markers on exposed piping according to the following:
      a. Near each valve and control device.
      b. Near each branch, excluding short takeoffs for equipment and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch if flow pattern is not obvious.
      c. Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors or enter inaccessible enclosures.
      d. At manholes and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
      e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of equipment.
   1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch high for name of unit if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch high for distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths of size of principal lettering.
   2. Text of Signs: Provide name of identified unit. Include text to distinguish among multiple units, inform user of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.

C. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices that become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

## 3.9 CONCRETE BASES

A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
   1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
   2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of base.
   3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
   4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
   6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
   7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

## 3.10 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

A. Refer to Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor piped utility materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

## 3.11 GROUTING

A. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.

B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.

F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 330500

# SECTION 330510 – UTILITY STRUCTURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Precast Structures.
   2. Utility Structure Accessories.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Accessories for structures.

B. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the following:
   1. Reinforcement details.
   2. Frame and cover design and structure frame support rings.
   3. Ladder details.
   4. Grounding details.
   5. Dimensioned locations and sizes of all openings and sumps.
   6. Joint details.

C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete structures, comply with ASTM C 858.

D. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer and testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with IEEE C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store precast concrete underground utility structures at Project site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.

B. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of structures with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.

B. Coordinate elevations of pipe and conduit entrances into structures with final locations and profiles of those utilities as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that pipe and conduit runs drain to structures, and as approved by Architect.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PRECAST STRUCTURES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Christy Concrete Products.
2. Cretex Concrete Products West, Inc.; Riverton Division.
3. Oldcastle Precast Group.
4. Oldcastle Precast Inc.; Utility Vault Division.
5. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.

B. Comply with ASTM C 858, with structural design loading as specified on the drawings, and with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
1. Openings: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching pipes and conduits with the manufacturer's standard allowance, vertically and horizontally, to accommodate alignment variations.
a. Openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.

C. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

## 2.2 UTILITY STRUCTURE ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Bilco Company (The).
2. Campbell Foundry Company.
3. McKinley Iron Works.
4. Neenah Foundry Company.
5. Oldcastle Precast Group.
6. Oldcastle Precast Inc.; Utility Vault Division.

B. Ferrous metal hardware, where indicated, shall be hot-dip galvanized complying with ASTM A 153 and A 123.

C. Structure Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for structure.
1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, gray cast iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B with milled cover-to-frame bearing surfaces; diameter as indicated on the drawings.
a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
2. Cover Legend: Cast in. Retained to suit system.
3. Structure Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
a. Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387/C 387M, Type M, may be used.

D. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip with 1/2-inch bolt, 5300-lbf rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800-lbf rated shear strength.

E. Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F. Capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals.

F. Fixed Structure Ladders: Arranged for attachment to wall and floor of structure. Ladder and mounting brackets and braces shall be fabricated from hot-dip galvanized steel.

G. Cover Hooks: Heavy duty, designed for lifts 60 lbf required.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Aluminum shall not be installed in contact with earth or concrete.

## 3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

A. Structures: Precast concrete.
   1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
   2. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.

## 3.3 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 31 Section "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 32 Sections "Turfs and Grasses" and "Plants."

D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" and “Asphalt Paving”.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE STRUCTURES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Structure Installation:
   1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.

2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:
1. Structure Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches below finished grade.
2. Structure Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other structure frames 1 inch above finished grade.

C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of structures where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

D. Structure Access: Circular opening in structure roof; sized to match cover size.
1. Structures with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from structure centerlines to align with ladder.
2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings to support frame and cover and to connect cover with structure roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for cast-iron frame to chimney.

E. Fixed Structure Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from other items in structures.

F. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Structures: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches for anchor bolts installed in the field.

G. Warning Sign: Install "Confined Space Hazard" warning sign on the inside surface of each structure cover.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground utility structures.
2. Test structure grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section "Grounding and Bonding."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean internal surfaces of structures, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 330510

# SECTION 334100 – STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Pipe and fittings.
   2. Nonpressure transition couplings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Section 31 “Earth Moving” for soil materials, excavating, backfilling, and site grading.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

B. HDPE: High Density Polyethylene Pipe

C. RCP: Reinforced Concrete Pipe

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: At least equal to system test pressure. Pipe joints shall be water tight.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store plastic pipe and fittings in direct sunlight.

B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Water-Service Piping:
1. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 PVC, socket type.

2.2 NONPRESSURE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Sleeve Materials:
1. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.

2.3 HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. HDPE Pipe and Fittings, NPS 6 and Larger: Corrugated and smooth lined pipe and fittings manufactured in accordance with requirements of ASTM F 2306, latest edition. Pipe shall be type S with a full circular cross section, with an outer corrugated pipe wall and a smooth inner wall. Fittings shall be water-tight.

B. HDPE corrugated and smooth lined pipe shall be manufactured from virgin PE compounds which conform with the requirements of cell classification 335444C as defined and described in ASTM D 3350.

C. Minimum pipe stiffness at five percent deflection shall be as described in ASTM F 2306, Section 6.3 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2412.

D. HDPE pipe and fittings shall be supplied by the same Manufacturer. Pipe and fittings from different Manufacturers shall not be interchanged.

## 2.4 CONCRETE

A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 3500 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 deformed steel.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

## 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install

gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.

C. Install gravity-flow, non-pressure drainage piping according to the following:
1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
2. Install piping NPS 6 and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
3. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover, unless noted otherwise on the plans.
4. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

## 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
1. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.

## 3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

## 3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."

B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3500 psi.
2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3500 psi.
3. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

C. Pipe couplings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Materials and their installation are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
   1. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping.

## 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
   1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
   2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
      a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
      b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
      c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
      d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
      e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
   3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
   4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
   1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
   2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of MDE.
   3. Schedule tests and inspections by the Owner with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
   4. Submit separate report for each test.
   5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of MDE, UNI-B-6, and the following:
      a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by the University.
      b. Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.

C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.8 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 334100

APPENDIX

A. Geotechnical Report, prepared by Triad Engineering, Inc. dated July 31, 2019

B. Hazardous Materials Reports, prepared by Boggs Environmental Consultants.
   1. Limited Asbestos-Containing Materials Survey Final Technical Report, dated September 17, 2019.
   2. Lead-Based Paint Inspection Final Technical Report, dated September 13, 2019.

# REPORT OF
# GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION

# GARRETT COLLEGE ADDITION
# GARRETT COUNTY, MARYLAND

# TRIAD PROJECT NO. 07-19-0128

**PREPARED FOR:**

MS. KATHLEEN MEAGHER, DIRECTOR OF CAMPUS FACILITIES
GARRETT COLLEGE
687 MOSSER ROAD
MCHENRY, MD 21541

**PREPARED BY:**

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

200 AVIATION DRIVE
WINCHESTER, VIRGINIA
WWW.TRIADENG.COM

JULY 31, 2019

July 31, 2019

Ms. Kathleen Meagher, Director of Campus Facilities
Garrett College
687 Mosser Road
McHenry, MD 21541

RE: Report of Geotechnical Exploration
Garrett College Addition
Garrett County, Maryland
Triad Report No. 07-19-0128

Dear Mr. Mather:

Triad Engineering, Inc. (Triad) has completed a geotechnical exploration for the planned Garrett College addition project in Garrett County, Maryland. The geotechnical scope of services was completed in substantial conformance with our revised proposal dated May 1, 2019 and executed by signing and returning the Professional Services Agreement on May 3, 2019. This report includes the results of the field exploration and laboratory testing, and it presents our recommendations related to the geotechnical design and construction elements of the project.

The subsurface exploration was performed to evaluate the subsurface conditions encountered at the planned addition and stormwater management basins for the limited purposes of preparing design and construction recommendations for geotechnical aspects of the project. It is emphasized that subsurface conditions may vary dramatically between the borings and test pits, and Triad makes no representations as to subsurface conditions other than those encountered at the specific test locations.

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of Garrett College with specific application to the design of the Garrett College Addition project in Garrett County, Maryland. Triad's responsibilities and liabilities are limited to our Client and apply only to their use of our report for the purposes described above. To observe compliance with design concepts and specifications, and to facilitate design changes in the event that subsurface conditions differ from those anticipated prior to construction, it is recommended that Triad be retained to provide continuous engineering and testing services during the earthwork and foundation construction phases of the work.

We appreciate the opportunity to provide our services during the design phase of the project. If you should have any questions concerning this revised report, or if you require any additional information, please do not hesitate to contact us.

Sincerely,

**TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.**

Raymond A. Strother II, P.E.
Geotechnical Practice Leader

Randy L. Moulton, P.E.
Principal Engineer


*"Professional Certification. I hereby certify that these documents were prepared or approved by me, and that I am a duly licensed professional engineer under the laws of the State of Maryland, License No. 15488, Expiration Date: 8/06/2021."*

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

# REPORT OF GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION

## GARRETT COLLEGE ADDITION
## GARRETT COUNTY, MARYLAND

## TRIAD PROJECT NO. 07-19-0128

## FOREWORD

This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of Garrett College for specific application to the design of the Garrett College Addition project located in Garrett County, Maryland. The work has been performed in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made.

This report should not be used for estimation of construction quantities and/or costs, and contractors should conduct their own exploration of site conditions for these purposes. Please note that Triad is not responsible for any claims, damages or liability associated with any other party's interpretation of the data or re-use of these data or engineering analyses without the express written authorization of Triad. Additionally, this report must be read in its entirety. Individual sections of this report may cause the reader to draw incorrect conclusions if considered in isolation from each other.

The conclusions and recommendations contained in this report are based, in part, upon our field observations and data obtained from the borings and test pits at the site. The nature and extent of variations may not become evident until construction. If variations then appear evident, it may be necessary to re-evaluate the recommendations presented herein. Similarly, in the event that any changes in the nature, design, or location of the facilities are planned, the conclusions and recommendations contained herein shall not be considered valid unless the changes are reviewed and the conclusions are modified or verified in writing by Triad. If we are not afforded the privilege of making this review, we will not assume responsibility for misinterpretation of our recommendations, as our recommendations are strictly limited to conditions represented to Triad at the time this report was issued.

## SITE AND PROJECT DESCRIPTION

The site for the planned development is south of Bumble Bee Road at the existing Garrett College campus in Garrett County, Maryland. The site contains manicured grassy fields with landscaped areas and concrete sidewalks throughout. Additionally, the site is generally level with little to no slope.

The concept plan, prepared by DLR Group, indicates that the proposed development will include a lobby, auditorium, stage house, multipurpose room and a BOH room. The renovated building and additions have a proposed footprint of approximately 27,000

square feet with noted finished floor elevations (FFEs) ranging from about 2602 Mean Sea Level (MSL) to 2605 MSL. We assume that the building will be comprised of conventional steel framing and a brick veneer with concrete slabs on grade. We assume that the buildings will be one story with elevated ceilings and that the foundations will be placed at roughly the same elevations as the existing structures. It appears that a below grade wall is planned for the northeastern corner of the structure that has a design bottom of wall elevation of 2601.4 MSL. The concept plan indicates that a new bus drop off and some new parking areas will be included as part of the planned construction. Based on the concept plan, two (2) stormwater management (SWM) basins with proposed pond bottoms of approximately 2599 MSL and 2600 MSL are planned for the northeastern and northwestern corners of the property, respectively.

Existing grades range from approximately 2598 MSL to 2603 MSL, and planned grades will range from about 2599 MSL to 2603 MSL. Based on the provided grading information, we anticipate that maximum cuts and fills for the project will be on the order of 10 feet or less. According to the information provided in the Request for Proposal (RFP) e-mail, maximum structural loads for the building will be 10 kips per foot for the bearing walls and 275 kips for column loads.

## GEOLOGIC SETTING

Based on our review of the McHenry Quadrangle, Garrett County, Maryland, the project site and surrounding area are underlain by the Purslane Formation of Mississippian Age. The Purslane Formation is generally comprised of light gray, tan and reddish brown, coarse-grained to conglomeratic, thick-bedded to cross-bedded sandstone and thin beds of gray shale and coaly shale. Residual soils derived from the parent bedrock generally consist of sands and silts, with some zones of clay.

## FIELD EXPLORATION

The subsurface conditions at the site were evaluated by drilling eight (8) test borings and excavating two (2) back-hoe test pits at the requested test locations. The test locations are illustrated on Figure No. A-2 in Appendix A. The test boring and test pit locations were determined by others and located in field by Triad geotechnical personnel utilizing a handheld GPS device with coordinates obtained from Google Earth®. Ground surface elevations were interpolated from the topographic information on the provided grading plan.

The test borings included Standard Penetration Testing (SPT) at standard intervals to planned termination depth or auger/spoon refusal on hard rock. All of the structure borings encountered auger refusal on hard rock at depths ranging from 13.6 feet to 28.6 feet below existing grades. Geotechnical personnel from our office were present full time during the field exploration to direct the drill crew, log all recovered soil samples and observe groundwater and geologic conditions. The recovered soil samples were transported to our laboratory for further testing. Detailed descriptions of materials

encountered in the test borings are contained on the boring logs in Appendix B. Figure No. 1 contains a description of the classification system and terminology utilized.

# SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION

## Soil Conditions

Materials encountered in the borings are generally described below. Stratification lines indicated on the boring logs represent the approximate boundaries between material types, and the actual transitions may be gradual.

**Topsoil:** A 4 to 9 inch thick layer of topsoil was encountered at the surface of all the borings. The topsoil generally consisted of brown clayey silt and silty clay with an appreciable root mat and organics. Due to the previous construction at the site, thicker zones of topsoil could be encountered between specific test locations.

**Old Fill:** Old fill material was encountered in all the borings except borings B-3 and B-6. The thickness of the fill material ranged from approximately 2.5 to 10 feet below existing grades. The fill material primarily consisted of red-brown or brown-orange sandy lean clay with variable amounts of rock fragments or silty sand with varying amounts of rock fragments. Based on the previous site grading, it is possible for fill material to extend to greater depths than those indicated on the boring logs. SPT N-values obtained in the fill ranged from 8 to over 50 blows per foot of penetration which indicated medium stiff consistencies to very dense relative densities. The majority of the fill exhibited stiff consistencies to medium dense relative densities. Pocket penetrometer tests were performed for the cohesive samples, and the readings obtained in the fill exhibited apparent unconfined strengths ranging from 2.5 tsf to 4.5 tsf.

**Residual Soils:** Residual soils were encountered below the topsoil or fill materials in all the borings, and they extended to auger refusal on hard rock. Residual soils consisted mainly of red-brown and brown-orange sandy lean clay with varying amounts of sand and rock fragments and silty sand with varying amounts of rock fragments. SPT N-values obtained within the residuum ranged from 6 to over 50 blows per foot of penetration indicating medium stiff consistencies to very dense relative densities. The majority of the residuum exhibited stiff consistencies to medium dense relative densities. Pocket penetrometer tests were performed for the cohesive samples, and the readings obtained in the residuum exhibited apparent unconfined strengths ranging from 1.5 tsf to 4.5 tsf.

## Groundwater Observations

The test borings were checked for the presence of groundwater both during and upon completion of the drilling. A static groundwater level was encountered at 19.5 feet below grade in boring B-1 and at 22 feet below grade in boring B-5 upon completion of

the drilling. The water levels rose to depths of 19.1 feet and 18 feet below existing grades after 24 hours in borings B-1 and B-5, respectively. Although we do not believe this issue is related to a static groundwater condition, heavy water flow was observed exiting the CMU foundation wall block at both test pit locations. The excavations were left open to observe the conditions, and the water eventually dissipated. We believe that poor surface drainage has channeled surface water to the foundation walls, and the CMU block cells filled with water. It is emphasized that variations in groundwater levels may occur due to changes in environmental conditions, surface drainage and other factors which may not have been evident at the time measurements were made and reported herein. Based on the observed groundwater conditions, the contractor should be prepared to dewater the site as necessary during construction.

**Existing Foundation Test Pits**

Three (3) test pits were requested for the exploration to determine the footing dimensions and perform Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) testing to evaluate the bearings soils. However, due to the presence of existing/suspected utilities and site constraints, only two (2) test pits were excavated. The test pit locations are shown on the Test Location Plan in Appendix A. The top of the footing was encountered at 4 feet below surface grades at each location. The footing at each location appeared to project 6 inches out from the foundation wall and appeared to be about 12 inches thick. DCP testing just below the existing footing at test pit TP-1 exhibited 4 to 13 blows per increment and 6 to 10 blows per increment at test pit TP-2. Please note that the lower DCP blow counts were obtained at the top of disturbed soil. Based on the encountered conditions, it appears that an allowable bearing pressure of 3,000 psf is available below the current footings at the tested locations.

## LABORATORY TESTING

Laboratory tests were performed to supplement the field classifications, assess potential volume change characteristics and establish geotechnical design criteria. All laboratory tests were completed in accordance with appropriate ASTM standard test methods. Detailed results of the laboratory tests are contained in Appendix C. A summary of the test results is presented below.

| TEST TYPE | TEST RESULTS |
|---|---|
| Natural Moisture Contents | 3.7% to 31.3% |
| Atterberg Limits: Liquid Limit<br>Plasticity Index | NV to 30<br>NP to 8 |
| Percent Passing No. 200 Sieve | 24% to 56% |
| USCS Soil Classification | SM and CL |

# DISCUSSION

Old fill that extended to approximate elevations ranging from 2592 MSL to 2600 MSL was encountered in most of the borings. Before placing new fill, we recommend proof-rolling of all subgrade soils and old fill at the site to identify any soft or unstable areas prior to placement of new structural fill or construction. Based on the provided finished floor elevation, the preliminary foundation design information and the bearing depth of the existing footings and considering the provided foundation loads, we anticipate that the majority of the old fill will be removed during foundation excavations and only a minor amount of fill will be present below the majority of the footings. Therefore, we recommend extending the footings below the fill to bear on the residual soils. However, the depth of fill encountered in borings B-1 and B-2 ranged from 7.5 to 8 feet below existing grades. Therefore, extending the footings to the residuum in these areas will require an additional 3.5 to 4 feet of over-excavation. Compacted dense graded aggregate, flowable fill or “lean mix” concrete can be utilized to replace the over-excavated soils to the planned bearing elevation. The blow counts and pocket penetrometer testing of the fill were found to be in a suitable condition to support the floor slabs. We do not believe that removal and replacement of the old fill outside of the footing alignments will be necessary, and this is considered optional at this time. Details regarding proof-rolling and treatment of any unsuitable materials will be discussed in later sections of this report. Due to presence of old fill at the site, we recommend that the following measures be strictly implemented:

- All areas in which structural fill or foundations will be located should be proof-rolled prior to fill placement or construction. Equipment to be utilized for proof-rolling should include a fully loaded tandem-axle dump truck or approved equivalent. Any unstable areas which are detected should be over-excavated to firm, stable material and replaced with new controlled fill as directed by the geotechnical engineer. Alternatively, well-graded crushed aggregate or flowable fill may be utilized in the event that adverse weather occurs during construction. Subgrade examinations and proof-rolling should be observed by a qualified representative from our office.

- All foundations constructed within areas of minimal cuts and fills should be extensively evaluated prior to placement of foundation concrete. Testing using a DCP should extend to a minimum of two (2) feet below the design bearing elevation, and this testing should be conducted under the supervision of a licensed geotechnical engineer from our office.

- In the event that there is evidence of buried debris or otherwise unsuitable material (e.g. discolored, wet, strong odor, etc.), these materials should be completely removed and replaced as indicated in this report.

# DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS

## Foundations

As mentioned previously, we only anticipate a minimal amount of existing fill to be present above the design bearing levels. We recommend that a maximum allowable bearing pressure of 3,000 psf be utilized for design of shallow foundations. Minimum widths of isolated and continuous foundations should be maintained at three (3) feet and two (2) feet, respectively. Exterior foundations should be placed at a minimum depth of 36 inches below final exterior grades or to the depth dictated by local code requirements, whichever is greater, for adequate frost protection. Interior foundations in permanently heated areas can be placed at nominal depths below the floor slab.

Where new foundations are constructed adjacent to existing foundations, the new foundations should bear at the same elevation as the existing foundations. If the new foundations will be placed at levels lower than adjacent existing foundations, we recommend that a minimum 1H:1V slope be maintained between the bottom of the existing foundation and the new foundation excavation. This measure is required to help prevent undermining of the bearing soils beneath the existing foundations. Alternatively, the existing foundations could be conventionally underpinned by placement of concrete beneath the existing foundation to extend down to the new bearing elevation. The designer should carefully consider the appropriate method and chronology for underpinning to prevent undermining excessive lengths of the existing foundation at once (i.e., underpinning should be conducted in alternating sections with maximum lengths on the order of four feet or less). In addition, we recommend that non-shrink grout be dry-packed in any gap remaining between the underpinning and the existing foundation.

Based on the provided structural loads and results of the exploration, it is estimated that total settlements for foundations bearing on approved in-situ soils will be one (1) inch or less. Differential settlement is anticipated to be half of the total settlements or a nominal one half (½) inch. Differential settlement along continuous wall footings is not expected to exceed 0.0015 inch/inch.

## Seismic Site Classification

The site soils were evaluated and classified according to the 2015 International Building Code Section 1613 - Earthquake Loads - Site Ground Motion. This building code establishes the criteria for project site evaluation. Section 1613.3.2 and 2010 ASCE-7 Standard-Table 20.3-1 defines the parameters for determining the seismic site class based on N-values. The seismic site class may be determined by calculating an average N-value of subsurface materials to a depth of 100 feet. For the determination, the N-values recorded in test borings are used for overburden soil, and then, typically, materials below the depth that auger refusal or hard rock is encountered (to a depth of 100 feet) are assigned an N-value of 100. Based on the results of the test borings, the site has an average N-value in excess of 50. Using this information along with

knowledge of the site geologic setting, the seismic site class and additional seismic information is as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Seismic Site Class** | **C** |
| **Soil Profile Name** | **Very Dense Soil and Soft Rock** |
| **Site Coefficient $F_a$** | **1.2** |
| **Site Coefficient $F_v$** | **1.7** |
| **Mapped Spectral Acceleration for Short Periods $S_s$** | **0.11** |
| **Mapped Spectral Acceleration for Short Periods $S_1$** | **0.054** |

Based on results from the test borings, published regional geologic information, and the probable maximum strength of earthquake, it is our opinion that liquefaction potential for the on-site soils during seismic activity is low. Seismic coefficients and other seismic information to be considered for structural design of the project are provided in Appendix D of this report.

## Floor Slabs

We recommend that a modulus of subgrade reaction, "k," of 110 pci be adopted for analysis and design of the slabs-on-grade which will bear on suitable in-situ soil or new controlled fill. Slabs which will not receive heavy or dynamic loading, such as office areas, should be underlain by a minimum 4-inch thick layer of open-graded aggregate such as ASTM designation No. 57 stone. Slabs which will receive heavy or dynamic loading should be underlain by a minimum six (6) inch thick layer of well-graded, crushed aggregate such as CR-6 aggregate or an approved equivalent. Concrete slabs upon which VCT, carpeting, quarry tile, or other flooring products will be placed should be underlain by a conventional polyethylene vapor barrier. Use of a vapor barrier in other areas such as warehouse and receiving areas is considered optional since these areas will most likely not be covered.

Joints should be provided in the floor slabs in accordance with the recommendations specified by the Portland Cement Association (PCA) or American Concrete Institute (ACI). Where construction joints are required in heavy traffic areas such as storage areas, we strongly recommend the use of doweled joints rather than keyed joints. The doweled joints provide a positive transfer of shear forces and prevent movement.

## Lateral Earth Pressures

It is our understanding that some below grade walls will be included as part of the construction. We recommend that the following lateral earth pressure coefficients be used to evaluate earth pressures for design of below grade walls for the project. It is noted that the coefficients are based on the angle of internal friction of the material, and

these coefficients do not include a factor of safety. Accordingly, the designer should include a factor of safety of at least 1.5 in the structural design.

| BACKFILL MATERIAL | MOIST UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | FRICTION ANGLE (degrees) | LATERAL EARTH PRESSURE COEFFICIENTS (LEVEL BACK SLOPE) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Active ($K_a$) | At-Rest ($K_o$) | Passive ($K_p$) |
| Cohesive on-site soils (sandy clays) | 120 | 30 | 0.33 | 0.50 | 3.00 |
| Granular soils (SM or more granular) | 120 | 32 | 0.31 | 0.47 | 3.25 |
| AASHTO #57 stone | 110 | 38 | 0.24 | 0.38 | 4.20 |
| Well-graded crushed aggregate (CR-6) | 140 | 40 | 0.21 | 0.36 | 4.60 |

Any surcharge loads anticipated at the surface should be multiplied by 0.5 and superimposed as a uniform horizontal pressure on the recommended design lateral loading. The coefficient of friction which can be used for determination of sliding resistance on the base of foundation elements can be computed as 0.58 times the total vertical load on the foundation. This is based on a friction angle of 30° for the base soil, and it does not include a factor of safety.

***It is emphasized that the designer must carefully consider the rigidity of the retaining system in order to select either an active or at-rest condition.*** In order to use an active earth pressure, the wall(s) must undergo a slight amount of rotation which will result in some translation at the top of the wall. Typically, for well-compacted granular backfill, the translation may be on the order of 0.001 to 0.002H, where H is the height of the wall. Similarly, for compacted cohesive soils, the translation may be on the order of 0.01 to 0.02H. If the retaining system is extremely rigid and/or upper levels are constructed over the wall to provide additional horizontal resistance, an at-rest pressure will be more appropriate.

The lateral pressure values recommended above are based on adequate drainage behind the walls without build-up of hydrostatic pressures. Consequently, a permanent backwall drainage system should be constructed along exterior retaining walls or below grade walls. The permanent backwall drainage should include a 4-inch diameter Schedule 40 PVC or HDPE perforated pipe surrounded by an 18-inch wide zone of free draining gravel such as ASTM Size No. 57, and separated from the general site backfill by a non-woven geofabric, such as TC Mirafi 140-N or an approved equal. Backwall drains should be sloped such that water will flow by gravity to a sump or an appropriate drain and day-light beyond the structure.

## CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS

### Site Preparation

Initial site clearing and grubbing should include removal of the topsoil (root mat, vegetation), all of the old fill as prescribed herein and any other deleterious materials

within the new structure footprint and any new controlled fill areas and extending five (5) feet beyond its perimeter. We assume that any existing utilities will be re-located outside of the construction area prior to commencement of earthwork, where applicable.

Upon removal of all topsoil and deleterious material and prior to any fill placement or building construction, the underlying soil subgrade materials should be proof-rolled with approved construction equipment. The proof-rolling should be conducted with a fully loaded dump truck with a minimum axle weight of 10 tons or an approved equivalent to locate isolated soft spots or areas of excessive "pumping" which are too wet to accommodate compacted fill or foundation construction.

After removal of unsuitable surface materials, the subgrade soils should be heavily proof-rolled with approved construction equipment to locate isolated soft spots or areas of excessive "pumping" which are too wet to accommodate compacted fill or building construction. These areas should be either scarified or air-dried to a sufficient moisture content and re-compacted prior to fill placement or excavated to the level of stable soils. The exposed subgrade should be examined and verified by a representative from our office prior to placement of compacted fill.

## Excavations

In general, the residual and fill soils present can be excavated with conventional earth moving equipment such as backhoes and tracked loaders. Any hard rock, defined as rock below the noted auger refusal depths on the boring logs, will require heavy ripping, hoe-ram chipping or hydraulic splitting for effective removal. Due to the close proximity of the existing structures and in-place site utilities, we recommend that blasting be prohibited for this project. During excavation operations, dry conditions should be maintained within the cut areas at all times in order to reduce the need for additional undercutting or aeration of soils. The contractor should be prepared to implement, if necessary, temporary de-watering measures in these areas during construction. These measures can include sloping the cut areas to appropriate sump pit(s) and pumping accumulated surface runoff from precipitation. All cut areas should be sealed at the end of each day, to the extent which construction practicality will permit, to help prevent infiltration of precipitation and subsequent unsuitable soil conditions.

## Controlled Fill

### Satisfactory Soils

On-site materials excavated from cut areas can generally be used for fill provided that compaction criteria are strictly maintained. The on-site materials may have to be dried or wetted on the order of 5 to 15 percent by weight to attain a satisfactory moisture content that is within three (3) percent of the optimum moisture content based on the Standard Proctor method (ASTM D 698). This will be very dependent upon seasonal conditions at the time of earthwork construction. Again, the sites were subjected to snow melt and rain events leading up to the field exploration. As such, the moisture

levels of the site soils will be dependent on the conditions present at the time of construction and the final site grading.

Fill materials should not contain any debris, waste, or frozen materials and they should contain less than two (2) percent vegetation-organic materials by weight. Also, materials classified as CH, MH, OL, OH, or Pt are not suitable for use as structural fill. Excavated rock can be utilized for fill provided that certain construction procedures are observed. These procedures include maintaining the maximum particle size of the rock, prohibiting nesting of boulders and mixing sufficient amounts of soil fines with the rock to fill in open voids between the rock particles. Select portions of the old fill can be utilized as new fill provided that the criteria outlined in this report are strictly maintained.

Controlled fill within the planned building footprint should be free of rock or gravel larger than four (4) inches in any dimension. All proposed fill materials should be approved by a geotechnical engineer prior to placement as controlled fill, and representative samples should be obtained one week prior to placement of that material to allow time for completion of the necessary laboratory tests.

### Placement and Compaction

Prior to compaction, the moisture content of each layer should be adjusted, as necessary, to obtain the required moisture content to achieve the specified compaction level. Each layer should be compacted to the required percentage of maximum dry density. Fill should not be placed on surfaces that are muddy or frozen, or have not been approved by testing and/or proof-rolling. Free water should be prevented from appearing on the surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.

Soil material which is removed because it is too wet to permit proper compaction can be spread and allowed to dry. Drying can be facilitated by discing or harrowing until the moisture content is reduced to an acceptable level. When the soil is too dry, water should be applied uniformly to the subgrade surface or to the layer to be compacted.

All fill material compacted by heavy compaction equipment should be placed in maximum 9-inch loose lifts. All fill material compacted by hand-operated tampers or light compaction equipment should be placed in maximum 4-inch loose lifts.

Any fill material placed within the structure footprint and extending five (5) feet beyond the perimeter should be compacted to at least 98 percent of the laboratory maximum dry density as determined by the Standard Proctor method (ASTM D 698) and 95% for any areas outside of this zone. The moisture content of the soils should be at or within three (3) percentage points of the optimum moisture content.

## Foundation Construction

We anticipate that conventional earth excavation equipment such as a backhoe or trackhoe can be utilized to excavate in-situ soils or controlled fill for foundation construction. Although not anticipated for foundation excavations, any hard rock

encountered will require heavy ripping or hoe-ram chipping for effective removal. As mentioned previously, we recommend that blasting be prohibited at the site. We recommend that any loose materials present at the bottom of footing excavations because of excavation work be re-compacted or completely removed by hand in order to reduce differential settlements. In any areas where hard rock is encountered at the bottom of proposed footing levels, we recommend the rock be removed to a minimum of 12 inches below the planned bearing elevations. This measure will help reduce the risk of unwanted differential settlements created from partial rock and partial soil bearing conditions.

Foundation concrete should be placed the same day that excavations are completed to reduce the potential for softening due to precipitation and/or runoff. In areas where backfill adjacent to wall construction has not been placed prior to precipitation events, any ponded water that accumulates in these areas should be pumped out immediately to help prevent softening and deterioration of the surrounding soils. In addition, all rough grades around the structure should be sloped away from the structure both during and after construction such that water from precipitation does not build up or pond adjacent to the perimeters.

Any underground utilities which are located below or adjacent to new foundations should be backfilled with approved, compacted well-graded crushed aggregate, lean mix concrete or flowable fill grout to grades which are at or above the design bearing levels. In addition, minimal thicknesses of bedding stone should be utilized beneath the utility lines in order to help prevent significant accumulation of water from precipitation developing within the utility trench area.

## Floor Slab Construction

Prior to placement of crushed stone for the floor slabs, the slab subgrade within the limits of the structure should be proof-rolled in order to detect any soft or wet "pumping" areas. The proof-rolling should be conducted with a fully loaded dump truck with a minimum axle weight of 10 tons or an approved equivalent. Any unsuitable areas should be scarified, aerated to an approved moisture content, and re-compacted or undercut and replaced with controlled fill. The subgrade for the floor slabs should be properly crowned to facilitate runoff during precipitation events and reduce the potential of ponding of water.

## Pavement Construction

Any wet and/or unstable soils present at the subgrade level during grading operations should be either scarified, aerated and re-compacted or should be removed and replaced with suitable fill material. Any unsuitable subgrade soils should be corrected immediately prior to placement of base stone and pavement material. It will be very important that the final soil subgrade be properly sloped or crowned to help remove surface water from precipitation events from the subgrade area. Also, adequate ditches must be constructed along cut sections to effectively remove surface runoff. ***Both the base stone and pavement section should be placed immediately after acceptable***

***subgrade conditions have been achieved due to the potential for subgrade softening from adverse weather conditions.*** In addition, heavy construction traffic should be limited from traveling across approved final subgrade areas that have been exposed to precipitation in order to help maintain a stable subgrade prior to pavement construction. If hard rock is encountered above the design subgrade level in the pavement area, it should be over-excavated to at least the level of the bottom of the pavement section (i.e. the bottom of the aggregate base material).

## Utility Construction

All utility trenches should be sloped and/or supported in accordance with current Occupational Safety and Health Administration (O.S.H.A.) requirements. Trenches below structure and pavement areas should be backfilled in accordance with the recommendations outlined in this report. The contractor should be prepared to implement temporary and/or permanent de-watering measures for utility excavations in order to maintain dry working conditions.

## Bioretention Facility Construction

SWM facilities proposed for the project will consist of new bioretention basins with planned underdrains. Light grading equipment such as a small tracked dozer should be utilized for gravel and media placement and any other construction within the bioretention areas.

## Construction Observation

We recommend that Triad be retained to observe the construction activities and to verify that the field conditions are consistent with the findings of our exploration. If significant variations are encountered, or if the design is altered, we should be notified. The geotechnical engineer should provide personnel as necessary to:

1) observe and verify proof-rolling of original subgrade prior to fill placement.

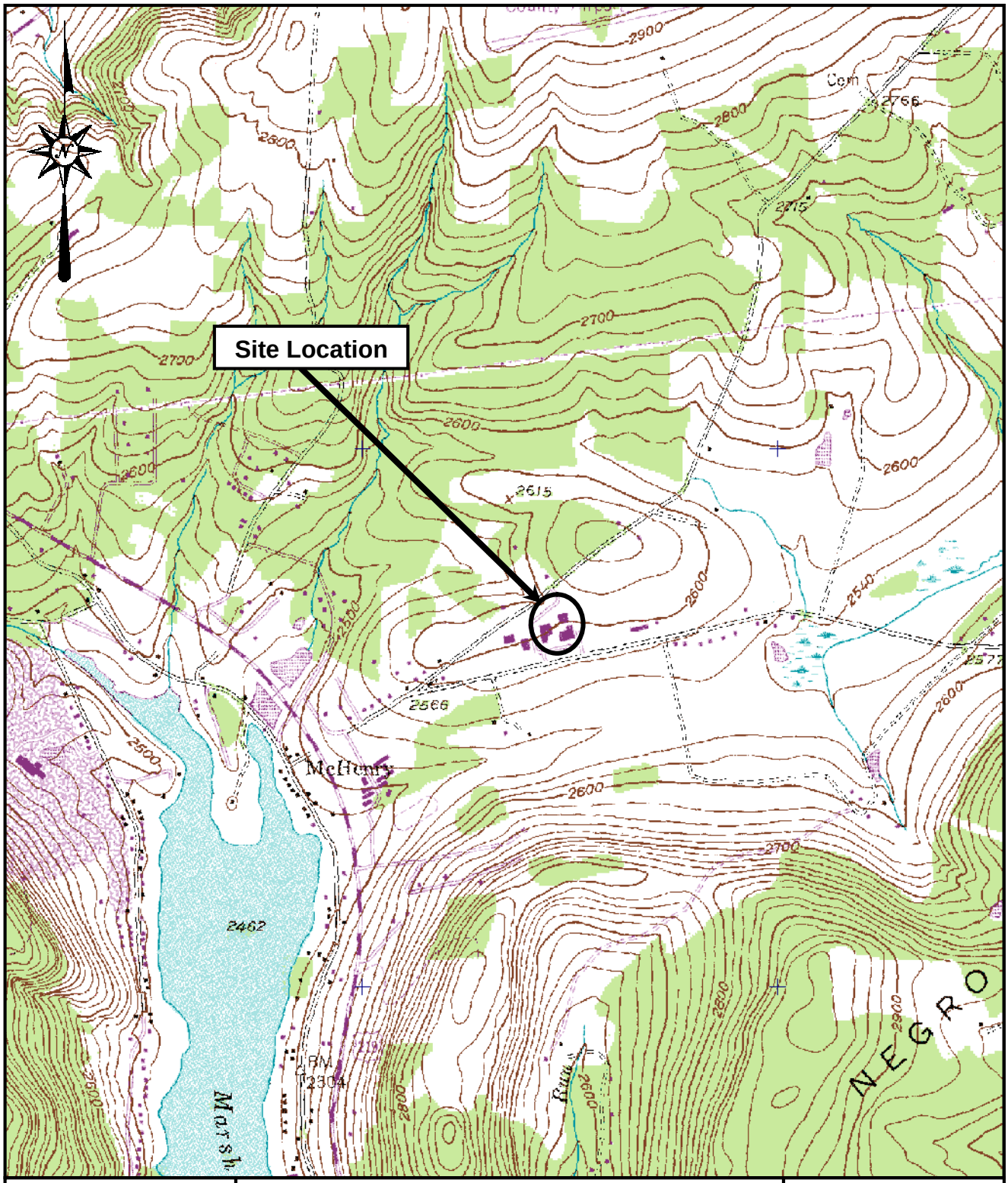
2) observe and test material compaction during any new fill construction. Field density tests should be performed in accordance with ASTM D 6938 (nuclear method). At least three field density tests should be performed for each lift or at a frequency determined by the geotechnical engineer to be sufficient for the size of the fill area to verify the required soil compaction.

3) observe all foundation and floor slab bearing levels to confirm compliance with our recommendations and verify that adequate support is available. In particular, foundation excavations which terminate in older fill should be extensively probed with a dynamic cone penetrometer (DCP) or similar equipment to confirm adequate bearing conditions.

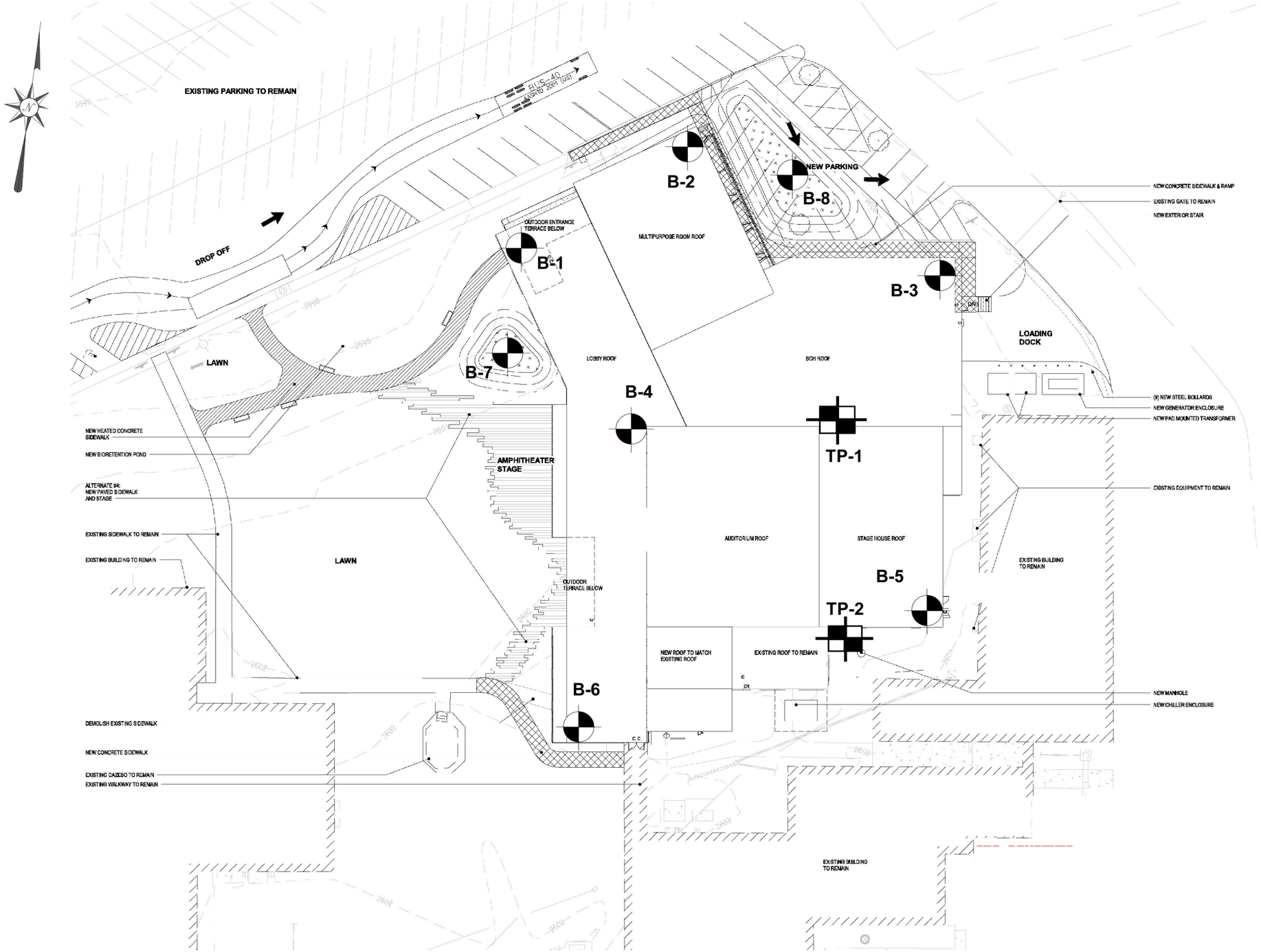
TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

# APPENDIX A

## *Illustrations*




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SOURCE: USGS 7.5 MCHENRY (MD) 1981; Topographic Maps | | GARRETT COLLEGE ADDITION<br>GARRETT COUNTY, MARYLAND | TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.<br>www.triadeng.com |
| DRAWN BY: DJM | CHECKED BY: RLM | **SITE VICINITY PLAN** | |
| DATE: 06-27-2019 | SCALE: 1"= 2000' | **TRIAD PROJECT NO. 07-19-0128** | **FIGURE NO.: A-1** |




- Approximate Boring Location

- Approximate Test Pit Location

Location plan is approximate.
For reference purposes only.

**TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.**
200 AVIATION DRIVE
WINCHESTER, VA 22602
PH: 540.667.9300 FAX: 540.667.2260
OFFICE LOCATIONS:
MARYLAND - OHIO - PENNSYLVANIA
VIRGINIA - WEST VIRGINIA

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| BASE MAP PROVIDED BY: DLR GROUP | | | |
| PROJECT NO: 07-19-0128 | | DRAWN BY: DJM | CHECKED BY: RAS |
| | | DATE: 06-11-2019 | SCALE: 1"=40' |

GARRETT COLLEGE ADDITION
GARRETT COUNTY, MD

# TEST LOCATION PLAN

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.
www.triadeng.com

FIGURE NUMBER:
A-2
PROJECT NO: 07-19-0128

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

# APPENDIX B

## *Field Exploration*

# FIELD EXPLORATION

The subsurface conditions at the sites were explored by drilling eight (8) test borings with Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) and sampling. The borings were drilled by Shenandoah Drilling utilizing a Diedrich D-50 turbo ATV-mounted rotary auger drill rig and hollow stem augers to advance the holes. The field exploration was supervised by geotechnical engineering personnel from our office.

SPT and sampling was performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586. The SPTs were performed to depths indicated on the attached boring logs using a split barrel sampler with an outside diameter of two (2) inches and an inside diameter of one and three-eighths (1-3/8) inches. The split barrel sampler was driven eighteen (18) inches with a hammer weighing approximately 140 pounds and falling thirty (30) inches. The number of blows required to drive the split barrel sampler at six (6) inch increments was recorded on the boring logs. The method utilized to classify the soils is defined in Figure No. 1, Key To Identification Of Soils And Weathered Rock Samples.

# TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

## KEY TO IDENTIFICATION OF SOIL AND WEATHERED ROCK SAMPLES

The material descriptions on the logs indicate the visual identification of the soil and rock recovered from the exploration and are based on the following criteria. Major soil components are designated by capital letters and minor components are described by terms indicating the percentage by weight of each component. Standard Penetration Testing (SPT) and sampling was conducted in accordance with ASTM D1586. N-values in blows per foot are used to describe the *relative density* of coarse-grained soils or the *consistency* of fine-grained soils.

| The MAJOR components constitute more than 50% of the sample and have the following size designation. | | The MINOR components have the following percentage designation. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **COMPONENT** | **PARTICLE SIZE** | **ADJECTIVE** | **PERCENTAGE** |
| Boulders | 12 inches plus | | |
| Cobbles | 3 to 12 inches | and | 35 - 50 |
| Gravel -coarse | ¾ to 3 inches | | |
| -fine | #4 to ¾ inches | some | 20 - 35 |
| Sand -coarse | #10 to #4 | | |
| -medium | #40 to #10 | little | 10 - 20 |
| -fine | #200 to #40 | | |
| Silt or Clay | Minus #200 (fine-grained soil) | trace | 0 - 10 |

| **Relative Density – Coarse-grained Soils** | | **Consistency – Fine-grained Soils** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***Term*** | ***N-Value*** | ***Term*** | ***N-Value*** |
| Very Loose | ≤4 | ery Soft | ≤ 2 |
| Loose | 5 to 10 | Soft | 3 to 4 |
| Medium Dense | 11 to 30 | Medium Stiff | 5 to 8 |
| Dense | 31 to 50 | Stiff | 9 to 16 |
| Very Dense | >50 | Very Stiff | >16 |

| **Soil Plasticity** | **Plasticity Index (PI)** | **Rock Hardness** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| None | Nonplastic | ***Term*** | ***N-Value*** |
| Low | 1 to 5 | Very Weathered | ≤ 50/.5 |
| Medium | 5 to 20 | Weathered | 50/.4 |
| High | 20 to 40 | Soft | 50/.3 |
| Very High | over 40 | Medium hard | 50/.2 to 50/.1 |
| **Moisture Description** | | Hard | Auger Refusal |

| **Moisture Description** |
|---|
| Dry - Dusty, dry to touch |
| Slightly Moist - damp |
| Moist - no visible free water |
| Wet - visible free water, saturated |

**FIGURE NO. 1**

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-1
Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2
Date Started: 6/13/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO
Date Completed: 6/13/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2600

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Water Level First Noted 23.5 ft.
Core Sample | Auger Probe | Water Level Upon Completion 19.5 ft. | Water Level End of Day 19.1 ft.

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | | 1-2-7 | 100% | | | 9" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, little rock fragments, moist<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| | S-2 | | 2-5-6 | 72% | | | -stiff<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| 5.0 | S-3 | | 4-7-7 | 78% | | | -stiff, little to some rock fragments<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| | | | | | | 7.5 | -FILL- | | | | 2592.5 |
| | S-4 | | 2-2-4 | 72% | | | Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, medium stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to trace rock fragments, moist<br>PP=2.0 tsf<br>-difficult drilling starting at 9.5 feet | | | | |
| 10.0 | | | | | | 13.5 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2586.5 |
| | S-5 | | 3-5-7 | 11% | | | Red-brown silty **SAND**, medium dense, little rock fragments, slightly moist | | | | |
| 15.0 | | | | | | 18.5 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2581.5 |
| | S-6 | | 2-6-6 | 100% | | | Red-brown sandy **SILT**, stiff, little to trace clay, moist | | | | |
| 20.0 | | | | | | 23.5 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2576.5 |
| | S-7 | | 17-16-50/6" | 78% | | | Orange-brown **SAND AND ROCK FRAGMENTS**, very dense, little clay, very moist | | | | |
| 25.0 | | | | | | 28.6 | -very dense | | | | 2571.4 |
| | S-8 | | 50/1" | 0% | | | -RESIDUUM-<br>-SPOON REFUSAL AT 28.6 FEET- | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. Cave in at 4.0'.

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.
200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-2
Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2
Date Started: 6/14/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO
Date Completed: 6/14/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2601

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | | 1-2-6 | 100% | | | 9" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, medium stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to some rock fragments, moist<br>PP=2.0 tsf | | | | |
| | S-2 | | 4-6-13 | 89% | | | -very stiff<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| 5.0 | S-3 | | 4-8-14 | 100% | | | -very stiff<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| | | | | | | 8.0 | -FILL- | | | | 2593.0 |
| | S-4 | | 4-5-4 | 83% | | | Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to some rock fragments, moist<br>PP=4.25 tsf | | | | |
| 10.0 | | | | | | 13.5 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2587.5 |
| | S-5 | | 4-11-12 | 100% | | | Red-brown silty **SAND**, medium dense, little to some rock fragments, moist<br>-difficult drilling starting at 16 feet | | | | |
| 15.0 | | | | | | 18.0 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2583.0 |
| | S-6 | | 4-10-25 | 100% | | 19.3 | Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, very stiff, low to medium plasticity, little rock fragments, slightly moist<br>PP=2.25 tsf | | | | 2581.7 |
| 20.0 | | | | | | | -RESIDUUM- | | | | |
| | | | | | | 22.2 | Red-brown **SAND AND ROCK FRAGMENTS**, dense, little to trace clay, slightly moist<br>-RESIDUUM-<br>-AUGER REFUSAL AT 22.2 FEET- | | | | 2578.8 |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.
200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. No groundwater encountered during or upon completion of drilling.

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-3

Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2

Date Started: 6/14/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO

Date Completed: 6/14/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2602.5

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | | 2-4-4 | 100% | | | 9" TOPSOIL<br>Tan-brown silty **SAND**, loosely dense, some to little rock fragments, moist | | | | |
| | S-2 | | 7-14-16 | 94% | | | -red-brown, medium dense | | | | |
| 5.0 | S-3 | | 4-8-11 | 100% | | | -medium dense, little clay | | | | |
| | S-4 | | 5-9-9 | 89% | | | -medium dense, little to trace clay | | | | |
| 10.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | S-5 | | 5-8-20 | 100% | | | -medium dense | | | | |
| 15.0 | | | | | | 17.0 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2585.5 |
| | | | | | | | -AUGER REFUSAL AT 17.0 FEET- | | | | |
| 20.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. No groundwater encountered during or upon completion of drilling.

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-4

Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2

Date Started: 6/13/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO

Date Completed: 6/13/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2601.5

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | | 2-3-7 | 83% | | | 6" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to some rock fragments, moist<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| | S-2 | | 3-5-7 | 89% | | 3.5 | -FILL- | | | | 2598.0 |
| 5.0 | S-3 | | 3-5-4 | 94% | | | Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to trace rock fragments, moist<br>PP=4.5 tsf<br>-stiff<br>PP=2.75 tsf | | | | |
| | | | | | | 8.5 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2593.0 |
| | S-4 | | 5-19-23 | 83% | | | Red-brown silty **SAND**, dense, little rock fragments, slightly moist<br>-difficult drilling beginning at 10.5 feet | | | | |
| 10.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | S-5 | | 50/1" | 100% | | 13.6 | -very dense, trace clay | | | | 2587.9 |
| | | | | | | | -RESIDUUM-<br>-SPOON REFUSAL AT 13.6 FEET- | | | | |
| 15.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.
200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. No groundwater encountered during or upon completion of drilling.

# TEST BORING LOG

Sheet 1 of 1

Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-5

Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2

Date Started: 6/14/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO

Date Completed: 6/14/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2601

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

Water Level Upon Completion 22.0 ft.

Water Level End of Day 18.0 ft.

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | | 5-8-8 | 100% | | | 4" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown silty **SAND AND ROCK FRAGMENTS**, medium dense, little to some clay, moist | | | | |
| | S-2 | | 5-6-5 | 89% | | 3.5 | -FILL- | | | | 2597.5 |
| 5.0 | S-3 | | 4-6-7 | 100% | | | Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to some rock fragments, moist<br>PP=4.25 tsf<br>-stiff<br>PP=4.50 tsf | | | | |
| 10.0 | S-4 | | 1-3-3 | 100% | | | -tan-brown, medium stiff, trace rock fragments<br>PP=1.50 tsf | | | | |
| 15.0 | S-5 | | 4-5-6 | 72% | | | -red-brown, stiff, little rock fragments<br>PP=2.75 tsf | | | | |
| | S-6 | | 7-9-9 | 100% | | 18.5 | -difficult drilling starting at 17.5 feet<br>-RESIDUUM-<br>Tan-brown silty **SAND AND ROCK FRAGMENTS**, medium dense, moist | | | | 2582.5 |
| 20.0 | | | | | | 23.0 | -RESIDUUM- | | | | 2578.0 |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | -AUGER REFUSAL AT 23.0 FEET- | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.
200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. Cave in at 22.5'.

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-6

Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2

Date Started: 6/13/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO

Date Completed: 6/13/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2602

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | | WOH-3-7 | 61% | | | 6" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, some rock fragments, moist<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| | | | | | | 2.5 | 2599.5 | | | | |
| | S-2 | | 8-6-9 | 17% | | | -POSSIBLE FILL TO RESIDUUM-<br>Red-brown silty **SAND**, medium dense, some to little rock fragments, slightly moist | | | | |
| 5.0 | S-3 | | 5-8-11 | 94% | | | -medium dense, little clay<br>-difficult drilling starting at 6.5 feet | | | | |
| | | | | | | 8.5 | 2593.5 | | | | |
| | S-4 | | 50/4" | 22% | | | Brown silty **SAND AND ROCK FRAGMENTS**, very dense, moist | | | | |
| 10.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | S-5 | | 50/2" | 6% | | | -very dense | | | | |
| | | | | | | 14.5 | 2587.5 | | | | |
| 15.0 | | | | | | | -RESIDUUM-<br>-AUGER REFUSAL AT 14.5 FEET- | | | | |
| 20.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. No groundwater encountered during or upon completion of drilling. Cave in at 11.4'.

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-7

Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2

Date Started: 6/13/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO

Date Completed: 6/13/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2600

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | X | 3-5-7 | 67% | | | 4" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, little to some sand, little rock fragments, moist<br>PP=2.75 tsf | | | | |
| | S-2 | X | 3-5-6 | 89% | | | -stiff, little to trace sand, trace rock fragments<br>PP=4.5 tsf | | | | |
| 5.0 | S-3 | X | 3-5-7 | 72% | | | -stiff<br>PP=2.25 tsf | | | | |
| | S-4 | X | 4-50/2" | 100% | | 9.2 | -very stiff, some sand, little to some rock fragments<br>PP=4.5 tsf<br>-FILL TO POSSIBLE RESIDUUM-<br>-SPOON REFUSAL AT 9.2 FEET- | | | | 2590.8 |
| 10.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. No groundwater encountered during or upon completion of drilling. Offset 5' Northwest and set pipe at 7' for infiltration testing. Cave in at 6.3'.

# TEST BORING LOG



Project Number: 07-19-0128 | Project Name: Garrett College Addition | Boring No.: B-8

Logger: DJM | Boring Location: See Figure No. A-2

Date Started: 6/13/19 | Drill/Method: DIEDRICH D-50 TURBO

Date Completed: 6/13/19 | Driller: SHENANDOAH | Ground Elev.: 2601

Shelby Tube | Standard Split Spoon | Core Sample | Auger Probe

| Depth (feet) | Sample No. | Sample Type | Blow Counts | Recovery (%) | RQD (RUN) | Strata Depth (ft) | MATERIAL DESCRIPTION | RQD (Strata) | Water Level | Graphic Log | Strata Elevation |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | S-1 | X | 3-8-11 | 78% | | | 4" TOPSOIL<br>Red-brown silty **SAND AND ROCK FRAGMENTS**, medium dense, little clay, moist | | | | |
| | S-2 | X | 4-8-11 | 61% | | | -medium dense | | | | |
| 5.0 | S-3 | X | 3-6-10 | 83% | | 5.0 | -FILL-<br>Red-brown sandy lean **CLAY**, stiff, low to medium plasticity, trace rock fragments, moist<br>PP=>4.5 tsf | | | | 2596.0 |
| | S-4 | X | 3-5-12 | 83% | | | -very stiff<br>PP=2.0 tsf | | | | |
| 10.0 | | | | | | 10.0 | -FILL-<br>-BORING TERMINATED AT 10.0 FEET- | | | | 2591.0 |
| 15.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 25.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 30.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD_C 07-19-0128 BORINGS.GPJ TRIAD 3.GDT 7/31/19

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

200 Aviation Drive
Winchester, VA
P: 540.667.9300
F: 540.667.2260

Remarks: Surface elevation is approximate. No groundwater encountered during or upon completion of drilling. Offset 5' Northwest and set pipe at 8' for infiltration testing.

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

# APPENDIX C

## *Laboratory Testing*

# LABORATORY TESTING

The soil samples obtained during the field exploration were visually classified in the field by geotechnical engineering personnel from Triad. The recovered soils were further evaluated by laboratory testing. Laboratory soil tests were conducted in accordance with applicable ASTM Standards as listed below:

1) Moisture content tests were performed in accordance with ASTM D 2216.

2) Atterberg Limits tests, consisting of the liquid limit, plastic limit, and plasticity index, were performed in accordance with ASTM D 4318.

3) Sieve analyses with washed No. 200 sieve tests were performed in accordance with ASTM D 422.

A summary and details of the laboratory tests are included on the following pages of this appendix.

# TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

## SOIL DATA SUMMARY

| SAMPLE NO. | SAMPLE DEPTH (ft) | SAMPLE TYPE | NATURAL MOISTURE (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS | | | GRADATION | | | USCS SOIL CLASS. | PROCTOR | | ADDITIONAL TESTS CONDUCTED |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | LL | PL | PI | % GRAVEL | % SAND | % FINES | | MAX. DD (pcf) | OPT. M (%) | |
| B-1 | 2.5-4 | SS | 14.3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-1 | 5-6.5 | SS | 17.3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-1 | 8.5-10 | SS | 31.3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-3 | 2.5-4 | SS | 10.9 | NV | NP | NP | 22 | 54 | 24 | SM | | | |
| B-3 | 5-6.5 | SS | 16.2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-3 | 8.5-10 | SS | 9.7 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-4 | 2.5-4 | SS | 14.2 | 30 | 22 | 8 | 0 | 44 | 56 | CL | | | |
| B-4 | 5-6.5 | SS | 15.4 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-4 | 8.5-10 | SS | 3.7 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-5 | 0-1.5 | SS | 9.8 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-5 | 2.5-4 | SS | 14.4 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-5 | 5-6.5 | SS | 18.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-5 | 8.5-10 | SS | 15.3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-5 | 13.5-15 | SS | 15.5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-6 | 2.5-4 | SS | 12.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-6 | 5-6.5 | SS | 6.8 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-7 | 2.5-4 | SS | 22.2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-7 | 5-6.5 | SS | 17.9 | | | | | | | | | | |

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

Notes:
1) Soil tests performed in accordance with recognized ASTM testing standards.
2) SS = Split Spoon; UD = Undisturbed

PROJECT NUMBER: 07-19-0128
PROJECT NAME: Garrett College Addition
LOCATION: Garrett County, MD

FIGURE C-1

# TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

## SOIL DATA SUMMARY

| SAMPLE NO. | SAMPLE DEPTH (ft) | SAMPLE TYPE | NATURAL MOISTURE (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS | | | GRADATION | | | USCS SOIL CLASS. | PROCTOR | | ADDITIONAL TESTS CONDUCTED |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | LL | PL | PI | % GRAVEL | % SAND | % FINES | | MAX. DD (pcf) | OPT. M (%) | |
| B-8 | 2.5-4 | SS | 4.0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-8 | 5-6.5 | SS | 10.8 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

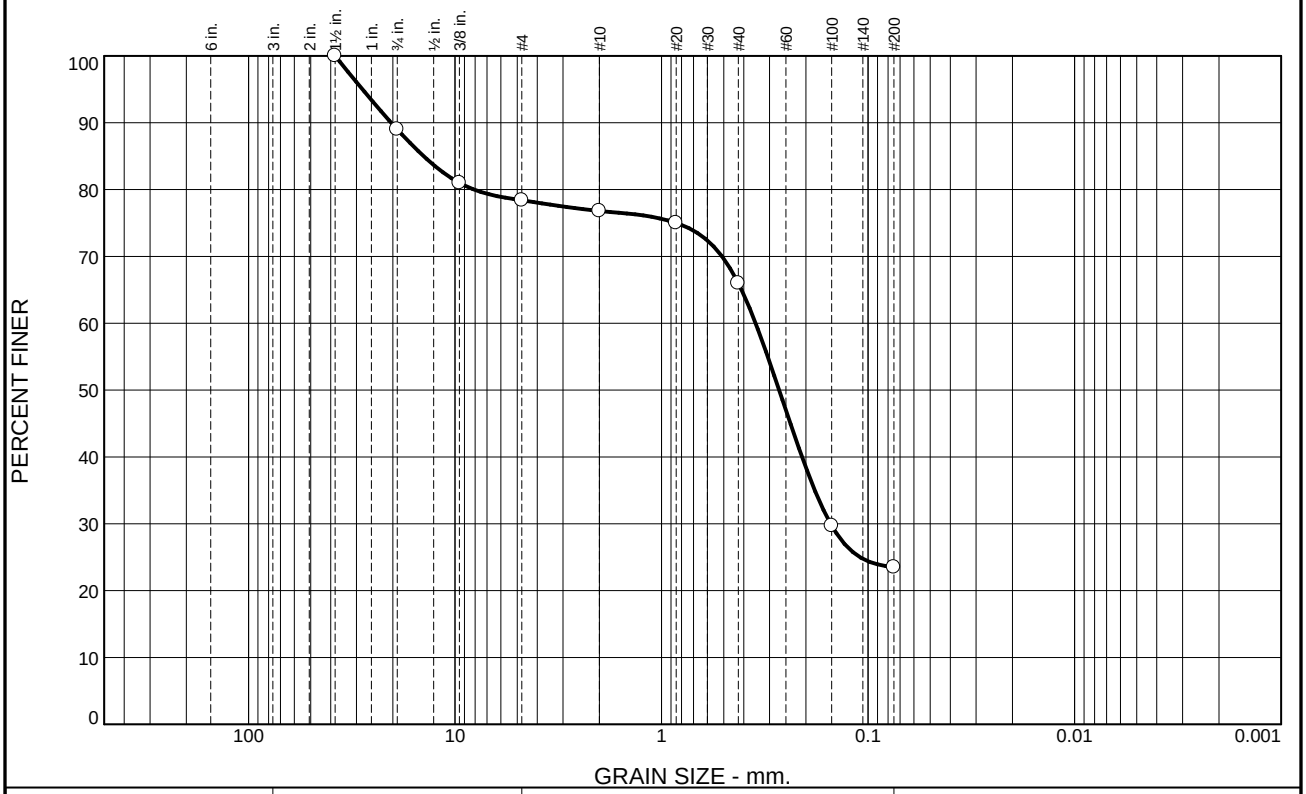
TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

Notes:
1) Soil tests performed in accordance with recognized ASTM testing standards.
2) SS = Split Spoon; UD = Undisturbed

PROJECT NUMBER: 07-19-0128
PROJECT NAME: Garrett College Addition
LOCATION: Garrett County, MD

FIGURE C-2

# Particle Size Distribution Report




| % +3" | % Gravel | | % Sand | | | % Fines | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Coarse | Fine | Coarse | Medium | Fine | Silt | Clay |
| 0.0 | 11.0 | 10.6 | 1.6 | 10.8 | 42.5 | 23.5 | |

| SIEVE SIZE | PERCENT FINER | SPEC.* PERCENT | PASS? (X=NO) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 1/2" | 100.0 | | |
| 3/4" | 89.0 | | |
| 3/8" | 81.0 | | |
| #4 | 78.4 | | |
| #10 | 76.8 | | |
| #20 | 75.0 | | |
| #40 | 66.0 | | |
| #100 | 29.7 | | |
| #200 | 23.5 | | |

* (no specification provided)

**Material Description**

Red-brown silty SAND, some gravel

**Atterberg Limits**

PL= NP LL= NV PI= NP

**Coefficients**

$D_{90}$= 20.3830 $D_{85}$= 14.1931 $D_{60}$= 0.3506
$D_{50}$= 0.2696 $D_{30}$= 0.1519 $D_{15}$=
$D_{10}$= $C_u$= $C_c$=

**Classification**

USCS= SM AASHTO= A-2-4(0)

**Remarks**

**Source of Sample:** B-3 **Depth:** 2.5' - 6.5'

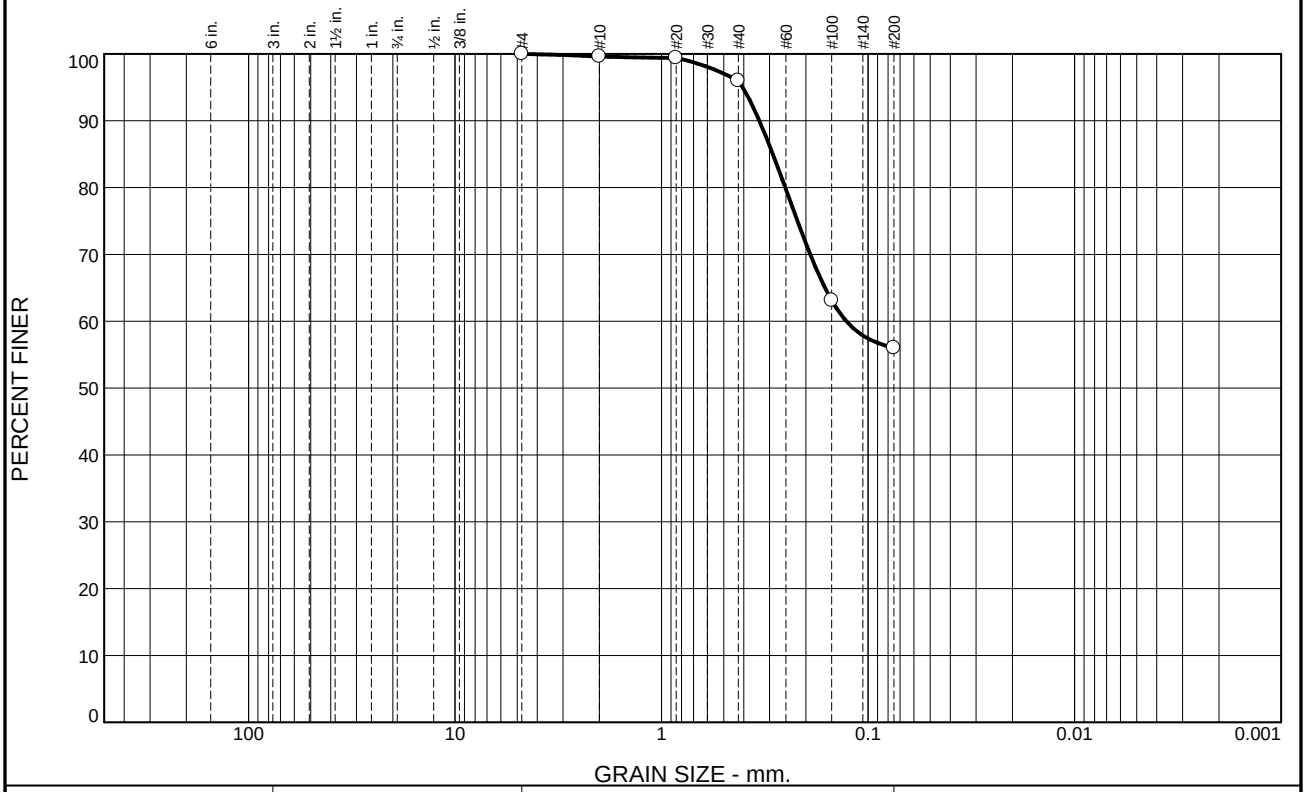
**Date:** 7-18-2019

**Triad Engineering, Inc.**

**Client:** Garrett College
**Project:** Garrett College Addition
Garrett County, MD
**Project No:** 07-19-0128 **Figure** C-3

**Tested By:** KBA **Checked By:** RAS

# Particle Size Distribution Report




| % +3" | % Gravel | | % Sand | | | % Fines | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Coarse | Fine | Coarse | Medium | Fine | Silt | Clay |
| 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.4 | 3.6 | 40.0 | 56.0 | |

| SIEVE SIZE | PERCENT FINER | SPEC.* PERCENT | PASS? (X=NO) |
|---|---|---|---|
| #4 | 100.0 | | |
| #10 | 99.6 | | |
| #20 | 99.4 | | |
| #40 | 96.0 | | |
| #100 | 63.1 | | |
| #200 | 56.0 | | |

* (no specification provided)

**Material Description**

Brown sandy lean CLAY

**Atterberg Limits**

PL= 22 LL= 30 PI= 8

**Coefficients**

$D_{90}$= 0.3360 $D_{85}$= 0.2892 $D_{60}$= 0.1274
$D_{50}$= $D_{30}$= $D_{15}$=
$D_{10}$= $C_u$= $C_c$=

**Classification**

USCS= CL AASHTO= A-4(2)

**Remarks**

**Source of Sample:** B-4 **Depth:** 2.5' - 6.5'

**Date:** 7-18-2019

**Triad Engineering, Inc.**

**Client:** Garrett College
**Project:** Garrett College Addition
Garrett County, MD
**Project No:** 07-19-0128 **Figure** C-4

**Tested By:** KBA **Checked By:** RAS

TRIAD ENGINEERING, INC.

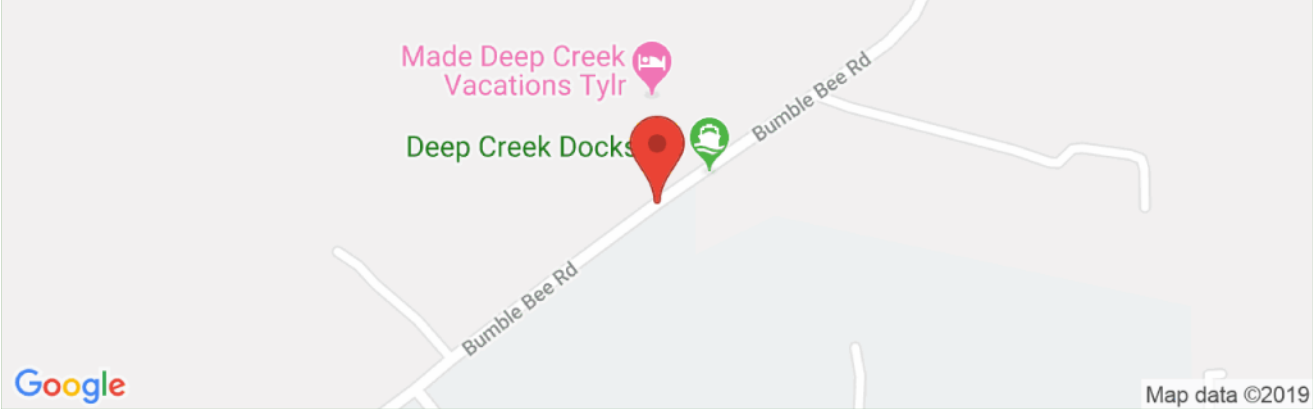
# APPENDIX D

## *Seismic Information*

# 07-19-0128 Garrett College Addition

## Bumble Bee Rd, McHenry, MD, USA

**Latitude, Longitude: 39.563852, -79.33979010000001**



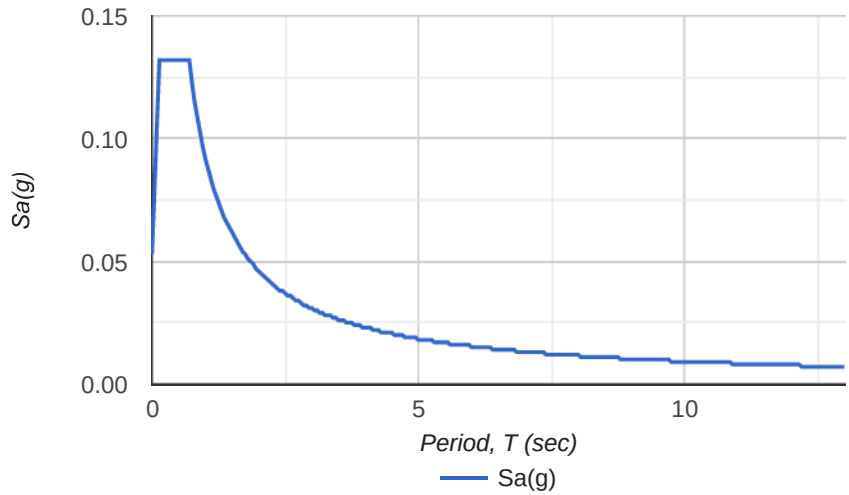

| | |
|---|---|
| **Date** | 7/31/2019, 9:27:01 AM |
| **Design Code Reference Document** | IBC-2015 |
| **Risk Category** | III |
| **Site Class** | C - Very Dense Soil and Soft Rock |

| Type | Value | Description |
|---|---|---|
| $S_S$ | 0.11 | $MCE_R$ ground motion. (for 0.2 second period) |
| $S_1$ | 0.054 | $MCE_R$ ground motion. (for 1.0s period) |
| $S_{MS}$ | 0.132 | Site-modified spectral acceleration value |
| $S_{M1}$ | 0.092 | Site-modified spectral acceleration value |
| $S_{DS}$ | 0.088 | Numeric seismic design value at 0.2 second SA |
| $S_{D1}$ | 0.062 | Numeric seismic design value at 1.0 second SA |

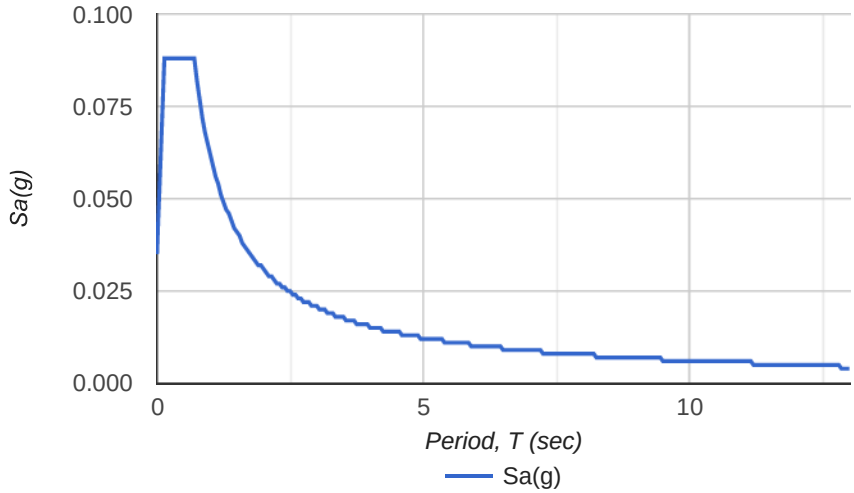
| Type | Value | Description |
|---|---|---|
| SDC | A | Seismic design category |
| $F_a$ | 1.2 | Site amplification factor at 0.2 second |
| $F_v$ | 1.7 | Site amplification factor at 1.0 second |
| PGA | 0.051 | $MCE_G$ peak ground acceleration |
| $F_{PGA}$ | 1.2 | Site amplification factor at PGA |
| $PGA_M$ | 0.061 | Site modified peak ground acceleration |
| $T_L$ | 12 | Long-period transition period in seconds |
| SsRT | 0.11 | Probabilistic risk-targeted ground motion. (0.2 second) |
| SsUH | 0.121 | Factored uniform-hazard (2% probability of exceedance in 50 years) spectral acceleration |
| SsD | 1.5 | Factored deterministic acceleration value. (0.2 second) |
| S1RT | 0.054 | Probabilistic risk-targeted ground motion. (1.0 second) |
| S1UH | 0.059 | Factored uniform-hazard (2% probability of exceedance in 50 years) spectral acceleration. |
| S1D | 0.6 | Factored deterministic acceleration value. (1.0 second) |
| PGAd | 0.6 | Factored deterministic acceleration value. (Peak Ground Acceleration) |

| Type | Value | Description |
|---|---|---|
| $C_{RS}$ | 0.913 | Mapped value of the risk coefficient at short periods |
| $C_{R1}$ | 0.921 | Mapped value of the risk coefficient at a period of 1 s |

**MCER Response Spectrum**




**Design Response Spectrum**




DISCLAIMER

While the information presented on this website is believed to be correct, SEAOC /OSHPD and its sponsors and contributors assume no responsibility or liability for its accuracy. The material presented in this web application should not be used or relied upon for any specific application without competent examination and verification of its accuracy, suitability and applicability by engineers or other licensed professionals. SEAOC / OSHPD do not intend that the use of this information replace the sound judgment of such competent professionals, having experience and knowledge in the field of practice, nor to substitute for the standard of care required of such professionals in interpreting and applying the results of the seismic data provided by this website. Users of the information from this website assume all liability arising from such use. Use of the output of this website does not imply approval by the governing building code bodies responsible for building code approval and interpretation for the building site described by latitude/longitude location in the search results of this webstie.

# LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY
## FINAL TECHNICAL REPORT

***Conducted at:***

## GARRETT COLLEGE
## BUILDING 700 & 800
687 Mosser Road,
McHenry, Maryland 21541

***Prepared for:***

687 Mosser Road
McHenry, Maryland 21541

ATTENTION: Mr. Hugh A. Schrier
Plant Manager

Email: hugh.schrier@garrettcollege.edu

BEC Project #MD19159

Fieldwork Conducted: August 22, 2019 and August 29, 2019

Final Technical Report Date: September 17, 2019

***Prepared by:***

BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS
Middletown, MD ~ Morgantown, WV
Corporate Office: 200 W Main Street, Middletown, MD 21769
Tel: (301) 694-5687 ~ Fax: (301) 694-9799

*ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE, ENGINEERING & INDUSTRIAL HYGIENE SERVICES*

BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY
# FINAL TECHNICAL REPORT

***Conducted at:***

## GARRETT COLLEGE
**BUILDING 700 & 800**
687 Mosser Road,
McHenry, Maryland 21541

## TABLE OF CONTENTS




**BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS, INC.**

On-site Fieldwork & Final Technical Report By:

Andrew Hanson., Project Manager
State of Maryland Asbestos Inspector (License No. 19008182)

## SECTION 1.0 SUBJECT SITE DESCRIPTION & SCOPE OF WORK

| | |
|---|---|
| **Project Site:** | **GARRET COLLEGE BUILDING 700/800**<br>687 Mosser Road<br>McHenry, Maryland 21541 |
| **Requester Name:** | Mr. Hugh A. Schrier, Plant Manager |
| **Requestor Address:** | **GARRET COLLEGE**<br>687 Mosser Road<br>McHenry, Maryland 21541 |

**Subject Site Description & Scope of Work:**

The focus of this inspection was the readily-accessible suspect asbestos-containing material located within Building #700 (Fine Arts / Administration Building) and Building #800 (Gymnasium) located on the campus of Garrett College located at 687 Mosser Road, McHenry, Maryland 21541.

BEC received authorization from Mr. Hugh A. Schrier, Garrett College plant manager, to provide industrial hygiene services to determine the presence of asbestos-containing materials within the subject site, which is scheduled to undergo renovations. BEC advises, this limited asbestos inspection was focused on interior suspect asbestos-containing materials scheduled to be disturbed during upcoming renovations. Therefore, BEC makes no references or representations regarding the presence or absence of asbestos-containing materials not included in the scope of this limited survey.

## SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY

### 2.1 Background

BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS, INC. (BEC) conducted a limited asbestos-containing building construction materials (ACBMs) survey within building #700 and building #800 of Garrett College located at 687 Mosser Road, McHenry, Maryland 21541 on August 22, 2019 and August 29, 2019.

BEC conducted interviews with Mr. Hugh A. Schrier, Garrett College plant manager to become familiar with the building history and the limits of the inspection, prior to proceeding with the field inspection activities. BEC notes, only readily accessible materials identified within building #700 and building #800 at the subject site were sampled during the course of this limited asbestos-containing materials survey. BEC cautions that additional suspect asbestos-containing building construction materials may exist outside this limited asbestos inspection scope of work; but were not sampled during the conduct of this work effort.

### 2.2 Field Sampling

BEC staff licensed State of Maryland Department of the Environment (MDE) "Asbestos Inspector", Mr. Andrew Hanson conducted preliminary field walk inspections for the purpose of developing an inventory of suspect ACBMs associated with building #700 and building #800 at the subject site. Subsequently, Mr. Hanson collected multiple bulk samples of suspect asbestos-containing materials observed at the subject site on August 22, 2019 and August 29, 2019.

BEC advises, based upon current United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) asbestos hazard control regulations, the minimum number of samples necessary to definitively determine the presence (or absence) of ACBMs is dependent on the nature and quantity of the suspect building construction material. Additionally, the US EPA has established a standardized schedule for bulk sample collection of suspect ACBMs based upon homogeneous areas. Homogeneous areas are defined as "…building construction materials that are similar in color, consistency, texture, and appearance of similar application/installation time period".

**SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY**

## 2.2 Field Sampling (continued)

Based upon on-site visual inspection and bulk sampling guidelines, sixty-four (64) samples of the suspect ACBMs were collected and submitted to the analytical laboratory; which upon standard polarized light microscopy with dispersion staining (PLM/DS) examination revealed the presence of one hundred six (106) individual PLM/DS layers.

BEC advises, based upon the US EPA asbestos regulations' prescribed (mandatory) analytical method, the laboratory analyst has the sole discretion/responsibility in determining whether the bulk sample is composed of one or multiple layers.

## 2.3 Material Classification

Asbestos-containing materials (ACMs) are any building construction materials containing greater than one percent (>1%) asbestos. Friable ACM is any material which can be broken, crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder under hand pressure; conversely, non-friable ACMs are materials incapable of reduction to powder via hand pressure.

In accordance with Federal asbestos hazard control regulations (40 CFR Part 763 - Asbestos, Subpart E), bulk sampling is not required to designate (i.e., presume and treat) a construction material suspected to contain asbestos as Presumed Asbestos-Containing Material (PACM), should a duly trained and accredited asbestos inspector observe/inspect and assign the PACM designation to the suspect ACM.

However, BEC advises, in accordance with Federal regulations, rebuttal of the PACM designation and re-classification of a material to non-ACM, requires collection and analysis of a minimum number of samples of the suspect ACM. As a reminder, a homogeneous material is a unique group of construction materials (eg, surfacing material, thermal system insulation material, or miscellaneous material) that possesses uniform properties such as color, texture, age, and functionality.

For a summary of the minimum number of samples required to undergo collection and analysis to rebut the PACM designation, please refer to **TABLE A: US EPA Minimum Number of Bulk Samples Required to Rebut ACM Designation** on the following page.

**TABLE A: US EPA Minimum Number of Bulk Samples Required to Rebut ACM Designation**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ***Thermal System Insulation (TSI)***:<br>Thermal System Insulation includes materials such as boiler insulation, pipe insulation, and ductwork insulation. | | |
| At least three (3) samples from each homogeneous material of TSI. | At least one (1) sample from patched TSI that is less than six square feet. | For pipe fittings, in a manner sufficient to determine if the material is asbestos-containing. |
| ***Surfacing Material***:<br>Surfacing material includes materials such as spray-applied fireproofing, troweled-on plasters or ceiling textures. | | |
| At least three samples from homogeneous materials of 1,000 square feet or less. | At least five samples from homogeneous materials of greater than 1,000 square feet but less than 5,000 square feet. | At least seven samples from homogeneous materials of greater than 5000 square feet, with an additional 1 sample per each increment of 1,000 sf, in excess of 5,000 sf. |
| ***Miscellaneous Material and Non-friable Suspect ACM***:<br>Miscellaneous materials include all materials that are not *TSI* or *Surfacing Materials*, such as vinyl floor tile, acoustical ceiling tile, vinyl sheet goods (linoleum), roofing materials, *et cetera*. | | |
| For each homogeneous material, a sufficient number are required to be collected and analyzed to determine if the material is ACM. | Samples are not required to be collected from homogeneous materials, of which the trained accredited asbestos inspector has determined to be non-asbestos-containing material, such as fiberglass or rubber. | |

**SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY**

## 2.4 Laboratory Analysis

Pursuant to the field screen and bulk sample collection, BEC submitted the bulk samples to International Asbestos Testing Laboratories (IATL) of Mount Laurel, New Jersey for asbestos content analysis. IATL is fully accredited by the American Industrial Hygiene Association and the National Institute of Standards and Technology's (NIST) National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) as proficient in the analysis of asbestos in bulk samples.

IATL performed PLM/DS analysis of all bulk samples, in accordance with the "*Test Method for the Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Building Materials*" (US EPA 600/R-93/116, July 1993). BEC advises PLM/DS analysis of the suspect ACM bulk samples submitted to IATL contain United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) and/or United States Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulated asbestos concentrations. BEC provides the results of the PLM/DS analyses hereunder in **TABLE B: Asbestos-Containing Material Testing Results**:

**TABLE B: Asbestos-Containing Material Testing Results**

| HA # | Sample # | Material Class | Sampling Location | Building Construction Material | Asbestos (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | GC800-1 | Misc. | Room #801 | 12" x 12" Off White VFT W/ Tan Specks | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Black Mastic | None Detected |
| 1 | GC800-2 | Misc. | Room #807 | 12"x 12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Black Mastic | None Detected |
| 1 | GC800-3 | Misc. | Room #807 | 12"x 12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Black Mastic | None Detected |
| 2 | GC800-4 | Misc. | Room #807 | Brown Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Brown Mastic | None Detected |
| 2 | GC800-5 | Misc. | Room #804 | Brown Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Brown Mastic | None Detected |
| 2 | GC800-6 | Misc. | Room #801 | Brown Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Brown Mastic | None Detected |
| 3 | GC800-7 | Misc. | Room #807 Foyer | 2'x 4' Large and Small Pinhole + Fissure ACT | None Detected |
| 3 | GC800-8 | Misc. | Room #804 Foyer | 2'x 4' Large and Small Pinhole + Fissure ACT | None Detected |
| 3 | GC800-9 | Misc. | Room #801 Foyer | 2'x 4' Large and Small Pinhole + Fissure ACT | None Detected |
| 4 | GC800-10 | Misc. | Room #801 | 2'x 4' White Large and Small Pinhole | None Detected |
| 4 | GC800-11 | Misc. | Room #801 | 2'x 4' White Large and Small Pinhole | None Detected |
| 4 | GC800-12 | Misc. | Room #801 | 2'x 4' White Large and Small Pinhole | None Detected |
| 5 | GC800-13 | Misc. | Room #808 | Gypsum Board Sheeting | None Detected |
| 5 | GC800-14 | Misc. | Room #802 | Gypsum Board Sheeting | None Detected |

**SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY**

## 2.4 Laboratory Analysis (continued)

**TABLE B: Asbestos-Containing Material Testing Results**

| HA # | Sample # | Material Class | Sampling Location | Building Construction Material | Asbestos (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | GC800-15 | Misc. | Room #805 | Gypsum Board Sheeting | None Detected |
| 6 | GC800-16 | Misc. | Room #811 | Joint Finishing Compound | ***PC 1.4*** **Chrysotile** |
| 6 | GC800-17 | Misc. | Room #805 | Joint Finishing Compound | ***PC 1.8*** **Chrysotile** |
| 6 | GC800-18 | Misc. | Room #802 | Joint Finishing Compound | ***PC 1.6*** **Chrysotile** |
| 7 | GC800-19 | Misc. | Room #811 Foyer | 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Grey Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Off-White Mastic | None Detected |
| 7 | GC800-20 | Misc. | Room #807 Foyer | 2"x 2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Grey Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Off-White Mastic | None Detected |
| 7 | GC800-21 | Misc. | Room #805 Foyer | 2"x 2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Grey Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Off-White Mastic | None Detected |
| 8 | GC800-22 | Misc. | Room #802 | 1"x 2" White Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | 1"x 2" Blue Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Grey Grout | None Detected |
| 8 | GC800-23 | Misc. | Room #803 | 1"x 2" White Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | 1"x 2" Blue Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Grey Grout | None Detected |
| 8 | GC800-24 | Misc. | Room #809 | 1"x 2" White Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | 1"x 2" Blue Ceramic Floor Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Grey Grout | None Detected |
| 9 | GC800-25 | Misc. | Room #809 | 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Mastic | None Detected |
| 9 | GC800-26 | Misc. | Room #803 | 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Mastic | None Detected |
| 9 | GC800-27 | Misc. | Room #803 | 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Mastic | None Detected |
| 10 | GC800-28 | Misc. | Room #809 | 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Brown Mastic | None Detected |
| 10 | GC800-29 | Misc. | Room #809 | 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Brown Mastic | None Detected |

**SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY**

## 2.4 Laboratory Analysis (continued)

**TABLE B: Asbestos-Containing Material Testing Results**

| HA # | Sample # | Material Class | Sampling Location | Building Construction Material | Asbestos (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 10 | GC800-30 | Misc. | Room #802 | 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated White Grout | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Brown Mastic | None Detected |
| 11 | GC800-31 | Misc. | Room #806 | Black Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Tan Mastic | None Detected |
| 11 | GC800-32 | Misc. | Room #806 | Black Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Tan Mastic | None Detected |
| 11 | GC800-33 | Misc. | Room #806 | Black Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Tan Mastic | None Detected |
| 12 | GC800-34 | Misc. | Room #805 | White Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Tan Mastic | None Detected |
| 12 | GC800-35 | Misc. | Room #805 | White Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Tan Mastic | None Detected |
| 12 | GC800-36 | Misc. | Room #805 | White Vinyl Cove Base | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Tan Mastic | None Detected |
| 13 | GC800-37 | Misc. | Room #803 | Finished White Ceiling Plaster (Smooth) | None Detected |
| | | | | Finished Grey Ceiling Plaster (Smooth) | None Detected |
| 13 | GC800-38 | Misc. | Room #803 | Finished White Ceiling Plaster (Smooth) | None Detected |
| | | | | Finished Grey Ceiling Plaster (Smooth) | None Detected |
| 13 | GC800-39 | Misc. | Room #809 | Finished White Ceiling Plaster (Smooth) | None Detected |
| | | | | Finished Grey Ceiling Plaster (Smooth) | None Detected |
| 14 | GC800-40 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (Window) | None Detected |
| 14 | GC800-41 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (Window) | None Detected |
| 14 | GC800-42 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (Window) | None Detected |
| 15 | GC800-43 | Misc. | Room #809 | Yellow Carpet Mastic | None Detected |
| 15 | GC800-44 | Misc. | Room #804 | Yellow Carpet Mastic | None Detected |
| 15 | GC800-45 | Misc. | Room #803 | Yellow Carpet Mastic | None Detected |
| 16 | GC800-46 | Misc. | Room #807 | Yellow/Black Carpet Mastic | None Detected |
| 16 | GC800-47 | Misc. | Room #810 | Yellow/Black Carpet Mastic | None Detected |
| 16 | GC800-48 | Misc. | Room #801 | Yellow/Black Carpet Mastic | None Detected |
| 17 | GC800-49 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant #2 (Windows) | None Detected |
| 17 | GC800-50 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant #2 (Windows) | None Detected |
| 17 | GC800-51 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant #2 (Windows) | None Detected |
| 18 | GC800-52 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Expansion Joint Sealant | None Detected |
| 18 | GC800-53 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Expansion Joint Sealant | None Detected |
| 18 | GC800-54 | Misc. | Breezeway | Brown Expansion Joint Sealant | None Detected |
| 19 | GC800-55 | Misc. | Exterior | Grey AC Penetration Sealant | None Detected |
| 20 | GC800-56 | Misc. | Roof | Black Curb Riser Mastic | None Detected |
| 21 | GC800-57 | Misc. | Roof | Black Roof Seam Mastic | None Detected |

**SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY**

## 2.4 Laboratory Analysis (continued)

**TABLE B: Asbestos-Containing Material Testing Results**

| HA # | Sample # | Material Class | Sampling Location | Building Construction Material | Asbestos (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 22 | GC800-58 | Misc. | Roof | Tan Vent Masonry Joint Sealant | None Detected |
| 23 | GC800-59 | Misc. | Roof | White Upper Flashing Sealant | None Detected |
| 24 | GC800-60 | Misc. | Roof | Black Lower Flashing Sealant | None Detected |
| 25 | GC800-61 | Misc. | Roof | Black Asphalt Roof Shingle | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Black Tar Paper | None Detected |
| 26 | GC800-62 | Misc. | Room #740 | Red Light Weight Cement Boiler Liner | None Detected |
| 27 | GC800-63 | Misc. | Roof | Black Tar Built Up Roofing | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Black Roof Material | None Detected |
| 28 | GC800-64 | Misc. | Roof | Black/White Roofing Membrane | None Detected |
| | | | | Associated Black Mastic | None Detected |

## 2.5 Historical Asbestos Survey Results

BEC provides the results of the historical sampling event dated 2005 hereunder in **TABLE C: Building #700 Boiler Room Asbestos Containing Materials** and **TABLE D: Building #700 Asbestos Containing Materials.**

**TABLE C: Building #700 Boiler Room Asbestos Containing Materials**

| SAMPLE # | ASBESTOS MATERIAL DESCRIPTION & LOCATION |
|---|---|
| GC051005-B1 | Valve insulation from 6" hot water return line on boiler # 1 |
| GC051005-B2 | Elbow insulation from 6" hot water return line on boiler # 2 |
| GC051005-B3 | Elbow insulation from 6" hot water supply line above boiler # 2 |
| GC051005-B4, B5, B6 | Insulation applied to boiler breaching |
| GC051005-B7, B8, B9 | Insulation applied to end cap on cold water tank |
| GC051005-B10, B11, B12 | Insulation applied to end cap on hot water tank |
| GC051005-B13 | Elbow insulation from cold water line under cold water tank |
| GC051005-B14 | Valve insulation from cold water line under cold water tank |
| GC051005-B15 | Elbow insulation from hot water supply line above compressor next to stairs entering boiler from hall |
| GC051005-B16 | Valve insulation from 6" hot water supply line above pumps |
| GC051005-B17 | Elbow insulation from 3" hot water return line on convection unit |

**TABLE D: Building #700 Asbestos Containing Materials**

| SAMPLE # | ASBESTOS MATERIAL DESCRIPTION & LOCATION |
|---|---|
| GC051005-B20 | Elbow insulation from 2" line above suspended ceiling tile (SCT) in hall outside room 721 |
| GC051005-B21 | Elbow insulation from 6" line above SCT in hall outside room 721 |
| GC051005-B23 | Elbow insulation from 6" line above SCT in hall outside business office |

## SECTION 2.0 LIMITED ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS SURVEY

### 2.6 Asbestos Survey Limitations

The above inspection was characterized by close visual inspection of building areas, in accordance with US EPA regulations and generally accepted engineering work practices associated with the conduct of an asbestos survey. It is relevant to note, BEC did conduct exploratory demolition to gain access to enclosed building conditions (e.g., wall cavities, pipe chases, HVAC ductwork shafts, etc.).

BEC collected random bulk samples of suspect ACBMs. BEC has made every effort to identify all locations and types of asbestos-containing construction materials. BEC asbestos survey sampling strategy included multiple samples of the same materials chosen at random. However, BEC advises, due to the inconsistencies of manufacturer processes and contractor installation methods, materials of similar construction may have varied quantities of asbestos.

Furthermore, BEC advises locating all asbestos materials can only be definitively achieved by sampling every section of pipe insulation, every fitting or valve covering, every square yard of fireproofing, and every square foot of other surface coating material. BEC therefore makes no warranty, expressed or implied, that all asbestos has been found. Additionally, BEC recommends bulk sampling and analysis of all suspect ACBMs (not otherwise evaluated during this survey) encountered within a building area, prior to renovation or demolition.

## SECTION 3.0 CONCLUSIONS & RECOMMENDATIONS

### 3.1 Conclusions

1. BEC concludes, based upon on-site visual inspection and review of analytical data as well as historical analytical data, US EPA-regulated asbestos-containing materials **were identified** at the subject site and are listed hereunder in **TABLE E: Asbestos-Containing Materials**.

**TABLE E: Asbestos-Containing Materials**

| Building Construction Material | Material Location(s) | EPA Regulated | OSHA Regulated | Quantity* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Joint Finishing Compound | Room #802, #804, #805, #808, Room #810, #811 | **YES** | **YES** | ~850 SF |
| Thermal Systems Insulation Pipe Fittings | Building #700 Boiler Room Building #700 & 800 Ceiling Plenum | **YES** | **YES** | TBD |
| Hot and Cold Water Storage Tank Insulation | Building 700 Boiler Room | **YES** | **YES** | TBD |
| Boiler Breaching Insulation | Building 700 Boiler Room | **YES** | **YES** | TBD |

* *BEC advises quantities are estimates derived from rough field measurements made during survey activities.*

2. BEC concludes, based upon review of US EPA and State of Maryland Department of the Environment law, specific regulations governing the disturbance, removal, and disposal of asbestos, **DO APPLY** to **ANY** work, of which is planned and/or can be reasonably anticipated to result in the disturbance of the regulated asbestos-containing materials (RACM) identified in the course of this inspection.

3. BEC concludes, based upon review of United States Occupational Safety and Health Administration (Construction Industry: 29 CFR 1926.1101 and General Industry: 29 CFR 1910.1001) regulations governing non-occupational and occupational exposure to asbestos, **DO APPLY** to **ANY** renovation/demolition, housekeeping, maintenance, and/or repair activities directly and/or indirectly impacting (disturbance/damage) the asbestos-containing materials identified in the course of this inspection.

## SECTION 3.0 CONCLUSIONS & RECOMMENDATIONS

### 3.1 Conclusions

4. BEC concludes, based upon Federal and State of Maryland law, a US EPA accredited and licensed "asbestos abatement project designer" is required to prepare a detailed work plan to govern the disturbance (eg, demolition and/or removal) of regulated asbestos-containing material (RACM) and clearance testing for re-occupancy of RACM abatement work areas.

5. BEC concludes, based upon Federal and State of Maryland law, a licensed asbestos abatement contractor is required to conduct removal of RACM prior to renovation work disturbing/damaging these materials. Removal of these materials is required by law whenever renovation/demolition work plans specify (require) their disturbance and/or their disturbance can be reasonably anticipated to occur during the renovation work activities.

6. In the event the client elects to abate any asbestos-containing materials identified at the subject site, BEC recommends a third-party Industrial Hygiene firm perform baseline, continuous and post abatement air quality surveillance at the asbestos abatement work area(s) prior to permitting re-occupancy of the work area(s)

### 3.2 Recommendations

1. Asbestos-Containing Materials Disclosure:

   BEC advises, based upon US OSHA's Construction Industry (29 CFR 1926.1101) and General Industry (29 CFR 1910.1001) regulations, the Building Owner is required to disclose the location of any asbestos-containing materials (trace asbestos content and $\geq$ 1% asbestos concentration) to Owner employees, contractors/subcontractors, and tenants whom occupy and/or conduct work activities within building areas, at which asbestos-containing materials are present.

2. BEC recommends should any planned renovation activities result in the discovery of additional suspect ACBMs, halting all work activities with subsequent bulk sample collection and analysis of discovered ACBMs, to determine asbestos content.

   PLM/DS Limitations

   BEC advises all bulk samples were analyzed by Polarized Light Microscopy with Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS). This is a standard method of analysis in optical mineralogy and a suspect material is immersed in a solution of known refractive index and subjected to illumination by polarized light. The resultant characteristic color display enables mineral identification.

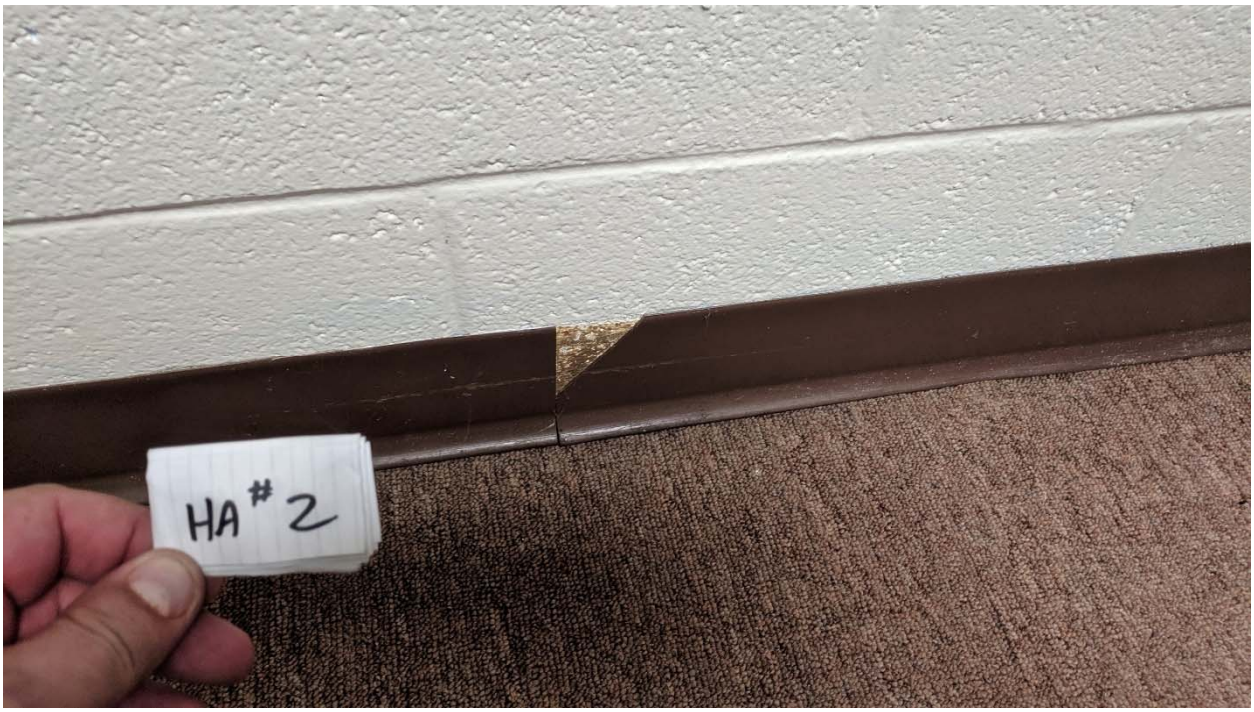
   Although PLM/DS analysis is the primary technique used for asbestos determination, it can show significant bias leading to false negatives and false positives for certain types of materials. PLM is limited by the visibility of the asbestos fibers. In some samples the fibers may be reduced to a diameter so small or masked by coatings to such an extent that they cannot be reliably observed or identified using PLM.

   As such, BEC recommends further evaluation via (**i**) the stratified point count methodology and/or (**ii**) gravimetric reduction sample preparation technique and PLM/DS analysis – and if necessary- subsequent TEM analysis (10,000-20,000x magnification), prior to designation as "non-asbestos-containing".

# APPENDIX A

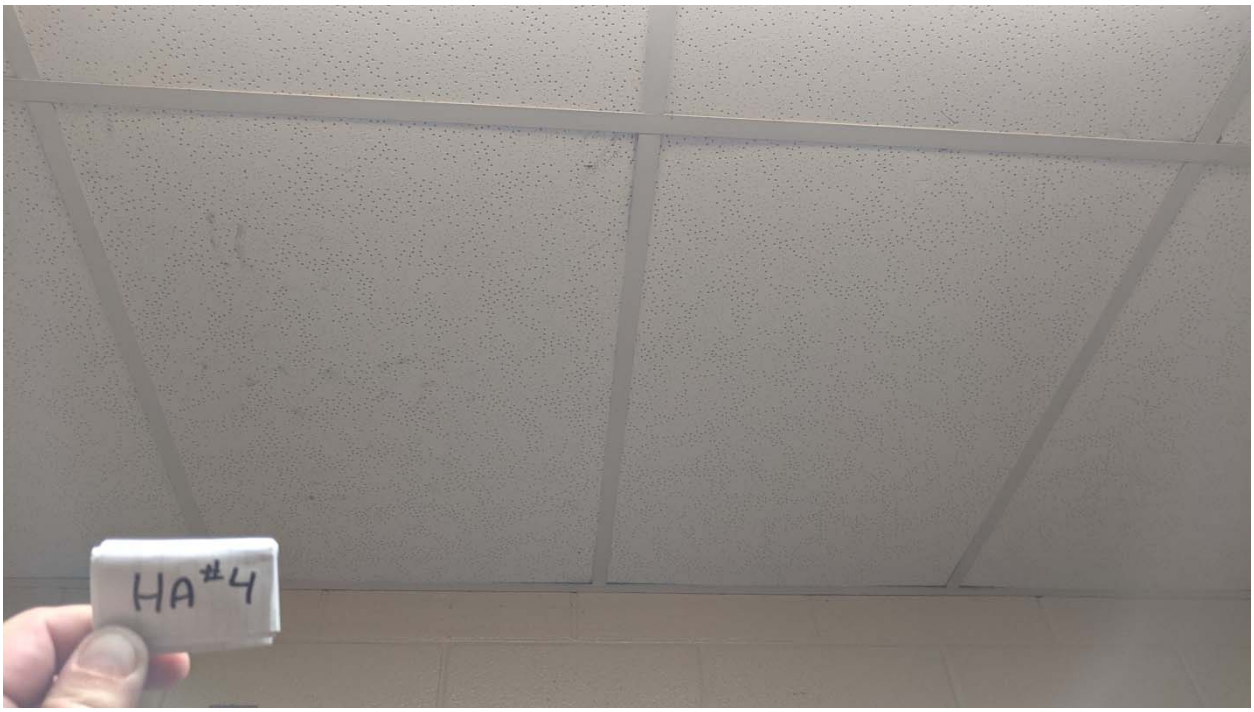
## HOMOGENEOUS AREA PHOTO SHEET


HA #1 – 12”x 12” Off-White w/ Tan Specks VFT and Black Mastic



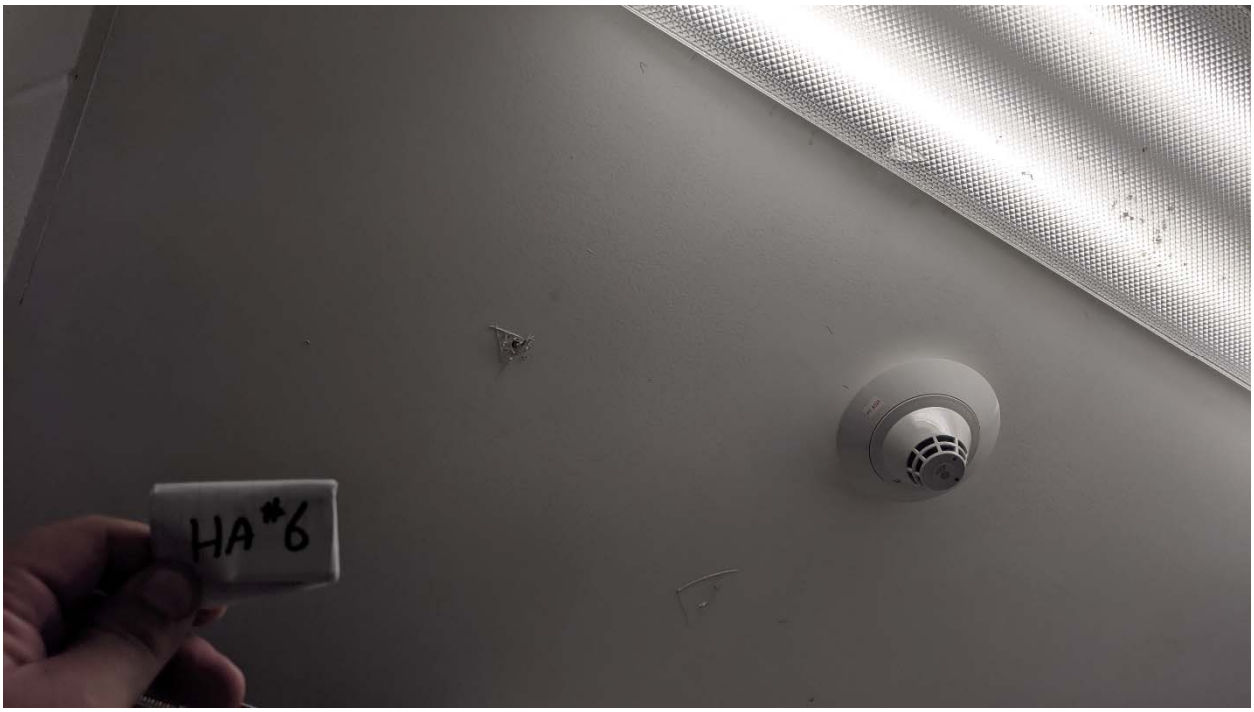

HA #2 – Brown Vinyl Cove Base and Brown Mastic


HA #3 – 2’x 4’ White Pinhole and Fissure Acoustical Ceiling Tile

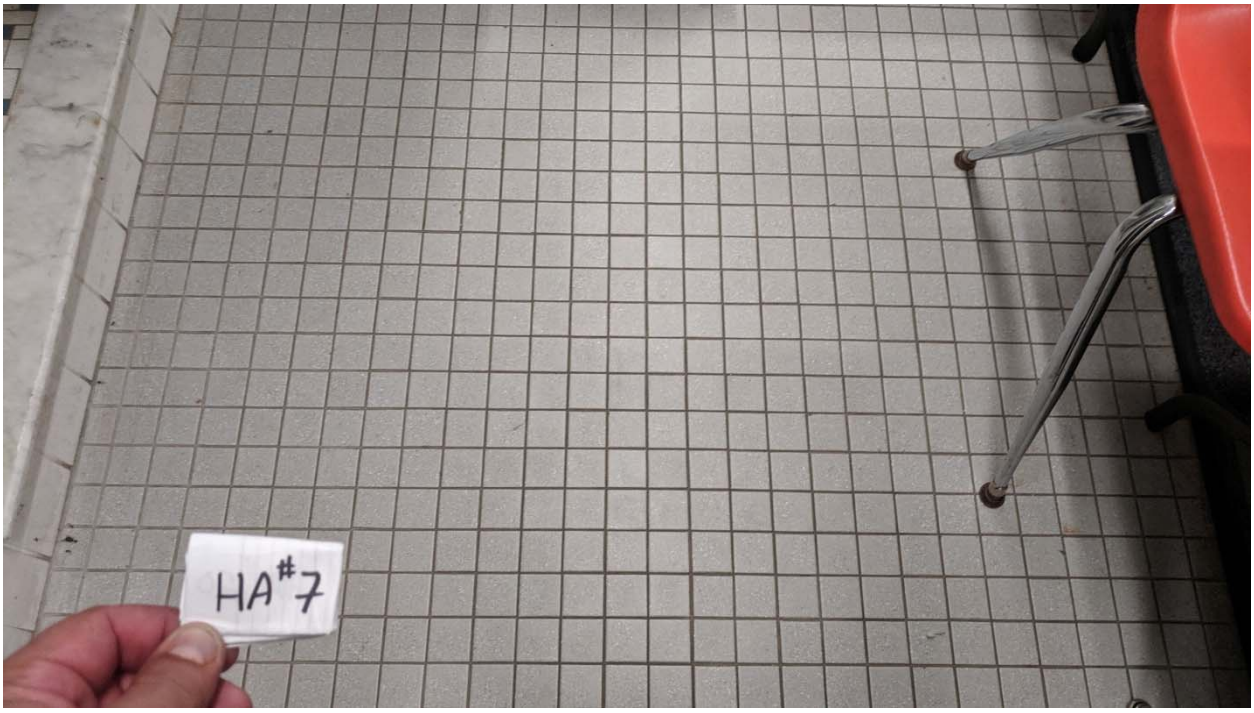



HA #4 – 2’x 4’ White Small and Large Pinhole Acoustical Ceiling Tile


HA #5 – Gypsum Board Sheeting

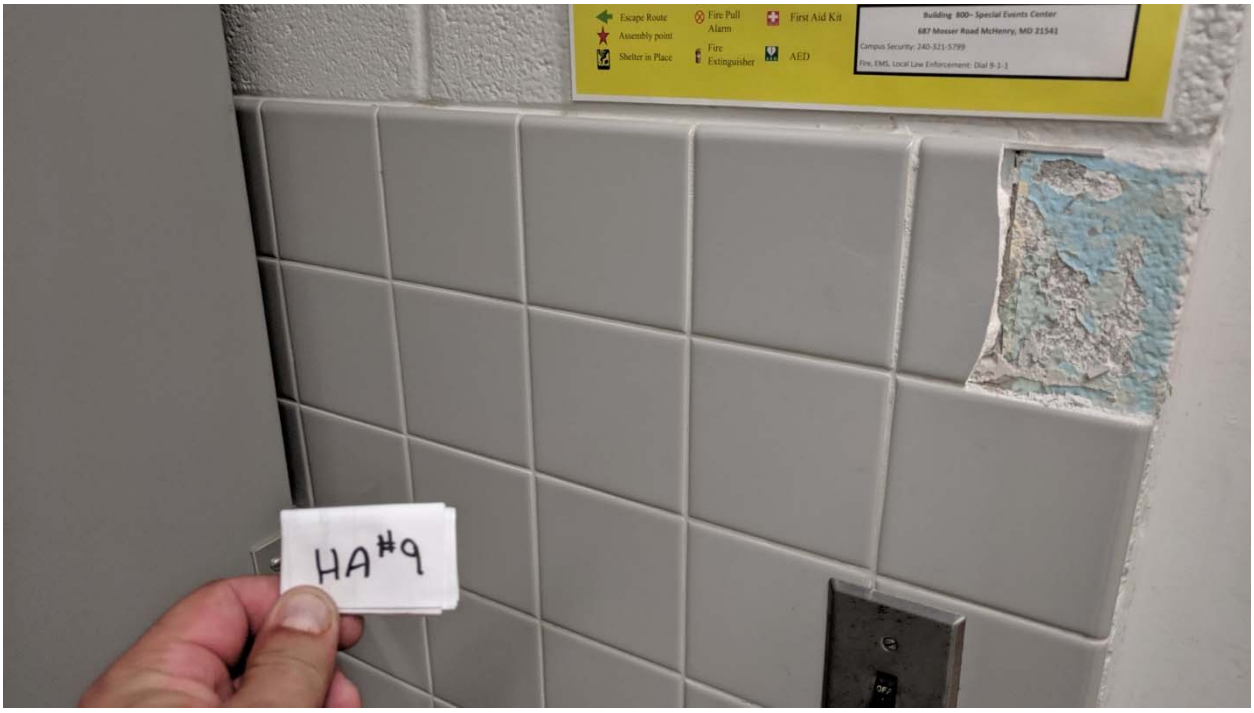



HA #6 – Joint Finishing Compound




HA #7 – 2”x 2” Gray Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset

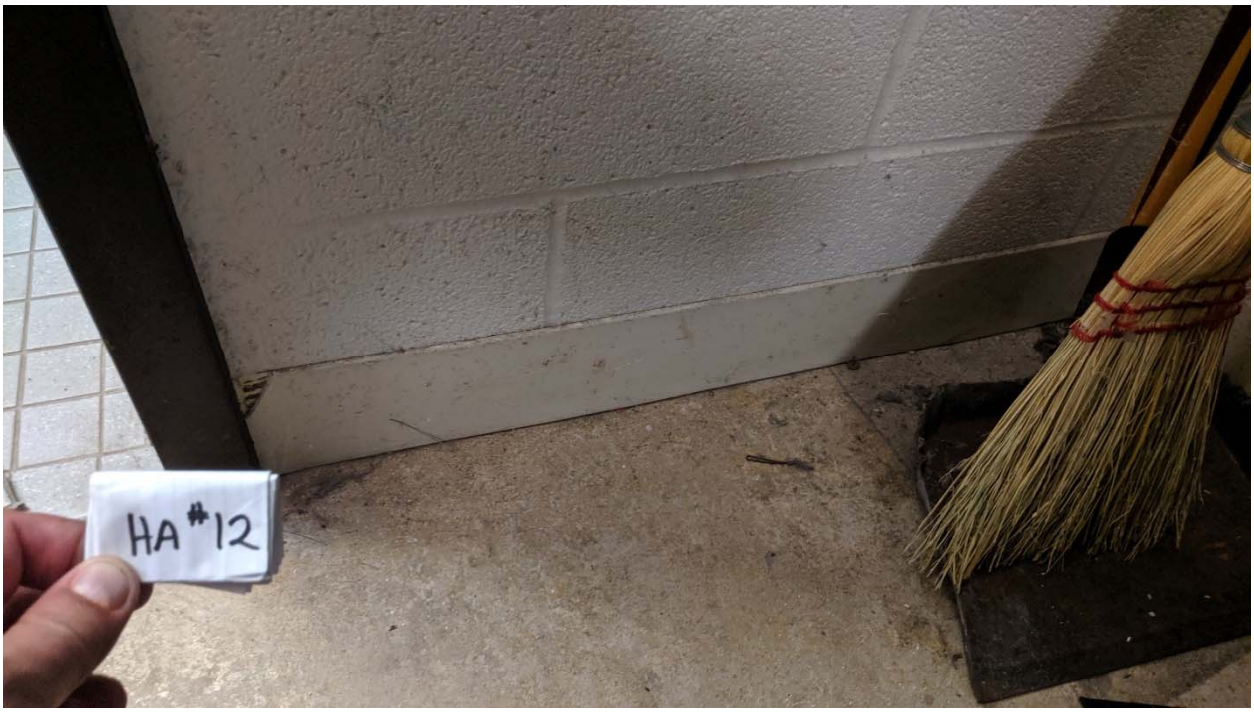

HA #8 – 1”x 2” Blue and White Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset




HA #9 – 4”x 4” Gray Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive


HA #10 – 4”x 4” White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive


HA #11 – Black Vinyl Cove Base and Tan Mastic




HA #12 – White Vinyl Cove Base and Tan Mastic


HA #13 – Finished Plaster Ceiling


HA #14 – Brown Masonry Joint Sealant


HA #15 – Yellow Carpet Mastic


HA #16 – Black/Yellow Carpet Mastic


HA #17 – Brown Masonry Joint Sealant #2


HA #18 – Brown Expansion Joint Sealant

HA #20 – Black Curb Riser Sealant

HA #21 – Black Roof Seam Mastic

HA #22 – Tan Vent Masonry Joint Sealant

HA #23 – White Upper Flashing Sealant

HA #24 – Black Lower Flashing Sealant

HA #25 – Black Asphalt Roof Shingles and Tar Paper

HA #26 – Red Lightweight Cementitious Boiler Liner

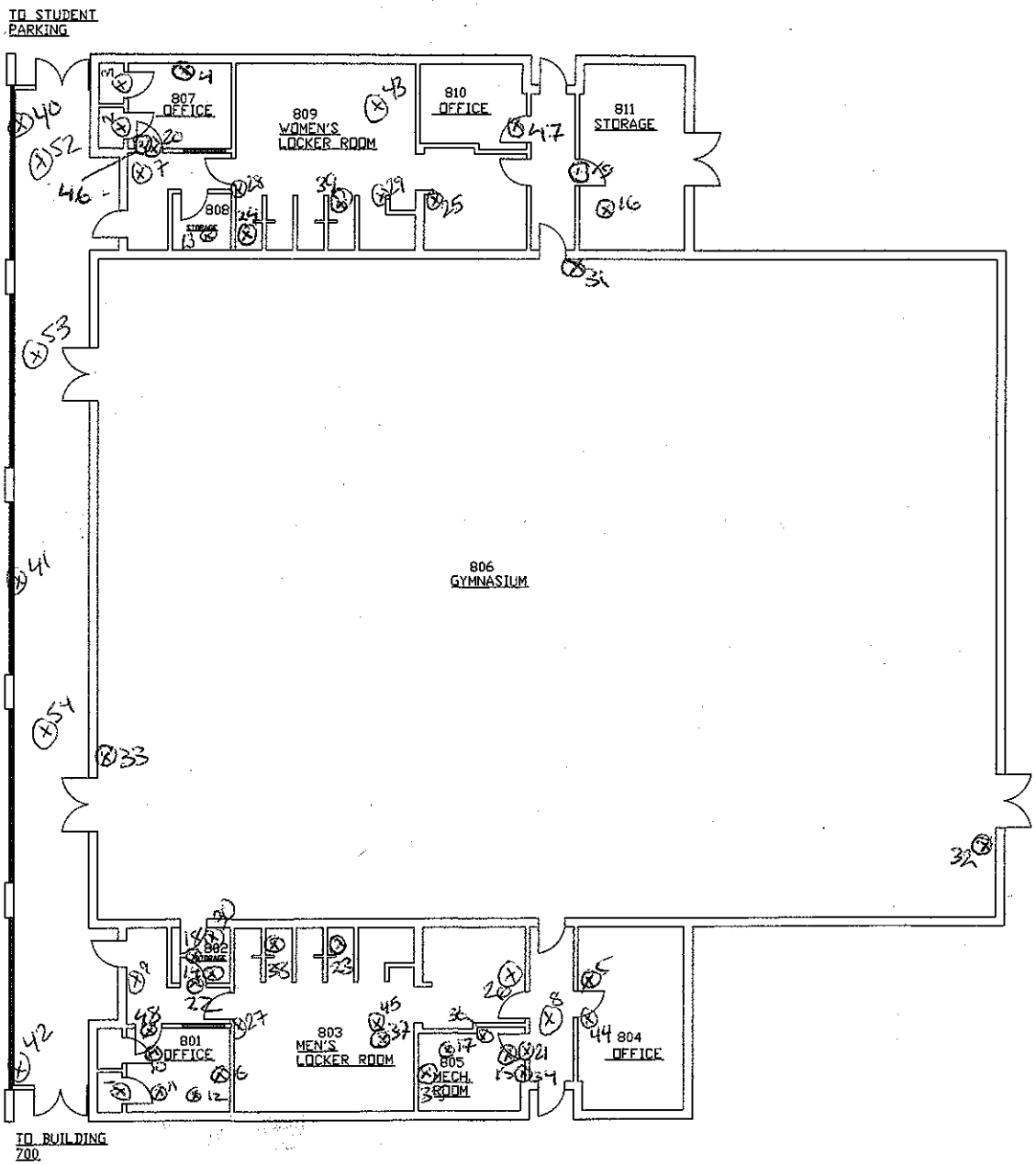
HA #27 – Black Built Up Roofing

HA #28 – White Perimeter and Curb Roofing

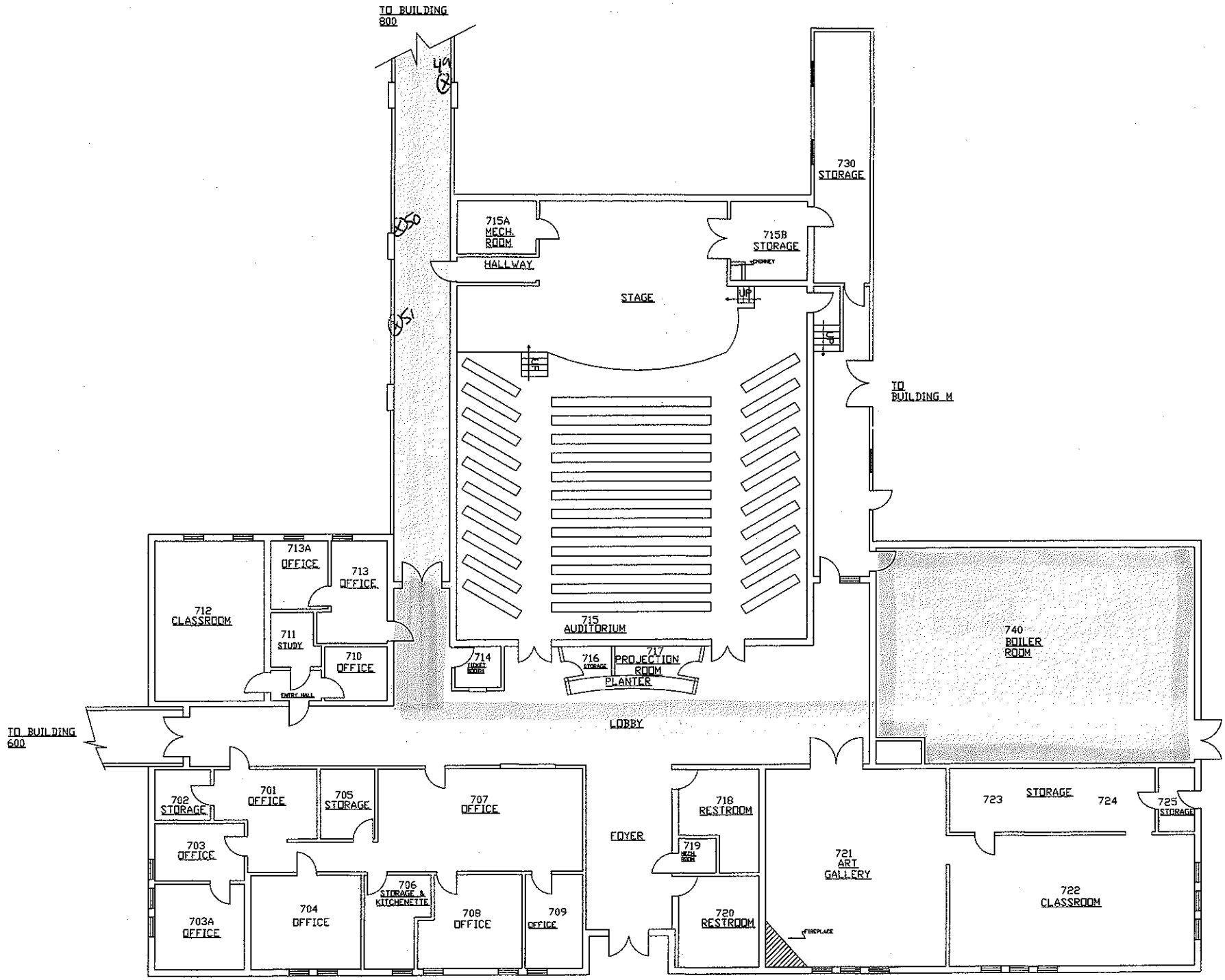
# APPENDIX B

## BEC BULK SAMPLING LOCATIONS

BEC
8-23-19
MD19159



BEC
8-23-19
MD9159



BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MDP159 Inspector: AH + RC Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 1 of 4

| | | | Material Identification | | Friable/ Nonfriable | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | CHECK F | CHECK NF |
| GC800-1 | 1 | Room # 801 | 12"x12" off white VFT w/ tan specks + Black Mastic | ~80 sf | | X |
| 2 | 1 | Room # 807 | " | " | | X |
| 3 | 1 | Room # 807 | " | " | | X |
| 4 | 2 | Room # 807 | Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/ Brown Mastic | ~100 lf | | X |
| 5 | 2 | Room # 804 | " | " | | X |
| 6 | 2 | Room # 801 | " | " | | X |
| 7 | 3 | Room # 807 Foyer | 2'x4' white Pinhole + fissure ACT | ~600 sf | X | |
| 8 | 3 | Room # 804 Foyer | " | " | X | |
| 9 | 3 | Room # 801 Foyer | " | " | X | |
| 10 | 4 | Room # 801 | 2'x4' white Large + Small pinhole ACT | ~100 sf | X | |
| 11 | 4 | " | " | " | X | |
| 12 | 4 | " | " | " | X | |
| 13 | 5 | Room # 808 | Gypsum Board sheeting | ~850 sf | | X |
| 14 | 5 | Room # 802 | " | " | | X |
| 15 | 5 | Room # 805 | " | " | | X |
| 16 | 6 | Room # 811 | Joint finishing Compound | ~850 sf | | X |
| 17 | 6 | Room # 805 | " | " | | X |
| 18 | 6 | Room # 807 | " | " | | X |
| 19 | 7 | Room # 811 Foyer | 2"x2" Gray Ceramic floor tile Grout / Thinset | ~1,280 sf | | X |
| 20 | 7 | Room # 807 Foyer | " | " | | X |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD19159 Inspector: ALH + RW Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 2 of 4

| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Material Identification Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd²) | Friable/ Nonfriable CHECK F | CHECK NF |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| GC800-21 | 7 | Room #805 foyer | 2"x2" Gray Ceramic Floor Tile Grout / Thinset | ~1,280 sf | | X |
| 22 | 8 | Room # 802 | 1"x2" White + Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout / Thinset | ~ 148 sf | | X |
| 23 | 8 | Room # 803 | " | " | | X |
| 24 | 8 | Room # 809 | " | " | | X |
| 25 | 9 | Room # 809 | 4"x4" Gray Ceramic Wall Tile Grout + Adhesive | ~ 800 sf | | X |
| 26 | 9 | Room # 803 | " | " | | X |
| 27 | 9 | Room # 803 | " | " | | X |
| 28 | 10 | Room # 809 | 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout + Adhesive | 1,052 sf | | X |
| 29 | 10 | Room # 809 | " | " | | X |
| 30 | 10 | Room # 802 | " | " | | X |
| 31 | 11 | Room # 806 | Black Vinyl Cove Base w/ Tan Mastic | ~350 lf | | X |
| 32 | 11 | " | " | " | | X |
| 33 | 11 | " | " | " | | X |
| 34 | 12 | Room # 805 | White Vinyl Cove Base w/ Tan Mastic | ~ 60 lf | | X |
| 35 | 12 | " | " | " | | X |
| 36 | 12 | " | " | " | | X |
| 37 | 13 | Room # 803 | Finished Ceiling Plaster (smooth) | ~ 800 sf | | X |
| 38 | 13 | " | " | " | | X |
| 39 | 13 | Room # 809 | " | " | | X |
| 40 | 14 | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (windows) | ~ 260 lf | | X |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD19159 Inspector: ALH & RW Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 3 of 4

| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Material Identification: Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | Friable/ Nonfriable: CHECK F | CHECK NF |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| GC800-41 | 14 | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (windows) | ~260 lf | | X |
| 42 | 14 | " | " | " | | X |
| 43 | 15 | Room # 809 | Yellow Carpet Mastic | ~600 sf | | X |
| 44 | 15 | Room # 804 | " | " | | X |
| 45 | 15 | Room # 803 | " | " | | X |
| 46 | 16 | Room # 807 | Yellow / Black Carpet Mastic | ~300 sf | | X |
| 47 | 16 | Room # 810 | " | " | | X |
| 48 | 16 | Room # 801 | " | " | | X |
| 49 | 17 | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant #2 (windows) | ~160 lf | | X |
| 50 | 17 | " | " | " | | X |
| 51 | 17 | " | " | " | | X |
| 52 | 18 | Breezeway | Brown Expansion Joint Sealant | ~80 lf | | X |
| 53 | 18 | " | " | " | | X |
| 54 | 18 | " | " | " | | X |
| 55 | 19 | Exterior | Gray AC penetration Sealant | < 1 sf | | X |
| 56 | 20 | Roof | Black curb riser Mastic | ~16 sf | | X |
| 57 | 21 | " | Black roof seam mastic | ~7,500 sf | | X |
| 58 | 22 | " | Tan vent masonry joint sealant | ~60 lf | | X |
| 59 | 23 | " | White Upper flashing sealant | ~175 lf | | X |
| 60 | 24 | " | Black lower flashing sealant | ~100 lf | | X |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD1959 Inspector: A.H. & R.W. Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garnett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 4 of 4

| | | | Material Identification | | Friable/ Nonfriable | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | CHECK F | CHECK NF |
| GC800-61 | 25 | Roof | Black Asphalt Roof Shingles + Tar paper | ~3,600 sf | | X |
| 12 | 26 | Room 740 | Red lightweight cement boiler liners | ~64 sf | X | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

**APPENDIX C**

**IATL LABORATORY ANALYTICAL RESULTS**

**&**

**CHAIN OF CUSTODY**

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway, Suite B • Mount Laurel, NJ 08054
Phone: 877-428-4285/856-231-9449 • Fax: 856-231-9818

# Chain of Custody

## –Bulk Asbestos –

### Contact Information

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Client Company:** | Boggs Environmental Consultants | **Project Number:** | MD19159 |
| **Office Address:** | 200 W. Main Street | **Project Name:** | Garrett College Bldg 700/800 |
| **City, State, Zip:** | Middletown, MD 21769 | **Primary Contact:** | Andy Hanson |
| **Fax Number:** | 301-694-9799 | **Office Phone:** | 301-694-5687 |
| **Email Address:** | ahanson@boggsenvironmental.co | **Cell Phone:** | |

### PLM Instructions:

- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials EPA 600 R-93/116, 1993
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials EPA 600 M-4/82-020, 1982
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NIOSH 9002, 1985
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NYSDOH-ELAP 198.1, 2002
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NYSDOH-ELAP 198.6, 2010
- ☐ TEM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NYSDOH-ELAP 198.4, 2009

- ☐ PLM: Point Counting
  - ☐ PC: via ELAP 198.1
  - ☐ PC: 400 Points
  - ☐ PC: 800 Points *
  - ☐ PC: 1600 Points *
- ☐ PLM: Analyze Until Positive (Positive Stop)
  - ☐ AUP: by Homogenous Area as Noted
  - ☐ AUP: by Material Type as Noted
- ☐ PLM: NOB via 198.6
  - ☐ PLM: Friable via EPA 600 2.3
  - ☐ If <1% by PLM, to TEM via 198.4 *
  - ☐ If <1% by PLM, Hold for Instructions
- ■ PLM: Instructions for Multi-Layered Samples
  - ■ Analyze and Report All Separable Layers per EPA 600
  - ☐ Report Composite for Drywall Systems per NESHAP
  - ☐ Report All Layers and Composite Where Applicable
  - ☐ Only Analyze and Report Specifically Noted Layer
- ☐ PLM: Non-Building Material *,** (Dust, Wipe, Tape)
  - ☐ Soil or Vermiculite Analysis *
  - ☐ CARB 435

**Special Instructions:** _____

** Additional charge and turnaround may be required* *** Alternative Method (ex: EPA 600/R-04/004) may be recommended by Laboratory*

### Turnaround Time

Preliminary Results Requested Date: _____ (Specific date / time) ☐ Verbal ■ Email ☐ Fax

☐ 10 Day ☐ 5 Day ■ 3 Day ☐ 2 Day ☐ 1 Day* ☐ 12 Hour** ☐ 6 Hour** ☐ RUSH**

* End of next business day unless otherwise specified. ** Matrix Dependent. ***Please notify the lab before shipping***

### Chain of Custody

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Relinquished (Name/Organization): | Andy Hanson | Date: | 8-28-2019 | Time: | 1700 |
| Received (Name / iATL): | | Date: | | Time: | |
| Sample Login (Name / iATL): | | Date: | | Time: | |
| Analysis(Name(s) / iATL): | ES | Date: | 9/4/19 | Time: | AUG 29 2019 |
| QA/QC Review (Name / iATL): | KFMph | Date: | 9/4/19 | Time: | |
| Archived / Released: _____ | QA/QC InterLAB Use: _____ | Date: | | Time: | 4 |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD19089 Inspector: ALH Date: 8-28-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 1 of 1

| | | | Material Identification | | Friable/ Nonfriable | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | CHECK F | CHECK NF |
| GC800-63 | 27 | Roof 868384 | Black Built up roofing - Center Roof | ~7,134 sf | | X |
| 64 | 28 | 868385 | White roofing membrane - perimeter + curbs | ~366 sf | | X |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway, Suite B • Mount Laurel, NJ 08054
Phone: 877-428-4285/856-231-9449 • Fax: 856-231-9818

# Chain of Custody

## –Bulk Asbestos –

**Contact Information**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Client Company:** | Boggs Environmental Consultants | **Project Number:** | MD19159 |
| **Office Address:** | 200 W. Main Street | **Project Name:** | Garret College Bldg 700/800 |
| **City, State, Zip:** | Middletown, MD 21769 | **Primary Contact:** | Andy Hanson |
| **Fax Number:** | 301-694-9799 | **Office Phone:** | 301-694-5687 |
| **Email Address:** | ahanson@boggsenvironmental.co | **Cell Phone:** | |

**PLM Instructions:**

- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials EPA 600 R-93/116, 1993
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials EPA 600 M-4/82-020, 1982
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NIOSH 9002, 1985
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NYSDOH-ELAP 198.1, 2002
- ☐ PLM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NYSDOH-ELAP 198.6, 2010
- ☐ TEM: Bulk Asbestos Building Materials NYSDOH-ELAP 198.4, 2009

- ☐ PLM: Point Counting
  - ☐ PC: via ELAP 198.1
  - ☐ PC: 400 Points
  - ☐ PC: 800 Points *
  - ☐ PC: 1600 Points *
- ■ PLM: Analyze Until Positive (Positive Stop)
  - ☐ AUP: by Homogenous Area as Noted
  - ☐ AUP: by Material Type as Noted
- ☐ PLM: NOB via 198.6
  - ☐ PLM: Friable via EPA 600 2.3
  - ☐ If <1% by PLM, to TEM via 198.4 *
  - ☐ If <1% by PLM, Hold for Instructions
- ■ PLM: Instructions for Multi-Layered Samples
  - ■ Analyze and Report All Separable Layers per EPA 600
  - ☐ Report Composite for Drywall Systems per NESHAP
  - ☐ Report All Layers and Composite Where Applicable
  - ☐ Only Analyze and Report Specifically Noted Layer
- ☐ PLM: Non-Building Material*,** (Dust, Wipe, Tape)
  - ☐ Soil or Vermiculite Analysis*
  - ☐ CARB 435

**Special Instructions:** _____

** Additional charge and turnaround may be required* *** Alternative Method (ex: EPA 600/R-04/004) may be recommended by Laboratory*

**Turnaround Time**

Preliminary Results Requested Date: _____ (Specific date / time) ☐ Verbal ■ Email ☐ Fax

☐ 10 Day ■ 5 Day ☐ 3 Day ☐ 2 Day ☐ 1 Day* ☐ 12 Hour** ☐ 6 Hour** ☐ RUSH**

* End of next business day unless otherwise specified. ** Matrix Dependent. ***Please notify the lab before shipping***

**Chain of Custody**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Relinquished (Name/Organization): | Andy Hanson | Date: | 8-23-2019 | Time: | 1700 |
| Received (Name / iATL): | | Date: | | Time: | |
| Sample Login (Name / iATL): | | Date: | | Time: | |
| Analysis(Name(s) / iATL): | | Date: | 9/3/19 | Time: | |
| QA/QC Review (Name / iATL): | | Date: | 9/4/19 | Time: | |
| Archived / Released: | QA/QC InterLAB Use: | Date: | | Time: | |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD1959 Inspector: ALH + RC Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800



| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Material Identification: Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | Friable/Nonfriable: CHECK F | CHECK NF |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| GG800-1 | 1 | Room # 801 | 12"x12" off white VFT w/ tan specks + Black Mastic | ~ 80 sf | | X |
| 2 | 1 | Room # 807 | 686520[illegible] | | | X |
| 3 | 1 | Room # 807 | 6865205 | | | X |
| 4 | 2 | Room # 807 | Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/ Brown Mastic 686520[illegible] | ~ 100 lf | | X |
| 5 | 2 | Room # 804 | 686520[illegible] | | | X |
| 6 | 2 | Room # 801 | 686520[illegible] | | | X |
| 7 | 3 | Room # 807 Foyer | 2'x4' white Pinhole & fissure ACT 686520[illegible] | ~ 600 sf | X | |
| 8 | 3 | Room # 804 Foyer | 6865210 | | X | |
| 9 | 3 | Room # 801 Foyer | 6865211 | | X | |
| 10 | 4 | Room # 801 | 2'x4' white Large + Small pinhole ACT 6865212 | 100 sf | X | |
| 11 | 4 | | 6865213 | | X | |
| 12 | 4 | | 6865214 | | X | |
| 13 | 5 | Room # 806 | Gypsum Board Sheeting 6865215 | ~ 850 sf | | X |
| 14 | 5 | Room # 802 | 6865216 | | | X |
| 15 | 5 | Room # 805 | 6865217 | | | X |
| 16 | 6 | Room # 811 | Joint finishing Compound 6865218 | ~ 850 sf | | X |
| 17 | 6 | Room # 805 | 6865219 | | | X |
| 18 | 6 | Room # 802 | 6865220 | | | X |
| 19 | 7 | Room # 811 Foyer | 2"x2" Gray Ceramic floor tile Grout / Thinset 6865221 | ~ 1,280 sf | | X |
| 20 | 7 | Room # 807 Foyer | 6865222 | | | X |

BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD19159 Inspector: ALH & RW Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 2 of 5

| Sample # | Hg # | Location | Material Identification: Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | Friable/Nonfriable: Check F | Check NF |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| GC800-21 | 7 | Room #805 foyer | 2"x2" Gray Ceramic Floor Tile Grout / Thinset | ~1,280 sf | 686522 | X |
| 22 | 8 | Room # 802 | 1"x2" White & Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout / Thinset | ~148 sf | 686522 | X |
| 23 | 8 | Room # 803 | " | " | 686522 | X |
| 24 | 8 | Room # 809 | " | " | 686522 | X |
| 25 | 9 | Room # 809 | 4"x4" Gray Ceramic Wall Tile Grout & Adhesive | ~800 sf | 686522 | X |
| 26 | 9 | Room # 803 | " | " | 686522 | X |
| 27 | 9 | Room # 803 | " | " | 686522 | X |
| 28 | 10 | Room # 809 | 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout & Adhesive | 1,052 sf | 686523 | X |
| 29 | 10 | Room # 809 | " | " | 686523 | X |
| 30 | 10 | Room # 802 | " | " | 686523 | X |
| 31 | 11 | Room # 806 | Black Vinyl Cove Base w/ Tan Mastic | ~350 lf | 686523 | X |
| 32 | 11 | " | " | " | 686523 | X |
| 33 | 11 | " | " | " | 686523 | X |
| 34 | 12 | Room # 805 | White Vinyl Cove Base w/ Tan Mastic | ~60 lf | 686523 | X |
| 35 | 12 | " | " | " | 686523 | X |
| 36 | 12 | " | " | " | 686523 | X |
| 37 | 13 | Room # 803 | Finished Ceiling Plaster (smooth) | ~800 sf | 686523 | X |
| 38 | 13 | " | " | " | 686524 | X |
| 39 | 13 | Room # 809 | " | " | 686524 | X |
| 40 | 14 | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (window) | ~260 lf | 686524 | X |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD19159
Project Name: Garrett College
Project Address: Bldg 700/800

Inspector: ALH & RW
Date: 8-22-19



| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Material Identification: Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | Friable/Nonfriable: FRIABLE | NONFRIABLE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| GC800-41 | 14 | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (windows) | ~260 lf | 686524 | X |
| 42 | 14 | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ | 686524 | X |
| 43 | 15 | Room # 809 | Yellow Carpet Mastic | ~600 sf | 686524 | X |
| 44 | 15 | Room # 804 | ↓ | ↓ | 686524 | X |
| 45 | 15 | Room # 803 | ↓ | ↓ | 686524 | X |
| 46 | 16 | Room # 807 | Yellow / Black Carpet Mastic | ~300 sf | 686524 | X |
| 47 | 16 | Room # 810 | ↓ | ↓ | 686524 | X |
| 48 | 16 | Room # 801 | ↓ | ↓ | 686525 | X |
| 49 | 17 | Breezeway | Brown Masonry Joint Sealant # 2 (windows) | ~160 lf | 686525 | X |
| 50 | 17 | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ | 686525 | X |
| 51 | 17 | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ | 686525 | X |
| 52 | 18 | Breezeway | Brown Expansion Joint Sealant | ~80 lf | 686525 | X |
| 53 | 18 | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ | 686525 | X |
| 54 | 18 | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ | 686525 | X |
| 55 | 19 | Exterior | Gray AC penetration Sealant | < 1 sf | 686525 | X |
| 56 | 20 | Roof | Black curb riser Mastic | ~16 sf | 686525 | X |
| 57 | 21 | ↓ | Black roof seam mastic | ~7,500 sf | 686525 | X |
| 58 | 22 | ↓ | Tan vent masonry joint sealant | ~60 lf | 686526 | X |
| 59 | 23 | ↓ | White Upper flashing sealant | ~175 lf | 686526 | X |
| 60 | 24 | ↓ | Black lower flashing sealant | ~100 lf | 686526 | X |

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# ASBESTOS INSPECTION BULK SAMPLING LOGSHEET

Project #: MD9159 Inspector: AH + RW Date: 8-22-19

Project Name: Garrett College

Project Address: Bldg 700/800 Page: 4 of 4

| | | | Material Identification | | Friable/Nonfriable | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sample # | Ha # | Location | Color/Description | Quantity (sf, lf, yd³) | check F | check NF |
| GC800-61 | 25 | Roof | Black Asphalt Roof Shingles & Tar paper 6865263 | ~ 3,600 sf | | x |
| 62 | 26 | Room 740 | Red lightweight cement boiler lines 6865264 | ~64 sf | x | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/4/2019
Report No.: 598582 - PLM
Project: Garrett College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

**Lab No.:** 6868384
**Client No.:** GC800-63
**Analyst Observation:** Black Tar
**Client Description:** Black Built Up Roofing
**Location:** Center Roof
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
2 Synthetic
3 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
95

**Lab No.:** 6868384(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-63
**Analyst Observation:** Black Roof Material
**Client Description:** Black Built Up Roofing
**Location:** Center Roof
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
1 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
99

---

**Lab No.:** 6868385
**Client No.:** GC800-64
**Analyst Observation:** Black/White Roof Material
**Client Description:** White Roofing Membrane
**Location:** Perimeter And Curbs
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
5 Synthetic

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
95

**Lab No.:** 6868385(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-64
**Analyst Observation:** Black Mastic
**Client Description:** White Roofing Membrane
**Location:** Perimeter And Curbs
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
100

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/29/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/04/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Zach Schwartz

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Client: | Boggs Environ. Consultants | Report Date: | 9/4/2019 |
| | 200 W. Main Street | Report No.: | 598582 - PLM |
| | Middletown MD 21769 | Project: | Garrett College Bldg 700/800 |
| | | Project No.: | MD19159 |
| Client: | BOG107 | | |

# Appendix to Analytical Report

**Customer Contact:** AllHands @Boggs
**Method:** 40 CFR Appendix E to Subpart E of Part 763, interim method for the Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Insulation Samples, and USEPA 600, R93-116 as needed.

This appendix seeks to promote greater understanding of any observations, exceptions, special instructions, or circumstances that the laboratory needs to communicate to the client concerning the above samples. The information below is used to help promote your ability to make the most informed decisions for you and your customers. Please note the following points of contact for any questions you may have.

**iATL Customer Service:** customerservice@iatl.com
**iATL Office Manager:** wchampion@iatl.com
**iATL Account Representative**: Cassie Doherty
**Sample Login Notes:** See Batch Sheet Attached
**Sample Matrix:** Bulk Building Materials
**Exceptions Noted:** See Following Pages

## General Terms, Warrants, Limits, Qualifiers:

General information about iATL capabilities and client/laboratory relationships and responsibilities are spelled out in iATL policies that are listed at www.iATL.com and ir our Quality Assurance Manual per ISO 17025 standard requirements. The information therein is a representation of iATL definitions and policies for turnaround times, sample submittal, collection media, blank definitions, quantification issues and limit of detection, analytical methods and procedures, sub-contracting policies, results reporting options, fees, terms, and discounts, confidentiality, sample archival and disposal, and data interpretation.

iATL warrants the test results to be of a precision normal for the type and methodology employed for each sample submitted. iATL disclaims any other warrants, expressed or implied, including warranty of fitness for a particular purpose and warranty of merchantability. iATL accepts no legal responsibility for the purpose for which the client uses test results. Any analytical work performed must be governed by our Standard Terms and Conditions. Prices, methods and detection limits may be changed without notification. Please contact your Customer Service Representative for the most current information.

This confidential report relates only to those item(s) tested and does not represent an endorsement by NIST-NVLAP, AIHA LAP LLC, or any agency of local, state or province governments nor of any agency of the U.S. government.

This report shall not be reproduced except in full, without written approval of the laboratory.

## Information Pertinent to this Report:

Analysis by US EPA 600 93-116: Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Building Materials by Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM).

Certifications:

- NIST-NVLAP No. 101165-0
- NYSDOH-ELAP No. 11021
- AIHA-LAP, LLC No. 100188

Quantification at <0.25% by volume is possible with this method. (PC) Indicates Stratified Point Count Method performed. (PC-Trace) means that asbestos was detected but is not quantifiable under the Point Counting regimen. PC Trace represents a <0.25% amount. Analysis includes all distinct separable layers in accordance with EPA 600 Method. If not reported or otherwise noted, layer is either not present or the client has specifically requested that it not be analyzed (ex. analyze until positive instructions). Small asbestos fibers may be missed by PLM due to resolution limitations of the optical microscope. Therefore, PLM is not consistently reliable in detecting asbestos in non-friable organically bound (NOB) materials. Quantitative transmission electron microscopy (TEM) is currently the only method that can pronounce materials as non-asbestos containing.

Analytical Methodology Alternatives: Your initial request for analysis may not have accounted for recent advances in regulatory requirements or advances in technology that are routinely used in similar situations for other qualified projects. You may have the option to explore additional analysis for further information. Below are a few options, listed as the matrix followed by the appropriate methodology. Also included are links to more information on our website.

Bulk Building Materials that are Non-Friable Organically Bound (NOB) by Gravimetric Reduction techniques employing PLM and TEM: ELAP 198.6 (PLM-NOB), ELAP 198.4 (TEM-NOB)

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Client: | Boggs Environ. Consultants | Report Date: | 9/4/2019 |
| | 200 W. Main Street | Report No.: | 598582 - PLM |
| | Middletown MD 21769 | Project: | Garrett College Bldg 700/800 |
| | | Project No.: | MD19159 |
| Client: | BOG107 | | |

Loose Fill Vermiculite Insulation, Attic Insulation, Zonolite (copyright), etc.: US EPA 600 R-4/004 (multi-tiered analytical process)
Sprayed On Insulation/Fireproofing with Vermiculite (SOF-V): ELAP 198.8 (PLM-SOF-V)

Soil, sludge, sediment, aggregate, and like materials analyzed for asbestos or other elongated mineral particles (ex. erionite, etc.): ASTM D7521, CARB 435, and other options available

Asbestos in Surface Dust according to one of ASTM's Methods (very dependent on sampling collection technique – by TEM): ASTM D 5755, D5756, or D6480

Various other asbestos matrices (air, water, etc.) and analytical methods are available.

## Disclaimers / Qualifiers:

There may be some samples in this project that have a "NOTE:" associated with a sample result. We use added disclaimers or qualifiers to inform the client about something that requires further explanation. Here is a list with highlighted disclaimers that may be pertinent to this project. For a full explanation of these and other disclaimers, please inquire at **customerservice@iatl.com**.

1) Note: No mastic provided for analysis.
2) Note: Insufficient mastic provided for analysis.
3) Note: Insufficient material provided for analysis.
4) Note: Insufficient sample provided for QC reanalysis.
5) Note: Different material than indicated on Sample Log / Description.
6) Note: Sample not submitted.
7) Note: Attached to asbestos containing material.
8) Note: Received wet.
9) Note: Possible surface contamination.
10) Note: Not building material. 1% threshold may not apply.
11) Note: Recommend TEM-NOB analysis as per EPA recommendations.
12) Note: Asbestos detected but not quantifiable.
13) Note: Multiple identical samples submitted, only one analyzed.
14) Note: Analyzed by EPA 600/R-93/116. Point Counting detection limit at 0.080%.
15) Note: Analyzed by EPA 600/R-93/116. Point Counting detection limit at 0.125%.
16) Note: This sample contains >10% vermiculite mineral. See Appendix for Recommendations for Vermiculite Analysis.

## Recommendations for Vermiculite Analysis:

Several analytical protocols exist for the analysis of asbestos in vermiculite. These analytical approaches vary depending upon the nature of the vermiculite mineral being tested (e.g. un-processed gange, homogeneous exfoliated books of mica, or mixed mineral composites).Please contact your client representative for pricing and turnaround time options available.

iATL recommends initial testing using the EPA 600/R-93/116 method. This method is specifically designed for the analysis of asbestos in bulk building materials. It provides an acceptable starting point for primary screening of vermiculite for possible asbestos.

Results from this testing may be inconclusive. EPA suggests proceeding to a multi-tiered analysis involving wet separation techniques in conjunction with PLM and TEM gravimetric analysis (EPA 600/R-04/004).

For New York State customers, NYSDOH requires disclaimers and qualifiers for various vermiculite containing samples that direct analysis via ELAP198.6 and ELAP198.8 for samples that contain >10% vermiculite mineral where ELAP198.6 may be used to evaluate the asbestos content of the material. However, any test result using ELAP198.6 will be reported with the following disclaimer: “ELAP198.6 method does not remove vermiculite and may underestimate the level of asbestos present in a sample containing >10% vermiculite.”

Further information on this method and other vermiculite and asbestos issues can be found at the following: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR) www.atsdr.cdc.gov, United States Geological Survey (USGS) www.minerals.usgs.gov/minerals/, US EPA www.epa.gov/asbestos. The USEPA also has an informative brochure "Current Best Practices for Vermiculite Attic Insulation" EPA 747F03001 May 2003, that may assist the health and remediation professional.

The following is a summary of the analytical process outlines in the EPA 600/R-04/004 Method:

1)**Analytical Step/Method:** Initial Screening by PLM, EPA 600R-93/116
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum of 0.1 g of sample. ~0.25% LOQ for most samples.

2)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by PLM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Sinks" only.

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/4/2019
Report No.: 598582 - PLM
Project: Garrett College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

3)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by PLM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Floats" only.

4)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by TEM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Sinks" only.

5)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by TEM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Suspension" only.

LOQ, Limit of Quantitation estimates for mass and volume analyses.
*With advance notice and confirmation by the laboratory.
**Approximately 1 Liter of sample in double-bagged container (~9x6 inch bag of sample).

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

**Lab No.:** 6865203 | **Analyst Observation:** White Floor Tile | **Location:** Room 801
**Client No.:** GC800-1 | **Client Description:** 12"x12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks and Black Mastic | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865203(L2) | **Analyst Observation:** Black Mastic | **Location:** Room 801
**Client No.:** GC800-1 | **Client Description:** 12"x12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks and Black Mastic | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865204 | **Analyst Observation:** White Floor Tile | **Location:** Room 807
**Client No.:** GC800-2 | **Client Description:** 12"x12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks and Black Mastic | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865204(L2) | **Analyst Observation:** Black Mastic | **Location:** Room 807
**Client No.:** GC800-2 | **Client Description:** 12"x12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks and Black Mastic | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865205 | **Analyst Observation:** White Floor Tile | **Location:** Room 807
**Client No.:** GC800-3 | **Client Description:** 12"x12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks and Black Mastic | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865205(L2) | **Analyst Observation:** Black Mastic | **Location:** Room 807
**Client No.:** GC800-3 | **Client Description:** 12"x12" Off White VFT w/Tan Specks and Black Mastic | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865206 **Analyst Observation:** Brown Cove Base **Location:** Room 807
**Client No.:** GC800-4 **Client Description:** Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/Brown Mastic **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865206(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 807
**Client No.:** GC800-4 **Client Description:** Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/Brown Mastic **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865207 **Analyst Observation:** Brown Cove Base **Location:** Room 804
**Client No.:** GC800-5 **Client Description:** Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/Brown Mastic **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865207(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 804
**Client No.:** GC800-5 **Client Description:** Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/Brown Mastic **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865208 **Analyst Observation:** Brown Cove Base **Location:** Room 801
**Client No.:** GC800-6 **Client Description:** Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/Brown Mastic **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865208(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 801
**Client No.:** GC800-6 **Client Description:** Brown Vinyl Cove Base w/Brown Mastic **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865209
**Client No.:** GC800-7

**Analyst Observation:** White Ceiling Tile
**Client Description:** 2'x4' Large And Small Pinhole ACT

**Location:** Room 807 Foyer
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
60 Cellulose
30 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
10

---

**Lab No.:** 6865210
**Client No.:** GC800-8

**Analyst Observation:** White Ceiling Tile
**Client Description:** 2'x4' Large And Small Pinhole ACT

**Location:** Room 804 Foyer
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
60 Cellulose
30 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
10

---

**Lab No.:** 6865211
**Client No.:** GC800-9

**Analyst Observation:** White Ceiling Tile
**Client Description:** 2'x4' Large And Small Pinhole ACT

**Location:** Room 801 Foyer
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
60 Cellulose
30 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
10

---

**Lab No.:** 6865212
**Client No.:** GC800-10

**Analyst Observation:** White Ceiling Tile
**Client Description:** 2'x4' White Large And Small Pinhole ACT

**Location:** Room 801
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
60 Cellulose
30 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
10

---

**Lab No.:** 6865213
**Client No.:** GC800-11

**Analyst Observation:** White Ceiling Tile
**Client Description:** 2'x4' White Large And Small Pinhole ACT

**Location:** Room 801
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
60 Cellulose
30 Fibrous Glass

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
10

---

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Lab No.:** 6865214<br>**Client No.:** GC800-12 | **Analyst Observation:** White Ceiling Tile<br>**Client Description:** 2'x4' White Large And Small Pinhole ACT | **Location:** Room 801<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>60 Cellulose<br>30 Fibrous Glass | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>10 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865215<br>**Client No.:** GC800-13 | **Analyst Observation:** White Drywall<br>**Client Description:** Gypsum Board Sheeting | **Location:** Room 808<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>5 Cellulose | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>95 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865216<br>**Client No.:** GC800-14 | **Analyst Observation:** White Drywall<br>**Client Description:** Gypsum Board Sheeting | **Location:** Room 802<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>5 Cellulose | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>95 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865217<br>**Client No.:** GC800-15 | **Analyst Observation:** White Drywall<br>**Client Description:** Gypsum Board Sheeting | **Location:** Room 805<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>5 Cellulose | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>95 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865218<br>**Client No.:** GC800-16 | **Analyst Observation:** White Joint Compound<br>**Client Description:** Joint Finishing Compound | **Location:** Room 811<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>***PC 1.4*** *Chrysotile* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>98.6 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865219<br>**Client No.:** GC800-17 | **Analyst Observation:** White Joint Compound<br>**Client Description:** Joint Finishing Compound | **Location:** Room 805<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>***PC 1.8*** *Chrysotile* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>98.2 |

Note: Sample/Layers analyzed by Randy Caran, 9/09/19.

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

**Lab No.:** 6865220 **Analyst Observation:** White Joint Compound **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-18 **Client Description:** Joint Finishing Compound **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
***PC 1.6*** *Chrysotile* None Detected 98.4

Note: Sample/Layers analyzed by Randy Caran, 9/09/19.

**Lab No.:** 6865221 **Analyst Observation:** Grey Ceramic **Location:** Room 811 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-19 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
*None Detected* None Detected 100

**Lab No.:** 6865221(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout **Location:** Room 811 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-19 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
*None Detected* None Detected 100

**Lab No.:** 6865221(L3) **Analyst Observation:** Off-White Mastic **Location:** Room 811 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-19 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
*None Detected* None Detected 100

**Lab No.:** 6865222 **Analyst Observation:** Grey Ceramic **Location:** Rom 807 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-20 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
*None Detected* None Detected 100

**Lab No.:** 6865222(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout **Location:** Rom 807 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-20 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
*None Detected* None Detected 100

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

**Lab No.:** 6865222(L3) **Analyst Observation:** Off-White Mastic **Location:** Rom 807 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-20 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865223 **Analyst Observation:** Grey Ceramic **Location:** Room 805 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-21 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865223(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout **Location:** Room 805 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-21 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865223(L3) **Analyst Observation:** Off-White Mastic **Location:** Room 805 Foyer
**Client No.:** GC800-21 **Client Description:** 2"x2" Grey Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865224 **Analyst Observation:** White Ceramic **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-22 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865224(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Blue Ceramic **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-22 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

**Lab No.:** 6865224(L3) **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-22 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865225 **Analyst Observation:** White Ceramic **Location:** Room 803
**Client No.:** GC800-23 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865225(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Blue Ceramic **Location:** Room 803
**Client No.:** GC800-23 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865225(L3) **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout **Location:** Room 803
**Client No.:** GC800-23 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865226 **Analyst Observation:** White Ceramic **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-24 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865226(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Blue Ceramic **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-24 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

**Lab No.:** 6865226(L3) **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-24 **Client Description:** 1"x2" White and Blue Ceramic Floor Tile Grout/Thinset **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865227 **Analyst Observation:** Grey Ceramic **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-25 **Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865227(L2) **Analyst Observation:** White Grout **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-25 **Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865227(L3) **Analyst Observation:** White Mastic **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-25 **Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865228 **Analyst Observation:** Grey Ceramic **Location:** Room 803
**Client No.:** GC800-26 **Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865228(L2) **Analyst Observation:** White Grout **Location:** Room 803
**Client No.:** GC800-26 **Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865229
**Client No.:** GC800-27

**Analyst Observation:** Grey Ceramic
**Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive

**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865229(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-27

**Analyst Observation:** White Grout
**Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive

**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865229(L3)
**Client No.:** GC800-27

**Analyst Observation:** White Mastic
**Client Description:** 4"x4" Grey Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive

**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865230
**Client No.:** GC800-28

**Analyst Observation:** White Ceramic
**Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive

**Location:** Room 809
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865230(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-28

**Analyst Observation:** White Grout
**Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive

**Location:** Room 809
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865230(L3)
**Client No.:** GC800-28

**Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic
**Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive

**Location:** Room 809
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865231 | **Analyst Observation:** White Ceramic | **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-29 | **Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865231(L2) | **Analyst Observation:** White Grout | **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-29 | **Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865231(L3) | **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic | **Location:** Room 809
**Client No.:** GC800-29 | **Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865232 | **Analyst Observation:** White Ceramic | **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-30 | **Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865232(L2) | **Analyst Observation:** Grey Grout | **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-30 | **Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

**Lab No.:** 6865232(L3) | **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic | **Location:** Room 802
**Client No.:** GC800-30 | **Client Description:** 4"x4" White Ceramic Wall Tile Grout and Adhesive | **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865233 **Analyst Observation:** Black Cove Base **Location:** Room 806
**Client No.:** GC800-31 **Client Description:** Black Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865233(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 806
**Client No.:** GC800-31 **Client Description:** Black Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865234 **Analyst Observation:** Black Cove Base **Location:** Room 806
**Client No.:** GC800-32 **Client Description:** Black Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865234(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 806
**Client No.:** GC800-32 **Client Description:** Black Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865235 **Analyst Observation:** Black Cove Base **Location:** Room 806
**Client No.:** GC800-33 **Client Description:** Black Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865235(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 806
**Client No.:** GC800-33 **Client Description:** Black Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865236 **Analyst Observation:** White Cove Base **Location:** Room 805
**Client No.:** GC800-34 **Client Description:** White Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865236(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 805
**Client No.:** GC800-34 **Client Description:** White Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865237 **Analyst Observation:** White Cove Base **Location:** Room 805
**Client No.:** GC800-35 **Client Description:** White Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865237(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 805
**Client No.:** GC800-35 **Client Description:** White Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865238 **Analyst Observation:** White Cove Base **Location:** Room 805
**Client No.:** GC800-36 **Client Description:** White Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865238(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Brown Mastic **Location:** Room 805
**Client No.:** GC800-36 **Client Description:** White Vinyl Cove Base w/Tan Mastic **Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865239
**Client No.:** GC800-37
**Analyst Observation:** White Plaster
**Client Description:** Finished Ceiling Plaster (Smooth)
**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865239(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-37
**Analyst Observation:** Grey Plaster
**Client Description:** Finished Ceiling Plaster (Smooth)
**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865240
**Client No.:** GC800-38
**Analyst Observation:** White Plaster
**Client Description:** Finished Ceiling Plaster (Smooth)
**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865240(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-38
**Analyst Observation:** Grey Plaster
**Client Description:** Finished Ceiling Plaster (Smooth)
**Location:** Room 803
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865241
**Client No.:** GC800-39
**Analyst Observation:** White Plaster
**Client Description:** Finished Ceiling Plaster (Smooth)
**Location:** Room 809
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

**Lab No.:** 6865241(L2)
**Client No.:** GC800-39
**Analyst Observation:** Grey Plaster
**Client Description:** Finished Ceiling Plaster (Smooth)
**Location:** Room 809
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos: *None Detected*
Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: None Detected
Percent Non-Fibrous Material: 100

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Lab No.:** 6865242<br>**Client No.:** GC800-40 | **Analyst Observation:** Black Caulk<br>**Client Description:** Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (Window) | **Location:** Breezeway<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865243<br>**Client No.:** GC800-41 | **Analyst Observation:** Black Caulk<br>**Client Description:** Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (Window) | **Location:** Breezeway<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865244<br>**Client No.:** GC800-42 | **Analyst Observation:** Black Caulk<br>**Client Description:** Brown Masonry Joint Sealant (Window) | **Location:** Breezeway<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865245<br>**Client No.:** GC800-43 | **Analyst Observation:** Tan Mastic<br>**Client Description:** Yellow Carpet Mastic | **Location:** Room 809<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865246<br>**Client No.:** GC800-44 | **Analyst Observation:** Tan Mastic<br>**Client Description:** Yellow Carpet Mastic | **Location:** Room 804<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865247<br>**Client No.:** GC800-45 | **Analyst Observation:** Tan Mastic<br>**Client Description:** Yellow Carpet Mastic | **Location:** Room 803<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Lab No.:** 6865248<br>**Client No.:** GC800-46 | **Analyst Observation:** Black/Tan Mastic<br>**Client Description:** Yellow/Black Carpet Mastic | **Location:** Room 807<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865249<br>**Client No.:** GC800-47 | **Analyst Observation:** Black/Tan Mastic<br>**Client Description:** Yellow/Black Carpet Mastic | **Location:** Room 810<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865250<br>**Client No.:** GC800-48 | **Analyst Observation:** Black/Tan Mastic<br>**Client Description:** Yellow/Black Carpet Mastic | **Location:** Room 801<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>None Detected | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>100 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865251<br>**Client No.:** GC800-49 | **Analyst Observation:** Black Tar<br>**Client Description:** Brown Masonry Joint Sealant 2 (Windows) | **Location:** Breezeway<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>10 Cellulose | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>90 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865252<br>**Client No.:** GC800-50 | **Analyst Observation:** Black Tar<br>**Client Description:** Brown Masonry Joint Sealant 2 (Windows) | **Location:** Breezeway<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>10 Cellulose | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>90 |
| **Lab No.:** 6865253<br>**Client No.:** GC800-51 | **Analyst Observation:** Black Tar<br>**Client Description:** Brown Masonry Joint Sealant 2 (Windows) | **Location:** Breezeway<br>**Facility:** |
| Percent Asbestos:<br>*None Detected* | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:<br>10 Cellulose | Percent Non-Fibrous Material:<br>90 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865254
**Client No.:** GC800-52

**Analyst Observation:** Brown Sealant
**Client Description:** Brown Expansion Joint Sealant

**Location:** Breezeway
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865255
**Client No.:** GC800-53

**Analyst Observation:** Brown Sealant
**Client Description:** Brown Expansion Joint Sealant

**Location:** Breezeway
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865256
**Client No.:** GC800-54

**Analyst Observation:** Brown Sealant
**Client Description:** Brown Expansion Joint Sealant

**Location:** Breezeway
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865257
**Client No.:** GC800-55

**Analyst Observation:** Grey Sealant
**Client Description:** Grey AC Penetration Sealant

**Location:** Exterior
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
None Detected

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
100

---

**Lab No.:** 6865258
**Client No.:** GC800-56

**Analyst Observation:** Black Roof Material
**Client Description:** Black Curb Riser Mastic

**Location:** Roof
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
10 Cellulose

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
90

---

**Lab No.:** 6865259
**Client No.:** GC800-57

**Analyst Observation:** Black Roof Material
**Client Description:** Black Roof Seam Mastic

**Location:** Roof
**Facility:**

Percent Asbestos:
*None Detected*

Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material:
10 Cellulose

Percent Non-Fibrous Material:
90

---

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

iATL INTERNATIONAL
ASBESTOS TESTING LABORATORIES

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM Rev #2, 9/9/2019
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

# PLM BULK SAMPLE ANALYSIS SUMMARY

---

**Lab No.:** 6865260 **Analyst Observation:** Tan Caulk **Location:** Roof
**Client No.:** GC800-58 **Client Description:** Tan Vent Masonry Joint Sealant **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865261 **Analyst Observation:** White Caulk **Location:** Roof
**Client No.:** GC800-59 **Client Description:** White Upper Flashing Sealant **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865262 **Analyst Observation:** Black Sealant **Location:** Roof
**Client No.:** GC800-60 **Client Description:** Black Lower Flashing Sealant **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865263 **Analyst Observation:** Black Shingle **Location:** Roof
**Client No.:** GC800-61 **Client Description:** Black Asphalt Roof Shingle and Tar Paper **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | 25 Fibrous Glass | 75 |

**Lab No.:** 6865263(L2) **Analyst Observation:** Black Tar Paper **Location:** Roof
**Client No.:** GC800-61 **Client Description:** Black Asphalt Roof Shingle and Tar Paper **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | 40 Fibrous Glass | 60 |

---

**Lab No.:** 6865264 **Analyst Observation:** Pink Insulation **Location:** Room 740
**Client No.:** GC800-62 **Client Description:** Red Light Weight Cement Boiler Liner **Facility:**

| Percent Asbestos: | Percent Non-Asbestos Fibrous Material: | Percent Non-Fibrous Material: |
|---|---|---|
| *None Detected* | None Detected | 100 |

Please refer to the Appendix of this report for further information regarding your analysis.

Date Received: 8/26/2019
Date Analyzed: 09/03/2019
Signature:
Analyst: Randy Caran

Approved By:
Frank E. Ehrenfeld, III
Laboratory Director

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Client: | Boggs Environ. Consultants | Report Date: | 9/3/2019 |
| | 200 W. Main Street | Report No.: | 598194 - PLM |
| | Middletown MD 21769 | Project: | Garret College Bldg 700/800 |
| | | Project No.: | MD19159 |
| Client: | BOG107 | | |

# Appendix to Analytical Report

**Customer Contact:** AllHands @Boggs
**Method:**40 CFR Appendix E to Subpart E of Part 763, interim method for the Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Insulation Samples, and USEPA 600, R93-116 as needed.

This appendix seeks to promote greater understanding of any observations, exceptions, special instructions, or circumstances that the laboratory needs to communicate to the client concerning the above samples. The information below is used to help promote your ability to make the most informed decisions for you and your customers. Please note the following points of contact for any questions you may have.

**iATL Customer Service:** customerservice@iatl.com
**iATL Office Manager:**wchampion@iatl.com
**iATL Account Representative**: Cassie Doherty
**Sample Login Notes:** See Batch Sheet Attached
**Sample Matrix:** Bulk Building Materials
**Exceptions Noted:** See Following Pages

## General Terms, Warrants, Limits, Qualifiers:

General information about iATL capabilities and client/laboratory relationships and responsibilities are spelled out in iATL policies that are listed at www.iATL.com and in our Quality Assurance Manual per ISO 17025 standard requirements. The information therein is a representation of iATL definitions and policies for turnaround times, sample submittal, collection media, blank definitions, quantification issues and limit of detection, analytical methods and procedures, sub-contracting policies, results reporting options, fees, terms, and discounts, confidentiality, sample archival and disposal, and data interpretation.

iATL warrants the test results to be of a precision normal for the type and methodology employed for each sample submitted. iATL disclaims any other warrants, expressed or implied, including warranty of fitness for a particular purpose and warranty of merchantability. iATL accepts no legal responsibility for the purpose for which the client uses test results. Any analytical work performed must be governed by our Standard Terms and Conditions. Prices, methods and detection limits may be changed without notification. Please contact your Customer Service Representative for the most current information.

This confidential report relates only to those item(s) tested and does not represent an endorsement by NIST-NVLAP, AIHA LAP LLC, or any agency of local, state or province governments nor of any agency of the U.S. government.

This report shall not be reproduced except in full, without written approval of the laboratory.

## Information Pertinent to this Report:

Analysis by US EPA 600 93-116: Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Building Materials by Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM).

Certifications:

- NIST-NVLAP No. 101165-0
- NYSDOH-ELAP No. 11021
- AIHA-LAP, LLC No. 100188

Quantification at <0.25% by volume is possible with this method. (PC) Indicates Stratified Point Count Method performed. (PC-Trace) means that asbestos was detected but is not quantifiable under the Point Counting regimen. PC Trace represents a <0.25% amount. Analysis includes all distinct separable layers in accordance with EPA 600 Method. If not reported or otherwise noted, layer is either not present or the client has specifically requested that it not be analyzed (ex. analyze until positive instructions). Small asbestos fibers may be missed by PLM due to resolution limitations of the optical microscope. Therefore, PLM is not consistently reliable in detecting asbestos in non-friable organically bound (NOB) materials. Quantitative transmission electron microscopy (TEM) is currently the only method that can pronounce materials as non-asbestos containing.

Analytical Methodology Alternatives: Your initial request for analysis may not have accounted for recent advances in regulatory requirements or advances in technology that are routinely used in similar situations for other qualified projects. You may have the option to explore additional analysis for further information. Below are a few options, listed as the matrix followed by the appropriate methodology. Also included are links to more information on our website.

Bulk Building Materials that are Non-Friable Organically Bound (NOB) by Gravimetric Reduction techniques employing PLM and TEM: ELAP 198.6 (PLM-NOB), ELAP 198.4 (TEM-NOB)

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Client: | Boggs Environ. Consultants | Report Date: | 9/3/2019 |
| | 200 W. Main Street | Report No.: | 598194 - PLM |
| | Middletown MD 21769 | Project: | Garret College Bldg 700/800 |
| | | Project No.: | MD19159 |
| Client: | BOG107 | | |

Loose Fill Vermiculite Insulation, Attic Insulation, Zonolite (copyright), etc.: US EPA 600 R-4/004 (multi-tiered analytical process)
Sprayed On Insulation/Fireproofing with Vermiculite (SOF-V): ELAP 198.8 (PLM-SOF-V)

Soil, sludge, sediment, aggregate, and like materials analyzed for asbestos or other elongated mineral particles (ex. erionite, etc.): ASTM D7521, CARB 435, and other options available

Asbestos in Surface Dust according to one of ASTM's Methods (very dependent on sampling collection technique – by TEM): ASTM D 5755, D5756, or D6480

Various other asbestos matrices (air, water, etc.) and analytical methods are available.

## Disclaimers / Qualifiers:

There may be some samples in this project that have a "NOTE:" associated with a sample result. We use added disclaimers or qualifiers to inform the client about something that requires further explanation. Here is a list with highlighted disclaimers that may be pertinent to this project. For a full explanation of these and other disclaimers, please inquire at **customerservice@iatl.com**.

1) Note: No mastic provided for analysis.
2) Note: Insufficient mastic provided for analysis.
3) Note: Insufficient material provided for analysis.
4) Note: Insufficient sample provided for QC reanalysis.
5) Note: Different material than indicated on Sample Log / Description.
6) Note: Sample not submitted.
7) Note: Attached to asbestos containing material.
8) Note: Received wet.
9) Note: Possible surface contamination.
10) Note: Not building material. 1% threshold may not apply.
11) Note: Recommend TEM-NOB analysis as per EPA recommendations.
12) Note: Asbestos detected but not quantifiable.
13) Note: Multiple identical samples submitted, only one analyzed.
14) Note: Analyzed by EPA 600/R-93/116. Point Counting detection limit at 0.080%.
15) Note: Analyzed by EPA 600/R-93/116. Point Counting detection limit at 0.125%.
16) Note: This sample contains >10% vermiculite mineral. See Appendix for Recommendations for Vermiculite Analysis.

## Recommendations for Vermiculite Analysis:

Several analytical protocols exist for the analysis of asbestos in vermiculite. These analytical approaches vary depending upon the nature of the vermiculite mineral being tested (e.g. un-processed gange, homogeneous exfoliated books of mica, or mixed mineral composites).Please contact your client representative for pricing and turnaround time options available.

iATL recommends initial testing using the EPA 600/R-93/116 method. This method is specifically designed for the analysis of asbestos in bulk building materials. It provides an acceptable starting point for primary screening of vermiculite for possible asbestos.

Results from this testing may be inconclusive. EPA suggests proceeding to a multi-tiered analysis involving wet separation techniques in conjunction with PLM and TEM gravimetric analysis (EPA 600/R-04/004).

For New York State customers, NYSDOH requires disclaimers and qualifiers for various vermiculite containing samples that direct analysis via ELAP198.6 and ELAP198.8 for samples that contain >10% vermiculite mineral where ELAP198.6 may be used to evaluate the asbestos content of the material. However, any test result using ELAP198.6 will be reported with the following disclaimer: “ELAP198.6 method does not remove vermiculite and may underestimate the level of asbestos present in a sample containing >10% vermiculite.”

Further information on this method and other vermiculite and asbestos issues can be found at the following: Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR) www.atsdr.cdc.gov, United States Geological Survey (USGS) www.minerals.usgs.gov/minerals/, US EPA www.epa.gov/asbestos. The USEPA also has an informative brochure "Current Best Practices for Vermiculite Attic Insulation" EPA 747F03001 May 2003, that may assist the health and remediation professional.

The following is a summary of the analytical process outlines in the EPA 600/R-04/004 Method:

1)**Analytical Step/Method:** Initial Screening by PLM, EPA 600R-93/116
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum of 0.1 g of sample. ~0.25% LOQ for most samples.

2)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by PLM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Sinks" only.

9000 Commerce Parkway Suite B
Mt. Laurel, New Jersey 08054
Telephone: 856-231-9449
Email: customerservice@iatl.com

CERTIFICATE OF ANALYSIS

Client: Boggs Environ. Consultants
200 W. Main Street
Middletown MD 21769

Client: BOG107

Report Date: 9/3/2019
Report No.: 598194 - PLM
Project: Garret College Bldg 700/800
Project No.: MD19159

3)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by PLM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Floats" only.

4)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by TEM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Sinks" only.

5)**Analytical Step/Method:** Wet Separation by TEM Gravimetric Technique, EPA R-04/004
**Requirements/Comments:** Minimum 50g** of dry sample. Analysis of "Suspension" only.

LOQ, Limit of Quantitation estimates for mass and volume analyses.
*With advance notice and confirmation by the laboratory.
**Approximately 1 Liter of sample in double-bagged container (~9x6 inch bag of sample).

# APPENDIX D

## BEC STAFF QUALIFICATIONS

**Asbestos License**

Andrew Hanson
Name

Signature

Inspector Review
Course Title

Course Date: 12/04/2018
Exp Date: 12/04/2019
Exam Date: 03/21/2019

19008182

**STATE OF MARYLAND**

# LEAD-BASED PAINT INSPECTION
## FINAL TECHNICAL REPORT

***Conducted at:***

## GARRETT COLLEGE
## BUILDING 700 & 800
687 Mosser Road,
McHenry, Maryland 21541

***Prepared for:***

687 Mosser Road
McHenry, Maryland 21541

ATTENTION: Mr. Hugh A. Schrier
Plant Manager

Email: hugh.schrier@garrettcollege.edu

BEC Project #MD19159

Fieldwork Conducted: August 22, 2019 & August 23, 2019

Final Technical Report Date: September 13, 2019

***Prepared by:***

BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS
Middletown MD ~ Morgantown, WV
Corporate Office: 200 Main St., Middletown, MD 21769
Tel: (301) 694-5687 ~ Fax: (301) 694-9799

**LEAD-BASED PAINT INSPECTION**
**FINAL TECHNICAL REPORT**

***Conducted at:***

**GARRETT COLLEGE**
**BUILDING #700 & 800**
687 Mosser Road,
McHenry, Maryland 21541

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**




**BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS, INC.**

Final Technical Report & Onsite Fieldwork Conducted By:

Andrew Hanson., Project Manager
State of Maryland Lead Risk Assessor (#17343)

## SECTION 1.0 SUBJECT SITE DESCRIPTION & SCOPE OF WORK

| | |
|---|---|
| **Project Site:** | **GARRET COLLEGE BUILDING 700/800**<br>687 Mosser Road,<br>McHenry, Maryland 21541 |
| **Requester Name:** | Mr. Hugh A. Schrier, Plant Manager |
| **Requestor Address:** | **GARRET COLLEGE**<br>687 Mosser Road,<br>McHenry, Maryland 21541 |

**Subject Site Description & Scope of Work:**

The subject site is a Building #700 (Fine Arts / Administration Building) and Building #800 (Gymnasium) on the campus of Garrett College located at 687 Mosser Road, McHenry, Maryland 21541.

BEC received authorization from Mr. Hugh A. Schrier, Garrett College plant manager, to provide support services to conduct the lead-based paint (LBP) inspection to identify building components for the presence of lead-based paint (LBP) and/or paint-containing lead (PCL). Mr. Schrier requested the LBP inspection to determine applicability (and impact) of US EPA/US HUD/State of Maryland Department of the Environment (MDE) and US OSHA worker protection regulations potentially triggered during planned renovation (construction) work activities, which will, or can be reasonably anticipated to, result in disturbance of building components finished with LBP or PCL.

## SECTION 2.0 LEAD-BASED PAINT INSPECTION

### 2.1 Background

**BOGGS ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS, INC.** (BEC) conducted the LBP inspection utilizing an US EPA/HUD/MDE accredited LBP Risk Assessor and all necessary sampling equipment to perform the LBP inspection, by evaluating the representative building components within each functional space located at the structure to gain an understanding of the locations of LBP and/or PCL within the subject site. The lead-based paint (LBP) inspection was conducted strictly adhering to the US HUD guidance document entitled "*Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing*" , June 1995 (including the 1997 and 2012 revisions).

BEC staff member, Mr. Andrew Hanson, whom possesses valid United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA), US Housing and Urban Development (US HUD), MDE approved "Lead Risk Assessor" training certification conducted the inspection for LBP and/or PCL-finished building components on August 22, 2019 and August 23, 2019.

### 2.2 LBP Inspection Procedures

The LBP inspection consisted of critical visual inspection and surface-by-surface investigation utilizing an X-Ray Fluorescence (XRF) *in situ* testing of paint films present at the structure. PROTEC "LPA-1" XRF manufactured by PROTEC Instrument Corporation, 38 Edge Hill Road, Waltham, Massachusetts. The PROTEC LPA-1 is a hand-held portable lead detector, designed to make accurate, non-destructive measurements of lead concentrations in paint. The LPA-1 (SN #1701) underwent resourcing of the Cobalt-57 radioactive isotope-based energy source on May 16, 2018. (See **Appendix A** - PROTEC "LPA-1" Radioactive Energy Resourcing Data).

The "LPA-1" is a hand-held portable lead detector, designed to make accurate, non-destructive measurements of lead concentrations in paint films, coatings, and/or finishes. BEC adhered to the XRF manufacturer's specifications and directives contained in the "*XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet*" (PCS) in the conduct of the lead-based paint inspection. (See **Appendix B** – XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet)

## SECTION 2.0 LEAD-BASED PAINT INSPECTION

### 2.2 LBP Inspection Procedures (continued)

Prior to beginning the XRF testing, BEC performed the manufacturer's recommended warm up procedures and calibrated the XRF device. BEC performed six calibration check readings using a National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Standard Reference Material (SRM) paint film test strip (NIST SRM #2579), which possesses a lead level of 1.02 mg/cm$^2$. All measurements were within the range of the calibration check limits; 0.7 to 1.3 mg/cm$^2$, inclusive. The XRF instrument was deemed in calibration and testing began.

BEC advises, based upon visual inspection and XRF testing activities, a total of **eighty-nine** (89) readings were collected from painted surfaces including: walls, ceilings, window components, door components, millwork, baseboards, closet components, and exterior building components. A complete listing of all XRF results is included in **Appendix C** – XRF Testing Data.

Federal & State Regulatory Applicability

Lead-Based Paint: According to the US EPA, US HUD, and MDE lead ($Pb^{+2}$) environmental pollution/hazard control regulations, an XRF reading of greater than 0.7 milligram per square centimeter (mg/cm$^2$) and/or 0.5% $Pb^{+2}$ dry weight of paint film is considered positive for the presence of lead-based paint. These thresholds trigger compliance with legally-enforceable regulations intended to safeguard against unprotected exposure of humans to LBP hazards whom occupy/reside within single-family and multiple-family residential structures as well as child daycare facilities. A partial listing of regulations pertinent to residential and daycare living conditions is provided hereunder.

The United States Occupational Safety and Health Administration (US OSHA) does not define lead paint based on content; paint-containing lead (PCL). Any detectable mass and/or concentration of lead in a paint film categorizes it as lead paint for purposes of complying with US OSHA regulations to determine worker exposure. Refer to "*OSHA Lead in Construction Advisor*", Office of the Assistant Secretary for Policy / Office of Compliance Assistance Policy: https://www.dol.gov/elaws/osha/lead/glossary.asp

**Federal Regulations**

"*Lead-Based Paint Poisoning Prevention In Certain Residential Structures*"
40 C.F.R. Subpart L, § 745.225 & .226 - worker certification and training requirements
40 C.F.R. Subpart L, §745.227 -work practices standards

"*Renovation, Repair, and Painting (RRP)*"
40 C.F.R §745.80

"*Methods and Standards for Lead-Paint Hazard Evaluation and Hazard Activities*"
24 C.F.R. Part 35, Subpart R

"*Lead in Construction*"
29 C.F.R. §1926.62

"*Lead in General Industry*"
29 C.F.R. §1910.1025

**United States Department of Transportation** (US DOT)
"*Hazardous Substances*"
49 C.F.R. §171 – 177

**Federal Regulations**

**United States Housing and Urban Development** (US HUD)
"*Methods and Standards for Lead-Paint Hazard Evaluation and Hazard Activities*"
24 C.F.R. Part 35, Subpart R

**SECTION 2.0 LEAD-BASED PAINT INSPECTION**

**State Regulations**

**State of Maryland, Department of the Environment** (MDE)
"*Procedures for Abating Lead Containing Substances from Buildings*"
COMAR 26.02.07

"*Accreditation and Training for Lead Paint Abatement Services*"
COMAR 26.16.01

"*Hazardous Waste Regulations*"
COMAR 26.13.01

**State of Maryland, Division of Labor and Industry, Occupational Safety and Health Program** (MOSH)

*"Federal Standards—Incorporation by Reference (adoption of provisions in 29 CFR 1910, 1926 and 1928)"*
COMAR 09.12.31

"*Access to Information About Hazardous and Toxic Substances*"
COMAR 09.12.33

"*MOSH Amendments to US OSHA Lead in Construction Work*"
COMAR 09.12.33

## 2.3 LBP Testing Combinations

A Testing Combination is characterized by the room equivalent, component, and substrate. The Testing Location is a specific area on a testing combination where the XRF instrument measures for lead-based paint.

A Room Equivalent is an identifiable part of a building, such as a room, exterior sides, or an exterior area. Hallways, stairways, and exterior areas are all examples of room equivalents. Walls are identified as A, B, C and D. The "A" wall in each room corresponds with the wall on which the main entrance or street side of the building is located. The remaining walls are located in order proceeding clockwise from "A" wall. Side A faced the entrance to each apartment building. Windows and/or doors are identified as #1, #2, #3, etc. with the Window #1 and/or Door #1, located at the extreme left-hand side of a room with additional windows and/or doors encountered at the same wall, numbered in ascending order; left to right naming convention.

Each room equivalent is made up of Components. Components may be located inside or outside a building. For example, components in a room are the ceiling, floor, walls, a door and its casing, the window sash, and window casing. The Substrate is the material underneath the paint. Many substrates exist; however US HUD Final Guidelines recommend classifying substrates into one of six substrate types: brick, concrete, drywall, metal, plaster, and wood. These substrate types are intended to include a broad range of materials. If the true substrate is not one of the six types, the substrate that most closely matches the true substrate is selected. For substrates on top of substrates, such as plaster on concrete, the substrate directly beneath the paint surface is used.

## 2.4 LBP Inspection Limitations

The above inspection was characterized by close visual inspection of subject site, in accordance with US HUD regulations and generally accepted engineering work practices associated with the LBP inspections. It is relevant to note, BEC did NOT conduct exploratory demolition to gain access to enclosed building conditions (e.g., wall cavities, pipe chases, HVAC ductwork shafts, ceiling plenums, etc.).

Accordingly, BEC makes no warranty, expressed or implied that all LBP and/or PCL-finished building components present at the building have been identified. BEC represents the XRF testing to identify LBP and/or PCL-finished building components, have been conducted in accordance with accepted engineering work practices and Federal/State regulations.

## SECTION 3.0 LEAD-BASED PAINT TESTING RESULTS

### 3.1 Lead-Based Paint Films

BEC concludes, based upon review of the LBP inspection findings, "lead based paint" was not detected (via *in situ* XRF testing) however, historical testing revealed the isolation valves on the hot and cold water supply lines in the boiler room are painted with lead-based red paint.

### 3.2 Paint Containing Lead Films

BEC concludes, based upon review of the LBP inspection findings, "paint-containing lead" was not detected (via *in situ* XRF testing) as listed in **Table A – Paint Containing Lead Films**.

**TABLE A – PAINT CONTAINING LEAD FILMS**

| Paint Color | Building Component | Location | Substrate | Lead ($mg/cm^2$) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| White | Closet Shelf Support | Room 801 | Wood | 0.3 |

### 3.3 LBP and PCL Management

BEC recommends, in an abundance of caution, the Owner manage all building components present at a planned work area (eg, renovation, demolition) and/or building area subject to routine maintenance as a LBP or PCL. Alternatively, BEC recommends further discrete (actual) XRF testing and/or paint chip sampling of the particular paint-finished building component to definitively reveal the lead concentration at those components not evaluated during this testing event.

## SECTION 4.0 CONCLUSIONS

### 4.1 Conclusions

A. BEC concludes, based upon review of the LBP inspection findings, "lead based paint" was not detected (via *in situ* XRF testing & paint chip sampling) at the subject site however, historical testing revealed The isolation valves on the hot and cold water supply lines in the boiler room are painted with lead-based red paint.

B. BEC concludes, based upon review of the LBP inspection findings, "paint containing lead" was detected (via XRF *in situ* testing) at the subject site.

C. BEC advises compliance with US OSHA "*Lead-in-General Industry*" standard (29 CFR 1910.1025) is required for all employers whose employees perform any maintenance activities, which involve making or keeping a structure, fixture, or foundation in proper condition on a routine, scheduled, or in an anticipated fashion, that disturbs "lead-based paint".

D. BEC advises the US OSHA regulation "*Lead Exposure in Construction*" (29 CFR §1926.62) applies to all construction activities, in which employees might be exposed to lead and all related construction activities, currently excluded from the general industry standard for lead (29 CFR §1910.1025).

E. Additionally, BEC advises, in the State of Maryland, all work, of which an employee may be occupationally exposed to lead - falls within the authority (purview) of US OSHA. It is relevant to note, paint with any measurable lead content may, when subjected to various construction or demolition actions, yield airborne particulate levels that exceed the regulatory Permissible Exposure Level (PEL). OSHA policy explicitly requires compliance with the applicable standard for detectable levels of lead that are below the abatement levels. OSHA policy also recognizes XRF data for establishing a positive determination only. Only those surfaces, which have been determined by an accredited laboratory, with lead concentrations reported to be less than the limit of detection, are exempt from these standards.

## SECTION 4.0 CONCLUSIONS

### 4.1 Conclusions

F. BEC advises that the building owner is required to communicate (*i.e.*, specify in the contract documents) the presence of "lead-based paint" and/or "paint-containing lead" within the phase limits of the renovation/demolition work area to the general contractor.

G. Contract specifications governing renovation/demolition work, should explicitly require that the general contractor and any subcontractor, engaged in work that may involve contact with existing paint, make an initial exposure assessment and comply with all other pertinent provisions of 29 CFR 1926.62, notwithstanding the low-moderate potential for demolition workers' exposures to airborne lead concentrations, in excess of the legally-enforceable Action Limit (AL, 30 µg/m$^3$) and/or Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL, 50 µg/m$^3$).

H. In an abundance of caution and prudent risk management, BEC recommends, at a minimum, a General Contractor- whom possesses current and valid US EPA "*Renovation, Repair, and Painting (RRP)*" [40 C.F.R §745.80] training certifications and contractor registration (accreditation) - conduct any and all renovation work, of which will, or can reasonably anticipated to, result in the disturbance of these LBP/PCL films.

## WORK PRODUCT DISCLAMER

**XRF readings and/or samples collected during an investigation reflect the lead level of that particular area. Readings and samples are collected at random in accordance with established procedures to obtain a representative overview of lead levels within or around a building. Therefore, it should not be construed that every surface, or area in or around a building was sampled or measured for lead content. Testing included exposed and accessible surfaces only, and lead-based paint may be present on securely enclosed or inaccessible surfaces, such as beneath enclosed window wells.**

# APPENDIX A

## PROTEC "LPA-1 RADIOACTIVE ENERGY RESOUCING DATA

# Leak Test Certificate

PROtec
INSTRUMENT CORPORATION
38 Edge Hill Road
Waltham, MA 02451

Leak Test Number: 1701-2018

**Customer:** Boggs Environmental Consultant

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **System:** | LPA-1 | **Instrument Serial Number:** | 1701 |
| **Source Manufacturer:** | Isotope Products | **Source Model:** | A3901-2 |
| **Active Material:** | Co57 | **Source Activity:** | 444MBq (12mCi) |
| **Source Serial Number:** | Q5-569 | **Assay Date** | 24 May 18 |
| **Source Enclosure:** | Stainless Steel in Tungsten Holder | | |

Description of Area Wiped: **Front and Sides of Bezel**

Comments

## Leak Test Results: <0.005 µCi

**Eric Stoessel**
Individual Performing Test (please print)

Signature of Individual Performing Test

**24 May 2018**
Date

PROtec
INSTRUMENT CORPORATION

# CERTIFICATION

Dear Customer:

This is to certify that the radioactive source, previously installed in your XRF analyzer, has been removed for decommissioning as part of the resource process of your unit.

The source, Co-57, will be disposed in accordance with all applicable rules and regulations.

| | |
|---|---|
| Model: | LPA-1__X___ LPA-1B _____ LTR1000_____ |
| Unit Serial Number: | _____1701_____ |
| Source Model: | _____IPL_____ |
| Source Serial Number: | ____P2-242____ |
| Date of Removal: | ___16 May 2018_____ |
| Performed by: | _____ES_____ |

If you have any questions, please do not hesitate to contact us at telephone 617-318-5050 or info@protecinstrument.com.

Sincerely

Radiation Safety Department
Protec Instrument Corporation

# APPENDIX B

## XRF PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTIC SHEET

# Performance Characteristic Sheet

**EFFECTIVE DATE:** **October 25, 2006** **EDITION NO.: 5**

**MANUFACTURER AND MODEL:**

Make: ***Radiation Monitoring Devices***
Model: ***LPA-1***
Source: $^{57}Co$
Note: This sheet supersedes all previous sheets for the XRF instrument of the make, model, and source shown above ***for instruments sold or serviced after June 26, 1995. For other instruments, see prior editions.***

## FIELD OPERATION GUIDANCE

**OPERATING PARAMETERS**:

Quick mode or 30-second equivalent standard (Time Corrected) mode readings.

**XRF CALIBRATION CHECK LIMITS**:

| |
|---|
| 0.7 to 1.3 mg/cm$^2$ (inclusive) |

**SUBSTRATE CORRECTION:**

For XRF results below 4.0 mg/cm$^2$, substrate correction is recommended for:

Metal using 30-second equivalent standard (Time Corrected) mode readings.
None using quick mode readings.

Substrate correction is not needed for:

Brick, Concrete, Drywall, Plaster, and Wood using 30-second equivalent standard (Time Corrected) mode readings
Brick, Concrete, Drywall, Metal, Plaster, and Wood using quick mode readings

**THRESHOLDS:**

| 30-SECOND EQUIVALENT STANDARD MODE READING DESCRIPTION | SUBSTRATE | THRESHOLD (mg/cm$^2$) |
|---|---|---|
| Results corrected for substrate bias on metal substrate only | Brick | 1.0 |
| | Concrete | 1.0 |
| | Drywall | 1.0 |
| | Metal | 0.9 |
| | Plaster | 1.0 |
| | Wood | 1.0 |

| QUICK MODE READING DESCRIPTION | SUBSTRATE | THRESHOLD (mg/cm$^2$) |
|---|---|---|
| Readings not corrected for substrate bias on any substrate | Brick | 1.0 |
| | Concrete | 1.0 |
| | Drywall | 1.0 |
| | Metal | 1.0 |
| | Plaster | 1.0 |
| | Wood | 1.0 |

## BACKGROUND INFORMATION

### EVALUATION DATA SOURCE AND DATE:

This sheet is supplemental information to be used in conjunction with Chapter 7 of the HUD *Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing* ("HUD Guidelines"). Performance parameters shown on this sheet are calculated from the EPA/HUD evaluation using archived building components. Testing was conducted on approximately 150 test locations in July 1995. The instrument that performed testing in September had a new source installed in June 1995 with 12 mCi initial strength.

### OPERATING PARAMETERS:

Performance parameters shown in this sheet are applicable only when properly operating the instrument using the manufacturer's instructions and procedures described in Chapter 7 of the HUD Guidelines.

### XRF CALIBRATION CHECK:

The calibration of the XRF instrument should be checked using the paint film nearest 1.0 mg/cm$^2$ in the NIST Standard Reference Material (SRM) used (e.g., for NIST SRM 2579, use the 1.02 mg/cm$^2$ film).

If readings are outside the acceptable calibration check range, follow the manufacturer's instructions to bring the instruments into control before XRF testing proceeds.

### SUBSTRATE CORRECTION VALUE COMPUTATION:

Chapter 7 of the HUD Guidelines provides guidance on correcting XRF results for substrate bias. Supplemental guidance for using the paint film nearest 1.0 mg/cm$^2$ for substrate correction is provided:

XRF results are corrected for substrate bias by subtracting from each XRF result a correction value determined separately in each house for single-family housing or in each development for multifamily housing, for each substrate. The correction value is an average of XRF readings taken over the NIST SRM paint film nearest to 1.02 mg/cm$^2$ at test locations that have been scraped bare of their paint covering. Compute the correction values as follows:

> Using the same XRF instrument, take three readings on a bare substrate area covered with the NIST SRM paint film nearest 1 mg/cm$^2$. Repeat this procedure by taking three more readings on a second bare substrate area of the same substrate covered with the NIST SRM.
>
> Compute the correction value for each substrate type where XRF readings indicate substrate correction is needed by computing the average of all six readings as shown below.
>
> For each substrate type (the 1.02 mg/cm$^2$ NIST SRM is shown in this example; use the actual lead loading of the NIST SRM used for substrate correction):
>
> Correction value = ($1^{st}$ + $2^{nd}$ + $3^{rd}$ + $4^{th}$ + $5^{th}$ + $6^{th}$ *Reading*) / 6 - 1.02 mg/cm²
>
> Repeat this procedure for each substrate requiring substrate correction in the house or housing development.

### EVALUATING THE QUALITY OF XRF TESTING:

Randomly select ten testing combinations for retesting from each house or from two randomly selected units in multifamily housing. Use either the Quick Mode or 30-second equivalent standard (Time Corrected) Mode readings.

Conduct XRF re-testing at the ten testing combinations selected for retesting.

Determine if the XRF testing in the units or house passed or failed the test by applying the steps below.

Compute the Retest Tolerance Limit by the following steps:

Determine XRF results for the original and retest XRF readings. Do not correct the original or retest results for substrate bias. In single-family and multi-family housing, a result is defined as a single reading. Therefore, there will be ten original and ten retest XRF results for each house or for the two selected units.

Calculate the average of the original XRF result and retest XRF result for each testing combination.

Square the average for each testing combination.

Add the ten squared averages together. Call this quantity C.

Multiply the number C by 0.0072. Call this quantity D.

Add the number 0.032 to D. Call this quantity E.

Take the square root of E. Call this quantity F.

Multiply F by 1.645. The result is the Retest Tolerance Limit.

Compute the average of all ten original XRF results.

Compute the average of all ten re-test XRF results.

Find the absolute difference of the two averages.

If the difference is less than the Retest Tolerance Limit, the inspection has passed the retest. If the difference of the overall averages equals or exceeds the Retest Tolerance Limit, this procedure should be repeated with ten new testing combinations. If the difference of the overall averages is equal to or greater than the Retest Tolerance Limit a second time, then the inspection should be considered deficient.

Use of this procedure is estimated to produce a spurious result approximately 1% of the time. That is, results of this procedure will call for further examination when no examination is warranted in approximately 1 out of 100 dwelling units tested.

**BIAS AND PRECISION:**

Do not use these bias and precision data to correct for substrate bias. These bias and precision data were computed without substrate correction from samples with reported laboratory results less than 4.0 $mg/cm^2$ lead. The data which were used to determine the bias and precision estimates given in the table below have the following properties. During the July 1995 testing, there were 15 test locations with a laboratory-reported result equal to or greater than 4.0 $mg/cm^2$ lead. Of these, one 30-second standard mode reading was less than 1.0 $mg/cm^2$ and none of the quick mode readings were less than 1.0 $mg/cm^2$. The instrument that tested in July is representative of instruments sold or serviced after June 26, 1995. These data are for illustrative purposes only. Actual bias must be determined on the site. Results provided above already account for bias and precision. Bias and precision ranges are provided to show the variability found between machines of the same model.

| 30-SECOND STANDARD MODE READING MEASURED AT | SUBSTRATE | BIAS (mg/cm$^2$) | PRECISION* (mg/cm$^2$) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.0 mg/cm$^2$ | Brick | 0.0 | 0.1 |
| | Concrete | 0.0 | 0.1 |
| | Drywall | 0.1 | 0.1 |
| | Metal | 0.3 | 0.1 |
| | Plaster | 0.1 | 0.1 |
| | Wood | 0.0 | 0.1 |
| 0.5 mg/cm$^2$ | Brick | 0.0 | 0.2 |
| | Concrete | 0.0 | 0.2 |
| | Drywall | 0.0 | 0.2 |
| | Metal | 0.2 | 0.2 |
| | Plaster | 0.0 | 0.2 |
| | Wood | 0.0 | 0.2 |
| 1.0 mg/cm$^2$ | Brick | 0.0 | 0.3 |
| | Concrete | 0.0 | 0.3 |
| | Drywall | 0.0 | 0.3 |
| | Metal | 0.2 | 0.3 |
| | Plaster | 0.0 | 0.3 |
| | Wood | 0.0 | 0.3 |
| 2.0 mg/cm$^2$ | Brick | -0.1 | 0.4 |
| | Concrete | -0.1 | 0.4 |
| | Drywall | -0.1 | 0.4 |
| | Metal | 0.1 | 0.4 |
| | Plaster | -0.1 | 0.4 |
| | Wood | -0.1 | 0.4 |

*Precision at 1 standard deviation.

**CLASSIFICATION RESULTS:**

XRF results are classified as positive if they are greater than the upper boundary of the inconclusive range, and negative if they are less than the lower boundary of the inconclusive range, or inconclusive if in between. The inconclusive range includes both its upper and lower bounds. Earlier editions of this *XRF Performance Characteristics Sheet* did not include both bounds of the inconclusive range as "inconclusive." While this edition of the Performance Characteristics Sheet uses a different system, the specific XRF readings that are considered positive, negative, or inconclusive for a given XRF model and substrate remain unchanged, so previous inspection results are not affected.

**DOCUMENTATION:**

An EPA document titled *Methodology for XRF Performance Characteristic Sheets* provides an explanation of the statistical methodology used to construct the data in the sheets, and provides empirical results from using the recommended inconclusive ranges or thresholds for specific XRF instruments. For a copy of this document call the National Lead Information Center Clearinghouse at 1-800-424-LEAD. A HUD document titled *A Nonparametric Method for Estimating the 5th and 95th Percentile Curves of Variable-Time XRF Readings Based on Monotone Regression* provides supplemental information on the methodology for variable-time XRF instruments. A copy of this document can be obtained from the HUD lead web site, www.hud.gov/offices/lead.

This XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet was developed by QuanTech, Inc., under a contract from the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD). HUD has determined that the information provided here is acceptable when used as guidance in conjunction with Chapter 7, Lead-Based Paint Inspection, of HUD's *Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing*.

## Limit of Detection (LOD)

Statistically, LOD = 3 STD (Standard Deviation) or as it is called 3Sigma. You have to be careful about LOD detection calculations. It is the calculation of Sigma (STD) that is a bit tricky. The Sigma (STD.) is not a constant; it depends on time, %Pb, substrate, etc.

One can, as some XRF manufacturers do, base the calculation of the STD on counting statistics. Scientifically, the STD calculation for XRF application should not be based solely on statistical counting or precision calculations (Random error) due to the fact that one can achieve excellent precision by measuring for a long time. So, in this model, the square root of the longest measurement time count rate is used to represent the Sigma. Numbers as low as 0.05 $mg/cm^2$ can be achieved by most XRF systems including the LPA-1 analyzer.

The true measurement of LOD should also include the Systematic errors into the calculation of STD. The most dominating factor into the Systematic error contributor is the NIST Standard.

No one can measure better than what the calibration standards represent. The uncertainty of the NIST 1.04 sample is ± 0.064 mg/cm2. This means the STD for this sample is 0.032. Therefore, the contribution from this sample's error alone to LOD is 3 X (.032) = 0.096 or almost 0.1 $mg/cm^2$.

We suggest that you also read the "Methodology for XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet", EPA 747-R-95-008 that details how the HUD/EPA attempted these calculations. You can get a copy by calling 800-424-LEAD.

We hope this note is helpful to you.

RMD Instruments, LLC

**Operation of the LPA-1 analyzer and its operational statistics**
**Zero measurements and negative values**

XRF analysis, like all other methods of measurements, is influenced by both random and systematic errors. The random errors are those that their magnitude can be reduced but not eliminated such as the effect of the radioactive decay of the source in measurements. The systematic errors are those that can be avoided, or at least corrected for. For example the effect of calibration samples, electronics, substrate, and mathematical algorithms.

The statistical terms such as precision, bias, accuracy, and uncertainty refer to these errors and are mathematical approaches for defining and measuring the contribution of each parameter. The uncertainty of a measurement is the summation of the contribution of precision, accuracy, and bias for that measurement.

The scatter on a single substrate represents random errors. We define this to be the *precision*. Strictly speaking, precision is the standard deviation of this scatter. The error in the mean value of lead, for a single substrate, represents a systematic error. Some would refer to this as the bias for this particular substrate, i.e., a particular piece of wood. We use the word *bias* to refer to the average of systematic errors for substrates class not only a particular component in that class.

The scatter in the systematic errors (strictly speaking, the standard deviation in the errors in the mean) we call *accuracy*. For any single reading obtained by the LPA-1, there will be some uncertainty which results from the counts used in this reading (i.e., the precision) and the systematic error in our algorithm (which is quantified by the accuracy). Because these two factors are statistically independent, the total uncertainty is given by the square of the sum of the squares of precision and accuracy.

The contribution of random and systematic errors in an analysis is best represented by a statistical distribution curve. A series of replicate measurements results in a statistical distribution curve represented by Gaussian or Normal distribution. The curve is characterized by number of measurements, range or spread, mean, and scatter or divergence. The standard deviation (sigma) for such a curve is calculated to be the square root of the variance. In practice it can be stated that the probability is 68.3% (1 sigma or 1 standard deviation) that any individual measurement will have a value between the average of all readings plus and minus the standard deviation. For 2sigma or 2 standard deviation the probability is 95.4%.

From the above explanation, one can conclude that a set of repeated measurements for a zero lead sample would result in a Guassian distribution curve with mean value of zero. This curve implies that for a perfect zero sample fifty out of one hundred measurements would be to the negative side of the curve as the other fifty would lay on the positive side. Therefore, depending on the standard deviation and degree of confidence a zero lead sample can have measured values ranging from negative to positive numbers.

Therefore, the existence of negative values should be expected and interpolated as zero lead content due to statistical nature of the XRF measurements. The lack of such negative values suggests that data have been manipulated and should be questioned.

Both the HUD and the EPA recognize the statistical nature of the analytical measurements and the possibility of obtaining negative values where the lead content is around zero. In practice, the interpretation of a negative number has been as a reading that is below the regulatory Action Level threshold and as a result is negative lead.

# APPENDIX C

## XRF TESTING DATA

LEAD PAINT INSPECTION REPORT

REPORT NUMBER: S#01701 - 08/22/19 14:13

INSPECTION FOR:

PERFORMED AT:

INSPECTION DATE: 08/22/19

INSTRUMENT TYPE: R M D
MODEL LPA-1
XRF TYPE ANALYZER
Serial Number: 01701

ACTION LEVEL: 0.8 mg/cm**2

OPERATOR LICENSE:

STATEMENT:

SIGNED _____ DATE _____

SEQUENTIAL REPORT OF LEAD PAINT INSPECTION FOR:

| | |
|---|---|
| Inspection Date: | 08/22/19 |
| Report Date: | 9/3/2019 |
| Abatement Level: | 0.8 |
| Report No. | S#01701 - 08/22/19 14:13 |
| Total Readings: | 113 |
| Job Started: | 08/22/19 14:13 |
| Job Finished: | 08/23/19 11:07 |

| Read No. | Rm | Room Name | Wall | Structure | Location | Member | Paint Cond | Substrate | Paint Color | Lead (mg/cm²) | Mode |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 1.0 | TC |
| 2 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 0.9 | TC |
| 3 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 0.8 | TC |
| 4 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | -0.2 | TC |
| 5 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | -0.1 | TC |
| 6 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | -0.2 | TC |
| 7 | 001 | 801 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.6 | QM |
| 8 | 001 | 801 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.4 | QM |
| 9 | 001 | 801 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.5 | QM |
| 10 | 001 | 801 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.4 | QM |
| 11 | 001 | 801 | D | Joist | Ctr | | I | Metal | Red | -0.2 | QM |
| 12 | 001 | 801 | D | Beam | Ctr | | I | Metal | Brown | -0.4 | QM |
| 13 | 001 | 801 | B | Window | Ctr | Sill | I | Wood | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 14 | 001 | 801 | B | Window | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Wood | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 15 | 001 | 801 | B | Closet | Ctr | Shelf Sup. | I | Wood | White | 0.3 | QM |
| 16 | 001 | 801 | A | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 17 | 002 | 802 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 18 | 002 | 802 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 19 | 002 | 802 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 20 | 002 | 802 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 21 | 002 | 802 | D | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 22 | 002 | 802 | A | Baseboard | Ctr | | I | Ceramic | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 23 | 002 | 802 | B | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 24 | 003 | 803 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 25 | 003 | 803 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | Ceramic | Grey | -0.6 | QM |
| 26 | 003 | 803 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 27 | 003 | 803 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 28 | 003 | 803 | C | Ceiling | | | I | Plaster | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 29 | 004 | 804 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.5 | QM |
| 30 | 004 | 804 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.5 | QM |
| 31 | 004 | 804 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.6 | QM |
| 32 | 004 | 804 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.3 | QM |
| 33 | 004 | 804 | B | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | OffWhite | -0.7 | QM |
| 34 | 004 | 804 | A | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 | QM |
| 35 | 005 | 805 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 36 | 005 | 805 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 37 | 005 | 805 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 38 | 005 | 805 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 39 | 005 | 805 | D | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 40 | 005 | 805 | C | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 41 | 005 | 805 | D | Conduit | Ctr | | I | Metal | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 42 | 006 | 806 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 43 | 006 | 806 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 44 | 006 | 806 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 45 | 006 | 806 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 46 | 006 | 806 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.5 | QM |
| 47 | 006 | 806 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.6 | QM |
| 48 | 006 | 806 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.7 | QM |
| 49 | 006 | 806 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.4 | QM |
| 50 | 006 | 806 | C | Door | | Ctr U Ctr | I | Metal | Black | -0.4 | QM |
| 51 | 006 | 806 | C | Door | | Ctr Lft casing | I | Metal | Black | -0.3 | QM |
| 52 | 007 | 807 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 53 | 007 | 807 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 54 | 007 | 807 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 55 | 007 | 807 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 56 | 007 | 807 | D | Window | | Ctr Sill | I | Wood | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 57 | 007 | 807 | D | Window | | Ctr Rgt casing | I | Wood | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 58 | 007 | 807 | A | Door | | Ctr Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 | QM |
| 59 | 008 | 808 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 60 | 008 | 808 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 61 | 008 | 808 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 62 | 008 | 808 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 63 | 008 | 808 | D | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 64 | 008 | 808 | B | Door | | Ctr Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 | QM |
| 65 | 009 | 809 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | I | Ceramic | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 66 | 009 | 809 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | I | Ceramic | White | -0.8 | QM |
| 67 | 009 | 809 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | Ceramic | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 68 | 009 | 809 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | Ceramic | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 69 | 009 | 809 | D | Ceiling | | | I | Plaster | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 70 | 010 | 810 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 71 | 010 | 810 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 72 | 010 | 810 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 73 | 010 | 810 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 74 | 010 | 810 | B | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.1 | QM |
| 75 | 010 | 810 | D | Panel | | Ctr | I | Wood | Grey | -0.4 | QM |
| 76 | 010 | 810 | C | Door | | Ctr Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 77 | 011 | 811 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 78 | 011 | 811 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 79 | 011 | 811 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 80 | 011 | 811 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 81 | 011 | 811 | A | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 82 | 011 | 811 | C | Door | | Ctr U Ctr | I | Metal | Tan | -0.3 | QM |
| 83 | 011 | 811 | C | Door | | Ctr Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 | QM |
| 84 | 011 | 811 | D | Duct | | Ctr | I | Metal | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 85 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 1.1 | TC |
| 86 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 1.0 | TC |
| 87 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 0.8 | TC |
| 88 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | -0.3 | TC |
| 89 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | -0.2 | TC |
| 90 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | -0.3 | TC |
| 91 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | | | 0.8 | TC |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 92 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | 0.7 | TC |
| 93 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | 0.7 | TC |
| 94 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | -0.3 | TC |
| 95 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | -0.4 | TC |
| 96 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | -0.3 | TC |
| 97 | 006 | 806 | D | Struc.Steel | Ctr | I Metal | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 98 | 006 | 806 | D | Housing | Ctr | I Metal | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 99 | 001 | Number Only | B | Door | Ctr U Ctr | I Metal | Black | -0.1 | QM |
| 100 | 001 | Number Only | B | Door | Ctr Lft casing | I Metal | Black | -0.3 | QM |
| 101 | 001 | Number Only | B | Door | Ctr Header | I Metal | Black | -0.5 | QM |
| 102 | 001 | Number Only | C | Door | Ctr U Ctr | I Metal | Brown | -0.3 | QM |
| 103 | 001 | Number Only | C | Door | Ctr Lft casing | I Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 104 | 001 | Number Only | C | Door | Ctr Header | I Metal | Brown | -0.4 | QM |
| 105 | 001 | Number Only | D | Door | Ctr U Ctr | I Metal | Black | -0.1 | QM |
| 106 | 001 | Number Only | D | Door | Ctr Lft casing | I Metal | Black | -0.2 | QM |
| 107 | 001 | Number Only | D | Door | Ctr Header | I Metal | Black | -0.5 | QM |
| 108 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | 0.7 | TC |
| 109 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | 0.7 | TC |
| 110 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | 0.7 | TC |
| 111 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | -0.3 | TC |
| 112 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | -0.3 | TC |
| 113 | | CALIBRATION | | | | | | -0.2 | TC |

---- End of Readings ----

SUMMARY REPORT OF LEAD PAINT INSPECTION FOR:

| | |
|---|---|
| Inspection Date: | 08/22/19 |
| Report Date: | 9/3/2019 |
| Abatement Level: | 0.8 |
| Report No. | S#01701 - 08/22/19 14:13 |
| Total Readings: | 113 Actionable: 0 |
| Job Started: | 08/22/19 14:13 |
| Job Finished: | 08/23/19 11:07 |

| Read No. | Wall | Structure | Location | Member | Paint Cond | Substrate | Paint Color | Lead (mg/cm²) | Mode |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Calibration Readings | | | | | | | | | |

---- End of Readings ----

DETAILED REPORT OF LEAD PAINT INSPECTION FOR:

Inspection Date: 08/22/19
Report Date: 9/3/2019
Abatement Level: 0.8
Report No. S#01701 - 08/22/19 14:13
Total Readings: 113
Job Started: 08/22/19 14:13
Job Finished: 08/23/19 11:07

| Read No. | Wall | Structure | Location | Member | Paint Cond | Substrate | Paint Color | Lead (mg/cm²) | Mode |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Exterior Room 001 Number Only | | | | | | | | | |
| 101 | B | Door | Ctr | Header | I | Metal | Black | -0.5 | QM |
| 100 | B | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Black | -0.3 | QM |
| 099 | B | Door | Ctr | U Ctr | I | Metal | Black | -0.1 | QM |
| 104 | C | Door | Ctr | Header | I | Metal | Brown | -0.4 | QM |
| 103 | C | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 102 | C | Door | Ctr | U Ctr | I | Metal | Brown | -0.3 | QM |
| 107 | D | Door | Ctr | Header | I | Metal | Black | -0.5 | QM |
| 106 | D | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Black | -0.2 | QM |
| 105 | D | Door | Ctr | U Ctr | I | Metal | Black | -0.1 | QM |
| Interior Room 001 801 | | | | | | | | | |
| 007 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.6 | QM |
| 016 | A | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 008 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.4 | QM |
| 013 | B | Window | Ctr | Sill | I | Wood | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 014 | B | Window | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Wood | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 015 | B | Closet | Ctr | Shelf Sup. | I | Wood | White | 0.3 | QM |
| 009 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.5 | QM |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 010 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Tan | -0.4 | QM |
| 011 | D | Joist | Ctr | | I | Metal | Red | -0.2 | QM |
| 012 | D | Beam | Ctr | | I | Metal | Brown | -0.4 | QM |
| Interior Room 002 802 | | | | | | | | | |
| 017 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 022 | A | Baseboard | Ctr | | I | Ceramic | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 018 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 023 | B | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 019 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 020 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.7 | QM |
| 021 | D | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.4 | QM |
| Interior Room 003 803 | | | | | | | | | |
| 024 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 025 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | Ceramic | Grey | -0.6 | QM |
| 026 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 028 | C | Ceiling | | | I | Plaster | White | -0.6 | QM |
| 027 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.2 | QM |
| Interior Room 004 804 | | | | | | | | | |
| 029 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.5 | QM |
| 034 | A | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 | QM |
| 030 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.5 | QM |
| 033 | B | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | OffWhite | -0.7 | QM |
| 031 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.6 | QM |
| 032 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | OffWhite | -0.3 | QM |
| Interior Room 005 805 | | | | | | | | | |
| 035 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 036 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 037 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 040 | C | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 | QM |
| 038 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 | QM |
| 039 | D | Ceiling | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.2 | QM |
| 041 | D | Conduit | Ctr | | I | Metal | White | -0.2 | QM |
| Interior Room 006 806 | | | | | | | | | |
| 042 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 046 | A | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.5 | QM |
| 043 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 | QM |
| 047 | B | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.6 | QM |
| 044 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 048 | C | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.7 | QM |
| 051 | C | Door | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Black | -0.3 | QM |
| 050 | C | Door | Ctr | U Ctr | I | Metal | Black | -0.4 | QM |
| 045 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 | QM |
| 049 | D | Wall | U Ctr | | I | CMU Block | Blue | -0.4 | QM |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 097 | D | Struc.Steel | | Ctr | | I | Metal | White | -0.3 QM |
| 098 | D | Housing | | Ctr | | I | Metal | White | -0.4 QM |
| Interior Room 007 807 | | | | | | | | | |
| 052 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 QM |
| 058 | A | Door | | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 QM |
| 053 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 QM |
| 054 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.6 QM |
| 055 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 QM |
| 057 | D | Window | | Ctr | Rgt casing | I | Wood | White | -0.2 QM |
| 056 | D | Window | | Ctr | Sill | I | Wood | White | -0.3 QM |
| Interior Room 008 808 | | | | | | | | | |
| 059 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 QM |
| 060 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 QM |
| 064 | B | Door | | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 QM |
| 061 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 QM |
| 062 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 QM |
| 063 | D | Ceiling | | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.3 QM |
| Interior Room 009 809 | | | | | | | | | |
| 065 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | Ceramic | White | -0.4 QM |
| 066 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | Ceramic | White | -0.8 QM |
| 067 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | Ceramic | White | -0.5 QM |
| 068 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | Ceramic | White | -0.5 QM |
| 069 | D | Ceiling | | | | I | Plaster | White | -0.7 QM |
| Interior Room 010 810 | | | | | | | | | |
| 070 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 QM |
| 071 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.7 QM |
| 074 | B | Ceiling | | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.1 QM |
| 072 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.2 QM |
| 076 | C | Door | | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.2 QM |
| 073 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.7 QM |
| 075 | D | Panel | | Ctr | | I | Wood | Grey | -0.4 QM |
| Interior Room 011 811 | | | | | | | | | |
| 077 | A | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 QM |
| 081 | A | Ceiling | | | | I | Sheetrock | White | -0.6 QM |
| 078 | B | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.3 QM |
| 079 | C | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.5 QM |
| 083 | C | Door | | Ctr | Lft casing | I | Metal | Brown | -0.1 QM |
| 082 | C | Door | | Ctr | U Ctr | I | Metal | Tan | -0.3 QM |
| 080 | D | Wall | U | Ctr | | I | CMU Block | White | -0.4 QM |
| 084 | D | Duct | | Ctr | | I | Metal | White | -0.2 QM |
| Calibration Readings | | | | | | | | | |
| 001 | | | | | | | | | 1.0 TC |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 002 | 0.9 | TC |
| 003 | 0.8 | TC |
| 004 | -0.2 | TC |
| 005 | -0.1 | TC |
| 006 | -0.2 | TC |
| 085 | 1.1 | TC |
| 086 | 1.0 | TC |
| 087 | 0.8 | TC |
| 088 | -0.3 | TC |
| 089 | -0.2 | TC |
| 090 | -0.3 | TC |
| 091 | 0.8 | TC |
| 092 | 0.7 | TC |
| 093 | 0.7 | TC |
| 094 | -0.3 | TC |
| 095 | -0.4 | TC |
| 096 | -0.3 | TC |
| 108 | 0.7 | TC |
| 109 | 0.7 | TC |
| 110 | 0.7 | TC |
| 111 | -0.3 | TC |
| 112 | -0.3 | TC |
| 113 | -0.2 | TC |

---- End of Readings ----

DISTRIBUTION REPORT OF LEAD PAINT INSPECTION FOR:

Inspection Date: 08/22/19
Report Date: 9/3/2019
Abatement Level: 0.8
Report No. S#01701 - 08/22/19 14:13
Total Reading Sets: 89
Job Started: 08/22/19 14:13
Job Finished: 08/23/19 11:07

| Structure | Structure Distribution Total | Positive | | Negative | | Inconclusive | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Baseboard | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Beam | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Ceiling | 8 | 0 | <0%> | 8 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Closet Shelf Sup. | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Conduit | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Door Header | 3 | 0 | <0%> | 3 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Door Lft casing | 12 | 0 | <0%> | 12 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Door U Ctr | 5 | 0 | <0%> | 5 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Duct | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Housing | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Joist | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Panel | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Struc.Steel | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Wall | 48 | 0 | <0%> | 48 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Window Lft casing | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Window Rgt casing | 1 | 0 | <0%> | 1 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Window Sill | 2 | 0 | <0%> | 2 | <100%> | 0 | <0%> |
| Inspection Totals: | 89 | 0 | < 0%> | 89 | <100%> | 0 | < 0%> |

# APPENDIX D

## BEC STAFF QUALIFICATIONS

# *THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT*

## Andrew Lawrence Hanson

# *HAS MET THE LEAD PAINT SERVICES ACCREDITATION REQUIREMENTS FOR*

## Risk Assessor

**EXPIRATION DATE** 03 07 2021

**TRAINING PROVIDER** Aerosol Monitoring & Analysis, Inc.

**COURSE DATE** 03 23 2017

**ADMINISTRATOR, LEAD PAINT ACCREDITATION**
**MARYLAND DEPARTMENT OF THE ENVIRONMENT**

3/15/19
**DATE**

# STATE OF MARYLAND

**Certificate #** 17343

**Application for reaccreditation shall be submitted to MDE 60 days prior to accreditation expiration indicated on this certificate.**

# APPENDIX E

# BEC FIELD DOCUMENTATION

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

# XRF Worksheet

Address: Garrett College Bldg 700/800 Date: 8-22-19

Project #: MD19194 XRF Serial # 1701 Inspector/Risk Assessor: AL H

| Shot | Room# | Room | Side | Component | Substrate | Location | Color | Condition | Quantity | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | Calibrate | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 1.0 | |
| 2 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.9 | |
| 3 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.8 | |
| 4 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 5 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.1 | |
| 6 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 7 | 1 | Room #801 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Tan | I F P | -0.6 | CMU Block |
| 8 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | " |
| 9 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | " |
| 10 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | " |
| 11 | | | A B C D | Beam/Joist | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Red | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 12 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brown | I F P | -0.4 | |
| 13 | | | A B C D | Window Sill | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 14 | | | A B C D | Door Casing | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | 0.2 | |
| 15 | | | A B C D | Closet Shelf Support | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | 0.3 | |
| 16 | | | A B C D | Door Casing | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brown | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 17 | 2 | Room #802 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.6 | CMU Block |
| 18 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | " |
| 19 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.6 | " |
| 20 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.7 | " |
| 21 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | |
| 22 | | | A B C D | Window Sill | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.7 | Ceramic |
| 23 | | | A B C D | Door Casing | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brown | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 24 | 3 | Room #803 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.5 | CMU |
| 25 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Grey | I F P | -0.6 | Ceramic |
| 26 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.3 | CMU |

**Substrates** – B-Brick, C-Concrete, M-Metal, Plaster, Sheetrock, Wood
**Location** - R-Right, L-Left, C-Center, Up-Upper, Lo-Lower
**Condition** – I-Intact, F-Fair, P-Poor

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

| Shot | Room# | Room | Side | Component | Substrate | Location | Color | Condition | Quantity | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 27 | 3 | Room #803 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.2 | CMU Block |
| 28 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 29 | 4 | Room #804 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | off white | I F P | -0.5 | CMU Block |
| 30 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | " |
| 31 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.6 | " |
| 32 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.3 | " |
| 33 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.7 | |
| 34 | | | A B C D | Door Frame | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brown | I F P | -0.1 | |
| 35 | 5 | Room #805 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.5 | |
| 36 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | |
| 37 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | |
| 38 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 39 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 40 | | | A B C D | Door Frame | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brown | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 41 | | | A B C D | Conduit | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 42 | 6 | Room #806 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | CMU Block |
| 43 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | " |
| 44 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | " |
| 45 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | " |
| 46 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brick | I F P | -0.5 | |
| 47 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.6 | " |
| 48 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.2 | " |
| 49 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.4 | " |
| 50 | | | A B C D | Door | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | Brick | I F P | -0.4 | |
| 51 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | |
| 52 | 7 | Room #807 | A B C D | Wall | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | White | I F P | -0.4 | CMU Block |
| 53 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.5 | " |
| 54 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.6 | " |
| 55 | | | A B C D | " | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.3 | " |
| 56 | | | A B C D | Window Sill | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 57 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.2 | |

**Substrates** – B-Brick, C-Concrete, M-Metal, Plaster, Sheetrock, Wood
**Location** - R-Right, L-Left, C-Center, Up-Upper, Lo-Lower
**Condition** – I-Intact, F-Fair, P-Poor

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

| Shot | Room# | Room | Side | Component | Substrate | Location | Color | Condition | Quantity | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 58 | 7 | Room #807 | (A) B C D | Door Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Brown | (I) F P | -0.2 | |
| 59 | 8 | Room #808 | (A) B C D | Wall | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | White | (I) F P | -0.5 | CMU Block |
| 60 | | | A (B) C D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.5 | " |
| 61 | | | A B (C) D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.4 | " |
| 62 | | | A B C (D) | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.3 | " |
| 63 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M P (S) W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.3 | |
| 64 | | | A B C D | Door Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Brown | (I) F P | -0.1 | |
| 65 | 9 | Room #809 | (A) B C D | Wall | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | White | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 66 | | | A (B) C D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.5 | |
| 67 | | | A B (C) D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.5 | |
| 68 | | | A B C (D) | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.5 | |
| 69 | | | A B C D | Ceiling | B C M (P) S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.7 | |
| 70 | 10 | Room #810 | (A) B C D | Wall | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | White | (I) F P | -0.3 | |
| 71 | | | A (B) C D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.2 | |
| 72 | | | A B (C) D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.2 | |
| 73 | | | A B C (D) | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.2 | |
| 74 | | | A (B) C D | Ceiling | B C M P (S) W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.1 | |
| 75 | | | A B C (D) | Door | B C M P S (W) O | L (C) R Up Lo | Grey | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 76 | | | A B (C) D | Door Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Brown | (I) F P | -0.1 | |
| 77 | 11 | Room #811 | (A) B C D | Wall | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | White | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 78 | | | A (B) C D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.3 | |
| 79 | | | A B (C) D | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.5 | |
| 80 | | | A B C (D) | " | B C M P S W (O) | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 81 | | | (A) B C D | Ceiling | B C M P (S) W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.6 | |
| 82 | | | A B (C) D | Door | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Tan | (I) F P | -0.3 | |
| 83 | | | A B (C) D | Door Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Brown | (I) F P | -0.1 | |
| 84 | | | A B C (D) | Door | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | White | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 85 | | Call Inmate | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.1 | |
| 86 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 87 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 88 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.3 | |

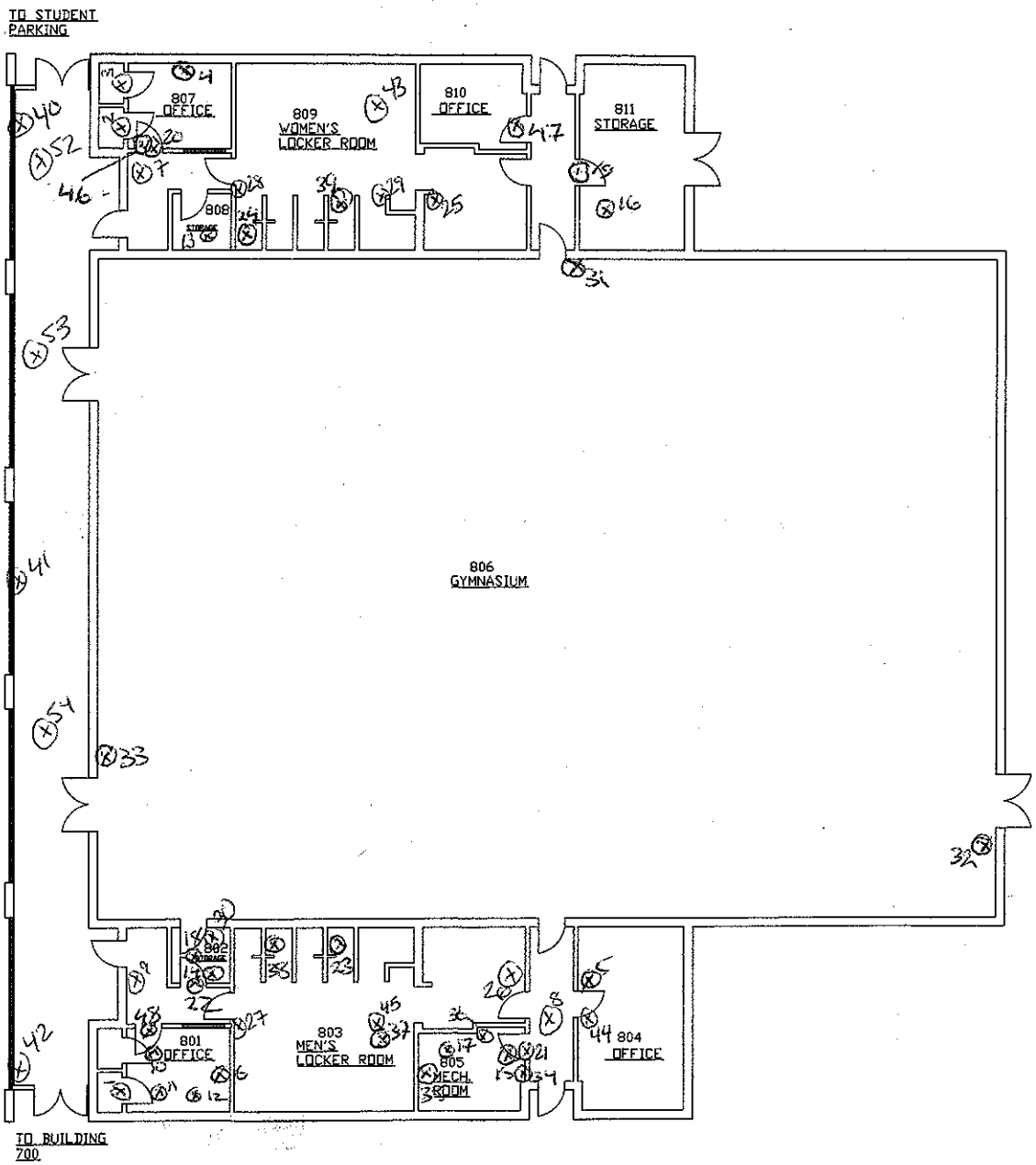
**Substrates** – B-Brick, C-Concrete, M-Metal, Plaster, Sheetrock, Wood
**Location** - R-Right, L-Left, C-Center, Up-Upper, Lo-Lower
**Condition** – I-Intact, F-Fair, P-Poor

BOGGS
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

| Shot | Room# | Room | Side | Component | Substrate | Location | Color | Condition | Quantity | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 89 | | Calibrate | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 90 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 91 | | Calibrate | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.8 | |
| 92 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.7 | |
| 93 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.7 | |
| 94 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 95 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.4 | |
| 96 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 97 | | Rio Gymnasium | A B C (D) | Structural Steel | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | White | (I) F P | -0.3 | |
| 98 | | " | A B C (D) | HVAC Housing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 99 | | Exterior | A (B) C D | Door | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Black | (I) F P | -0.1 | |
| 100 | | " | A (B) C D | Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.2 | |
| 101 | | " | A (B) C D | Lintel | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.5 | |
| 102 | | " | A B (C) D | Door | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Brown | (I) F P | -0.3 | |
| 103 | | " | A B (C) D | Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.2 | |
| 104 | | " | A B (C) D | Lintel | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | (I) F P | -0.4 | |
| 105 | | " | A B C (D) | Door | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Black | I F P | -0.1 | |
| 106 | | " | A B C (D) | Casing | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | " | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 107 | | " | A B C (D) | Lintel | B C (M) P S W O | L (C) R Up Lo | Blk | I F P | -0.5 | |
| 108 | | Calibrate | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.7 | |
| 109 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.7 | |
| 110 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | 0.7 | |
| 111 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 112 | | " | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.3 | |
| 113 | | — | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | -0.2 | |
| 114 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | | |
| 115 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | | |
| 116 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | | |
| 117 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | | |
| 118 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | | |
| 119 | | | A B C D | | B C M P S W O | L C R Up Lo | | I F P | | |

**Substrates** – B-Brick, C-Concrete, M-Metal, Plaster, Sheetrock, Wood
**Location** - R-Right, L-Left, C-Center, Up-Upper, Lo-Lower
**Condition** – I-Intact, F-Fair, P-Poor

BEC
8-23-19
MD19159



BEC
8-23-19
MD9159